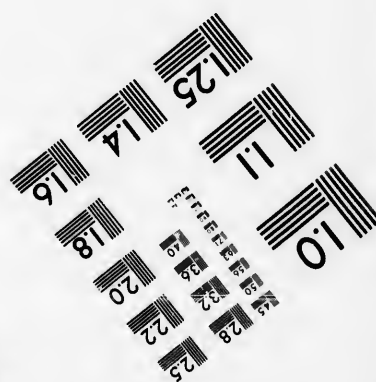
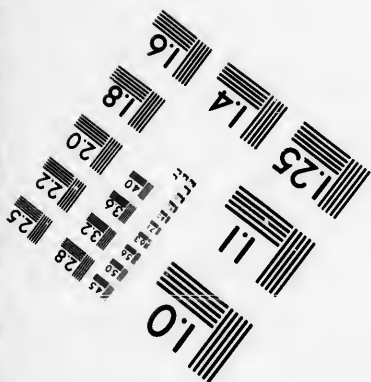
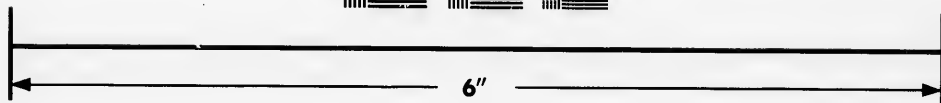
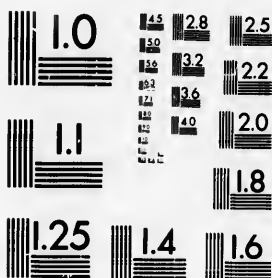


**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1985**



Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/  
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/  
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/  
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/  
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/  
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/  
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/  
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments: /  
Commentaires supplémentaires:

Irregular pagination : [3]- 14, [17]- 445, 1040 p.

- Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/  
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/  
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/  
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/  
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/  
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

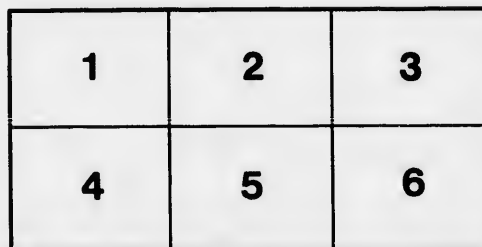
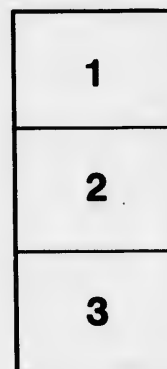
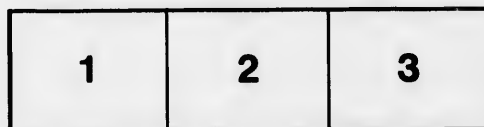
Douglas Library  
Queen's University

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Douglas Library  
Queen's University

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

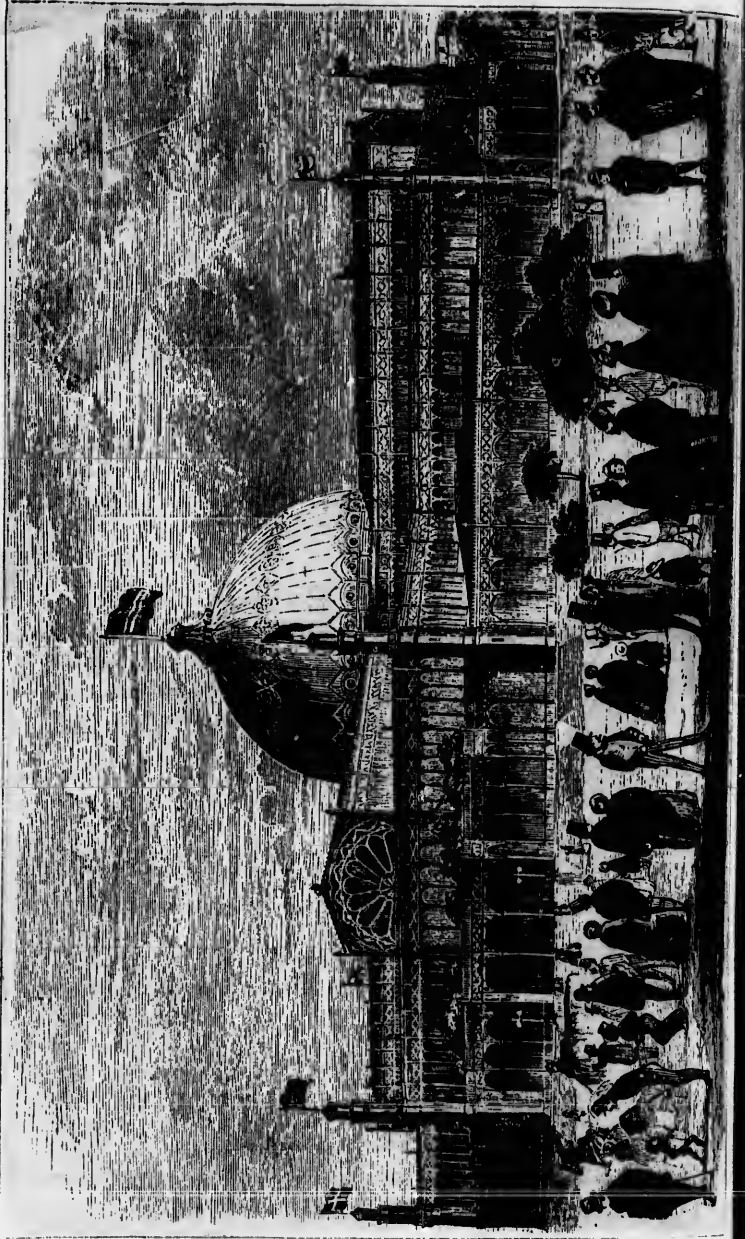
Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

ails  
du  
odifier  
une  
image

rrata  
o

pelure,  
n à

32X





THE  
**NEW WORLD:**

EMBRACING

**AMERICAN HISTORY.**

BY

**HENRY HOWARD BROWNELL, A. M.**

**VOL. II.**

**The English in America. — History of the Foundation of the several Provinces: their Colonial Government: Resistance to England. —**

**The American Revolution. — History of the United States.**

**—The Sandwich Islands, etc., etc.**

WITH

**NUMEROUS BEAUTIFUL ILLUSTRATIONS,**

**DRAWN AND COLOURED AFTER NATURE,**

*EMBRACING PORTRAITS, SCENERY, CURIOSITIES, CITIES, PUBLIC EDIFICES, ETC., ETC.*

**BOSTON:**

**DAYTON AND WENTWORTH,**

**86 WASHINGTON STREET.**

# MEMORIAL

OF

THE

MEMBERS

OF

THE

Se  
t  
I  
i

The  
F  
I  
to

Eng  
W  
ag

The  
ne  
st  
R

Sum  
R  
M

Mem  
ve  
Tu  
Esc

Virg  
hor  
the  
Vir

Trial  
the

# CONTENTS.

## PART VI.

### THE ENGLISH IN AMERICA.

#### EARLY VOYAGES AND ATTEMPTS AT COLONIZATION.

CHAPTER I.	
	PAGE
Sebastian Cabot—His Youth—His First Voyage, and Discovery of North America; His Second Voyage, and Futile Attempt at Colonization; Obscure Interval in his Life; he serves in Spain; His Expedition under Henry VIII.; Appointed Grand Pilot of Spain; His Expedition to South America; His Return to England, Services, Old Age, and Death,.....	17
CHAPTER II.	
The "Dominus Vobiscum"—Failure and Misfortune; Improvement of the English Marine; Martin Frobisher—His Voyage in Search of a North-west Passage; Diminutive Equipments of the Early Discoverers; Supposed Discovery of Gold Ore; Second Expedition of Frobisher; Surveys; Contest with the Esquimaux; His Third Expedition; Its Failure,.....	22
CHAPTER III.	
English Enterprise; Drake; Sir Humphrey Gilbert; His First Attempt to Colonize America; Sir Walter Raleigh; Sir Humphrey sails for America; Shipwrecks and Misfortunes; the Return Voyage; Tempests; Loss of Sir Humphrey and his Crew,.....	26
CHAPTER IV.	
The Patent of Raleigh; he Dispatches Amidas and Barlow to Carolina—their Report; the Country named Virginia; Voyages of Davis, &c.; Second Expedition of Raleigh, under Lane; Settlement at Roanoke; Folly and Cruelty of the English; the Indians; Massacre by the English; Failure and Return of the Expedition,.....	29
CHAPTER V.	
Small Settlement planted by Grenville at Roanoke Destroyed by the Indians; Third Expedition of Raleigh; First English Child in America; Loss and Supposed Destruction of the Roanoke Colony; Misfortunes of Raleigh; Tardiness and Ill-fortune of English Enterprise; Reflections,.....	32

#### THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA.

CHAPTER I.	
Memoir of Captain John Smith; His Youthful Adventures and Services; he turns Hermit; His Adventures in France; he is flung Overboard; Sea-fight; Travels in Italy; His Campaign against the Turks; Siege of Regall; the Three Turks' Heads; Smith sent a Slave to Tartary—his Wonderful Escape; Subsequent Adventures; Returns to England,.....	36
CHAPTER II.	
Virginian Colonization Revived; Patent of James I.; Ill-assorted Company of Settlers; the Expedition sails for America; Accidentally enters James River; Ill-treatment of Smith; Intercourse with the Indians; Jamestown Founded; Excursion of Smith and Newport; Powhatan; the Indians of Virginia,.....	42
CHAPTER III.	
Trial and Vindication of Smith; Famine and Terrible Mortality; Smith, by his Exertions, supports the Colony; Treachery of his Associates; Dealings with the Indians; Idle and Miserable Colonists, 46	46

	PAGE
CHAPTER IV.	
Expedition and Capture of Smith—his Strange Adventures among the Indians; Conjurations performed over him; he is Carried to Powhatan; His Life Saved by Pocahontas; Strange Masquerade of Powhatan; Release and Return of Smith,.....	49
CHAPTER V.	
Privations of the Colonists; Relieved by Pocahontas; Arrival of Newport from England; Intercourse and Trade with Powhatan; Blue Beads for Crown Jewels; Imaginary Gold Mine; Smith's Voyage in the Chesapeake; Interviews with numerous Native Tribes; Sting-ray Point; His Return,.....	52
CHAPTER VI.	
Smith made President; he Resumes the Survey; the Susquehanna; Adventures with the Indians; Remarkable Feat of Survey; Return to Jamestown; Arrival of Newport; Absurd Instructions of the English Company; the Coronation of Powhatan; Unsuccessful Attempt of Newport to find the South Sea,.....	55
CHAPTER VII.	
Plot against Smith; His Letter to the Company; His Efforts to Support the Colony; Expedition to Surprise Powhatan; Artful Speeches, and Mutual Treachery; the English again Saved by Pocahontas,	59
CHAPTER VIII.	
The Plot at Pamunkey—Defeated by the Darling and Energy of Smith; the Colony Supplied; Smith Poisoned; His Unscrupulous Policy; His Fight with the King of Paspahegh; "Pretty Accidents" among the Indians,.....	61
CHAPTER IX.	
Idleness of the Settlers; Eloquent Speech and Vigorous Policy of Smith; the New Virginia Company; Unjust Assumption of Power; Smith Deposed; Great Expedition dispatched from England—ill-fortune; Arrival of Numerous Immigrants; Anarchy; Smith Reassumes the Presidency,.....	61
CHAPTER X.	
Futile Attempts at Founding New Settlements; Folly and Obstinacy of the Colonists; Smith terribly Injured; He Returns to England; His Services to the Colony; Awful Suffering and Mortality after his Departure,.....	67
CHAPTER XI.	
Memoir of Smith, continued and concluded; His Voyage to New England, and Surveys; His Second Expedition; His Adventures among the Pirates—his Escape; His Great Exertions for the Settlement of New England; Interesting Interview between Smith and Pocahontas in England; Last Years of Smith; His Death; His Character and Achievements,.....	69
CHAPTER XII.	
Arrival of Gates; Miserable Condition of the Colony; Jamestown Deserted; Arrival of Lord Delaware—of Sir Thomas Dale; Exertions of the Company; Increased Immigration; the Culture of Tobacco introduced, and Eagerly Pursued; Tyranny of Argall—his Displacement; Great Accession of Immigrants; Wives purchased with Tobacco; Liberal Concessions to the Colonists,.....	77
CHAPTER XIII.	
Wyatt Governor; Negro Slavery Introduced; Death of Powhatan and Succession of Opechancanough; Plot Devised by the latter; Terrible Massacre of the English; Depression of the Colony; Usurpation of the Patent by James I.; Prudent Policy toward the Colonists,.....	80
THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND.	
CHAPTER I.	
Unsuccessful Attempts of the Plymouth Company to Settle New England; Persecution of the Non-conformists; Retreat of Robinson's Congregation to Holland—their High Character—their Resolution to Plant a Colony—their Loyalty and Courage—Departure from Delft Haven,.....	83
CHAPTER II.	
Stormy Voyage of the Pilgrims to America; they Arrive at Cape Cod—are Compelled to Disembark—Institute a Republic; their Simple Constitution; Carver elected Governor; Absence of Personal Ambition among the Puritan Settlers,.....	86
CHAPTER III.	
Dreary Appearance of New England; Exploring Party; Strange Injustice to the Indians; The Voyage to Plymouth Harbour; Skirmish with the Savages; Settlement of Plymouth Founded; Great Suffering and Mortality among the Pilgrims,.....	88

The In  
Exam  
rians,Samuel  
the C  
oughArrival  
West  
DaughExpedi  
ony of  
Rain;New Se  
Merry  
GreatCharacte  
AnasRev. Ro  
Expet  
the SuSettlome  
of Har  
War;The Peq  
Storm  
of theSir Geor  
Found  
borne;Arbitrar  
gna C  
Civil W  
ation RReign of  
the Peo  
the Colo  
a Prison  
tans in E

CONTENTS.

7

CHAPTER IV.

PAGE

The Indians of New England—thinned by Pestilence; the Pequots, Narragansetts, and other Tribes; Extraordinary Opinions of the English concerning them; Bigoted Accounts of the Ancient Historians, etc.,..... 91

CHAPTER V.

Samoset—"Welcome, Englishmen;" the Visit of Massasoit; Treaty and Alliance; Mortality among the Colonists; Death of Governor Carver; Duel, and its Punishment; Visit to Massasoit—to Iyanough; Affecting Incident,..... 95

CHAPTER VI.

Arrival of the Fortune; Challenge from Canonicus—his Superstitious Dread; Plymouth Fortified; Weston's Colony at Weymouth—its Miserable Condition; Massasoit III—cured by the English; Dangerous Plot Revealed,..... 96

CHAPTER VII.

Expedition of Standish to Weymouth; Daring Policy; Slaughter of the Conspiring Indians; the Colony of Weston Broken up; Privations and Sufferings at Plymouth—Drought—Seasonable Supply of Rain; Additional Arrivals,..... 101

CHAPTER VIII.

New Settlements Founded; New Hampshire and Maine; Endicott's Company; the Revellers of Merry Mount—Broken up by the Puritans; Settlement of Massachusetts; Foundation of Boston; Great Emigration; Mortality and Suffering,..... 104

CHAPTER IX.

Character of the Founders of Massachusetts; Regulations for Public Morality—for Apparel, etc.; Amusing Penalties; Intolerance in Religion; Commencement of Persecution,..... 107

CHAPTER X.

Rev. Roger Williams; His Liberal Opinions; he is Persecuted by the Authorities of Massachusetts; Expelled from that Province; takes Refuge in the Wilderness; Founds Providence Plantations and the State of Rhode Island,..... 109

CHAPTER XI.

Settlement of Connecticut by Plymouth—by Massachusetts; Hardships of the Colonists; Foundation of Hartford, etc; Emigration under Hooker—New Haven Founded; Commencement of the Pequot War; Influence of Roger Williams,..... 112

CHAPTER XII.

The Pequot War, continued; the Attack on Wethersfield; Expedition under Mason; Surprise and Storming of the Pequot Fort—Terrible Slaughter and Conflagration; Final Defeat and Destruction of the Tribe; Barbarous Exultation of the Early Historians; Reflections,..... 114

THE SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND.

CHAPTER I.

Sir George Calvert—his Schemes for Settlements in America—he Obtains the Grant of Maryland—Founds a Colony there; Settlement of St. Mary's; Relations with the Indians; Expulsion of Clarendon; Discontent and Insurrection; Protestant Settlers; Act for the Toleration of all Christian Sects, 118

CHAPTER II.

Arbitrary System of Lord Baltimore; Disaffection of the Protestant Settlers; Interference of the Virginia Commissioners; Affairs in England; Triumph of the Protestants; Repeal of Toleration; Civil War; Victory of the Protestants; Fendall's Insurrection—his Success and Final Ruin; Toleration Restored,..... 121

VIRGINIA—CONTINUED.

CHAPTER I.

Reign of Charles I.—his Views of Virginia; Yearley, Governor—West—Harvey—his Deposition by the People—he is Supported by the Crown; Wycliff; Sir William Berkeley, Governor; Loyalty of the Colony; Persecution of Dissenters; Second Indian Conspiracy and Massacre; Opecatananough a Prisoner—his Speech—Murdered by a Soldier; Reduction of the Indians; Triumph of the Puritans in England; Royalist Emigration to Virginia; Loyalty of the Province,..... 124

PAGE  
performed  
quene of  
49  
intercourse  
b's Voyage  
42  
e Indians;  
ructions of  
a find the  
55  
pedition to  
ocachentas, 59  
ed; Smith  
Accidents" 61  
Company;  
ngland—lit-  
y,..... 61  
ith terribly  
rality after  
67  
His Second  
the Settle-  
land; Last  
69  
Lord Dela-  
Culture of  
t Accession  
77  
ucanough;  
y; Usurpa-  
80  
of the Non-  
their Resolu-  
83  
Disenburk  
of Personal  
86  
The Voyage  
Great Suf-  
88



	PAGE
Act for the Reduction of Virginia; the Navigation Act; Moderation of the Parliament; Submission of the Province; Bennett, Governor—Diggs—Mathews; Jealousy of the Assembly against Foreign Interference; Freedom and Prosperity of Virginia under the Commonwealth; Death of Cromwell: Berkeley, Governor; Restoration of Charles II.; Its Ill Effect on the Province,.....	137

## NEW ENGLAND—CONTINUED.

CHAPTER I.	
Intemperate Measures adopted in England; Spirit of Massachusetts—Threat of Revolt; the English Revolution; Industry and Prosperity of New England—Its Independence; New Hampshire Annexed to Massachusetts; Formation of the New England Confederacy,.....	130

CHAPTER II.	
Uncas and Miantonimo; Defeat and Death of the Latter; Discredit to the English; Rhode Island—Its Liberties Guaranteed by the Parliament; Letter to Sir Henry Vane; Remarkable Freedom Enjoyed there; Maine Annexed by Massachusetts,.....	133

CHAPTER III.	
Opposition to the Massachusetts Authorities; Parliamentary Encroachment Resisted and Relinquished; New England Favoured by Cromwell; Bigoted and Intolerant Laws of Massachusetts; Persecution of Baptists; the Quakers—Persecution of them—Four Executed—their Courage and Fortitude; Apologists for the Hangings; Reflections,.....	136

CHAPTER IV.	
Education in Massachusetts; Harvard College; Restoration of Charles II.; Oppressive Enactments concerning Commerce; Attitude of the Colonies; Winthrop, the Younger; Connecticut obtains a Charter—her Freedom and Prosperity,.....	141

CHAPTER V.	
The Charter of Rhode Island; Civil and Religious Liberty; Careless and Extensive Grants of Charles II.; the Attitude of Massachusetts—Distrust of the Restoration; Requisitions of Charles II.; Appointment of a Commission; Alarm of the Colony,.....	143

CHAPTER VI.	
Remonstrance of Massachusetts; Doings of the Commissioners—their Disputes with the Authorities—their Discomfiture and Return to England; Successful Resistance of Massachusetts; Inertness of the Crown; Prosperity and Trade of the Province,.....	145

CHAPTER VII.	
Condition of the New England Indians—Conversion of some of them—their Numbers and Strength; the Pokanokets; Metacombet, or King Phillip—his Grievances—Dissimulation—Scheme for the Destruction of the English; Captain Church—his Character, etc.—he Disconcerts an Intrigue of Phillip, 147	147

CHAPTER VIII.	
Commencement of Phillip's War; Exploit of Church; Retreat of the Indians; Phillip Rouses the Tribes; Destruction of Towns, etc; the Attack on Hadley—Repulsed by Goffe; Great Losses of the English; Springfield Burned,.....	150

CHAPTER IX.	
Phillip's War, continued; Destruction of the Narragansett Fort—Terrible Massacre; Malignant Exultation of the Early Historians; Indian Successes; Capture and Death of Canonchet—his Heroism and Magnanimity; Diplomacy of Church,.....	153

CHAPTER X.	
Phillip's War, continued; Successful Campaign of Church; Defeat and Capture of the Savages; Phillip's Despair—he Retreats to Mount Hope—is Defeated and Slain—Barbarous Exposure of his Remains—his Character,.....	155

CHAPTER XI.	
Phillip's War, concluded; Capture of Annawon and his Warriors, by Church; Romantic Incidents; Summary of the War; Phillip's Son; Barbarous Policy of the Victors; Murderous Advice; the Character of the Puritans; Reflections,.....	158

CHAPTER XII.	
Renewed Interference of the Crown in Massachusetts; Severance of New Hampshire—Attempt to Tyrannize there—its Failure; Action of Massachusetts; Proceedings against its Charter; Vain Opposition and Remonstrance; the Charter Annulled,.....	161

CONTENTS.

9

SETTLEMENT OF THE CAROLINAS.

Failure to Plant Colonies in the South; Emigration from Virginia to North Carolina—from Barbadoes to South Carolina; the Patent of Charles II.; Legislation of Locke and Shaftesbury; Cumbrous System of Government; Discontent of the Settlers; Insurrection in North Carolina; Sothel deposed by the People; Charleston Founded; Constitution of Locke Relinquished,.....	164
---	-----

VIRGINIA—CONTINUED.

CHAPTER I.

Retrograde Movements in Virginia; Revival of Intolerance and Oppression; Grant of Virginia to Culpepper and Arlington; Popular Discontent; Indian War; Murder of the Chiefs; Insurrection under Bacon; Triumph of the People,.....	168
--	-----

CHAPTER II.

The Popular Assembly; Measures of Reform; Opposition and Treachery of Berkeley; Civil War; Triumph of the Insurgents; Jamestown Burned; Death of Bacon—his Character; Ruin of the Popular Cause; Numerous Executions; Death of Berkeley; Administration of Culpepper, etc.,.....	170
--	-----

THE SETTLEMENT OF DELAWARE.

The First Dutch Colony in Delaware—its Destruction; Swedes and Finns under Minuit; Conquest of the Swedish Settlements by the Dutch, under Stuyvesant; Delaware under the Duke of York—under Penn; Disputes with Maryland concerning Boundaries; Separation of Delaware from Pennsylvania,.....	174
---	-----

THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW JERSEY

Conquest by the English; Nichols, Berkeley, and Carteret; Emigration from New England; Sale of West New Jersey to the Quakers; Fenwick, Byllyng, and Penn; Quaker Settlements; Remarkably Free Constitution; Friendly Dealings with the Indians; Usurpation of Andros—its Defeat; East New Jersey,.....	176
---	-----

THE SETTLEMENT OF PENNSYLVANIA.

CHAPTER I.

William Penn—his Youth—he turns Quaker—is Expelled from College and Home—Imprisoned for his Opinions—Severity of his Father—Fresh Imprisonment—Exertions in Behalf of his Sect—he Engages in the Settlement of New Jersey,.....	179
---	-----

CHAPTER II.

Penn obtains from Charles II. the Grant of Pennsylvania—his Admirable Proclamation to the Settlers—he Repairs to America—Gains Possession of Delaware—Honourable Dealings with the Indians—their Attachment to him; the Great Treaty,.....	181
--	-----

CHAPTER III.

Liberal Legislation of Pennsylvania; Penn Founds Philadelphia—its Rapid Increase; Formation of a Constitution; Great Emigration from Europe; Growth of the Province; Penn returns to England; his Subsequent Career,.....	184
---	-----

THE NORTHERN COLONIES—CONTINUED.

CHAPTER I.

Sir Edmund Andros Commissioned by the Duke of York—his Attempts to Extend his Authority over Connecticut; Thomas Dongan; Union of the Colonies under a Royal Governor; Andros appointed Governor-general; Oppression in the Colonies; Proceedings against Connecticut and Rhode Island; Andros's Visit to Connecticut; Preservation of the Charter; the Northern Provinces forced to Submission; Doings in New England upon the Occurrence of the Revolution of 1688,.....	187
--	-----

CHAPTER II.

New York Subsequent to the Revolution of 1688; Assumption of Authority by Jacob Leisler—Opposition by the Council; Indian Incursions; Arrival of Slaughter as Governor; Trial and Execution of Leisler and Milbourne; Colonel Fletcher—his Futile Attempt to Enforce Authority in Connecticut; Church Difficulties; Bellamont's Peaceable Administration; Captain Kidd, the Pirate,.....	191
--	-----

PAGE

ent; Submission  
against Foreign  
ath of Cromwell:..... 127

the English Rev-  
pshire Annexed  
..... 130

Rhode Island—  
ole Freedom En-  
..... 132

and Relinquished;  
ata; Persecution  
and Fortitude;  
..... 136

sive Enactments  
neciticus obtains  
..... 141

Grants of Charles  
Charles II.; Ap-  
..... 143

the Authorities—  
its; Inertness of  
..... 145

ers and Strength;  
heme for the De-  
ntrigue of Philip, 147

hillp Rouses the  
reut Losses of the  
..... 150

Malignant Exul-  
t—his Heroism  
..... 153

o Savages; Phil-  
osure of his Re-  
..... 155

nantic Incidents;  
ous Advice; the  
..... 158

hire—Attempt to  
harter; Vain Op-  
..... 161

	PAGE
CHAPTER III.	
New Charter of Massachusetts; Trials for Witchcraft in Salem; First Execution; Parris and his Family; Court of Examination at Salem; Cotton Mather; Arrival of Phipps; Numerous Executions; Confessions; Cruelties Inflicted; Change in Public Opinion,.....	194
CHAPTER IV.	
Controversy Concerning Revenue; Suspected Negro Revolt in New York—Mock-trials of the Accused—Barbarous Punishments; Connecticut—the Saybrook Platform; Massachusetts—Burning of Deer-Bark—Difficulties between the Governors and Assemblies; New Hampshire—Attack on Cocheco—Eastern Indian War; Rhode Island—its Commercial Prosperity; New Jersey—Opposition to Arbitrary Taxation—Scottish Immigration—Prosperity of the Colony—its Union with New York,.....	197
THE SOUTHERN COLONIES—CONTINUED.	
CHAPTER I.	
Charter of the Colony of Georgia; First Arrival of Colonists; Settlement of Savannah; Indian Negotiations; Mary Musgrove; Cession of Indian Claims; Character of Immigrants to Georgia; Traffic in Negroes Prohibited; Frederica Founded; War with Spain,.....	203
CHAPTER II.	
Oglethorpe's Expedition against St. Augustine—Siege of the Town—Failure and Return of the Expedition; Spanish Invasion in 1742; Defence of Frederica; Stratagem of Oglethorpe; Thomas Bosonworth—his Intrigues with the Indians—Litigation with the Colony; Georgia a Royal Province, 205	205
CHAPTER III.	
South Carolina—Religious Controversies—Archdale's Administration—Moore's Expedition against St. Augustine—Invasion of Indian Territory—French Fleet on the Coast—Culture of Rice—Indian Conspiracy—Revolt against the Proprietors—the Charter declared Forfeit—South Carolina a Royal Province; North Carolina—Political Disturbances—a Prosperous Anarchy—Separation from South Carolina,.....	208
CHAPTER IV.	
Virginia under Royal Governors—State of the Colony—Church Controversies; Pennsylvania a Royal Province—the Proprietor Reinstated—Policy of Penn; Delaware—Death of Penn—his Successors; Maryland—its Catholic Population—Government of the Association—Oppressive Enactments—the Proprietors Restored,.....	212
INDIAN WARS, ETC.	
CHAPTER I.	
Commencement of the Cherokee War—Treaty at Fort St. George—Siege of that Fort—Murder of Hostages—Montgomery's Campaign—Destruction of the Lower Cherokee Settlements—Retreat—Massacre of the Garrison of Fort Loudon—the Towns of the Middle Cherokees destroyed by the Forces under Grant,.....	215
CHAPTER II.	
English Occupation of the Western Trading Posts; Conspiracy of the North-western Tribes, under Pontiac; Destruction of the English Forts; Taking of Michilimackinac; Siege of Detroit; Loss at Bloody-run; Close of the War; Massacre of the Canastota Indians,.....	219
EUROPEAN COLONIAL POLICY.	
Spanish and English Restrictions upon Trade and Commerce; Contraband Traffic; the "Asiento" Treaty; the Slave-trade—its General Popularity—Causes which lead to the Abolition of Slavery—Manner of Procuring Negroes from Africa—Profit of the Trade—Numbers brought over—English Law upon the Subject of Slavery; Introduction of White Apprentices, or "Redemptors,".....	223
THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.	
CHAPTER I.	
General Rights of Colonies; Early Causes of Complaint in America; Arbitrary Custom Laws; illegal Conduct of English Officials; Acts in Regulation of Trade; Expenses of the Late Wars in America; the "Sugar-act;" Opposition and Remonstrance in the Colonies,.....	227

The St.  
Rem  
Tun

Session  
aratic  
of Ph

Interv  
sets;  
Gover  
Parlia

Party S  
error  
the Co  
Receiv

Gage, G  
thy of  
Contine

Warlike  
shed u  
Colonic  
Session

Condition  
gression  
Colonie

Vacillating  
Expedi  
cupied b

Arnold's E  
of Enos,  
Heights  
gen's Rd

Warlike P  
Issue of  
chester H  
South; A

State of Fee  
penal-nee  
of Admira

Landing of  
Island; O  
at White  
General L  
Generosity

CONTENTS.

11

PAGE	CHAPTER II.	PAGE
194	The Stamp Act—Argument in the House of Commons—Passage of the Bill—Its Effect in the Colonies; Resolutions in the Virginia Assembly; Patrick Henry; Proceedings in Massachusetts—Popular Tumult—Resignation of the Stamp Officers,.....	230
197	Session of the First American Congress—Moderate Tone of Its Proceedings—Concurrence of the Separate Colonies; the Stamp Act Negative; the English Ministry; Debate in Parliament; Speech of Pitt; Examination of Franklin; Repeal of the Stamp Act,.....	234
203	Interval of Quiet; New Taxes on Importations; Non-Importation Agreement; Circular of Massachusetts; Riots at Boston; Assemblies Dissolved; Troops Ordered to Boston; Measures of the British Government; Fatal Encounter between the Troops and Populace at Boston; Concessions of Parliament,.....	238
209	Patriotic Spirit in the Colonies; Whig and Tory; the Regulators of North Carolina; Hutchinson, Governor of Massachusetts; Destruction of the Gaspee; System of Political Communication between the Colonies; Tea dispatched to America by the East India Company; Refusal of the Colonists to Receive it; Violent Proceedings at Boston—Closure of the Port; Extension of Canada,.....	242
209	Gage, Governor of Massachusetts—Military Preparations—Minute-men; Distress in Boston—Sympathy of other Towns; Convention Proposed by Virginia—Delegates Chosen by the Colonies; the Continental Congress—Resolutions and Declaration Adopted; Violent Measures of Parliament,...	246
209	Warlike Preparations in Massachusetts; Troops dispatched to Seize Military Stores; First Blood shed at Lexington; Disastrous Retreat of the British to Boston; Proceedings in the Neighbouring Colonies; Boston Besieged by the Provincials; Concurrence of the Southern Colonies; Second Session of Congress; Appointment of Officers; Seizure of Crown Point and Ticonderoga,.....	249
212	Condition of the British Army in Boston; Battle of Bunker Hill; Washington at the Camp; Congressional Proceedings; the Indian Tribes; Joseph Brant; Military Preparations in the Separate Colonies,.....	253
215	Vacillating Policy of England; Provisions by Congress for Carrying on the War; Naval Operations; Expedition against Canada; Siege of Fort St. John; Alton's Attempt upon Montreal; the City Occupied by Montgomery; March towards Quebec,.....	257
219	Arnold's Expedition against Quebec—Passage of the Wilderness—Failure of Provisions—Defection of Enos, with his Command—Arrival at the Canadian Settlements—Proclamations—Arnold at the Heights of Abraham—Union with Montgomery—Attack on Quebec—Death of Montgomery—Morgan's Rifle Corps—American Forces drawn off,.....	260
223	Warlike Preparations in England; German Mercenaries; Proceedings of Congress—Enlistments—Issue of Bills—Defences in New York; Condition of the British in Boston; Occupation of Dorchester Heights; Evacuation of the City; Harkness' Cruise among the Bahamas; Affairs at the South; Attack upon Charleston; Retreat of the American Troops from Canada,.....	263
227	State of Feeling in the Colonies; Paine's Writings; Debates in Congress; the Declaration of Independence—its Effect upon the People; the British at Staten Island; Proclamation of General and of Admiral Howe,.....	267
227	Landing of the British on Long Island; Battle of Brooklyn; the American Forces Driven from Long Island; Occupation of New York by the British; Washington's Encampment at Harlem Heights—at White Plains; Storming of Fort Mifflin; the Retreat through New Jersey; Capture of General Lee; Condition of Prisoners; Lake Champlain—Destruction of the American Vessels; Generosity of Carleton; Rhode Island Seized by the British,.....	270

	PAGE
CHAPTER XIV.	
Congress at Baltimore; Army Organization; Powers Conferred upon Washington; Passage of the Delaware, and Recovery of Trenton; Battle of Princeton; End of the Campaign; Marauding Parties; Negotiation with European Powers; Foreign Officers in the American Service,.....	274
CHAPTER XV.	
Expeditions against Peekskill and Danbury; British Plan of Campaign; Howe's Departure from New York; Burgoyne's Army—his Proclamation; Siege of Ticonderoga; Retreat of St. Clair; Burgoyne on the Hudson; Siege of Fort Schuyler; Battle of Bennington; Indian Warfare,.....	278
CHAPTER XVI.	
Battles at Behm's Heights; Burgoyne's Retreat in Saratoga—his Surrender; Detention of Prisoners; Expedition from New York up the Hudson; Howe's March upon Philadelphia; Battle at Brandywine Creek; British Occupation of Philadelphia; Battle of Germantown; Reduction of Forts Mifflin and Mercer; Winter-quarters at Valley Forge,.....	281
CHAPTER XVII.	
Difficulties of Congress; Articles of Confederation; Recommendations to the States; Intrigues against Washington; Treaties with France; British Commissioners in America; Evacuation of Philadelphia; Battle of Monmouth; Arrival of a French Fleet; Attempt on Newport; Winter-quarters; Marauding Expeditions; Destruction of Wyoming,.....	285
CHAPTER XVIII.	
Invasion of Georgia; Occupation of Savannah; British Division under Prevost; Lincoln in Command at the South; Defeat of Ashe at Briar Creek; Attack on Charleston; Sullivan's Campaign against the Iroquois; Naval Operations of France and England; Attempt at a Recovery of Savannah; Further Naval Proceedings—Paul Jones; Condition of the American Army,.....	290
CHAPTER XIX.	
Siege of Charleston—Surrender of the City; South Carolina Occupied by the British; Tarleton's Legion—his Victory at Waxhaws; Cornwallis in Command; Defeat of the Americans at Camden; Guerrilla Operations of Sumpter and Marion; Invasion of North Carolina; Ferguson's Defeat at King's Mountain,.....	294
CHAPTER XX.	
Northern Operations; Springfield Burned; Arrival of the French Fleet and Forces—Blockade at Newport; Treason of Arnold; Trial and Execution of Major André; Causes of Arnold's Defection; Indian Ravages—Invasion of the Mohawk Valley by Johnson and Brant,.....	298
CHAPTER XXI.	
Revolt of the Pennsylvania Troops; Arnold's Expedition into Virginia; Greene in Command of the Southern Army; Morgan's Detachment—Battle of Cowpens—Pursuit of Morgan by Cornwallis—Passage of the Catawba—Retreat into Virginia—Battle of Guilford Court-house; Greene's March into South Carolina; Cornwallis in Virginia; Battle at Hobkirk's Hill; Seizure of British Forts by Marion and Lee,.....	301
CHAPTER XXII.	
War between England and Holland; Seizure and Plunder of St. Eustatius; the Armed Neutrality; Recovery of West Florida by Spain; Continental Currency; Plan for the Recovery of New York; Virginia Ravaged by Phillips and Cornwallis; Encampments at Yorktown and Gloucester Point; Washington's March Southward; Attack on New London and Groton; Campaign in South Carolina; Battle near Eutaw Springs,.....	305
CHAPTER XXIII.	
French Fleet in the Chesapeake; Siege of Yorktown; Surrender of Cornwallis; Winter-quarters; Proceedings in the English Parliament; Negotiations for Peace; Terms of Treaty; Cessation of Hostilities; Disaffection in the Continental Army; Evacuation of New York; Position of the United States,.....	309
THE UNITED STATES.	
CHAPTER I.	
Position of the Union at the Conclusion of Peace; Existing Difficulties with Great Britain; Weakness of Congress; Local Disturbances—Shay's Rebellion; Convention for Enlarging Congressional Powers—Opposing Interests of the States; the Present Constitution—Federal Legislature—Powers of Congress—Restrictions—Limit of State Powers—the Executive—the Judiciary—Mutual Guarantees—Amendments,.....	313

CONTENTS.

13

	PAGE
CHAPTER II.	
Ratification of the Constitution by the States; Washington Elected President; the First Congress—Provisions for Revenue—Formation of a Cabinet—Power of Removal from Office; Washington's Tour through New England; Second Session of Congress—Debate respecting the Public Debt—Foreign Liabilities—Public Certificates—Assumption of State Debts—the Public Debt Funded—Miscellaneous Enactments; Constitution Ratified by Rhode Island,.....	319

CHAPTER III.

Indian Negotiations—the Creeks—the North-western Tribes; Harmer's Unsuccessful Campaign; Third Session of Congress—the Excise Law—a National Bank; Settlement of Kentucky—Its Admission to the Union; Admission of Vermont; Site of the Federal Capitol; the North-western Indians—St. Clair's Expedition—his Disastrous Defeat; Political Parties; the Census,.....	323
--	-----

CHAPTER IV.

Washington's Second Term—his Disinclination to Office; the French Revolution—its Political Influence in the United States; Arrival of Genet, as Minister of the French Republic—his Proceedings at Charleston; Neutral Position of the United States; Commercial Restrictions by France and England; Impression of American Seamen; Retirement of Jefferson; Algerine Depredations,.....	327
--	-----

CHAPTER V.

American Politics; Debates in Congress upon Foreign Relations; Further Aggressions of England; Commission of Jay as Ambassador Extraordinary to Great Britain; Relief of Immigrants from St. Domingo; the Neutrality Laws; Resistance to the Excise—Rebellion in Western Pennsylvania—its forcible Suppression—Opinions of the Republican Party,.....	331
---	-----

CHAPTER VI.

General Wayne's Campaign against the North-western Indians; Defeat of the Confederate Tribes at the Miami Rapids; Naturalization Laws; the Democratic Clubs; Hamilton's Resignation; the British Treaty—its Ratification—Popular Indignation; Randolph's Resignation,.....	335
--	-----

CHAPTER VII.

Indian Treaty at Fort Greenville; Treaties with Algiers and Spain—the Mississippi Opened to American Trade; Debate in Congress upon Jay's British Treaty; Tennessee Admitted into the Union; French Proceedings in Respect to the Treaty; American Ministers to France; Washington's Retirement from Office—Standards upon his Character; John Adams Elected President,.....	339
--	-----

CHAPTER VIII.

Treatment of United States' Ambassadors in France; Hostile Preparations in America; New Embassy—Refusal of the Directory to Receive the American Ministers; Negotiations with Talleyrand; Extravagant Demands and Injurious Decrees of the Directory; Return of the Ambassadors; Action of Congress—Military Preparations—Alien and Sedition Laws—Land-tax, etc.,.....	341
--	-----

CHAPTER IX.

Pacific Movements in France; Mission of Murray; Naval Engagements; Death of Washington; Napoleon First Consul; Treaty with France; First Session of Congress at Washington; Presidential Election—Jefferson President, and Burr Vice-president; Party Removal from Office; Economical Reforms; Ohio Admitted into the Union; Transfer of Louisiana to the United States,.....	345
---	-----

CHAPTER X.

American Fleet in the Mediterranean; Expedition of Eaton and Hamet against Tripoli; Treaty concluded; Jefferson's Re-election; Burr's Duel with Hamilton—his Western Enterprise—his Trial,...	349
---	-----

CHAPTER XI.

English Aggressions; Failure of Negotiation; Attack on the Frigate Chesapeake; Embargo; Non-intercourse Act; Abolition of the Slave-trade; John Randolph; West Florida; Concessions of Napoleon; British Cruisers—the Luffe Belt; Tecumseh—Elskwatawa—Battle of Tippecanoe; East Florida; Declaration of War,.....	353
--	-----

CHAPTER XII.

Riots at Baltimore; Hull's Invasion of Canada; Repeal of the Orders in Council—Impressment; Naval Operations; Madison's Re-election; North-western Campaign—Defeat of Winchester; Attack on York; the British on Lake Champlain,.....	360
---	-----

CHAPTER XIII.

Naval Affairs—Perry's Victory on Lake Erie; Harrison's Canadian Campaign; the Niagara Frontier; the Creek War—Jackson's Campaign; Negotiations for Peace; Brown's Invasion of Canada—Battle of Bridgewater; Occupation of the Chesapeake—Battle of Bladensburg—Seizure of Washington—Destruction of Public Buildings—Attack on Baltimore,.....	364
--	-----

PAGE

Passage of the  
Mansfield Par-

ture from New  
Clair; Bargoyne

ion of Prisoners;  
attle at Brandy-  
ion of Forts Mif-

Intrigues against  
tion of Philadel-  
Winter-quarters;

coln in Command  
ampaign against  
Savannah; Fur-

h; Tarleton's Le-  
cans at Clendon;  
guson's Defeat at

Blockade at New-  
u's Detention; In-

Command of the  
r by Cornwallis—  
Greene's March  
f British Forts by

med Neutrality;  
ry of New York;  
Gloucester Point;  
n in South Caro-

Winter-quarters;  
enty; Cession of  
; Position of the

ritain; Weakness  
ongressional Pow-  
ature—Powers of  
Mutual Guarantees

	PAGE
CHAPTER XIV	
Operations on the Coast of Maine; Attack on Plattsburgh—Battle of Lake Champlain; Naval Affairs—Lafitte; Negotiation at Ghent; the Hartford Convention; Treaty of Peace; Jackson's Defence of New Orleans—Battle of January 8; Naval Engagements,.....	376
CHAPTER XV.	
War with Algiers; Tariff—National Bank; Monroe, President; Jackson's Seminole Campaign; Cession of Florida by Spain; Admission of Missouri—the Compromise; Monroe's Second Term; Administration of John Quincy Adams; Election of Andrew Jackson; the Tariff; Nullification in South Carolina; the United States' Bank; Indian Removals; Black Hawk; the Cherokees, ..	381
CHAPTER XVI.	
The Seminole War; Early History of the Florida Indians; War of 1818; Indian Treaty of 1823—of 1832; Refusal of the Seminoles to Remove; Destruction of Dado's Detachment; Military Operations of Generals Scott and Jessup; Unsatisfactory Results of Negotiation; Expeditions of Colonels Taylor and Harney; Gradual Cessation of Hostilities; Recent Difficulties,.....	389
CHAPTER XVII.	
Administration of Van Buren—Financial Pressure—the Sub-treasury—Canadian Revolt; Harrison and Tyler—Bankrupt Law—Preemption—the Veto Power—North-east Boundary—Tariff; James K. Polk—Admission of Texas—Mexican War—Tariff of 1846; Taylor and Fillmore—California Admitted—the Compromise; Franklin Pierce President—Nebraska,.....	395
THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.	
History of,.....	403

	PAGE
...plain; Naval Af- ...ce; Jackson's De- .....	376
...minole Campaign; ...oe's Second Term; ...ariff; Nullification ...; the Cherokees... 381	381
...n Treaty of 1833— ...achment; Military ...n; Expeditions of ...ties,.....	389
...Revolt; Harrison ...ary—Tariff; James ...illmore—California .....	395
.....	403





Peru.



Hayti.



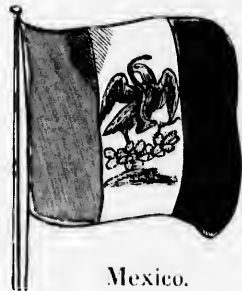
Buenos Ayres.



Chili.



Venezuela.



Mexico.



Mexico.



Bolivia.



AMERICAN COMMODORE.



New Grenada.



American Jack.



Brazil.



United States.

Ca

SEBA  
ERY  
A

ENC  
strang  
tween  
feeble  
was de  
of torp  
resourc  
coveren  
of Indi  
attemp  
particu  
movem  
pass, wi

## PART VI.

---

# THE ENGLISH IN AMERICA.

---

## Early Voyages and Attempts at Colonization.

---

### CHAPTER I.

SEBASTIAN CABOT: HIS YOUTH: HIS FIRST VOYAGE, AND DISCOVERY OF NORTH AMERICA.—HIS SECOND VOYAGE, AND FUTILE ATTEMPT AT COLONIZATION.—OBSCURE INTERVAL IN HIS LIFE.—HE SERVES IN SPAIN.—HIS EXPEDITION UNDER HENRY VIII.—APPOINTED GRAND PILOT OF SPAIN.—HIS EXPEDITION TO SOUTH AMERICA.—HIS RETURN TO ENGLAND, SERVICES, OLD AGE, AND DEATH.

ENGLAND, the first to discover the American continent, was, strangely enough, the last to plant her colonies on its shores. Between a solitary brilliant effort of early enterprise and those late and feeble endeavours destined to eventuate in such mighty results, there was destined to intervene the barren *interregnum* of nearly a century of torpidity and ignorance, of imprudence and disaster. The scanty resources of her marine, and the lives of her most enterprising discoverers, for ages, were lavished in futile efforts to reach the shores of India by passing to the north of Asia, or in yet more hopeless attempts at the North-west Passage. After briefly describing the particulars of her first memorable achievement, and the unimportant movements in the same direction by which it was succeeded, we may pass, with little interruption, to the tardy and unprosperous beginning

of an empire, whose rise and progress are utterly without a parallel in the history of the world.

That achievement, indeed, as in the more remarkable instance of Columbus, and in that of Magellan, of Vespuccius, of Verrazano, and of Hudson, was mainly due to the genius and enterprise of one who, if not of foreign birth, was of foreign origin and education, seeking, in a strange land, the means of displaying his genius and courage in effecting grand discoveries. Sebastian Cabot, the son of an eminent Venetian merchant, was born at Bristol in England, about the year 1477. Being removed to Venice at the early age of four, he there received, for the age, an excellent education, and became especially imbued with the taste for maritime enterprise. Returning to England yet a youth, his ambition, like that of others of his family, was strongly kindled by tidings of the grand discovery of Columbus, then the chief event of the day. "By this fame and report," he says, "there increased in my heart a great flame of desire to attempt some notable thing."

An ambition so laudable has seldom been gratified at such an early age; and a more "notable thing" than the young adventurer probably dreamed of, was destined, while he was yet a boy, to immortalize his name. Henry VII., whose far-sighted policy had looked with immediate favour on the scheme of Columbus, and who had narrowly missed the first claim to America, in March, 1496, at the instance of John Cabot, granted to him and his three sons—Lewis, Sebastian, and Sancius—a patent "to sail to all parts, countrys, and seas, of the East, of the West, and of the North, to seek and find out whatsoever isles, countries, regions, or provinces of the heathen and infidels, whatsoever they may be, and in what part of the world soever they be, which before this time have been unknown to all Christians." The main object of this expedition was the enterprising attempt, so often since repeated, first from ignorance of climate and geography, and latterly from sheer English hardihood and perseverance, to find a North-west passage to the shores of India.

Sebastian, though as yet only a youth of nineteen, was entrusted with the command of the expedition, which consisted of five ships, and in the spring of 1497, accompanied by his father, took his departure from the port of Bristol. After stopping at Iceland, they held on to the westward, and on the 24th of June, beheld the land stretching before them, being portions of the coasts of Labrador and Newfoundland. Little exultation seems to have been awakened by

this momentous discovery of a continent. "After certayne dayes," says Sebastian, "I found that the land ranne toward the North, which was to mee a great displeasure, \* \* not thinking to find any other land than Cathay" (China). He entered, however, it would seem, one of the channels which lead into Hudson's Bay, and thought himself (like Hudson, a century later) fairly in the desired track; but after keeping westward for several days, the crews, discouraged by the length of the voyage and the failure of provision, insisted on return. Compelled to yield, he put about, and after coasting along shore for some way to the southward, made his way to England. Not long afterwards, John Cabot expired.

In the spring of 1498, Sebastian, anxious to found a colony, took with him three hundred men, and again set sail for the region he had discovered. These unfortunate people he landed on the bleak and inhospitable coast of Labrador, that they might form a settlement there, and then with the squadron renewed his search for the North-west Passage. The particulars of this unsuccessful attempt are not recorded; but on his return to the station, he found that the settlers had suffered miserably from cold and exposure, though, in that high northern latitude, "the dayes were very longe, and in a manner without nyght." A number had already perished, and the rest, refusing to remain any longer in these inclement regions, were taken on board, and carried back to England. In the return voyage, he coasted along the Atlantic sea-board of North America as far as Florida.

From this time until the year 1512, very little is known of the career of Cabot; though, it is said, deprived of the aid of the crown, he fitted out vessels at his own charges, and made "great discoveries," in a more southerly direction. In that year we find him employed by Ferdinand of Spain, and, not long after, a member of the Council of the Indies. He was also entrusted with the command of a fresh expedition to seek the Westerly Passage; but this project failing, from the death of his patron, in 1516, he returned to England, where he was received with favour by Henry VIII. From that country he made a fresh expedition to the north-west, attaining the sixty-seventh degree of north latitude, and making fresh surveys in Hudson's Bay; but from the severity of the season, the mutinous disposition of his crews, and the timidity of Sir Thomas Pert, who commanded under him, ("whose faint heart was the cause that the voyage took none effect,") was compelled to return to England, his purpose

unaccomplished. In 1518, he was recalled to Spain by Charles V., then on the throne of that country, and received the honourable and responsible appointment of Chief Pilot.

In April of 1526, he set forth, with three ships, on a voyage to the Pacific by the strait of Magellan; but, through mutiny and shipwreck, his project was disconcerted, and he devoted himself to inland exploration. He passed up the La Plata and the Paraguay, and, during an absence of five years, added materially to a knowledge of the geography of those regions, as well as of their natural wealth and resources. In 1531, he returned to Spain, and resumed his office of Chief Pilot, being then fifty-three years of age. Despite his many misfortunes, his reputation as a discoverer and navigator was great. "He is so valiant a man," says a contemporary, "and so well practiced in all things pertaining to navigations and the science of cosmographie, that at this present he hath not his like in all Spaine, insomuch that for his vertues he is preferred above all other Pilots that saile to the West Indies, who may not passe thither without his license, and is therefore called *Pilote Maggiore*, (that is, *Grand Pilot*.)" "I found him," says another, "a very gentle and courtcous person, who entertained mee friendly, and showed mee many things, and among other a large mappe of the world"—at that time, doubtless, a great curiosity, and which certainly would be none the less such now. The learned and enterprising seem to have found delight in his society, and as, with increasing age, he gradually relinquished his more active occupations, a serene tranquillity, relieved from monotony by the interest of his office, rewarded the more arduous achievements of his youth and manhood. "After this," he writes, "I made many other voyages, which I now pretermit, and waxing olde, I give myself to rest from such travels, because there are now many young and lustie pilots and mariners of good experience, by whose forwardness I do rejoyce in the fruit of my labors and rest in the charge of this office as you see."

Aged as the discoverer was when he wrote this letter, his work was far from finished; the promotion of English enterprise and the building up of a marine mightier than the world has ever seen, being reserved as the crowning laurel of his long and useful life. In 1548, being then seventy years old, he revisited his native country, where he met with much favour from the young king, Edward VI. It has been said that he was appointed to the office of *Grand Pilot* of England—an office which, in the unprosperous condition of foreign

commerce, must, at this time, have been almost a sinecure. He certainly received a handsome pension. His reputation for maritime skill, (as well perhaps as the jealousy of the Spanish court,) is evinced in a formal demand made by Charles V., that "Sebastian Cabote, Grand Pilot of the Emperor's Indies, then in England, might be sent over to Spain, as a very necessary man for the Emperor, whose servant he was and had a pension of him." This peremptory recall was, however, disregarded.

His arrival in London gave a fresh stimulus to the almost decayed spirit of English enterprise. The chief men of that port, we are told, began "first of all to deal and consult diligently" with the aged pilot; and by his advice three vessels were fitted out for an expedition to the north-east. This little squadron, which sailed in May, 1553, under the command of Sir Hugh Willoughby, was regarded with a curiosity which indicates the infancy of maritime enterprise in the nation whose exploits in that direction have since been utterly unapproachable by those of any other. As it floated down the Thames, says old Hakluyt, "being come neere to Greenwich (where the court then lay) presently on the news thereof, the courtiers came running out, and the common people flockt together, standing very thick upon the shoare; the privie counsell, they lookt out at the windows of the court, and the rest ranne up to the toppes of the towers." This expedition resulted in the destruction of Sir Hugh and most of his people, who perished on the dreary coast of Lapland; but one of the vessels, commanded by Richard Chancellor, succeeded in pushing her way far eastward through the Arctic seas, and laid the foundation of a prosperous commerce between England and Russia.

We find Cabot, in extreme old age, still the active patron of English enterprise and commerce; which, by his vigorous and intelligent direction, was gradually placed on a substantial and lucrative basis. A pleasant description of his demeanour is given by one of the company of a small vessel, which, with his friends (when eighty years old) he visited at Gravesend. "They went on shore," says the narrator, "giving to our mariners right liberal rewards; and the good olde gentleman, master Cabota, gave to the poor most liberall almes, wishing them to pray for the good fortune and prosperous success of the *Search-Thrift*, our pinesse. And then at the signe of the Christopher, hee and his friends banketed, and made mee, and them that were in the company great cheere; and so very joy that he had to see the towardness of our intended discovery, he entered into the



dance himself, among the rest of the young and lusty company; which being ended, hee and his friends departed, *most gently commending us to the governance of Almighty God.*" The most elaborate description could hardly present a more agreeable picture of hale, cheerful, and benevolent old age, than is suggested by this little incident, thus casually recorded.

After the accession of Mary, this aged and useful servant of the crown spent the brief remainder of his days in neglect and obscurity. It mattered little to him, however, for his work was done. "On his death-bed, says an eye-witness, 'he spake flightily' of a certain divine revelation (which he might disclose to no man) for the infallible ascertainment of the longitude. With his last thoughts thus amused by visions so suited to his mind and his past life, the Discoverer of North America died calmly—it is supposed in the city of London; but the date of his death, and the place where his remains are laid, have long been lost even to tradition."

---

## CHAPTER II.

THE "DOMINUS VOBISCUM:" FAILURE AND MISFORTUNE.—  
IMPROVEMENT OF THE ENGLISH MARINE.—MARTIN PRO-  
BISHER: HIS VOYAGE IN SEARCH OF A NORTH-WEST PASSAGE  
—DIMINUTIVE EQUIPMENTS OF THE EARLY DISCOV-  
ERERS.—SUPPOSED DISCOVERY OF GOLD ORE.—  
SECOND EXPEDITION OF PROBISHER.—SURYEYS.  
—CONTEST WITH THE ESQUIMAUX.—HIS THIRD  
EXPEDITION.—ITS FAILURE.

THE voyage of Cabot, under Henry VIII., in 1517, in search of a North-west Passage, is the only one made by the English, in that direction, for ten years, of which any record has survived. In 1527, two ships, the "*Dominus Vobiscum*" ("the Lord be with you") and another were dispatched by the same sovereign to the northern coasts of America. "Divers cunning men," one being a canon of St. Paul's, went on this expedition, which, however, one of the vessels being wrecked, resulted in nothing of importance. The fact, indeed, that a letter, describing the voyage, was forwarded home

from  
cate  
by  
hav  
N  
sam  
you  
fami  
is s  
obta  
nish  
soon  
rou  
for t  
of na  
a few  
annu  
Th  
and t  
to Ru  
alrea  
of Cal  
skill  
every  
explo  
the le  
a Nor  
Frobi  
notabl  
For  
every  
and it  
wick,  
largest  
With  
from Y  
history  
struck  
est ent  
amid th

from the harbour of St. John's, Newfoundland, would seem to indicate that some intercourse already existed with those parts—probably by fishing vessels, which, in emulation of the early Bretons, may have resorted thither.

Nine years afterwards, (1536,) another voyage was made in the same direction by a company of adventurers, many of whom were young lawyers from the Inns of Court, and gentlemen of good family. They were reduced to a wretched condition, and even, it is said, resorted to cannibalism, devouring one another; at last, obtaining by stratagem, at Newfoundland, a French ship, well furnished with supplies, they made their way home, whither they were soon followed (in the ship they had left) by the French crew, clamorous for redress. It would appear, from laws passed not long after for the protection of the fisheries at Newfoundland, that this branch of national industry had already made a fair beginning; and only a few years later, from thirty to fifty English vessels, it is said, came annually to that region.

The fate of Willoughby, in seeking a north-east passage, in 1553, and the success of his officer, Chancellor, in discovering a sea-route to Russia, and opening a lucrative commerce with that empire, have already been mentioned. The English marine, under the auspices of Cabot, rapidly increased in extent, and the English mariners in skill and boldness; and the brilliant reign of Elizabeth, so fertile in every department of greatness, was illustrated by numerous naval exploits, both in war and attempted discovery. The attention of the learned and enterprising was revived to the scheme of effecting a North-west Passage—an undertaking, in the language of Martin Frobisher, "the only thing of the world, yet left undone, whereby a notable mind might become fortunate and famous."

For fifteen years, that navigator, afterwards so famous in almost every sea, vainly sought the means of pursuing his grand design; and it was not until 1576, that by the favour of the Earl of Warwick, he was enabled to fit out a little flotilla of three vessels, the largest of which was only thirty-five tons, and the smallest but ten. With this slender equipment, on the 19th of June, 1576, he sailed from Yarmouth on his long-cherished enterprise. "In reviewing the history of these early expeditions, the most casual reader must be struck with the humble and insignificant means with which the grandest enterprises were attempted and often accomplished. Columbus, amid the storms of a most tempestuous winter, made his way back to

Europe, after his great discovery, in an open earavel; Hudson, with only ten men, undertook 'to find a passage to India by way of the north pole;' and the good Sir Humphrey Gilbert, after voyaging safely to Newfoundland in his little Squirrel, (of only ten tons,) was finally whelmed in a tremendous gale beneath the 'pyramid-like' seas of the Atlantic."

On the 11th of July, this little squadron came to the southern extremity of Greenland, and, keeping to the westward, on the 18th of August again made land on some part, it is probable, of the coast of Labrador. Here the voyagers fell in with parties of Esquimaux, who came off to the vessels in their seal-skin boats; and five of the crew, who too rashly went ashore with them, were carried off, and could not be recovered. This land was named by Frobisher "Meta Incognita." One of his little vessels was swallowed up by the sea, and another deserted him; yet he pressed on, and made considerable surveys in those dreary regions. On his return to England, certain bits of glittering stone which he had found there were confidently pronounced by the English goldsmiths to be no other than gold ore. The announcement of this fancied discovery of the precious metal stimulated the nation to fresh enterprise, and even relaxed the strings of the royal purse (in general most reluctantly unloosed) to a slight disbursement. With a ship of an hundred and eighty tons, furnished by the queen, and called the Ayde (Aid), and with two smaller vessels, on the 26th of May, 1577, he again set forth in quest of gold mines and the North-west Passage.

He passed Friesland, and thence, stretching over to Labrador, sailed up the straits which still bears his name, and which he supposed to be a channel dividing Asia and America. A plenty of the glittering trash which had deluded him was found, and stowed aboard the ship; and for thirty leagues he made his way up the strait, confidently supposing that it led to the Indian ocean. In some boats of the Esquimaux, various European articles were found, probably belonging to the mariners who had been lost on the preceding voyage. To recover these or to revenge their death, he engaged in hostilities with the savages, who fought with much desperation, flinging themselves, when mortally wounded, into the sea. A number of them having been slain, the rest took refuge among the cliffs, all the men of the party making their escape. "Two women," says the journal of the voyage, "not being so apt to escape as the men were, the one being olde, the other encombred with a yong childe,

we tooke. The olde wretch, whom divers of our Saylers supposed to be eyther the Divell or a witch, had her buskins plucked off, to see if she were cloven-footed, and for her ougly hewe and deformitie, we let her goe; the yong woman and the childe we brought away." All attempts to recover the lost mariners proved fruitless, and on the 21st of August, ice having begun to form around the ships, Frobisher perceived the danger of attempting to remain or proceed. Accordingly, he put about, and with his vessels freighted with two hundred tons of shining earth, returned to England.

Wonderful to state, the fallacy of the imagined El Dorado was not yet discovered. The ore was pronounced genuine by men of science, and, as usual where the thirst for gold is fairly awakened, men flocked in crowds to join a fresh expedition. Fifteen ships, with preparations for a settlement, were fitted out, and, under command of Frobisher, on the 31st of May, 1578, again sailed for the land of imagined treasure. After encountering much danger from storms and icebergs, the fleet entered a great strait leading westward, probably the chief entrance to Hudson's Bay. Finding that he was not in the passage he had formerly entered, in the region of imagined gold, Frobisher put about; but was so long in getting to the desired locality that winter almost set in before he arrived there; his sailors and colonists, disheartened by the length of the voyage, clamoured for return; one ship, laden with supplies, deserted; and, compelled to abandon his plans for colonization and discovery, the admiral, freighting his ships with the supposed treasure, returned to England. By this time, its worthlessness had been fairly discovered; and though he eagerly besought the means at least for continuing his attempts at the North-west Passage, the public and the crown, discouraged by their losses and misfortunes, refused to lend him further assistance. The remainder of his life was passed in naval warfare and adventure, which perpetuate his name as a bold leader and skilful navigator. He died in 1694, of a wound which he received in an expedition to the French coast.

## CHAPTER III.

ENGLISH ENTERPRISE.—DRAKE.—SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT  
 —HIS FIRST ATTEMPT TO COLONIZE AMERICA.—SIR WAL-  
 TER RALEIGH.—SIR HUMPHREY SAILS FOR AMERICA.—  
 SHIPWRECKS AND MISFORTUNES.—THE RETURN VOYAGE.  
 —TEMPESTS.—LOSS OF SIR HUMPHREY AND HIS CREW.

ENGLAND, in the midst of continued loss and misfortune by her attempts at discovery, at mining, and at colonization in the New World, was now fairly embarked in her grand career of naval enterprise—the wealth and renown acquired by her daring mariners in their half-chivalrous, half-piratical expeditions against the Spaniards of America serving to keep alive the national interest in that region, and a knowledge of the Western Continent being incidentally but materially promoted by their cruises. At the same time that Fro-bisher was making his unsuccessful voyages in search of gold and of the North-west Passage, Francis Drake, a mariner of similar and yet greater renown, after his memorable passage of the straits of Magellan, was engaged in a survey of the western coast of North America, in the course of which he touched on the shores of Oregon, which he named New Albion.

The example of enterprise, stimulated by motives purer and more honourable than those of either, was not long in presenting itself. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, a man of high character and amiable temper, both a soldier and a civilian, had interested himself much in the daring but futile voyages of his countrymen in search of a North-west Passage. He had even written a treatise, founded on the testimony and opinion of "many learned men and painfull travellers," "to prove by experience of sundrie men's travels the opening of some part of this North-west Passage; whereby good hope remaineth of the rest." No words could have phrased more effectually that expectant longing, which now for three centuries has beset men of courage, of enterprise and inquiry, to solve the grand problem—"the one thing yet left undone upon the earth whereby a notable mind might be made famous and fortunate"—of a communication between the two oceans. That terrible problem, whose final solution we have just witnessed,

will ever remain burdened with the saddest associations, both ancient and modern, of heroic courage and indefatigable perseverance doomed to repeated suffering, disappointment, and destruction.

In the year 1578 he obtained from Elizabeth a patent, conferring sole jurisdiction, both civil and criminal, over a very extensive territory in America, not precisely located, on condition that he should plant a colony there within six years. His half-brother, the famous Sir Walter Raleigh, then twenty-six years of age, his imagination fired by the narratives of Columbus, of Cortes, and of other famous pioneers of the New World, also engaged in the enterprise. This expedition, delayed and weakened by various misfortunes, finally sailed with only two vessels, one of which was captured by the Spaniards; the crew of the other returned without effecting any thing in the way of settlement.

An interval of several years elapsed, during which Raleigh rose high in the royal favour; and in 1583, the brothers renewed their enterprise, Sir Humphrey, in person, commanding the expedition. The queen, to express her favour, at his departure bestowed on him an anchor of gold, with a great pearl set in it, which, during the remainder of his life, he wore, with allowable complacency, on his breast. The fleet consisted of five sail, the largest of which, the Raleigh, was furnished by the famous man after whom it was named. There were two hundred and sixty men on board, including mechanics and mineralogists; and a learned Hungarian, named Parmenius, was taken as the chronologer of the expedition. There was also provided, says one of the commanders, "Musike in great variety; not omitting the least toys, as Morris-dancers, hobby-horse, and the like conceits, to delight the savage people, whom we intended to win by all faire means possible."

Soon after their departure, the Raleigh, on account of an infectious disease, put back; and Sir Humphrey, with the remainder of the fleet, kept on to Newfoundland. At St. John's Harbour, at that island, he summoned the Spanish and Portuguese fishermen to witness the ceremony of taking possession in the name of the English sovereign—an operation which he performed by digging a turf, and setting up a pillar, to which the arms of England were affixed. Silver ore, as it was supposed, was discovered, and was taken aboard the vessels, one of which was abandoned, while with the remainder Sir Humphrey pursued his voyage along the coast towards the south. On his way, the largest ship remaining, with the ore, was wrecked,

and a hundred souls perished, including the Hungarian. Return was now considered necessary, and in the midst of terrible storms and tempests, the prows were turned homeward. "Sir Humphrey had chosen to sail in a little tender, called the Squirrel, a mere cockleshell in size—'too small to pass through the ocean sea at that season of the year.' In vain did the officers of the *Hinde*, the larger vessel, entreat him, in this dangerous weather, to shift his flag aboard their ship. He came on board, for a convivial meeting, but returned to his slender craft, saying, 'I will not desert my little company, with whom I have passed so many storms and perils.'

"The weather grew heavier and heavier; the oldest sailors declaring that they had never seen such seas—'breaking very high,' says a spectator, 'and pyramid-wise'—the very worst sea that is known. Lights were burned at night, and the little *Squirrel*, for a long time, was seen gallantly contending with the waves, which almost engulfed her. Once she came so near that they of the *Hinde* could see Sir Humphrey sitting by the mainmast, with a book in his hand, reading. He looked up, and cried cheerily, 'We are as near to Heaven by sea as by land.' But the seas broke over her more heavily; about midnight, all at once, the lights were extinguished; and in the morning nothing was seen of the good Sir Humphrey or his little ship. She had doubtless been whelmed by the toppling down of some huge pyramid of water. Such was the melancholy but honourable end of one of the worthiest and most persevering patrons of English enterprise. He perished in the pursuance of his own exalted maxim: 'That he is not worthy to live at all, who, for fear or danger of death, shunneth his country's service or his own honor; for death is inevitable and fame immortal.'"\*

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.



## CHAPTER IV.

THE PATENT OF RALEIGH.—HE DISPATCHES AMIDAS AND BARLOW TO CAROLINA: THEIR REPORT.—THE COUNTRY NAMED VIRGINIA.—VOYAGES OF DAVIS, ETC.—SECOND EXPEDITION OF RALEIGH, UNDER LANE.—SETTLEMENT AT ROANOKE.—POLLY AND CRUELTY OF THE ENGLISH.  
 —THE INDIANS.—MASSACRE BY THE ENGLISH.  
 —FAILURE AND RETURN OF THE EXPEDITION.

RALEIGH, whose enterprising spirit was dismayed neither by the loss of his brother, nor the wreck and failure of the late expedition, immediately resolved to renew the attempt, and secure to himself the glory of the first founder of an English settlement in America. To one so high in the queen's favour, letters patent, of the most liberal nature, were readily issued, granting him power to colonize, with almost unlimited personal jurisdiction, "such remote, heathen, and barbarous lands as are not actually possessed by any Christians, or inhabited by any Christian people." No particular region was specified as the subject of this indefinite grant; but, warned by the fate of former enterprises, he had resolved to plant his settlement in the milder regions of the south. The very year after the loss of Sir Humphrey, on the 27th of April, 1584, he dispatched two vessels, well provided with men and supplies, under two experienced captains, Amidas and Barlow, to the American coast.

Taking the circuitous route of the Canaries and the West Indies, (which, strange to say, for many years was considered the only practicable track,) after a voyage of two months, they arrived off the shores of Carolina. For more than a hundred miles they sailed along the coast, seeking a harbour, and on the 13th of July, entered Ocracoke Inlet. Here they landed on an island, delighted with the softness of the climate and the beauty of the vegetation, and took formal possession of the country in the name of Elizabeth. The natives, at first shy and timid, proved gentle and friendly, and on the island of Roanoke the voyagers were entertained with much hospitality at the residence of the chief. After making some brief survey of the coast, they returned to England, where the glowing description which they gave of the beauties of the region, encouraged



the projector, and revived fresh enterprise in the nation. In honour of his patroness, Raleigh bestowed on the newly discovered region, the name of Virginia—a name, like that of Florida and of Louisiana, originally applied to a tract far more extensive than even the broad and beautiful state by which it is now borne.

A fresh stimulus, at this time, was given to the North-Western enterprise, and the voyages of Davis, in 1585, 6, 7, though unsuccessful in accomplishing their design, added greatly to the geographical knowledge of the dreary seas and coasts in that direction. The voyages and discoveries of the famous Henry Hudson, resulting in his own destruction, but in the eternal commemoration of his name, occurred a few years later. (See "The Dutch in America.")

The year after the return of his pioneer-vessels, (1585,) Raleigh, then in the full tide of court favour and increasing wealth, fitted out a fresh expedition, of seven vessels, with an hundred and eight colonists, under command of Ralph (afterwards Sir Ralph) Lane, destined for the shores of Carolina. His friend, Sir Richard Grenville, one of the bravest and choicest spirits of the age, commanded the fleet, which, on the 9th of April, set sail from Plymouth. Taking the usual circuitous route, it passed through Ocracoke Inlet to the island of Roanoke; and Grenville, with Lane and others, made a tour of exploration. They were well entertained by the natives whom they encountered—in return for which, as usual with the European adventurers, provoked by slight injury, they took cruel and indiscriminate revenge. "At Aquascogoe," says Sir Ralph, "the Indians stole a Silver Cup, wherefore we burnt the town, and spoiled their corne," &c., &c. What an exceedingly low standard of morality, of policy, of common decency even, do acts like these, recorded a hundred times by their authors with the most *naïve* unconsciousness, exhibit!

The settlers, under Lane, left on the island of Roanoke, at first were all enjoyment at the serenity of the climate and beauty of the country. "It is the goodliest soil," says their governor, "under the cope of heaven; the most pleasing territory of the world; the continent is of a huge and unknown greatness, and well peopled and towned, though savagely." The native culture of tobacco, of maize, and the potato, was observed with much interest; an interest which would have been redoubled, could the visitors have foreseen the vast magnitude and importance which the production of these articles was destined one day to assume.

A  
been  
ally a  
tribes  
cially  
endea  
They  
them,  
siderin  
Divine  
tells a  
but wa  
the rec  
in the  
broad  
delicate  
came t  
Father,  
to shew  
of that  
Allu  
great tre  
of his  
soon ex  
that, bei  
their ret  
disappoi  
The nei  
strangers  
ing an i  
region, tr  
In June,  
three shi  
getic com  
colonists,  
despondi  
cordingly,  
land—the  
introduction  
which the

A more particular observation of the Indians than had hitherto been made, was taken by the colonists, who describe them as generally a feeble, inoffensive race, dwelling in small villages, and forming tribes of no great separate importance. Master Heriot, who especially devoted himself to the subject, travelled among them, and endeavoured to indoctrinate them with some idea of Christianity. They manifested much reverence for the Bible which he displayed to them, kissing it and hugging it to their breasts, and doubtless considering it "a great medicine." They had a species of belief in the Divine Existence and the immortality of the soul; and the traveller tells a pleasant story of one of them who had been buried for dead, but was afterwards exhumed and revived. According to the Indians, the recovered patient "showed that although his body had laine dead in the grave, yet his soule lived, and had travailed far in a long broad way, on both sides whereof grewe more sweete, fayre, and delicate trees and fruits than ever he had seene before; at length he came to the most brave and fayre houses, neere which he met his Father, that was dead long agoe, who gave him charge to goe backe to shew his friends what good there was to doe, to injoy the pleasures of that place; which when hee had done, hee should come again."

Allured by fanciful and perhaps misunderstood tales concerning great treasures at the source of the Roanoke, Lane, with a number of his people, ascended its rapid stream. Their provisions were soon exhausted, yet they pressed on, "seeing they had yet a dog, that, being boyled with saxaffras leaves, would richly feede them in their return," but accomplished nothing of their object, and returned disappointed. A most outrageous deed was presently perpetrated. The neighboring Indians, *it is said*, jealous of the intrusion of the strangers, had conspired against them, and Lane, with others, desiring an interview with King Wingina, the principal chief of that region, treacherously attacked and massacred him and his attendants. In June, 1586, the famous Sir Francis Drake, with a fleet of twenty-three ships, came to anehor off the island; and, though that energetic commander did every thing in his power to encourage the colonists, and to furnish them with all necessary supplies, yet, desponding of success, they desired to return to their homes. Accordingly, he took them aboard his fleet, and carried them to England—the principal result of their American sojourn being the introduction to that country of the custom of smoking tobacco, which they had learned of the Indians.

## CHAPTER V.

SMALL SETTLEMENT PLANTED BY GRENVILLE AT ROANOKE DESTROYED BY THE INDIANS.—THIRD EXPEDITION OF RALEIGH.—FIRST ENGLISH CHILD IN AMERICA.—LOSS AND SUPPOSED DESTRUCTION OF THE ROANOKE COLONY.—MISFORTUNES OF RALEIGH.—TARDINESS AND ILL-FORTUNE OF ENGLISH ENTERPRISE.—REFLECTIONS.

ONLY a few days after the hasty and ill-advised departure of Lane and his people, a vessel, dispatched by Raleigh, with abundant supplies, arrived at the deserted settlement; and soon afterwards, Grenville, with three more ships, also well supplied, came to the same place. He left fifteen men on the island; but the next comers found there only the ruins of their fort and dwellings, amid which human bones, the evidence of Indian hostility, lay bleaching.

Raleigh, on learning of the desertion of his settlement, with indefatigable industry, set to work afresh; and in April, 1587, dispatched another expedition, with especial provision for the cultivation of the land, and with a number of women, that the comforts of a home might be early established. In July, the fleet arrived at Roanoke, where the sad evidences of the destruction of Grenville's men were observed; and, though the projector had ordered that the new settlement should be founded on Chesapeake Bay, yet, on account of the impatience of the naval commander, the governor, White, and his people disembarked on the island. Indian hostilities were soon renewed in the murder of one of the settlers—and the latter, attacking a party of the natives by night, found too late that they belonged to a friendly tribe. On the 18th of August, 1587, Virginia Dare, the first child born of English parents in the United States, was ushered into a brief and ill-fated being.

White, by the urgent request of the colonists, consisting, at his departure, of an hundred and eighteen persons, of whom seventeen were women, and two children, returned to England in one of the vessels, to provide further supplies. But the momentous events just then occurring in the equipment and defeat of the Spanish Armada, retarded the desired assistance; and Raleigh, who had expended

forty thousand pounds of his estate in the vain attempt to colonize Virginia, was compelled to relinquish the enterprise to others—assigning certain of his rights to a company of London merchants. Such delay, however, occurred, in fitting out a fresh expedition, that it was not until 1590 that White returned to Roanoke; but the settlers had disappeared; and though Raleigh, it is said, sent to search for them on five several occasions, no trace of the fate of this lost colony has ever been found. Probably, like the former, it perished from Indian hostility.

Strangely enough, all the efforts of one of the most intelligent, wealthy, and persevering men of England to effect a settlement in America proved ineffectual. Sir Walter Raleigh, besides his repeated efforts in behalf of Virginian colonization, had aided the north-west voyages, destined to end in results alike futile, and, in his old age, broken down by imprisonment and suffering, headed an equally fruitless expedition to the Orinoco and the tropical coasts of Guiana. Whatever his errors as a courtier and a favourite, history will do him justice as a statesman, a soldier, a mariner, a discoverer, and a founder of colonization—the most brilliant character of a remarkable age; and America, in especial, will always look back with reverence and affection on the earliest and most persevering promoter of her welfare—a man whose faults were those of the time, whose virtues were his own; and who, in addition to the shining attributes of a head to plan and a hand to execute, possessed the more endearing quality of a heart to feel and to commiserate.

Such repeated loss and mortality had now made men wary of undertaking American colonization. "All hopes of Virginia thus abandoned," says a later adventurer, "it lay dead and obscured from 1590 to this year 1602." In March of that year Bartholomew Gosnold, under the advice of Raleigh, tried the experiment of sailing directly to America, instead of taking the circuitous route of the Canaries and West Indies. Singular to relate, the experiment succeeded; and after a voyage of seven weeks, in a small vessel, the navigator came to Massachusetts. He landed on Cape Cod, and on the Vineyard islands, and having freighted his little bark with *sassafras* obtained by traffic from the Indians, returned in June to England. Enterprise, stimulated by his success, was renewed, in the diminutive vessels of the day, and much of the eastern sea-board was surveyed. Such voyages, familiarizing navigators with the coast and the most desirable localities, prepared the way for fresh attempts at settlement.

While her rivals, long ere this time, had succeeded in gaining a permanent footing on the shores of the New World, and had conquered or founded wealthy empires in the south, England, her claims and her endeavours chiefly confined to the more barren and inclement regions of the north, had as yet reaped nothing but loss and misfortune from her enterprise in the New World. Not a single spot on that vast continent now mostly peopled by her children, was the settled habitation of an Englishman. "In reviewing the history of American colonization, the mind is at first struck with the wonderful brilliancy and rapidity of Spanish discovery and conquest during the first century of their career; an impression naturally followed by the reflection that in the end no substantial advantage has accrued to the nation whose enterprise laid open the pathway to the New World, and whose valour and genius were the first to avail themselves of its tempting opportunities. Extermination of the native inhabitants, bigoted exclusion of foreigners, and, in the end, outrageous oppression of her own dependencies, have marked, almost without exception, the colonial administration of Spain, and have finally resulted in its nearly complete annihilation. Her once numerous provinces, alienated by mismanagement and tyranny, have found, in republican anarchy, a questionable relief from parental misrule; while that beautiful island, almost the solitary jewel in her crown, and only proving, by its exception, the general rule of her losses, is held by a tenure so insecure as hardly to deserve the name of possession.

"For an hundred and ten years, the rival nations of France and England hardly took a step in the same direction, or, if they did, under circumstances of such gross ignorance and infatuation, as were almost certain to preclude the possibility of success. The various and widely-severed colonies of France, founded, through a century of misfortunes and discouragements, by ardent and indefatigable servants of the crown, have, with one or two insignificant exceptions, slipped from her hands—not from any want of loyalty or national affection in the provincial inhabitants, but from the feebleness of the French marine, ever unable to compete with that of her haughty rival, and quite inefficient for the protection and retention of distant colonies.

"England, the last to enter on the noble enterprise of peopling the New Hemisphere, but finally bringing to the task a spirit of progress, a love of freedom, and a strength of principle, unknown to

her predecessors, has founded, amid disastrous and unpromising beginnings, an empire mightier and more enduring than all or any of its compeers; lost, indeed, for the most part, to her private aggrandizement, but not to the honour of her name or the best interests of mankind; an empire already prosperous beyond all example in history, and destined, it is probable, at no distant day, to unite under its genial protection every league of that vast continent stretching from the Atlantic to the Pacific, from the tropical forests of Darien to the eternal snows of the Arctic Circle.\*

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

in gaining a  
and had con-  
nd, her claims  
en and incele-  
but loss and  
Not a single  
children, was  
ng the history  
with the won-  
and conquest  
naturally fol-  
advantage has  
pathway to the  
e first to avail  
ination of the  
nd, in the end,  
marked, almost  
gain, and have  
er once numer-  
tyranny, have  
from parental  
ry jewel in her  
ral rule of her  
serve the name

of France and  
or, if they did,  
tuation, as were  
a. The various  
ough a century  
d indefatigable  
eant exceptions,  
alty or national  
e feckleness of  
of her haughty  
etention of dis-

rise of peopling  
task a spirit of  
ple, unknown to

# THE SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA.

## CHAPTER I.

MEMOIR OF CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.—HIS YOUTHFUL ADVENTURES AND SERVICES.—HE TURNS HERMIT.—HIS ADVENTURES IN FRANCE.—HE IS PLUNGED OVERBOARD.—SEA-FIGHT.—TRAVELS IN ITALY.—HIS CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE TURKS.—SIEGE OF REGALL.—THE THREE TURKS' HEADS.—SMITH SENT A SLAVE TO TARTARY: HIS WONDERFUL ESCAPE.—SUBSEQUENT ADVENTURES.—RETURNS TO ENGLAND.

No account of American, and still less of Virginian colonization, would be complete without some memoir of that remarkable man to whose unwearied personal exertions the foundation of an English commonwealth in this country is almost entirely due. Romance would hardly venture to imagine adventures more marvellous, or courage more chivalrous than his; and when to a temper the most sprightly, adventurous, and enterprising of his day, were added the unsurpassed qualities of judgment, of perseverance, of fortitude, and of forbearance, the result could hardly fail to be a character of no ordinary greatness, and the work of his life a work destined in some manner to affect the interests of mankind. His extraordinary career, fortunately detailed, in good part, with modest quaintness, by his own pen, will ever remain the delight of youth, and the admiration of the historical reader.

Captain John Smith, incomparably the greatest and most famous of English adventurers in America, was born of a good family at Willoughby, Lincolnshire, in 1579. His mind, from childhood, set on adventure and travel, at the age of thirteen, he secretly sold his books and satchel, and was about going off to sea, when interrupted by the death of his father. His guardians apprenticed him to a merchant of Lynn, whom, in consequence of refusal to gratify his

taste  
son of  
the N  
tyran  
bury-  
of Pr  
Holy  
again  
comm  
—tho  
Wark  
shelter  
ence  
his nar  
studie  
eise a g  
more of  
could n  
tries"—  
distract  
dom.

Takin  
four sha  
in Pien  
poverty  
he spen  
cold, a r  
This kin  
after, pa  
despoiler  
any wor  
ground,  
them, w  
formerly  
the hosp  
his chate  
travelled  
ble object  
At Ma  
freighted

taste for the sea, he speedily quitted, and with his young patron, the son of Lord Willoughby, went into France. Thence he repaired to the Netherlands, then engaged in their struggle against Spanish tyranny; and served some three or four years under Captain Duxbury—an Englishman, commanding, it would seem, in the service of Prince Maurice. He sailed to Scotland, but was shipwrecked at Holy Isle, and finding no chance of preferment at the Scottish court, again betook himself to Willoughby. Here, by one of those freaks common to ardent and imaginative youth, he chose to turn hermit—though rather after the fashion of Friar Tuck than the recluse of Warkworth. In a great wood, far from the town, he built himself a shelter of boughs, where, without bedding, or any of the conveniences of civilized life, he made his abode. In the eurt language of his narrative, (which, like Cæsar's, runs in the third person,) "His studie was *Machiavills Art of Warre*, and *Marcus Aurelius*; his exercise a good horse, with his lance and ring; *his fool was thought to be more of venison than anything else*; \* \* \* Long these pleasures could not content him, but hee returned againe to the Low Countries"—intending to make his way to the east of Germany, then distracted with Turkish warfare, and fight on the side of Christendom. At this time he was only nineteen.

Taking ship for France, he was despoiled of all his baggage by four sharpers, and, selling his cloak to pay for his passage, landing in Picardy, went in pnrsuit of them. Reduced to great distress and poverty, "wandering from port to port to finde some man of warre, he spent that he had, and in a Forest, neere dead with grieffe and cold, a rich Farmer found him by a faire Fountaine under a tree. This kinde Pesant releevd him againe, to his content." Not long after, passing through a forest, he fell in with Cursell, one of his despoilers. "His piercing injuries had so small patience, as without any word they both drew, and in a short time Cursell fell to the ground, when from an old ruinated Tower the inhabitants seeing them, were satisfied, when they heard Cursell confesse what had formerly passed." We next find the youthful adventurer enjoying the hospitality of a noble earl (who had known him in England) at his chateau in Brittany; whence, apparently better supplied, he travelled over much of France, surveying fortresses and other notable objects of examination.

At Marseilles, by ill-fortune, he embarked on board a vessel freighted with "a route of pilgrims, of divers nations," going to



Rome, and put to sea. Compelled by tempests, the ship anchored under the Isle of St. Mary, off Nice, where the "inhumane Provincials," concluding that Smith, in his double capacity of Englishman and heretic, was their Jonah, set upon him, "hourely cursing him," he tells us, "not onely for a Huguenoit, but his Nation they swore were all Pyrats, and so vildly railed on his dread sovereigne, Queene *Elizabeth*, and that they never should have faire weather as long as hee was aboard them; their disputations grew to that passion" (stimulated, perhaps, by the liberal use of a staff, with which the gallant Captain requited their assaults) "that they threw him overboard, yet God brought him to that little Isle, where was no inhabitants but a few kine and goats." With his customary good-luck, however, next morning he was taken on board of the Britaine, a French ship, and handsomely entertained by the captain. Sailing to Alexandria, the ship discharged her freight, and thence passed over to the northern coasts. Meeting with a large Venetian argosy, the French captain hailed her, and was answered by a shot which lost him a man. A naval battle, contested with great fury, and lasting for some hours, with all the horrors of broadsides, boarding, danger of conflagration, &c., ensued; but after the argosy had lost twenty men and was ready to sink, she yielded. All was now active exertion in stopping her leaks and transferring her cargo to the victor. "The Silkes, Velvets, Cloth of Gold, and Tissue, Pyasters, Chicqueenes, and Sultanies, (which is gold and silver,) they unloaded in four and twenty houres, was wonderfull, whereof having sufficient, and tired with toile, they cast her off with her company, with as much good merchandize as would have fraughted another Britaine, that was but two hundred Tunnes, shee foure or five hundred." As a reward for his valour in this desperat engagement, Smith received five hundred chicqueenes "and a little box God sent him" (he piously adds) "worth neere as much more."

Landing in Piedmont, he travelled through much of Italy, spent some time in surveying the rugged and picturesque coast of Albania and Dalmatia, and, eager for a chance to fight against the Turks, finally made his way to Gratz, in Syria, where was the court of the Archduke Ferdinand, of Austria. No time could have been more propitious to his hopes. The memorable war with the Great Turk, Mahomet II., was then in full contest, and the young adventurer, introduced by some of his countrymen to the high officers of the imperial service, soon found an ample field for the display of his

courage and military genius. At the siege of Olympeha, soon after he joined the army, by an ingenious system of telegraphic fires, he concerted a plan with the garrison, by which the Turks, with great slaughter, were compelled to raise the siege. He now received the command of two hundred and fifty men in the regiment of the famous Earl Meldritch, and executed other ingenious devices against the enemy, which, in his biography, are quaintly titled "An excellent stratagem by Smith; another not much worse;" "A pretty stratagem of fire-works by Smith," &c., &c. One of these contrivances, at the siege of Stowlle-Wesenburg, (1601,) consisted of a great number of bombs or grenades, prepared with all manner of explosive and combustible materials, which, by means of great slings, he flung into the thickest of the besieged. "At midnight, upon the alarum," he says, "it was a fearful sight to behold the short flaming course of their flight in the aire, but presently after their fall, the lamentable noise of the miserably slaughtered *Turkes* was most wonderful to heare." This town, which the latter had held for nearly sixty years, was finally taken by storm, "with such a merciless execution as was most pitifull to behold." Soon after they were again defeated with the loss of six thousand men, in a battle on the plains of Girke, and Smith, half of whose regiment was cut to pieces, as he says, "had his horse slaine under him and himself sore wounded; but he was not long unmounted, for there was choice enough of horses that wanted masters."

The Christian army, seventeen thousand strong, under Prince Moyses and Earl Meldritch, laid siege to Regall, a strong and almost impregnable town in the mountains of Transylvania, garrisoned by a large force of "Turks, Tartars, Bandittoes, Rennegadoes, and such like." The work of making trenches and batteries went on but slowly, and the Turks, jeering at their enemies, would ask if their artillery was in pawn, and complain that they were growing fat for want of exercise. A message presently arrived from the fort, that "to delight the Ladies, who did long to see some court-like pastime, the Lord Tushashaw did defie any captain that had the command of a company that durst combate with him for his Head." So many of the Christian officers were eager to undertake the duel, that the matter was decided by lot, and the peril and honour of the adventure fell to our young friend Smith. At a given signal, the adversaries, in full view of both armies—"the Rampiers all beset with faire Dames"—tilted against each other with equal courage

and fury, but with better advantage to the Christian, who ran his enemy through helmet and brain, and nimbly alighting, cut off his head, which he presented to the Prince General.

One Gualgro, "the vowed friend" of the fallen chief, resolved to avenge his fall or share his fate; and a second encounter, the next day, came off, with equal success to Smith, who unhorsed his enemy and speedily possessed himself of his head. Unsatisfied with his unusual good fortune and renown, the young champion, in turn, sent a courteous message that the ladies might have the heads of their two servants, and his own besides, if any Turk of proper degree would come and take them. This audacious challenge, accepted by one *Bonny Mulgro*, had nearly proved the death of our hero, who, by a blow of his opponent's battle-axe, lost his own and was nearly unhorsed. The Turks set up a tremendous shout of applause from the ramparts, yet Smith, to use his own language, "what by the readinesse of his horse, and his judgment and dexterity in such a businesse, beyond all men's expectation, by God's assistance, not onely avoided the *Turke's* violence, but having drawne his Faulsheon, pierced the *Turke* so under the Culetts, throrow backe and body, that, although he alighted from his horse, hee stood not long ere hee lost his head, as the rest had done." Great rejoicing took place in the Christian army, and Smith was complimented and exalted to the skies. The town, after a desperate defence, was taken by storm, and the Turks entrenched themselves in the castle. "The Earle, remembering his father's death, battered it with all the ordinance in the towne, and the next day took it; all he found could bear Armes he put to the sword, and set their heads upon stakes round about the walls, as they had used the Christians when they tooke it." This was certainly rather an indifferent school for the cultivation of humanity or refinement; yet Smith seems never to have become infected with the cruelty of the age, or to have engaged in these sanguinary scenes with any motive beyond that of the renown to be acquired by gallant deeds of arms, and the idea, in his day not altogether groundless, that a blow struck in behalf of Christendom against the invading ranks of the infidels, was a meritorious work.

Sigismund of Transylvania, on repairing to the army, was so pleased with this last exploit of the young soldier, that "with great honour he gave him three *Turkes'* Heads in a Shield for his Armes, by patent under his hand and seale, with an oathe ever to weare

them in his Colours, his picture in Gould, and three hundred Ducats yearly for a pension." This patent was afterwards admitted and recorded in the Herald's College of England.

Fortune finally turned against the Christians, whose army, in the terrible battle of Rotenton, overwhelmed by superior numbers, was almost entirely cut to pieces. "In this bloody field," says our author, "nearly 30,000 lay, some headlesse, armelesse, and leglesse, all cut and mangled; where breathing their last, they gave this knowledge to the world, that for the lives of so few, the *Crym-Tartar* never paid dearer." Among the victims were a number of adventurous Englishmen, fighting for renown, who all "did what men could doe, and when they could do no more, left there their bodies in testimonie of their mindes. \* \* \*

But Smith" (continues that gentleman) "among the slaughtered dead bodies and many a gasping soule, with toile and wounds lay groaning among the rest."

Captured and cured of his wounds, he was sold with many more as a slave at Axapolis; and his purchaser, a certain Bashaw Bogall, sent him on to Constantinople as a present to his young mistress, with the assurance that he was a Bohemian lord, the trophy of his personal prowess. The lady, like most whom the gallant captain encountered, at once experienced a tender interest for his welfare; and fearing lest he should be sold out of the family, dispatched him, with a letter of recommendation, to her brother, the Bashaw of Nalbritz, in Tartary, near the sea of Azof. This kindly manœuvre, however, served him nothing; for the feroeious Turk, apprehending the true state of the case, took all imaginable pains in persecuting him. With his head and beard shaved "so bare as his hand," a great iron ring rivetted about his neck, and a rough garment of hair and hide, the unfortunate Smith underwent a slavery, "so bad, a dog could hardly have lived to endure," and was finally made thrasher at a lonely grange of his master, more than a league from the house. The result, in his own brief language, was, that "the Bashaw, as he used often to visit his granges, visited him, and took occasion so to beat, spurne, and revile him, that, forgetting all reason, he beat out the *Tymour's* braines with his threshing-bat, for they have no flailles; and seeing his estate could be no worse than it was, clothed himself in his clothes, hid his body under the straw, filled his knapsacke with corne, mounted his horse, and ranne into the desert at all adventure." For some days he wandered in the wilderness, but finally, lighting upon the high road from Tartary to Russia,

made his way, after a journey of sixteen days, to Ecopolis, a Russian post on the Don. Here he was kindly received, and on his return to Transylvania, "glutted with content and neere drowned with joy," great rejoicing took place at his escape and the manner of it, both so characteristic of his temper. At Prague, whither he repaired, Sigismund presented him with fifteen hundred ducats, equipped with which he travelled through Germany, France, and Spain, viewing notable places and adding to his extensive information. In a French ship he sailed to Africa, meaning to take part in the civil wars in Morocco; "but by reason of the uncertainty, and the perfidious, treacherous, bloody murders rather than warre, among those perfidious, barbarous *Moores*," changed his purpose. Passing an evening aboard the ship, a gale of wind compelled her to run to sea, and the captain's taste for adventure was presently gratified by "a brave sea-fight," lasting for two days, with a couple of Spanish men-of-war. They were finally beaten off, with a loss, it was supposed, of a hundred men. In an action so desperate, the services of Smith, it may well be supposed, were not without an opportunity for their full appreciation. Not long after (1604) he returned to England.

---

## CHAPTER II.

VIRGINIAN COLONIZATION REVIVED.—PATENT OF JAMES I.—ILL-ASSORTED COMPANY OF SETTLERS.—THE EXPEDITION SAILS FOR AMERICA.—ACCIDENTALLY ENTERS JAMES RIVER.—ILL TREATMENT OF SMITH.—INTERCOURSE WITH THE INDIANS.—JAMESTOWN FOUNDED.—EXCURSION OF SMITH AND NEWPORT.—POWHATAN.—THE INDIANS OF VIRGINIA.

SOON after the return of Smith, he became acquainted with Captain Gosnold, whose voyage has already been mentioned; and the scheme of Virginian colonization was again revived. Sir Ferdinand Gorges, Sir John Popham, chief justice of England, and other persons of rank and influence, were persuaded to take an interest in their plan; and thus in April, 1606, the king (James I.) was induced to issue letters patent to Sir Thomas Gates, Sir George Somers and others, granting them all the territory on the eastern sea-board of North

America, between thirty-four and forty-five degrees north latitude. Two companies, one of Londoners and the other of gentlemen, &c., from the West of England, were formed, the first to colonize the southern and the latter the northern portion of the grant; but with a strict proviso, dictated by the foolish jealousy of James, that a hundred miles of wilderness should intervene between their respective settlements. As the first of these only succeeded in their design, our account will be restricted chiefly to their operations.

On the 19th of December, 1606, three small vessels, commanded by Captain Christopher Newport, and carrying an hundred and five colonists, sailed from Blackwall for Virginia. Forty-eight of this number were enrolled as gentlemen, and twelve as labourers—an ominous proportion for the prosperity of the projected settlement. Gosnold and Smith, Edward Wingfield, a merchant, George Percy, and the Rev. Robert Hunt, were the principal persons of the expedition.

Delayed by contrary winds, the little fleet, bearing the germ of the American commonwealth, was six weeks in sight of England; and when it finally got to sea, took the old circuitous route of the Canaries and West Indies. By the folly of James, sealed instructions, in a box not to be opened till their arrival, had been provided, naming the authorities of the colony. Dissension thus sprung up early in the voyage, and at the Canaries, Smith, accused, by the absurd jealousy of some, of conspiring to make himself "king of Virginia," was put in confinement. They steered for Roanoke, but by a piece of excellent disappointment, were carried by a storm past the place of their destination, and entered Chesapeake Bay. Naming the headlands Cape Henry and Cape Charles, in honour of the king's sons, they sailed up the James River about forty miles, and went on shore, delighted with all they saw. "We passed through excellent ground," says one of them, "full of flowers of divers kinds and colours, and as goodly trees as I have seen, as cedar, cypress, and other kinds; going a little further we came to a little plat of ground, full of fine and beautiful strawberries, four times bigger and better than ours of England." "Heaven and earth," says the enthusiastic Smith, "seemed never to have agreed better to frame a place for man's commodious and delightful habitation."

The very day of their arrival, the settlers perceived certain hostile savages, "creeping on all fours, from the hills like Beares," but put them to flight by a discharge of muskets. At Point Comfort,

is, a Russian  
n his return  
ed with joy,"  
er of it, both  
he repaired,  
quipped with  
ain, viewing  
In a French  
ivil wars in  
e perfidious,  
g those per-  
g an evening  
sea, and the  
a brave sea-  
men-of-war.  
ed, of a hun-  
mith, it may  
or their full  
land.

ES I.—ILL-  
SAILS FOR  
ER.—ILL  
NDIANS.  
H AND  
HINIA.

with Captain  
d the scheme  
and Gorges,  
r persons of  
n their plan;  
need to issue  
and others,  
ard of North

however, and other places, they were kindly received by the natives, who gave them corn-bread, pipes and tobacco, and held a dance in honour of them. The chief of the Rappahannas, who, with a considerable attendance, came to meet them, "entertained us," says the journal, "in so modest a proud fashion, as though he had been a prince of civill government, holding his countenance without any laughter or any such ill behaviour. He caused his mat to be spread on the ground, where he sat down with great majesty, taking a pipe of tobacco, the rest of his company standing around him."

Having made considerable survey of the shores of the river, the little colony of Englishmen chose for the site of their settlement a peninsula on the northern bank, and called it Jamestown, in honour of the sovereign. It was now an hundred and nine years since Cabot, sailing by these shores, had conferred on England the conventional right to so great a part of the North American continent; yet this was the first successful attempt of that nation to plant a colony in the Western Hemisphere. That it did not speedily share the fate of its predecessors, is almost entirely due to the admirable courage, sagacity, and patience of a man greatly wronged and abused, in its very inception.

On opening the sealed box, it was found that a council of seven, including Wingfield, Gosnold, Newport, and Smith, were appointed to govern the colony; but the last, the only reliable man of the whole company, by the paltry jealousy of his associates, was set aside; "the Councill was sworne, Mr. *Wingfield* was chosen President, and an Oration made, why Captaine *Smith* was not admitted of the Councill as the rest." His zeal for the promotion of the scheme unquenched by this unworthy treatment, the excluded councillor set forth with Newport on an expedition of further survey.

In the course of this voyage, much was learned concerning the Indians of the adjoining regions. Of forty-three native tribes, dwelling between the mountains and the sea, about thirty, numbering, it is said, eight thousand souls, were under the rule of a powerful chieftain, named Wahunsonacock, but whose customary title, derived, like that of a European grandee, from his principal residence, was Powhatan. The names of Tuscaloosa, Quigaltanqui, and those of many other native American chiefs, identical with their towns or principalities, indicate the prevalence of the usage. His residence of Powhatan was at the Falls of James River, at the site of Richmond, and that of Werowocomoco on the north side of York River.

Ascending the first named stream, after a voyage of six days, the explorers came to the falls, where they were courteously received by the great chief just mentioned—"of personage," says Smith, "a tall, well proportioned man, with a sower looke, his head some what gray, his beard so thinne it seemeth none at all, his age neere sixtie; of a very able and hardy body to endure any labor. \* \* \* It is strange," he presently proceeds, "to see with what great feare and adoration all these people doe obey this Powhatan. For at his feete they present whatsoever he commandeth, and at the least frowre of his brow, their greatest spirits will tremble with feare; and no marvell, for he is very tyrannous and terrible in punishing such as offend him. \* \* \* Yet when he listeth, his will is a law and must be obeyed; not onely as a king, but halfe as a God they esteeme him."

The Indians of Virginia, dwelling in a milder elime, and on a more fertile soil, seem to have possessed more of the comforts of life than those of New England. They lived by the chase, by fishing, and, to a considerable extent, by plantation. Their clothing was of furs, but they were very hardy and able to endure cold. Their children, from infaney, they used to wash in the rivers, "and by paintings and ointments so tanne their skinnes, that after a yeare or two no weather will hurte them." The customary passion of savages for personal picturing, seems, indeed, to have had full sway, the favourite colour being red. "Many other formes of painting they use, but he is the most gallant that is the most monstrous to behold."

They were a warlike people, and were often engaged in feud with their neighbours. Smith gives a curious account of a great shaming fight, which Powhatan's warriors, at Mattapanient, once performed for his diversion. Two parties, each of a hundred, approached each other in warlike array, "all duly keeping their orders, yet leaping and singing after their accustomed tune, which they only vse in Warres. Vpon the first flight of arrowes, they gave such horrible shouts and schreeches, as so many infernall hell-hounds could not have made them more terrible. When they had spent their arrowes, they joyned together prettily, charging and retiring, every ranke seconding the other. As they got advantage, they catched their enemies by the hayre of the head, and down came he that was taken. His enemy with his wooden sword seemed to beate out his braines, and still they crept to the rear to maintain the skirmish. \* \* \* All their actions, voyees, and gestures, both in charging and retiring,



were so strained to the height of their qualitie and nature, that the strangeness thereof made it seeme very delightfull."

Little that is definite seems to have been ascertained concerning their religious belief—the uncouth ceremonies of the Powwow, and the manifestations of a savage taste being directly construed into an explicit Satanism. "Their chief God they worship," says the captain, "is the Devill. Him they call *Okee*, and serve him more of feare than love. They say they have conferrence with him, and fashion themselves as neare to his shape as they can imagine. In their Temples they have his image evill-favoredly carved, in such manner as the deformitie may well suit with such a God. \* \*

Upon the top of certain red sandy hills in the woodes, there are three great houses filled with Images of their Kinges and Devills, and Tombes of their predecessors. This place they count so holy as none but the Priests and Kings dare come into them." Their religious ceremonies were sufficiently fantastic and barbarous. Their chief priest, horrid in a head-dress of the skins of snakes and other reptiles, made invocations before the circle of worshippers "with broken sentences, by starts and strange passions, and at every pause the rest give a short groane"—probably the Indian "ugh," denoting assent. "And in this lamentable ignorance," he continues, "doe these poore Soules sacrifice themselves to the Devill, not knowing their Creator; and we had not language sufficient, so plainly to express it as to make them understand it, which God grant they may."

---

### CHAPTER III.

TRIAL AND VINDICATION OF SMITH.—FAMINE AND TERRIBLE MORTALITY.—SMITH, BY HIS EXERTIONS, SUPPORTS THE COLONY.—TREACHERY OF HIS ASSOCIATES.—DEALINGS WITH THE INDIANS.—IDLE AND MISERABLE COLONISTS.

WHILE the party of survey was absent, an attack had been made by the Indians on the colonists, one of whom was killed, and many others were wounded, and Jamestown was therefore fortified with palisades and artillery. Captain Smith, on his return, to silence the slanders of his enemies, demanded a public trial; in which his inno-

ature, that the

ned concerning  
Powwow, and  
construed into  
ship," says the  
re him more of  
with him, and  
n imagine. In  
earved, in such  
God. \* \*

there are three  
d Devills, and  
ant so holy as  
." Their reli-  
barous. Their  
akes and other  
hippers "with  
at every pause  
ugh," denoting  
ontinues, "doe  
l, not knowing  
plainly to ex-  
ant they may."

AND TERRIBLE  
PMENTS THE  
-DEALINGS  
OLONISTS.

ad been made  
led, and many  
fortified with  
to silence the  
which his inno-



CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

THE FOUNDER OF VIRGINIA.

BORN AT WILLOUGHBY, LINCOLNSHIRE, 1579; LANDED IN VIRGINIA, 1607; DIED 1631

ce  
re  
pa  
wh

lan  
pri  
lee  
wil  
tun  
the  
app  
set  
the  
"fr  
can  
mitt  
Beet  
was

De  
one,  
aggra  
and  
the s  
dead  
was  
refuse  
broug  
relief,

The  
nomin  
judgn  
manag  
associa  
With  
the set  
"By h  
to mov  
thatch,  
that, in

cence and the malice of his detractors was so apparent, that he was restored to his seat in the Council, and Wingfield was adjudged to pay him damages in goods to the value of two hundred pounds, which, however, Smith put into the store-house, for the public use.

On the 15th of June, Newport, with the vessels, returned to England. His departure was the signal for immediate distress and privation. The company, with wretched improvidence, had neglected to supply sufficient stores for a colony just landed in the wilderness, and even during the stay of the fleet, many of the unfortunate settlers had been reduced for support to biscuits pilfered by the sailors from the ship-stores, and sparingly dealt out to the hungry applicants "for saxefras, fures, or love." A regular famine at once set in, a daily pint of wheat or barley, all alive with insects, being the only allowance. "Had we been as free," says one of them, "from all sinnes as gluttony and drunkenness, we might have been canonized as saints; but our President would never have been admitted, for ingrossing to his private, Oatemeale, Saeke, Oyle, *Aquavite*, Beef, Egges, and what not but the Kettell. \* \* Our drinke was water, our lodgings Castles in the Ayre."

During the summer, fifty of the company, of whom Gosnold was one, had died from the diseases incident to a change of climate and aggravated by privation and exposure. Wingfield, with a cowardly and treacherous policy, attempted to seize the pinnace and desert the settlement, "which," proceeds the old narrator, "so moved our dead Spirits as we deposed him." When this famine and distress was at its height, the neighbouring Indians, who heretofore had refused to impart their store, suddenly changing their resolution, brought abundant supplies of fruits and provision—a seasonable relief, ascribed by the colonists to the direct interposition of God.

The council was now reduced to three, consisting of Rateliffe, the nominal president, Martin, and Smith; but the two first, "of weak judgment in dangers and lesse industry in peace," shifted the entire management and care of the colony on the shoulders of their sturdy associate. Those shoulders were amply strong enough to bear it. With the greatest diligence, he set to work to supply the wants of the settlers, and to provide them with shelter against the winter. "By his owne example, good words, and faire promises, he set some to mow, others to binde thatch, some to build houses, others to thatch, alwayes bearing the greatest taske for his owne share, so that, in short time, he provided most of them lodgings, neglecting any

for himself." This labour accomplished, and the people beginning to suffer again from want of food, he set forth in a boat, with five or six others, to gain supplies by traffic with the more distant Indians. The latter, however, with rude inhospitality, "scorned him," he says, "as a famished man, and would in derision offer him a handfull of corne, a peece of bread, for their swords and muskets, and such like proportions also for their apparell." These uncivil taunts brought on hostilities, and the captain, in a skirmish, got possession of their *Okee* or god, to ransom which, they were fain to load the English boat with plenty of corn, turkeys, and venison. Smith, in return, gave them beads, copper, and hatchets, and a friendship was struck up with that curious suddenness which seems alike to distinguish savage enmity or amity.

In spite of Smith's unwearyed exertions, to supply the settlers with food, we are told, "yet what he carefully provided, the rest carelesly spent. \* \* \* The Spaniard never more greedily desired gold than he victuall, nor his Souldiers more to abandon the country than he to keepe it." Of the ill-assorted company, he says, there were "many meerey projecting, verball and idle contemplators, and those so devoted to pure idlennesse, that though they had lived in Virginia two or three years, lordly, necessitie itselfe could not compell them to passe the Peninsula or the Palisadoes of *James Towne*. \* \* \* Our ingenious Verballists were no lesse plague to us in Virginia than the Locusts to the Egyptians." Because they did not find Taverns and Alehouses at every turn, he says, nor feather beds and down pillows, they thought of nothing but present comfort and speedy return. Wingfield and others seized the pinnace, and would have fled to England, but Smith by force of arms compelled them to remain, and one of the malcontents was killed in the attempt.

EX  
A  
  
I  
by  
ach  
In r  
men  
men  
H  
stre  
reach  
furth  
unde  
Only  
comp  
was l  
their  
hundr  
before  
equal  
wound  
so ben  
deadly  
The  
a fire.  
compas  
this str  
instinct  
Smith,  
with pl  
own wo  
roundne

## CHAPTER IV.

EXPEDITION AND CAPTURE OF SMITH: HIS STRANGE ADVENTURES  
AMONG THE INDIANS.—CONJURATIONS PERFORMED OVER HIM.

—HE IS CARRIED TO POWHATAN.—HIS LIFE SAVED BY  
POCAHONTAS.—STRANGE MASQUERADE OF POWHATAN.

—RELEASE AND RETURN OF SMITH.

PROCEEDING up the Chickahominy, Captain Smith at last procured by traffic such abundant supplies of provision, that the empty stomachs of the mutineers no longer cried out for return to England. In another expedition, in the same direction, he experienced that memorable adventure, the rival of romance and the brightest ornament of American colonial history.

Having left his canoe, with two companions, on the bank of a stream, he struck off twenty miles further into the wilderness to reach its head waters. The crew of his barge, which he had left further down the river, were attacked by a great body of warriors, under Opechancanough, king of Pamunkey, the brother of Powhatan. Only one of them, however, was captured, who, after having been compelled to inform the savages of the route taken by Captain Smith, was barbarously put to death. His two companions, sleeping by their canoe, were the next victims, and finally the whole force, two hundred strong, came up with Smith himself. Binding his guide before him, as a shield against their arrows, the captain fought with equal coolness and desperation. He killed three of the enemy and wounded many more; but finally, getting fast in a morass, became so benumbed with cold, that, rather than freeze, he threw away his deadly weapons, and yielded himself prisoner.

The Indians drew him out, and chafed his benumbed limbs before a fire. His presence of mind unailing, he pulled forth a little compass, set in ivory, which he gave the chief. "At the sight of this strange little engine, with its trembling vibrations, apparently instinct with life, the wonder of his captors knew no bounds; and Smith, taking advantage of their interest, began forthwith to enchain with philosophy the attention of his savage auditors." To use his own words, "when he demonstrated by that Globe-like Jewell, the roundness of the earth and skies, the sphere of the Sunne,

Moone, and Starres, and how the Sunne did chase the night round about the world continually; the greatnesse of the Sea and Land, the diversitie of Nations, varietie of complexions, and how we were to them Antipodes, and many such-like matters, they stood as all amazed with admiration."

Having tried his nerve by tying him to a tree, and all making ready to shoot at him, they led him in triumph to Orapaks, a town a few miles from Powhatan, where a hideous war-dance was performed about him, and where, from the overweening hospitality of his hosts, he began to fear that he was to be fattened for sacrifice. Fully appreciating his valour, they made him great offers if he would assist them in an intended attack on Jamestown; but Smith, having written a note to his friends, warning them of the danger, and desiring certain articles, persuaded the Indians to take it thither, and leave it in sight of the colonists. To their utter amazement, they found in the same spot, on the following day, the very articles that Smith had promised them, and all, in wonder, concluded, "that either he could divine or the paper could speake."

He was next taken to Pamunkey, where such strange and fantastical conjurations were enacted over him, that he felt, he says, as if translated to the infernal regions. This mystical ceremony lasted for three days; after which, the tribe entertained him with much kindness. They had procured a bag of gunpowder, which they were carefully keeping to plant the next spring, supposing it to be a species of seed. At last he was taken to Werowocomoco, where Powhatan, "with more than two hundred of his grim courtiers, dressed in their greatest braveries," was awaiting him. As he entered, the whole court rose, in respect for their valiant captive, and gave a great shout. He was served in the most honourable manner, the Indian queen of Appamatuck waiting on him in person. What followed cannot be better given than in his own language or that of some one who heard it from his own lips. "Having feasted him in the best barbarous manner they could, a long consultation was held; but the conclusion was, two great stones were brought before *Powhatan*; then as many as could layd hands on him, dragged him to them, and thereon layd his head, and being ready with their clubs to beate out his braines, *Pocahontas*, the King's dearest daughter, when no untreaty could prevaile, got his head in her arms, and layd her owne upon his to save him from death; whereat the Emperour was contented he should live."

"In all history there is no incident more dramatic and touching. After the lapse of more than two centuries, familiarized, but unhackneyed by repetition, it still remains the most charming and picturesque scene in the whole range of American annals. Its heroine, 'the darling of history' (then only a child of ten) still warmly lives in the love and remembrance of a whole people, and stands, the redeeming spirit of her race to hallow it with a kinder memory than that of warfare and revenge." This memorable transaction, moreover, is of great interest as one of those comparatively rare incidents where the feelings and passions bring about an event of high historical importance. Certainly this was such, for the entire weight of the colony, for a long time afterwards, rested on the brave heart, the sagacious head, and the manly arm of Smith. Had he been removed, especially in this critical juncture, the settlers, without doubt, would immediately have abandoned the idea of preserving the colony, and have made their way homeward with all practicable speed.

The generosity of the chief did not stop half way. The release of his captive was resolved on, and was communicated in a fashion characteristic enough. "Two dayes after," the captain tells us, "*Powhatan* having disguised himself in the most fearefullest manner he could, caused Capt. *Smith* to be brought forth to a great house in the woodes, and there upon a mat by the fire to be left alone" (another experiment on his nerves). "Not long after from behinde a mat that divided the house, was made the most dolefullest noyse he ever heard; then *Powhatan*, more like a devill than a man, with some two hundred more as blacke as himself, came unto him and told him now they were friends, and presently he should goe to *James Towne*, to send him two great gunnes and a gryndstone, for which he would give him the country of *Capahowosick*, and for ever esteeme him as his son *Nantaquoud*." In a memorial, many years afterwards addressed to the queen in behalf of *Pocahontas*, Smith, recapitulating the kindnesses which he had received from the House of *Powhatan*, especially commemorates that of this son, whom he describes as "the most manliest, comeliest, boldest spirit I ever saw in a Salvage." Accordingly he was dispatched to the settlement with an escort of twelve guides, and was received with great rejoicing; but the messengers, finding two cannons and a millstone "somewhat too heavy," were faine to return with presents better fitted for their transportation.



## CHAPTER V.

PRIVATIONS OF THE COLONISTS.—RELIEVED BY POCAHONTAS.—ARRIVAL OF NEWPORT FROM ENGLAND.—INTER-COURSE AND TRAFFIC WITH POWHATAN.—BLUE BEADS FOR CROWN JEWELS.—IMAGINARY GOLD MINE.—SMITH'S VOYAGE IN THE CHESAPEAKE.—INTER-VIEWS WITH NUMEROUS NATIVE TRIBES.—STING-RAY POINT.—HIS RETURN.

DURING the six weeks' captivity of Smith, the miserable little remnant of the colony, by quarrels and improvidence, was all in confusion, and he was again compelled to use force to keep a number from deserting in the pinnace. The malecontents next hatched up a ridiculous scheme for his execution on account of the loss of his companions, saying that, by the Levitical law, he was responsible for their lives: "but he quickly tooke such order with such Lawyers that he layd them by the heels," (*i. e.* in prison) "till he sent some of them prisoners for England." The colony, indeed, would have perished of hunger, but for the generosity of Poeahontas, (and perhaps Powhatan,) who with her attendants carried food to Jamestown every four or five days. Through her influence many other Indians brought provision as presents, or, if they sold it, made the captain fix his own price, "so had he enchanted these poore soules, being their prisoner."

Of two ships, dispatched by the company, with a reinforcement of a hundred men, to Virginia, one only under Newport reached her destination, in the latter part of the year 1607. A brisk traffic was now carried on with the Indians; and at the request of Powhatan, Smith and Newport made him a visit. "With many pretty discourses to renew their old acquaintance," says the original narrative, "this great King and our Captaine passed their time. \* \* \* Three or foure days more we spent in feasting, dauncing, and trading, wherein *Powhatan* carried himself so proudly, yet discretely, (in his salvage manner) as made us all admire his naturall gifts." Newport, however, proved no match for him at a bargain, and the colonists would have received but a pitiful supply of provision for their goods, but for the astuteness of Smith, who contrived, as if by accident, to

dis-  
maje  
time  
more  
the  
king-  
such  
"for  
2 or  
famil  
blue  
blood  
Af  
posed  
or irc  
with  
mons  
ment  
a dru  
spring  
by a  
provis  
fruit  
she w  
Un  
them  
thoug  
kept i  
leader  
of Jan  
in a b  
of exp  
attain  
may h  
of red  
geogra  
many  
friendl  
expos  
for ret

display before the chief several flashy ornaments. The fancy of his majesty was wonderfully struck with certain blue beads. "A long time he importunately desired them, but Smith seemed so much the more to affect them, as being composed of a most rare substance of the colour of the skyes, and not to be worn but by the greatest kings in the world. This made him half mad to be the owner of such strange Jewells; so that ere we departed," says the narrator, "for a pound or two of blew beades, he brought over my king for 2 or 300 Bushells of corne; yet parted good friends." Other royal families were supplied with crown jewels at similar rates, and the blue beads were held in such veneration that none, except of the blood-royal, were permitted to wear them.

After their return, a fresh misfortune befell the colony in the supposed discovery of a bed of gold—which probably was yellow mica or iron pyrites—and to the gathering of which the foolish colonists, with great eagerness, betook themselves, despite the passionate remonstrances of Smith. "Never," he says, "anything did more torment him than to see all necessary business neglected to freight such a drunken ship" (Newport's) "with so much gilded dirt." In the spring of 1608, the other vessel, the Phoenix, which had been blown by a tempest to the West Indies, arrived with abundant supplies of provisions. She was dispatched home with a load of cedar, the first fruit reaped by England from the natural wealth of the vast region she was attempting to occupy.

Under the active management of Smith, the colonists now set themselves busily to work at building and planting, and the colony, though somewhat menaced by the dubious conduct of the Indians, kept in check only by the resolute conduct of the same energetic leader, began to stand on a basis of rational prosperity. On the 2d of June, the indefatigable captain, with fourteen companions, set forth in a barge on a voyage of discovery, and especially for the purpose of exploring Chesapeake Bay. "Some visions of a South Sea to be attained and a new channel opened to the wealthy regions of India, may have mingled, it is probable, with the more practical intention of reducing these great waters and their shores within the limits of geography." In the course of this survey along the eastern shore, many Indians were encountered, at first timid or hostile, and finally friendly and confiding. After a fortnight of incessant labour and exposure, at the mouth of the Patapsco, his crew strongly petitioned for return. The weather had been stormy and disastrous, their

POCAHON-  
—INTER-  
E BEADS  
FINE.—  
INTER-  
TING-

le little rem-  
all in confu-  
p a number  
atched up a  
e loss of his  
sponsible for  
ch Lawyers  
e sent some  
would have  
as, (and per-  
o Jamestown  
Other Indians  
e captain fix  
, being their

forement of  
reached her  
ck traffic was  
of Powhatan,  
y pretty dis-  
mal narrative,  
\* \*  
and trading,  
rectly, (in his  
." Newport,  
the colonists  
r their goods,  
y accident, to

shirts had been taken to make sails, and several of them were sick. With much regret, their leader consented, and on the 16th of June discovered the river Potomac, which he ascended for thirty miles. Here, we are told, probably with extraordinary exaggeration, the voyagers found "all the woods layd with ambuscadoes to the number of three or foure thousand Salvages,(1) so strangely paynted, grined, and disguised, shouting, yelling, and crying, as so many spirits from hell could not have showed more terrible." In spite of this vehement demonstration, they presently entered into friendly intercourse with the English.

On their return the latter were liberally supplied with game by the Indians whom they encountered, and found fish so plenty that they attempted to catch them with a frying-pan; but found that instrument better suited for their disposal out of the water than in it. At the mouth of the Rappahanock, at Sting-Ray Point, (the name of which still commemorates the incident,) the gallant captain, having speared a fish with his sword, and taking it off "(not knowing her condition)" was grievously stung; and such alarming symptoms ensued that, concluding his end was at hand, he gave directions for his funeral, and had his grave prepared in an island hard by; yet by means of "a precious oyle" applied by Russell the surgeon, recovered so far that he had his revenge of the fish by eating a piece of it for his supper. On the 21st of July the expedition returned to Jamestown, having made extensive surveys, and acquired much knowledge of the tribes inhabiting the shores of the Chesapeake.

SM  
Sfall  
Ra  
tha  
had  
our  
tha  
app  
and  
had  
had  
the  
F  
thre  
new  
surv  
view  
from  
tribe  
tion  
of he  
great  
they  
simpl  
gods.  
portio  
of the  
leg w

## CHAPTER VI.

SMITH MADE PRESIDENT.—HE RESUMES THE SURVEY.—THE SUSQUEHANNAS.—ADVENTURES WITH THE INDIANS.—REMARKABLE FEAT OF SURVEY.—RETURN TO JAMESTOWN.—ARRIVAL OF NEWPORT.—ABSURD INSTRUCTIONS OF THE ENGLISH COMPANY.—THE CORONATION OF POWHATAN.—UNSUCCESSFUL ATTEMPT OF NEWPORT TO FIND THE SOUTH SEA.

WHILE Smith was absent, the colony, as a matter of course, had fallen into miserable disorder and anarchy. "The silly President," Ratcliffe, had so ill-treated the colonists, especially those last arrived, that, in the words of the old chronicler, "had we not arrived, they had strangely tormented him with revenge: but the good Newes of our Discovery, and the good hope we had, by the Salvages' relation, that our Bay stretched into the South Sea (!) or somewhat neare it, appeased their fury." Ratcliffe was forthwith deposed from office, and Smith elected in his place—"the place which, from the first, had been due to his superior judgment and experience, and which had been amply earned by his untiring devotion to the service of the colony."

Fonder of enterprise than of ease or official dignity, at the end of three days, having appointed a discreet deputy to fill his place, the new president, with twelve companions, resumed his expedition of survey. He first cruised to the Patapseo, having a friendly interview on the way with a party of the powerful tribe of Massawomecs, from the north; and on the river Tockwogh, hearing of another tribe, called the Susquehannas, of giant-like stature, sent an invitation to them to come and meet him. Accordingly, sixty warriors, of hereulean frame, soon presented themselves before him. "Such great and well proportioned men," he says, "are seldome seene, for they seemed like Giants to the English, yet seemed of a honest and simple disposition, with much adoe restrained from adoring us as gods. \* \* \* For their language, it may well besecme their proportions, sounding from them as a voyce in a vault. \* The picture of the greatest of them is signified in the Mapped, the calfe of whose leg was three-quarters of a yard about, and all the rest of his limbs

so answerable to that proportion, that he seemed the goodliest man we ever beheld." These splendid savages were fittingly dressed in the skins of wolves and bears, so worn as much to resemble the natural ferocious appearance of the animals.

Their veneration for Smith, whose reputation had doubtless preceded him, was almost unbounded. "There seems to have been a natural dignity, kindness, and manhood in his demeanor, which invariably was sufficient to overawe or conciliate the rudest tribes which he encountered." "Our order," says the journal of the voyage, "was daily to have prayer, with a Psalme, at which solemnitie the poor Salvages much wondred; our Prayers being done, a while they were busied with a consultation till they had contrived their businesse. Then they began in a most passionate manner to hold vp their handes to the Sunne, with a most fearefull Song, then embracing our Captaine, they began to adore him in like manner; though he rebuked them, yet they proceeded till their Song was finished; which done, with a most strange furious action and a hellish voyce, began an Oration of their loves; that ended, with a great painted Beares skin they covered him; then one ready with a great chayne of white Beades, weighing at least six or seaven poundes, hung it about his necke, the others had 18 mantles, made of divers kinds of skinnes, sowed together; all these, with many other toys, they layed at his feete, stroking their ceremonious hands about his necke, to be their Governour and Protector."

Passing up the Rappahannock, the voyagers were attacked by hostile savages, who, "accommodating themselves with branches," showered volleys of arrows on their barge. One of these, being wounded, was taken by the English, and was asked why his people showed such enmity to peaceful strangers—to which, says the narrative, "the poore Salvage mildly answered that they heard we were a people come from under the world to take their world from them."

\* Then we asked him what was beyond the mountains, he answered the Sunne; but of anything els he knew nothing, because the woodes were not burnt."

In the course of this protracted expedition, Smith completed the survey of the shores of Chesapeake Bay, of which he made an accurate chart, and acquired much other useful information. A brief but interesting account of the country and the various tribes encountered, was also drawn up, and on the 7th of September, after an absence of three months, (excepting the short visit in July, when he

was made president,) and a voyage of some three thousand miles, he returned to Jamestown with his little craft deeply laden with provisions. Three days after he was formally invested with his office and title. Sickness had prevailed, and many more of the unfortunate settlers had perished in his absence.

Captain Newport soon arrived again, bringing seventy additional colonists, some of them persons of consideration. Two Englishwomen, a Mrs. Forrest and maid, were the first females who came to the colony, and there were also eight Poles or Germans, sent to make tar, glass, and potash. The English company, irritated and disappointed in the failure of their extravagant expectations, had ordered the unfortunate captain "not to returne without a lumpe of golde, a certaintie of the South Sea, or one of the lost companie sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh." Accordingly, he had brought a great barge, built in separate pieces, which was to be carried over the mountains of the West, (the Blue Ridge,) and thence launched into some river flowing into the Pacific! "If he had burnt her to ashes," writes Smith, indignantly remonstrating with the company, "one might have carried her in a bag (but as she is, five hundred cannot) to a navigable place above the Falls. And for him at that time to find in the South Sea a Mine of Golde, or any of them sent by Sir *Walter Raleigh!* at our Consultation I told them was as likely as the rest."

To propitiate *Powhatan*, and thus secure a free passage to the Pacific and the gold mine, these gentlemen had dispatched to him certain royalties, consisting of a basin and ewer, a bed and furniture, a chair of state, a suit of scarlet, a cloak and a crown—the latter purporting to be a present from his fellow-sovereign, the king of England. Smith, after vainly protesting against these absurdities, finding the new-comers resolute to prosecute their plan, did his best to aid them. He posted, with only four attendants, to Werowocomoco, where, in the absence of Powhatan, Pocahontas, with thirty of her maidens, entertained him with a quaint masquerade and a feast, "of all the Salvage dainties they could devise," and treated him with the highest honour and affection. The chief, on his arrival, being invited to proceed to Jamestown and be invested with his regalia, "was taken with a sudden fit of dignity or suspicion," and to the courteous urgency of Smith, replied, "If your king have sent me Presents, I also am a King, and this is my land; eight days I will stay to receive them. Your Father" (Newport) "is to come to

me, not I to him, nor yet to your fort, neither will I bite at such a bait. \* \* \* As for any salt water beyond the mountains, the Relations you have had from my people are false," and sitting down, he began to draw maps, on the ground, of all the adjacent regions.

Smith and Newport, to humour his obstinaey, accordingly, with the presents and a guard of fifty men, repaired to Werowocomoco. The solemn coronation of Powhatan, which took place the day after their arrival, is described with much dry humour in the old narrative. His majesty seems to have had some conception of the humbug of the thing, or perhaps a strong distrust of the English, or a dread of necromancy. His furniture having been properly set up, we are told, "his scarlet Cloke and Apparell were with much adoe put on him, being perswaded by *Namontack*\* they would not hurt him; but a foule trouble there was to make him kneele to receive his Crowne, he neither knowing the maiesty nor meaning of a Crowne nor bending of the knee, endured so many perswasions, examples, and instructions as tyred them all; at last, *by leaning hard on his shoublers, he a little stooped*, and three, having the Crowne in their hands, put it on his head, when, by the warning of a Pistoll, the Boats were prepared with such a volley of shot, that the King started up in a horrible feare, till he saw that all was well."

This august ceremony accomplished, Newport, despite the warnings of the king, with one hundred and twenty men, in "his great five-peeced barge," set forth to ascend the James River in quest of his lump of gold and the South Sea. The boat was stopped by the Falls, and the company, after getting by land about forty miles further, and suffering much from toil and exposure, were compelled to return to Jamestown. On their arrival, Captain Smith set them at work at various useful occupations, such as cutting down trees and hewing timber, taking the lead himself, and making labour pleasant by good-nature and merriment.

\* Newport, on his former visit, had presented Powhatan with a boy named *Salvage*, and the chief, in return, had given him "*Namontack*, his trustie servant, and one of a shrewd, subtile capacite."

## CHAPTER VII.

PLOT AGAINST SMITH.—HIS LETTER TO THE COMPANY.—HIS EFFORTS TO SUPPORT THE COLONY.—EXPEDITION TO SURPRISE POWHATAN.—ARTFUL SPEECHES, AND MUTUAL TREACHERY.—THE ENGLISH AGAIN SAVED BY POCAHONTAS.

To meet the scarcity of provisions, which again menaced the colony, Smith again ascended the Chickahominy, and brought back a great store of corn. Newport and Ratcliffe, in his absence, had plotted to depose him; but, we are told, "their horns were so much too short to effect it, as they themselves more narrowly escaped a greater mischief." He finally dispatched home a ship freighted with the products of the country, and in a letter to the company, besought a supply of mechanics and labourers. Complaining of the misrepresentations of Newport, he adds, "Now that you should know I have made you as great a discovery as he, for a lesse charge than he spendeth you every meale, I have sent you this Mapped of the Bay and Rivers, with an annexed Relation of the Countries and Nations that inhabit them, as you may see." They had complained that they were kept in ignorance of the country, to which he stiffly replies, "I desire but to know what either you or these here doe know, but what I have learned to tell you, at the continuall hazard of my life."

In the ensuing winter, scarcity again prevailed, and the president, by repeated excursions among the Indians, sleeping with his attendants, in the snow, gained a scanty and precarious supply. The colony at length being in danger of starvation, he came to the rash and unscrupulous resolution of seizing the stores of Powhatan and making prisoner of that chief himself. On the 29th of December, he set forth up the river, with three boats and forty-six volunteers, and on his way dispatched Mr. Sicklemore, ("a very valiant, honest, and painefull Souldier,") with two more on an unsuccessful search for the lost colony of Raleigh. Arriving at Werowocomoco, he was well entertained by Powhatan, who, however, was well apprized of his hostile intention, having been informed of it by the Germans, who had been sent to build him a house. Much parley ensued, each professing much friendship, and endeavouring to take the other at a



disadvantage, and Powhatan made a set speech, "expostulating the difference between Peace and Warre."

"Captaine Smith," he said, "you may understand that, having scene the death of all my people thrice, and not any one living of those three generations but myselfe, I know the difference of Peace and Warre better than any in my country. But now I am old, and ere long must die. \* \* \* Think you I am so simple as not to know it is better to eate good meate, lye well, and sleep quietly with my women and children, laugh and be merry with you, have eopper, hatchets, or what I want, being your friend; than be forced to flye from all, to lye cold in the woods, feede upon Acornes, rootes, and such trash, and be so hunted by you that I can neither rest, eate, nor sleepe; but my tyred men must wateh, and if a twig but breake, every one cryeth, 'there eommeth Captaine *Smith*;' then must I fly I know not whither, and thus with miserable feare end my miserable life." He then endeavoured to persuade the English to lay aside their arms, intending to surprise them; and on their refusal, heaving a deep sigh, "breathed his mind once more," in artful persuasions to the same effect, and reminded Smith how he had always called him his father. "I call you father, indeed," said his guest, "and as a father you shall see I will love you; but the small care you have of such a childe, caused my men to perswade me to looke to myselfe."

Meanwhile, he privately sent for his soldiers at the boats to land quickly and surprise the chief; but the latter, forewarned of their movements, retreated into the woods, and his warriors, in great number, elosed around the house. But Smith, rushing among them with sword and target, made good his exit, and Powhatan, says the narrative, "to excuse his flight and the sudden eoming of this multitude, sent our Captaine a great braecelet and a chaine of pearl, by an ancient Oratour,"—who had charge, with plausible explanations, to smooth the affair over. The eaptain had purchased a quantity of eorn, which the Indians earried to his barge, and prepared to pass the night in the village. Powhatan, "bursting with desire to have his head," meanwhile, laid a deep plot for the destruction of the intruders. "Notwithstanding," continues the old narrative, "the eternall all seeing God did prevent him, and by a strange meanes. For Pocahontas, his dearest iewell and daughter, in that darke night came through the irksome woodes, and told our Captaine great eheare should be sent us by and by; but *Powhatan* and all the power he

con  
con  
The  
Sue  
the  
seen  
dea  
In  
ing  
quar  
latte  
mad  
cauti  
mess  
them  
ing t  
be r  
prop  
been

THE  
EN  
P

AT  
repair  
plot f  
that e  
round  
"with  
while.  
exhort  
then, t

could make would after come kill us all, if they that brought it could not kill us with our owne weapons when we were at supper. Therefore, if we would live, shee wished us presently to be gone. Such things as she delighted in he would have given her; but with the teares running downe her cheekes, she said she durst not be scene to have any, for if Powhatan should know it, she were but dead; so shee ranne away by herselfe as she came."

In the evening, according to the plot, a number of savages, bearing great platters of venison and other refreshments, came to the quarters of the English. With much civility, they requested the latter to put out the matches of their guns, alleging that the smoke made them sick; but the intended victims only redoubled their precautions against surprise, and Powhatan, who sent messenger after messenger to learn the state of affairs, at length despaired of finding them off their guard, and relinquished his design. The next morning the uninvited visitors took their departure. "It certainly cannot be regretted that this attempt of Smith to seize the person and property of the chief who had formerly spared his life should have been unsuccessful."

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

THE PLOT AT PAMUNKEY: DEFEATED BY THE DARING AND ENERGY OF SMITH.—THE COLONY SUPPLIED.—SMITH POISONED.—HIS UNSCRUPULOUS POLICY.—HIS FIGHT WITH THE KING OF PASPAHEGH.—"PRETTY ACCIDENTS" AMONG THE INDIANS.

AT Pamunkey, the seat of Opechancanough, whither they next repaired, liberal entertainment was provided for the English, and a plot for their destruction was again concerted. At the house of that chief, Smith, with only fifteen companions, was finally surrounded by a force of seven hundred armed warriors; his host, "with a strained cheerfulness," holding him engaged in talk the while. On seeing his situation, the captain, in a stirring little speech, exhorted his people "to fight like men and not die like sheepe," and then, telling his treacherous host, "I see your plot to murder me,

but I feare it not," defied him to single combat. Besides his life, he offered to stake on the issue any amount of copper against the same value in corn—"and our Game," he said, "shall be, the Conquerour take all." But the chief, declining this handsome proposal, endeavoured to induce his guest to venture forth, on pretence of bestowing on him a rich present, thirty of the savages lying in ambush behind a great log to shoot him.

Apprized of this design, the incensed captain, "in a rage snatched the king by his long locke in the midst of his men," clapped a pistol to his breast, and led him forth before the multitude of his warriors. The chief then "bestowed his presents in good sadness," his people, fearing for his life, making no resistance; and Smith "still holding the King by the hayre," addressed the assembled savages with stern reproaches. "If you shoote but one Arrow," he concluded, "to shed one drop of blood of any of my men, or steale the leaste of these Beades and Copper which I spurne here before me with my foote; you shall see I will not cease revenge (if once I begin) so long as I can heare to find one of your Nation that will not deny the name of *Pumaunk*. I am not now at Rassaweak, half drowned with myre, where you tooke me prisoner. You promised to fraught my ship ere I departed, and so you shall, or I will loade her with your dead carcasses." This "angry parle," however, he ended more mildly, offering the release of their chief and his own friendship, if they would fulfil their agreements. Struck, it would seem, with equal awe and admiration, the Indians laid aside their weapons, and began to bring in great store of provisions, and singularly enough, yet, from repeated experience, not improbably, they appear to have fulfilled their agreement with real cordiality.

Meanwhile, affairs at Jamestown had gone ill, Serivener, the deputy, with ten others, having been drowned, on a stormy day, in a boat. The life of the messenger sent with the disastrous tidings to Werowocomoco, was only saved by the compassion of Pocahontas, who contrived to hide him from the executioners. The contest of their wits was presently renewed between Smith and Powhatan, the former endeavouring to surprise that chief and seize his store of provisions, (a plan again defeated by "those damned Dutchmen," says the indignant narrator,) and the latter leaving no means untied to take the life of his redoubted foe. His people not daring to attack the English openly, an attempt was made to poison them, which, however, only had the effect to make Smith and some others dis-

greably but not dangerously sick. "*Wecuttanow*, a stout young fellow, knowing he was suspected of bringing this present of poyson, with fortie or fiftie of his chiefe companions, (seeing the President with but a few men at Potanneok,) so proudly braved it, as though he expected to incounter a revenge.—Which the President perceiving, in the midst of his company did not onely beate, but spurne him like a dogge, as seorning to doe him any worse mischiefe."

The company finally returned to Jamestown with five hundred bushels of corn, obtained by long foraging and traffie among the various tribes. A portion, we regret to say, was wrested by violence from its possessors, and it is to be lamented that Smith, who certainly had a generous and compassionate heart, should have suffered considerations of policy or reprisal to commit him in acts which doubtless leave a shade upon his memory. The old chronieler of the expedition, however, seems to have viewed the matter in a very different light, and even takes much pains to exculpate the party from the charge of blameable moderation, which, he fears, "the blind world's ignorant censure" might impute to them. "These temporizing proceedings," he says, "to some may seem too charitable, to such a daily daring, trecherous people; to others not pleasing that we washed not the ground with their blouds, nor showed such strange inventions in mangling, murdering, ransacking, and destroying (as did the *Spaniards*) the simple bodies of such ignorant soules."

The dread of starvation removed by this abundant supply, Smith set the colonists at work at various useful occupations, keeping a table of their merits or demerits, and strictly enforcing the required tasks—"for there was no exeuse could prevaile to deceive him." Fresh troubles with the savages, excited by the Germans, soon broke out, and Smith, incautiously travelling alone, with no weapon but his sword, again had occasion to show all his manhood in defending his head. An ambuscade of forty warriors had been prepared to intercept him. "By the way he incountred the King of Paspallegh, a most stout strong Salvage, whose perswasions not being able to perswade him to his Ambush, seeing him onely armed but with a fauehon" (falchion) "attempted to have shot him, but the President prevented his shooting by grappling with him, and the Salvage as well prevented his drawing his fauehon, and perforce bore him into the River to have drowned him. Long they struggled in the water, till the President got such a hold on his throat, he had neare strangled the King; but having drawne his fauehon to cut off his head,

seeing how pitifully he begged his life, he led him prisoner to *James Towne* and put him in chains." Encounters with the hostile tribe, resulting in a more sanguinary manner, were finally ended by treaty. The Indians had been eager, by theft or under-handed dealings, to procure arms and ammunition; but it so happened that in drying a quantity of gun-powder on a piece of armour over the fire, it exploded, to their terrible injury, so that by "this and many such pretty Accidents," we are told, they took a wholesome distrust of the dangerous commodity, and adopted an attitude of conciliation toward the colonists.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

PLENNESS OF THE SETTLERS.—ELOQUENT SPEECH AND VIGOROUS POLICY OF SMITH.—THE NEW VIRGINIA COMPANY.—UNJUST ASSUMPTION OF POWER.—SMITH DEPOSED.—GREAT EXPEDITION DISPATCHED FROM ENGLAND: ILL-FORTUNE.  
—ARRIVAL OF NUMEROUS IMMIGRANTS.—ANARCHY.  
—SMITH REASSUMES THE PRESIDENCY.

By the energy of their brave and industrious president, the Virginian colonists had been amply supplied with food and shelter; and additional buildings and more extended agriculture betokened the prosperity of the settlement. Destruction of their store, by rotting and the rats, renewed former privations, and reawakened the old mutinous and discontented spirit. By the assistance of the Indians, and by fishing and gathering the natural products of the country, a number of the more industrious continued to keep the settlement from starvation. "But such was the strange condition of some 150, that had they not been forced, *nolens volens*, to gather and prepare their victual, they would all have starved or eaten one another." "These distracted Gluttonous Loyerers" would fain have sold to the Indians every utensil of labour or defence, for a pittance of corn, and omitted no means of cunning and mutinous demeanour to compel the president to break up the settlement and return to England.

Out of patience at their ill-behaviour, he finally resorted to severe measures. In a summary manner he punished the chief ringleader,

"one Dyer, a most crafty fellow and his ancient Maligner," and made a speech of severe admonition, evidently carefully modelled on his favourite classics, to the rest. "Fellow-soldiers," he said, "I did little think any so false to report, or so many to be so simple as to be persuaded, that I either intend to starve you, or that *Powhatan* at this present hath come for himselfe, much lesse for you; or that I would not have it, if I knew where it were to be had. Neither did I thinke any so malicious as I now see a great many; yet it shall not so passionate me but I will doe my best for my most maligner. But dream no longer of this vaine hope from *Powhatan*, nor that I will longer forbear to force you from your Idleness, and punish you if you rayle. But if I find any more runners for Newfoundland with the Pinnace, let them assuredly looke to arive at the Gallows.

"You cannot deny but that by the hazard of my life many a time I have saved yours, when (might your own wills have prevailed) you would have starved. But I protest by that God that made me, since necessitie hath not power to force you to gather for yourselves those fruites the earth doth yeeld, you shall not onely gather for your selves, but for those that are sieke. As yet, I never had more from the store than the worst of you; and all my English extraordinary provision that I have, you shall see me divide it among the sieke.

"And this Salvage trash you so scornefully repine at, being put in your mouths, your stomachs can digest it. If you would have better, you should have brought it; and therefore I will take a course that you shall provide what is to be had. The sieke shall not starve, but share equally of all our labors, and he that gathereth not every day as much as I doe, the next day shall be set beyond the river, and be banished from the Fort as a drone, till he amend his conditions or starve."

This stern and summary policy had the required effect, and the colonists set to work collecting the natural fruits of the country with such diligence that their condition was speedily improved. In the spring of 1609, Captain Samuel Argall (afterwards governor) arrived in a vessel well loaded with supplies, which the settlers converted to their own use, restitution being afterwards made. This arrival brought tidings of an important character.

Disappointed and irritated by what they considered the inexcusable neglect of their agents in failing to discover a gold mine or a passage to the Pacific, the Virginia Company visited the whole

Y.  
prisoner to *James*  
with the hostile  
ere finally ended  
or under-handed  
it so happened  
e of armour over  
that by "this and  
ook a wholesome  
an attitude of con-

H AND VIGOROUS  
PANY.—UNJUST  
—GREAT EX-  
ILL-FORTUNE.  
—ANARCHY.  
DENCY.

president, the Vir-  
d and shelter; and  
ure betokened the  
ir store, by rotting  
awakened the old  
istance of the In-  
l products of the  
inued to keep the  
strange condition  
ns volens, to gather  
arved or eaten one  
s" would fain have  
ence, for a pittance  
utinous demeanour  
ment and return to

y resorted to severe  
ne chief ringleader,

weight of their displeasure on the head of Captain Smith. "His necessarily firm and rigorous rule had made him many enemies; and the bluntness and plain-spoken truth of his communications had shocked the dignity of the authorities at home. They resolved to depose him from the command of the colony, which his almost unaided exertions had so repeatedly preserved from destruction, and the true value of which their short-sighted rapacity prevented them from appreciating."

To gratify persons of wealth and influence who had joined the company, in May, 1609, a new charter was obtained, granting absolute power of control over Virginia to the patentees, and unjustly depriving the colonists of even the shadow of self-government. Lord Delaware was appointed captain-general, and a host of inferior officers, with high-sounding titles, were also created for the benefit of the poverty-stricken colony. In the same month, nine ships, commanded by Newport, and carrying five hundred people, under command of Sir Thomas Gates and Sir George Somers, sailed from England, leaving Delaware to follow with fresh recruits. These three dignitaries, by a singular piece of folly, all embarked in the same ship, with all their papers, and a great part of the provisions. In the latter part of July, this vessel, "in the taylor of a Hericano" (hurricane) was driven from the squadron and wrecked on the Bermudas. Another foundered at sea, and the rest, in most miserable plight, and without any general commander, arrived finally at Jamestown.

Their arrival was the signal for fresh disorders. Most of the new emigrants, it would seem, were in a manner the refuse of the community—"much fitter to spoil a commonwealth than to raise or maintain one." In "this lewd company," it is said, were "many unruly Gallants, packed thither by their friends to escape ill-destinies"—broken down gentlemen, bankrupt tradesmen, and decayed serving-men. Smith having been deposed by the authorities, and their officers having been shipwrecked on the Bermudas, there was no regular government, and the people soon fell into a state of anarchy, setting up and pulling down their authorities almost daily, and modelling the government after their changeable caprice and fancy. In this strait, the more sensible entreated Smith to resume the command, seeing that no one had yet arrived to displace him. He consented with reluctance, and a vigorous exertion of his wonted authority soon reduced these unruly spirits to something like order and obedience.

## CHAPTER X.

FUTILE ATTEMPTS AT FOUNDING NEW SETTLEMENTS.—POLLY AND OBSTINACY OF THE COLONISTS.—SMITH TERRIBLY INJURED.—HE RETURNS TO ENGLAND.—HIS SERVICES TO THE COLONY.—AWFUL SUFFERING AND MORTALITY AFTER HIS DEPARTURE.

JAMESTOWN being overcrowded, it was now thought best to plant other settlements, and a hundred and twenty men, under Martin, attempted to found a colony at Nansemond; but from the inefficiency of their commander and the hostility of the Indians, the scheme proved a complete failure. A like number, under Captain West, proceeded to the Falls of James River, where they pitched upon a spot exposed to inundations and other inconveniences. To provide them a better locality, Smith agreed with Powhatan for the purchase of his town of the same name, hard by, with its fort and all the houses: "but both this excellent place and those good conditions did these furies refuse, contemning both him, his kinde care and authority." To persuade them to reason, he repaired thither with only five companions, but was compelled by their violence to betake himself to his barge, where, for nine days, he waited, hoping to find them more sensible, and much troubled at hearing the continual complaints of their violence and injustice made by the neighbouring Indians. He finally sailed down the river, but was presently recalled by news that the savages had attacked them and killed a number. Hastening back, he found them submissive enough, and removed them to the quarters he had selected, at Powhatan, where, indeed, they did not long remain, resuming, with strange obstinacy, their ill-chosen position.

The captain, as he returned, met with terrible injury from the explosion of a bag of gun-powder, which caught fire while he was asleep, burning him severely, and setting fire to his clothes. He jumped overboard to quench them, and was with difficulty saved from drowning. Carried in this wretched condition, for a hundred miles, to Jamestown, without the aid of surgery, he was laid prostrate on a bed of sickness, and some of the malcontents, it is said, "seeing the President unable to stand, and neere bereft of his senses



by reason of his torment, plotted to murder him in his bed. But his heart did faile him that should have given fire to that mercilesse pistoll."

The president, his active and energetic career thus lamentably arrested, and knowing that the arrival of any of the delayed officials would at once supplant his authority, now resolved to proceed to England for surgical aid. Early in the autumn of 1609, he set sail, leaving at Jamestown and the other Virginia posts four hundred and ninety people, well supplied with arms, provision, and the means of cultivation and improvement.

"It is almost impossible to over-estimate the services of this remarkable man in laying the foundation of the American empire. The brilliant feats of arms which he so often performed, and the deadly perils which he so often encountered, are little in comparison with the untiring zeal, the ever-watchful foresight, and the sagacious policy, by which, for years, he sustained, on his single arm, the entire weight of the existence of the colony. Incompetency of his employers, mutiny among his followers, the hostility of powerful tribes, sickness, privations, and famine itself, were all remedied or conquered by his almost unaided exertions.

"Rude and violent as he often was toward the offending natives, no white man, perhaps, ever so far conciliated the favour and gained the respect of the Indian race. His very name, long after, was a spell of power among them, and had he remained in Virginia a few years longer, the memorable massacre which, in 1622, proved an almost fatal blow to the settlements in that country, would, it is probable, never have been perpetrated. The wretched condition of the colony, immediately after his departure, may be given in the rude but graphic language of one who shared its misfortunes.

"Now we all found the losse of Captaine *Smith*, yea, his greatest maligners could now curse his losse; as for corne, provision, and contribution from the Salvages, we had nothing but mortall wounds, with clubs and arrows; as for our Hogs, Hens, Goates, Sheepe, Horse, or what lived, our commanders, officers, and the Salvages daily consumed them, (some small proportion sometimes we tasted,) till all was devoured; then swords, arms, pieces, or anything we traded with the Salvages, whose cruell fingers were so oft imbrewed in our blouds, that, what by their crueltie, our Governour's indiscretion and the losse of our ships, of five hundred, within six moneths after Captaine *Smith's* departure, there remained not past

SIX  
tur  
wa  
suc  
of  
sle  
anc  
her  
(pic  
wh  
tim  
vile  
occ  
gov  
"  
ofe  
laid  
case  
reso

MEM  
TO

HA  
Smith  
to co  
reman  
of wa

sixtie men, women, and children, most miserable and poore creatures; and those were preserved, for the most part, by rootes, herbes, walnuts, acornes, now and then a little fish; they that had starch, in such extremities made no small use of it; yea, even the very skinnes of our Horses. Nay, so great was our famine, that a Salvage we slew and buried, the poorer sort tooke hinn up againe and ate him, and so did divers one another, boyled and stewed with rootes and herbes; and one amongst the rest did kille his wife, powdered" (pickled) "her, and had eaten part of her before it was knowne, for which hee was executed as hee well deserved \* \* This was that time, which still to this day we call 'the starving time'; it were too vile to say, and scarce to bee beleevved what we endured; but the occasion was oure own, for want of providence, industrie, and government.'

"Such are the trials, sufferings, and privations, amid which, too often, the foundation of a commonwealth in the wilderness must be laid—misfortunes at times hardly avoidable, but, as in the present case, infinitely aggravated by the want of a firm, sagacious, and resolute Head."\*

---

## CHAPTER XI.

MEMOIR OF SMITH, CONTINUED AND CONCLUDED.—HIS VOYAGE TO NEW ENGLAND AND SURVEYS.—HIS SECOND EXPEDITION.—HIS ADVENTURES AMONG THE PIRATES: HIS ESCAPE.—HIS GREAT EXERTIONS FOR THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND.—INTERESTING INTERVIEW BETWEEN SMITH AND POCAHONTAS IN ENGLAND.—LAST YEARS OF SMITH.—HIS DEATH.—HIS CHARACTER AND ACHIEVEMENTS.

HAVING given a brief account of the early adventures of Captain Smith, (whose life, more nearly than that of any other man, seems to connect the fortunes of the Old World with the New,) having remarked to what admirable purpose his training in the rough school of war, of travel, and of adversity served in his career as a colonist,

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

it may not be amiss to give a few particulars of the remainder of his active and useful life—especially as that life, to its end, was mainly and unweariedly devoted to the task of promoting American discovery and colonization. In March of 1614, we again find him, in company with some merchants of London, fitting out an expedition to New England, in two vessels, one of which he commanded in person. By the last of April, he arrived at the island of Manhegin, on the coast of Maine, where he built seven boats, and made an unsuccessful attempt at whale-fishing. The crews, with much better success, were therefore set to work at catching and curing cod, while Smith, with eight men, in a small boat, surveyed and mapped out the coast, from Penobscot to Cape Cod. In his chart, he had mostly given the original Indian names, but, with a natural desire to commemorate his own adventures, had inserted a few others drawn from that fertile source. Cape Ann was called Cape Tragabigzanda, in honour of his young mistress of Constantinople, and the Isles of Shoals were laid down as “The 3 Turkes’ Heads.” At his request, however, Prince (afterwards king) Charles, changed most of these names to those of English localities, which are still retained.

Having procured by traffic an immense quantity of beaver and other furs from the Indians, (with whom, also, he had two fights,) in August he returned to England, leaving his consort, Captain Thomas Hunt, to continue the fishing and carry the cargo to Spain. That scoundrel, at his departure, in the words of Smith, “betrayed foure and twentie of those poore Salvages aboard his Ship, and most dishonestly and inhumanely, for their kind treatment of me and all our men, carried them with him to *Maligo*” (Malaga), “and there for a little private gain sold those silly Salvages for rials of eight; but this vilde act kept him ever after from any more imploiment to those parts.” To this cruel and treacherous act, as to those of a similar nature, committed by the French in their voyages to Canada, may be attributed much of the hostility experienced by later comers in settling the country.

At Plymouth, to which Smith next came, he found the people still “interested in the dead patent of this unregarded countrey” (New England), and was easily induced to undertake a voyage for the company of that port, rejecting, with honourable promptitude, the proposals of the Virginia Company, who would now gladly have availed themselves of his services. In March, 1615, he sailed for America with two small vessels, on a voyage which was but one

series of misfortunes. His ship being wrecked and dismantled, he was compelled to put back, and in June, in a little vessel of only sixty tons, resumed the enterprise. Falling in with an English pirate of thirty-six guns, he defied her so bravely with only four, that the crew were amazed until they recognized Smith, with whom some of them had served years before, probably in the Eastern wars. They begged him to take the command of their ship (which they had seized at Tunis,) but he declined the offer, and pursued his voyage. Near Fayal, he had a fight with two French pirates, whom he compelled his crew to resist, threatening to blow up the vessel rather than yield, as long as there was a charge of powder left aboard. Escaping from this danger, at Flores he was captured by four French men-of-war, the commander of which, despite his commission under the Great Seal of England, plundered his little vessel, and then dismissed her, reserving Smith, as a precaution against his revenge, as a prisoner. During the whole summer, these rovers cruised about, capturing and plundering many vessels, keeping Smith a prisoner in the cabin, when they took any English vessels, but gladly availing themselves of his courage and seamanship in their fights with the Spaniards.

The very different light in which the worthy captain regarded these several transactions, may best be inferred from his own description of the capture of two prizes of the different nations. "The next wee tooke," he says (in a journal, which, with a particular description of New England, he wrote aboard the Frenchman), "was a small Englishman of *Pool*, from *New found land*: the great *Cabben* at this present was my Prison, from whence I could see them pillage these poore men of all they had and halfe their fishe; when hee was gone they sold his poore clothes at the Main Mast by an outcry," (auction), "which scarce gave each man seven pence a peece." Mark the change in his tone in narrating the capture of a rich Spanish Galleon—"a *West Indies* man of warre, a forenoone wee fought with her and then tooke her, with one thousand, one Hundred Hides, fiftie chests of Cutchanele, fourteene coffers of wedges of Silver, eight thousand Rialls of Eight, and six coffers of the king of *Spaines* treasure, besides the good pillage and rich Coffers of many rich *Passen-gers*. Two moneths they kept me in this manner to manage their fights against the Spaniards and bee a prisoner when they tooke any English." The very imperfect tone of public morality at this age is sufficiently evinced in the complacency with which Smith—justly

regarded as an uncommonly honest and upright man—views these scenes of piratical plunder—always provided that the subject of them were not an Englishman.

His captors promised him ten thousand crowns as the reward of his skill and valour; yet when they arrived at Rochelle, knowing his determined character, and dreading his vengeance, still kept him prisoner. In a terrible storm, however, which drove them all under hatches, (and which, that same night, destroyed the ship, with half her company), he made his escape in a small boat, and, after being driven to sea and enduring great peril and suffering, was found, half dead, by some Fowlers, on an oozy island, and was brought ashore and kindly relieved.

Returning home, he published a book on New England, which he had written to beguile the weariness of his captivity, and, with extraordinary activity, travelling through the west of England, distributed seven thousand copies of it among people of note and influence. "But all," he says, "availed no more than to hew rocks with Oyster shells." He received, however, an abundance of promises of aid in the enterprise of settling that country, and was invested by the Plymouth company with the title of "Admiral of New England." These encouragements all ended in words, no active steps being taken for the furtherance of the object which he had so much at heart.

A most interesting interview between Smith and Pocahontas, about this time, is recorded. That noble-hearted princess, despite the great affection which her father bore to her, had incurred his displeasure by her repeated acts of kindness in behalf of the English, and was living exiled from his court, under the protection of Japazaws, chief of the Potomacs. That treacherous dignitary, bribed by a copper kettle, entrapped her on board the vessel of Captain Argall, who, notwithstanding her tears and lamentations, made her prisoner, and took her to Jamestown—informing her father that she could be ransomed only by the delivery of numerous arms, &c., which his people had stolen from the English. "This unwelcome newes," says the chronicler, "much troubled *Powhatan*, because hee loved both his daughter and our commodities well." After an alternation of war and negotiation, the matter was at last happily settled in a manner more agreeable than either.

"Long before this," continues the narrative, "Master John Rolfe, an honest Gentleman and of good behavior, had bene in love with Pocahontas, and she with him, which resolution Sir Thomas Dale

well approved; the bruit (report) of this marriage soon came to the knowledge of *Powhatan*, a thing acceptable unto him, as appeared by his sudden consent, for within ten daies, he sent *Opachisco*, an old Vnclé of hers, and two of his sons, to see the manner of the marriage, and to doe in that behalfe what they were requested, for the confirmation thereof, as his deputie; which was accordingly done about the first of Aprill," (1613), "and ever since we have had friendly trade and commerce" (intercourse) "with *Powhatan* himselfe, as all his subjects."

In 1616, the Lady Rebecca (as she was now christened), with her husband and child, accompanied Sir Thomas to England. She had learned English, and adopted Christianity, and "was become," says the narrator, with unconscious national satire, "very formall and civill after our English manner." Captain Smith, on learning of her arrival, lost no time in commending her to the attention of persons of influence, and, in a studied memorial to the queen, recapitulated the many services rendered by Pocahontas to himself and to the Virginian colony, and besought her favour for the interesting stranger. "During the time of two or three yeeres, she, next under God," he says, "was still the instrument to preserve this colonie from death, famine, and utter confusion, which, if in those days it had once been dissolved, *Virginia* might have laine as it was at our first arrivall to this day."

Unhappily, on account of the ridiculous jealousy of James I., (who, it is said, exhibited much indignation against Rolfe, for having presumed, being a subject, to intermarry with the blood-royal) the captain, when he went to see her, fearing, by too great familiarity, to prejudice her interest at court, thought best to salute her with ceremonious gravity. At this strange reception, her affectionate heart was at once grieved and indignant. With a species of Indian sullenness, and "without any word," he says, "she turned about, obscured her face, as not seeming well-contented. In that humour," he continues, "her husband, with divers others, we all left her two or three houres," (how could he!) "repenting myself to have writ shee could speake English. \* \* \* But not long after she began to talke, and remembered mee well what courtesies shee had done; saying, 'Yon did promise *Powhatan* what was yours should bee his, and he the like to yon; you called him father, being in his land a stranger, and by the same reason so must I doe you;' which though I would have excused, that I durst not allow of that title,

because she was a King's daughter, with a well set countenance she said, 'Were you not afraid to come into my father's cuntry and cause feare in him and all his people (but mee), and feare you here I should call you father? I tell you then I will, and you shall call mee childe, and so I will bee for ever and ever your countryman.'

This prudent conduct of Smith and her other friends, it would seem, allayed the absurd jealousy of James; for, he continues, "it pleased both the King and Queene's maiesty honorably to esteeme her, accompanied by that honorable Lady, the Lady *De la Warre*, and that honorable Lord, her husband, and divers other persons of good quality, both publikely at the maskes and otherwise, to her great satisfaction and content, which doubtless she would have deserved, had she ever lived to arrive in Virginia." She died at Gravesend, on her way home, in the following year, at the age of twenty-two, leaving a son, from whom a numerous race of descendants have been derived. "Among them was the celebrated John Randolph of Roanoke—justly prouder of his descent from the old imperial race of Powhatan, illustrated by the more gentle heroism of his daughter, than he could have been of the noblest derivation from European ancestry."

In 1617, Captain Smith had been assured by the Plymouth Company that he should be sent out, with a fleet of twenty ships, to found a colony in New England; but this promise never was fulfilled, though he was unwearied in his exertions to incite his countrymen to American enterprise. When, in 1622, news came of the terrible massacre devised by Opechancanough, (see chapter XIII.) he proposed to the Virginia Company that if they would but allow him an hundred and thirty men, "to imploy onely in ranging the Countries and tormenting" (harassing) "the Salvages," their whole territory should be kept in peace and security; but they rejected the offer, as involving a necessity for too great expense. Another terrible massacre, a few years later, was the result of this short-sighted policy.

In the following year, we find the captain before a royal commission, giving his evidence and opinion concerning the unfortunate colony with much shrewdness, candour, and charity. Of the last few years of his life little is known. He lived, it is believed, in quiet repose in the city of London, employed chiefly in writing and publishing. He was engaged on a "History of the Sea," when, in 1631, death closed a career in which utility and romance were perhaps



more closely and continuously united than in any other of which a record has survived.

"In the whole history of adventure, discovery, and exploration, there are few names more honourable or more deservedly famous than that of Captain John Smith. To us he has always appeared (to his very name and title) the finest and most perfect exemplar of a bold Englishman that ever figured on the stage of the world. In his character, bravery, fortitude, sagacity, and sound common sense were so happily tempered and united as to command instinctive respect; while the tolerably-infused tincture of impetuosity, prejudice, and self-will, seems only to lend a piquaney to his worthier traits, and more finely to set off the national characteristics. His love of enterprise and his daring, chivalrous spirit, were tempered with a judgment, moderation, and humanity, which, in so rough a career, have never been surpassed. The cutter-off of Turks' heads, the desperate Indian fighter, and the sworn foe to the Spaniard is all compassion and sympathy when the 'Silly Salvages' are kidnaped by his treacherous countryman, or when the 'poore clothes' of 'a small Englishman' are sold by outcry at the main-mast of a pirate.

"In early youth, his grand passion was for fighting and renown, no matter on what field, so that a man of honour might engage. In maturer years, the noble passion for founding nations and spreading civilization took a yet firmer possession of his soul. 'Who,' he claims in his manly address to the idlers of England, 'who can desire more content that hath small means, or only his merit, to advance his fortunes, than to tread and plant that ground he hath purchased by the hazard of his life; if hee have but the taste of vertue and magnanimitie, what to such a mind can bee more pleasant than planting and building a foundation for his posterity, got from the rude earth by God's blessing and his owne industry, without prejudice to any; if hee have any graine of faith or zeale in Religion, what can hee, doe lesse hurtfull to any or more agreeable to God, than to seecke to convert those poore Salvages to know Christ and humanity, whose labors, with discretion, will triply reward thy charge and paine; what so truly sutes with honor and honesty as the discovering things vnknawne, crecting Townes, peopling countries, informing the ignorant, reforming things unjust, teaching vertue and gaine to our native mother Country; to find imploiment for those that are idle, because they know not what to doe; so fare from wronging any, as to cause posterity to re-



member them, and remembering thee, ever honor that remembrance with praise.'

"The full merits of Smith, as the earliest and most indefatigable promoter of the colonisation of New England, have never been adequately appreciated. By his personal exertions in the survey, delineation, and description of that neglected region, and by the continual publications which, at great pains and expense, he industriously circulated in England, he awakened the public interest in an enterprise which, otherwise, for many years might have been slighted and deferred. He lived to see the foundations of a great nation firmly laid, both at the south and the north, and, though like many other great projectors and labourers in the same field of action, he reaped no personal advantage (but rather much loss) from his exertion and enterprise, he continued, to the day of his death, to regard the two colonies with the fond partiality of a parent, and to do all he could for their advancement. 'By that acquaintance I have with them,' he writes, 'I call them my Children, for they have beene my Wife, my Hawks, Hounds, my Cards, my Dice, and in total, my best content, as indifferent to my heart as my left hand to my right. And notwithstanding all those miracles of disasters which have crossed both them and me, yet, were there not an Englishman remaining (as, God be thanked, notwithstanding the massacre, there are some thousands); I would yet begin againe with as small meanes as I did at first, not that I have any secret encouragement, (I protest) more than lamentable experience,' &c.

"It only remains to add that, although, so far as we are informed, never married, the gallant captain was, and deservedly, a general favourite with the ladies. There seems to have been a certain manhood and kindness in his very look, which, almost at a glance, conciliated to him the good-will of the fairer and weaker portion of humanity. These favours, so flattering to the natural vanity of man, he bears worthily, and with no offence to the givers, ever speaking with the utmost modesty and gratitude of the kindness he had so often experienced at their hands. His acknowledgment to the sex (introduced in his dedication to the Duchess of Richmond) reminds us of the celebrated eulogy pronounced by Ledyard. 'I confesse,' he writes, 'my hand, though able to wield a weapon among the Barbarous, yet well may tremble in handling a pen before so many *Judicious* \* \* \* Yet my comfort is, that heretofore honorable and virtuous *Ladies*, and comparable but among them selves, have offered

me rescue and protection in my greatest dangers; even in forraine parts I have felt reliefe from that sex.—The beauteous Lady Tragabigzanda, when I was a slave to the Turkes, did all she could to secure me' (*i. e.* make me secure). 'When I overcame the *Bashaw* of *Nalbritz*, in *Tartaria*, the charitable Lady *Callamata* supplied my necessities. In the utmost of many extremities that blessed *Pokahontas*, the great King's daughter of Virginia, oft saved my life. When I escaped the crueltie of Pirats and most furious stormes, a long time alone in a small Boat at Sea, and driven ashore in France, the good Lady *Madam Chanoyes* bountifully assisted me.'\*\*

---

## CHAPTER XII.

ARRIVAL OF GATES.—MISERABLE CONDITION OF THE COLONY.  
 —JAMESTOWN DESERTED.—ARRIVAL OF LORD DELAWARE;  
 OF SIR THOMAS DALE.—EXERTIONS OF THE COMPANY.  
 —INCREASED IMMIGRATION.—THE CULTURE OF TOBACCO  
 INTRODUCED, AND EAGERLY PURSUED.—TYRANNY OF  
 ARGALL: HIS DISPLACEMENT.—GREAT ACCESSION OF  
 IMMIGRANTS.—WIVES PURCHASED WITH TOBACCO.  
 —LIBERAL CONCESSIONS TO THE COLONISTS.

THE lamentable condition of the Virginian colony, after the departure of Smith, has been described. Thirty of the settlers, seizing a ship, had turned pirates, and the greater part of the remainder perished of famine, disease or Indian hostility. When Sir Thomas Gates and his companions, who had been wrecked on Bermuda, arrived at Virginia in vessels of their own construction, (May 24th, 1610.) out of four hundred and ninety, whom Smith had left, only sixty remained, and those in a condition of such misery that their end was almost at hand. There seemed no alternative but to sail with all speed for Newfoundland, and there seek assistance from the fishermen; and, accordingly, early in June, (resisting the miserable desire of the settlers to fire their deserted dwellings,) Gates, with his people and the relics of the Virginian colony, proceeded down the river.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

The very next morning (June 10th, 1610) they learned that Lord Delaware had arrived on the coast with supplies, and, putting about, returned with all speed to Jamestown. The new governor, a man of high character and good judgment, by his wholesome rule, and by the supplies which he brought, soon restored comparative comfort to the little colony, which, at this time, including the company of Gates and his own emigrants, did not exceed two hundred souls; but on account of illness, was compelled, the same year, to quit Virginia, leaving the administration in the hands of Mr. Percy. In May of the next year, (1611,) Sir Thomas Dale, dispatched thither with fresh supplies, arrived, and assumed the government.

Sir Thomas Gates, who had also repaired to England, by his urgent representations, excited the company to fresh exertions, and in August of the same year, with six ships, bearing three hundred more emigrants and a hundred cattle, he arrived at Jamestown, and assumed the office of governor. The colony now numbered seven hundred.

In 1612, by a fresh patent, the Bermudas and all other islands within three hundred leagues of Virginia, were included in that province, and lotteries were authorized for the benefit of the company. The prosperity of the colony improved, and its peaceful relations with the Indians seemed secured by the marriage of Rolfe and Pocahontas, which took place about this time—a propitious event, resulting in the alliance not only of *Powhatan* and his people, but of the Chickahominies and other tribes.

In the account of Acadia, mention has been made of the atrocious and piratical expedition from Virginia, under Captain Samuel Argall, destroying the little colony of Port Royal, the first settlement of the French in North America. That unprincipled commander, on his return, also entered the harbour of Manhattan (New York), and enforced a show of submission from the little colony of Hollanders inhabiting the island of that name. In 1614, Sir Thomas, appointing Dale as governor, returned to England; and the latter, two years afterwards, leaving in turn George Yeardley as deputy, followed the example. By far the most memorable fact in this stage of the colony's progress, is the commencement of the culture of tobacco, the use of which, adopted from the Indians, had been introduced into England. With such industry did the prospect of a profitable reward for labour inspire the colonists, that the very streets of Jamestown were planted with tobacco.

In 1617, the office of deputy-governor was conferred by the company on that rash and unscrupulous man, Samuel Argall; and the death of Lord Delaware—who, embarking with a considerable company, the same year, for Virginia, died on the voyage—left his natural tyranny and arrogance without a check. The colonists, ere long, were, in effect, completely enslaved by their arbitrary governor, who used his office only as a means for his private aggrandizement, and their very lives were in danger from his fury. But on the report of these excesses reaching England, the culprit, after a spirited contest between the different factions in the company, was displaced, and Yeardley, whose mild and benevolent temper had made him popular with the settlers, was appointed to the command. His just and considerate rule soon restored quiet.

The company, desirous to avoid such abuses for the future, had checked the authority of the governor by that of the council, and actually admitted the colonists to a species of self-government. The governor, with the council, and certain representatives of the people, were permitted to enact some laws, which, however, were not to be valid, unless ratified by the corporation at home. The officers of the company, and in especial, Sir Edwin Sandys, the treasurer, supported by the liberal party, now used great exertions for the increase of the colony and the extension of its liberties. In 1619, there were only six hundred settlers in Virginia, and during a single year that energetic officer dispatched thither more than twelve hundred additional emigrants. An hundred and fifty young women, of good character, were shipped to the province, and were married with great readiness—the husbands paying the company each an hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco or more, for the expense of their transportation. By 1621, three thousand five hundred emigrants had reached Virginia; and, in the same year, with liberality and foresight, rare indeed for the age, the company made an ordinance conferring on that province a settled and, in a manner, independent government. The governor and council, indeed, were to be appointed by the company, but a legislative assembly was to be chosen by the people, with power to enact laws, subject to the approval of the company—those emanating from London, in like manner, to be valid only on ratification by the assembly. Courts of law, strictly following those of England, were required to be instituted, and the great blessing of civil liberty—as great, perhaps, as that enjoyed by Englishmen at home—was secured to the first American colony. This

magnanimous concession, due to the generous efforts of Southampton, Sandys, and others of the liberal party, was one of the first and most important fruits of that spirit of progress at that time just beginning to make itself felt in the English councils.

---

### CHAPTER XIII.

WYATT GOVERNOR.—NEGRO SLAVERY INTRODUCED.—DEATH OF POWHATAN AND SUCCESSION OF OPECHANCANOUGH.—PLOT DEVISED BY THE LATTER.—TERRIBLE MASSACRE OF THE ENGLISH.—DEPRESSION OF THE COLONY.—USURPATION OF THE PATENT BY JAMES I.—PRUDENT POLICY TOWARD THE COLONISTS.

SIR FRANCIS WYATT, bearing the invaluable gift of a constitution, arrived in Virginia, as governor, in 1621. The year previous, unhappily, had been distinguished by the first introduction of slavery into the colony—a Dutch vessel having entered the James River, and brought twenty negroes for sale. For a long time, indeed, this nefarious traffic made little progress—being principally carried on by the people who commenced it, and being rather connived at than favoured by the government of the province.

The agricultural progress of Virginia had been grievously retarded by unsuccessful efforts at the production of wine and silk—articles of luxury, the least suited to a new territory and a sparse population. The profitable culture of tobacco, and its sudden importance as the staple of Virginian agriculture, have been noticed; and that of cotton, first commenced as an experiment, in 1621, marks an era in the history of American agriculture vastly more important yet.

King Powhatan, who, after the English alliance of his daughter, had been the firm friend of the colonists, died full of years, in 1618, the year after the death of Pocahontas. Opechancanough, his younger brother, succeeded him in the government of thirty tribes which he had ruled. Apprehensions of Indian hostility, from a long interval of peace, had gradually died out, and the settlers, eager for the cultivation of tobacco, continually pushed their plantations further into the wilderness and more remote from mutual aid. So completely

was apprehension allayed, that fire-arms, to furnish which to the savages had formerly been denounced as an offence worthy of death, were now freely supplied them for hunting and fowling.

It is not easy to arrive at the causes which induced the Indian population, apparently so friendly and confiding, to resolve on an indiscriminate massacre of the English. Doubtless, like all other native tribes, they were jealous of continual intrusions on their ancient domain. It is said, also, that Opechancanough was mortally offended by the killing of one of his favourite councillors, called "Jack of the Feather." He may also have remembered, with deep vindictiveness, how Captain Smith, many years before, had held him "by the hayre of his head" before his assembled warriors. Certainly, with almost incredible secrecy and concert, he and his people plotted the destruction of the whites. On the 22d of March, 1622, about noon, the Indians, who, up to the last moment, maintained the appearance of cordiality and friendship, suddenly and simultaneously fell on the English settlements in every quarter. In a single hour, three hundred and forty-seven of the colonists, including six of the council, were massacred; and Jamestown, with some adjoining plantations, was saved only by the timely warning of an Indian who wished to rescue an English friend from the intended extermination. The savages, who seem to have manifested extraordinary ferocity, in many instances, rose from the very tables which had been spread for their dinners, to murder their unsuspecting hosts. "Neither yet," says the old chronicler, "did these beasts spare those among the rest well knowne unto them, from whom they had daily received many benefits, but spitefully also massacred them without any remorse or pitie; being in this more fell than Lions and Dragons, which (as Histories record) have preserved their Benefactors; such is the force of good deeds, though done to cruell Beasts, to take humanitie upon them; but these misereants put on a more unnatural brutishnesse than beasts," &c.

Great discouragement fell on the afflicted colony. The plantations were reduced to a tenth of their number. Sickness prevailed, and the planters were compelled to direct their attention from agriculture to war with the enemy. The mother-country, with honourable promptitude, contributed liberally to the aid and comfort of the unfortunate settlers.

The company, which had expended great sums in planting and sustaining the colony, but which had reaped no profit from its enter-

prise, was now of importance chiefly as the theatre of debate between the liberal and arbitrary factions. To suppress the former, soon became an object of royal jealousy, and, in 1622, the king made an unsuccessful attempt to control the election of a treasurer. In the following year, after the pretence of legal investigation, the patent was declared forfeited, and the king resumed the authority into his own hands. This transaction, though committed under the guise of law, cannot be regarded otherwise than as a piece of royal usurpation, dictated by jealousy at the republican tendencies of the majority of the company. The foreign government of Virginia was now placed in the hands of a committee of partisans of the court, which was invested with the same powers as the late Virginia Company. This change, however, brought no immediate disadvantage to the colonists, whose liberties were, though not expressly, suffered to remain on the same footing as before. Sir Francis Wyatt was confirmed in the office of governor.

Having thus described the tardy and unprosperous settlement of Virginia, and the final dissolution of the company to whose efforts its existence as a colony was due, we leave, for the present, the ensuing particulars of its early history, to relate that of the commonwealth next founded on these shores—a commonwealth whose honour, to all time, will be, that it was founded on principle rather than on profit, and from its very inception, preferred liberty, though with exile and suffering, to unjust restraint, though sweetened with the comforts of country and of home.



# THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND.

## CHAPTER I.

UNSUCCESSFUL ATTEMPTS OF THE PLYMOUTH COMPANY TO SETTLE NEW ENGLAND.—PERSECUTION OF THE NON-CONFORMISTS.—RETREAT OF ROBINSON'S CONGREGATION TO HOLLAND: THEIR HIGH CHARACTER: THEIR RESOLUTION TO PLANT A COLONY: THEIR LOYALTY AND COURAGE: DEPARTURE FROM DELFT HAVEN.

THE patent issued by James I. for the formation of two companies to settle North America has been mentioned, and the plantation of a colony in Virginia by the first of them described. The other, of weaker resources and less enterprise, experienced in their attempts to settle New England only a succession of miserable failures. Their first vessel, in 1606, was captured by the Spaniards. In the following year, two others, bearing forty-five emigrants, were again dispatched thither, and, in August, came to the mouth of the Kennebee. A small village, slightly fortified, was built, and, in the beginning of winter, the ships returned. The season proved exceedingly severe; part of their provisions were lost by a fire; their governor, George Popham, died; and when, the next year, the vessels returned with supplies, the colonists had become so discouraged as to resolve on forsaking the plantation. Thus, the first attempt at a settlement in New England was nipped in the bud.

The discouragement caused by this ill-success was in some measure allayed by the enterprise and exertions of Smith, who, in 1614, surveyed and mapped out a great portion of the coast of Northern Virginia, on which he first bestowed the title of New England. The crime of his partner, Hunt, in kidnapping a number of the Indians, and selling them as slaves in Spain, has been mentioned, as well as the strenuous but unavailing exertions of Smith, for years afterwards, to effect the colonization of these neglected



regions. Great schemes, indeed, were formed, and lavish promises were made by the Plymouth Company; and the honourable title of "Admiral of New England," bestowed, in perpetuity, on Smith, seemed to indicate a confidence in great ultimate success. All, however, vanished in mere words, though the company, in 1620, procured from the king a renewal of their patent, with such almost unlimited powers of government and extent of territory as had never before been conferred by the crown on any subject or association. The settlement of New England was due to a spirit more earnest and an aim more honourable than even those by which its warmest promoters had hitherto been actuated.

The persecution of non-conformists, commenced in the reign of Elizabeth, was carried, under that of James I., to such an unendurable extreme, that a voluntary exile from England seemed at last the only resource of the aggrieved party. Even this forlorn alternative, under the despotic rule of the House of Stewart, was denied them; and great suffering and long separation were endured by those who sought to fly the country. In 1608, the congregation of the Rev. John Robinson, an eminent preacher of the Independent Church, after several unsuccessful attempts, attended with ill-usage and separation, contrived to get clear of England. They settled at Leyden, under the more humane and liberal government of Holland, and during a protracted residence at that city, by their good conduct, gained universal respect. "These English," said the magistrates, "have lived amongst us ten years, and yet we never had any suit or accusation against any of them."

Their church, which, at the end of that time, numbered three hundred communicants, was of a strictly independent government; and, to their honour, a provision of their creed declared a doctrine rare, and, indeed, almost unheard of at the day—that ecclesiastical censure should involve no temporal penalty. Their cause and their doctrines, defended by the learning and eloquence of their pastor, were viewed with general respect and sympathy.

Wedded to industry, no less by necessity than principle, they had learned mechanical arts, and honestly, though hardly, supported their families. They never, indeed, became in any way assimilated with the Dutch in language or in manners, and ever cherished an affectionate feeling for the land from which they had been so rudely driven. The dissoluteness of manners prevalent among certain classes of the community in which they were settled, filled them with

apprehension for the morals of their children; and it was at last considered advisable by them to seek a permanent asylum and a national home, even if it could only be found in some yet untrodden wilderness. It was proposed by the more enterprising, that they should seek "some of those unpeopled countries of America, which are fruitful and fit for habitation, being devoid of all civill inhabitants, where there are only salvage and brutish people, which range up and down little otherwise than the wild beasts."

To this scheme the more timid of the company opposed many objections, and especially the cruelty of the savages, and their horrible treatment of their prisoners. "It was answered," says Bradford,\* "that all great and honorable actions were accompanied with great difficulties, and must be both enterprised and overcome with answerable courages. It was granted the dangers were great, but not desperate, and the difficulties were many, but not invincible. It might be that some of the things feared might never befall them; others, by providence, care, and the use of good means, might in a great measure be prevented; and all of them, through the help of God, by patience and fortitude, might either be borne or overcome." This noble reply appears to have silenced the objectors; for, after several days passed in prayer and humiliation, it was resolved that the little congregation of exiles should seek a final home, whether for life or death, in the American wilderness.

On learning their determination, the Dutch, who held their courage and virtue in high esteem, were anxiously desirous that the proposed settlement should be made in the name of their own nation, and made handsome offers to that end; but the love of country prevailed, and it was resolved that wherever the company might found a state, it should be but one more province for the crown, to which, in despite of its wanton oppression, they were still blindly, but loyally attached. The most eligible spot, if permission could be obtained to remove thither, seemed some uninhabited part of that vast and indefinite tract, then known as Virginia. Through the influence of Sandys, permission to settle was obtained from the Virginia Company, and through that of the tolerant Archbishop Usher, a sort of tacit connivance at their scheme was wrung from the king. On the most hard and exorbitant terms, absorbing the labours and profits of the projected colony for seven years, the requisite means were obtained from a company of London merchants. A little ship,

\* Second governor of Plymouth colony.

called the Speedwell, of sixty tons, had been purchased, and another, the May-Flower, of one hundred and eighty, had been hired in England. The first of these was brought to Delft Haven, a port a little south of Leyden, whither, on the 21st of July, 1622, a portion of the congregation, who were to sail, accompanied by most of the remainder, repaired. "So they left that pleasant and goodly city, which had been their resting place near twelve years. But they knew they were *Pilgrims*, and looked not much on those things, but lifted their eyes to heaven, their dearest country, and quieted their spirits. \* \* \* The next day, the wind being fair, they went on board, and their friends with them; when, truly doleful was the sight of that sad and mournful parting; to see what sighs, and sobs, and prayers did sound amongst them; what tears did gush from every eye and pithy speeches pierced each other's heart; that sundry of the Dutch strangers that stood on the quay as spectators, could not refrain from tears." Their pastor, Robinson, who, with a portion of his people, remained, "falling down on his knees, and they all with him, with watery cheeks commended them, with most fervent prayers, to the Lord and his blessing; and then, with mutual embraces and many tears, they took their leaves of one another, which proved to be their last leave to many of them."\*

---

## CHAPTER II.

STORMY VOYAGE OF THE PILGRIMS TO AMERICA.—THEY ARRIVE AT CAPE COD: ARE COMPELLED TO DISEMBARK: INSTITUTE A REPUBLIC.—THEIR SIMPLE CONSTITUTION.  
—CARVER ELECTED GOVERNOR.—ABSENCE OF PERSONAL AMBITION AMONG THE PURITAN SETTLERS.

THE May-Flower and the Speedwell, carrying an hundred and twenty passengers, on the 5th of August, 1620, sailed from Southampton in company. Compelled, by a leak in the latter, they put back into Dartmouth, whence, on the 21st, they again took their departure. After getting a hundred leagues to sea, they were again obliged, through the timidity of her captain and some of the com-

\* Bradford's History of Plymouth Colony.

pany, to return to Plymouth. Here they disembarked the few who were too fearful to see the adventure to an end, and on the 6th of September, the remainder, one hundred and one in number, going aboard the *May-Flower*, bade their final farewell to England. The weather, for a time pleasant, at length, with the approach of winter, became adverse, bringing "many contrary winds and fierce storms, with which their ship was shrewdly shaken." The *May-Flower* began to leak, and one of her main beams bent and cracked. Despite these discouragements, it was resolved to hold on. One of the passengers, by good fortune, had taken among his effects a large screw, "by means of which the said beam was brought into his place again. And so," continues the pilgrim journalist, "after many boisterous stormes, in which they could make no sail, but were forced to lie at hull for many days together, after long beating at sea, they fell in with the land called Cape Cod; the which being made and certainly known to be it, they were not a little joyfil."

On the 10th of November, after a weary passage of sixty-three days, the ship doubled the extremity of Cape Cod, and anchored in a good harbour, on which Provincetown now stands. It had been agreed that the pilgrims should be landed somewhere in the neighbourhood of the Hudson, but the captain of the *May-Flower*, bribed, it is said, by the Dutch, who were jealous of intrusion on their territories, pleading the low state of the provision as an excuse, insisted on landing them immediately. Being compelled to comply, and finding themselves without the limits of the Virginia Company's jurisdiction, and thus destitute of a government, they at once set to work to construct one; and, on the very day after their arrival, (November 11th,) with a reservation of allegiance to the crown, proceeded to erect a democracy in its simplest and most explicit sense. All the men of the company, forty-one in number, signed the following brief but comprehensive instrument:

"In the name of God, amen; we, whose names are underwritten, the loyal subjects of our dread sovereign, King James, having undertaken, for the glory of God and advancement of the Christian faith, and honor of our king and country, a voyage to plant the first colony in the northern parts of Virginia, do by these presents, solemnly and mutually, in the presence of God and one of another, covenant and combine ourselves together, into a civil body politic, for our better ordering and preservation, and furtherance of the ends aforesaid; and by virtue hereof to enact, constitute and frame such just and equal laws, ordinances, acts, constitutions and offices, from time to time, as shall be thought most convenient for the good of the colony. Unto which we promise all due obedience and submission."

Y.

sed, and another,  
en hired in Eng-  
en, a port a little  
22, a portion of  
by most of the  
and goodly city,  
years. But they  
on those things,  
try, and quieted  
I being fair, they  
en, truly doleful  
to see what sighs,  
at tears did gush  
her's heart; that  
ay as spectators,  
inson, who, with  
n his knees, and  
them, with most  
en, with mutual  
of one another,  
1."\*

ERICA.—THEY  
DISEMBARK:  
NSTITUTION.  
E OF PER-  
ETTLERS.

n hundred and  
ed from South-  
latter, they put  
gain took their  
they were again  
me of the com-

Such was the plain and simple form of the first written constitution, emanating from the popular will, ever adopted in America. It may be regarded as the basis of that vast superstructure of freedom which has since been gradually reared in the Western Hemisphere.

Mr. John Carver, a gentleman of high integrity and amiable character, and one of the chief promoters of the enterprise, was forthwith chosen governor—an office which, in the present juncture of affairs, could have offered little temptation to ambition. "In the early history of New England, it may be remarked, we do not find, as in that of nearly all other European settlements, the name of any one man greatly conspicuous above his companions, or exclusively identified with the foundation of the commonwealth. The names of Cortes and Pizarro, of Champlain and Penn and Smith, are each inseparably associated with the history of the countries whose destinies, for good or evil, they had so large a share in shaping; while, in the less ambitious annals of Puritan colonization, the memories of Carver, Bradford, and Winslow—of Endicott and Winthrop—of Standish, Mason, and Church, with those of many other associate worthies, are fused and blended with the common history of the country.

"The cause of this distinction is not difficult to define. Principle, rather than personal ambition, whether of the more selfish or generous kind, was the main spring and prompting motive of the actors who figured in those once neglected scenes of enterprise; and all thought of private advancement or renown was for the time merged in a spirit of community, such as only the strong prompting of religious enthusiasm can maintain."

---

### CHAPTER III.

DREARY APPEARANCE OF NEW ENGLAND.—EXPLORING PARTY.  
—STRANGE INJUSTICE TO THE INDIANS.—THE VOYAGE TO  
PLYMOUTH HARBOUR.—SKIRMISH WITH THE SAVAGES.  
—SETTLEMENT OF PLYMOUTH FOUNDED.—GREAT SUFFERING  
AND MORTALITY AMONG THE PILGRIMS.

URGED by the impatience of the master of the *May-Flower*, the little band of exiles busied themselves in finding a place for immediate disembarkation and settlement. Nothing could have been more

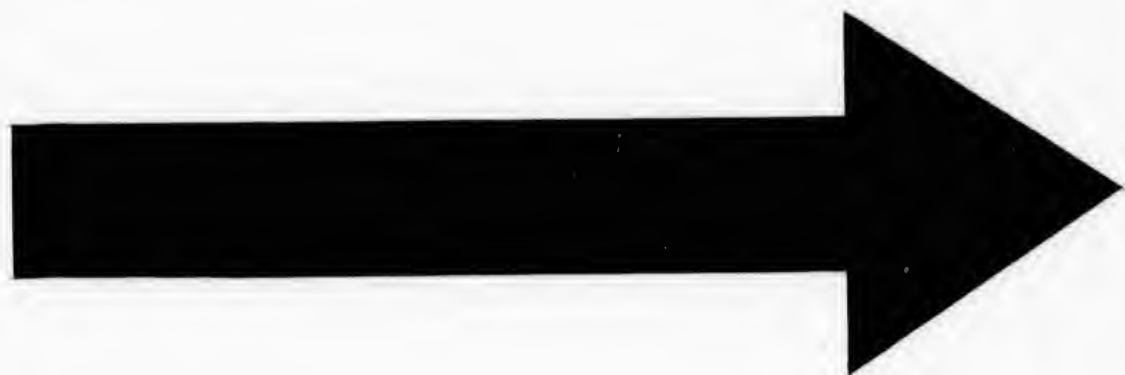
dreary or desolate than the appearance of the country they had touched on—of a stern and sombre character in the pleasantest season, and now doubly severe in the gloom of an approaching winter. "Which way soever," says one of them, "they turned their eyes (save upward to the Heaven) they could have little solace or content in respect of any outward objects. For summer being done, all things stand for them to look upon with a weather-beaten face; and the whole country being full of woods and thickets, represented a wild and Salvage hue. If they looked behind them, there was the mighty ocean which they had passed, and was now a main bar and gulf to separate them from all the civil parts of the world. \* \* \* May and ought not the children of these fathers rightly to say, 'Our fathers were Englishmen, which came over this great ocean and were ready to perish in this wilderness. But they cried unto the Lord, and he heard their voice and looked on their adversity.' And let them therefore praise the Lord, because he is good, and his mercies endure forever."

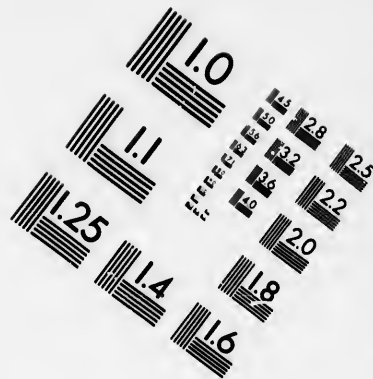
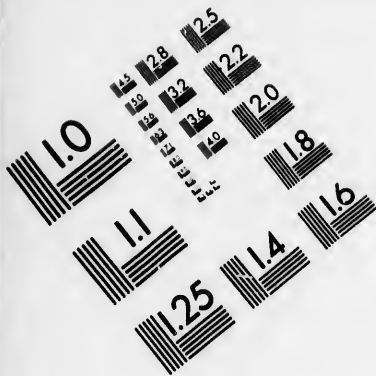
On the 15th, sixteen volunteers were permitted to go on shore, under command of Captain Miles Standish, who had served in the wars of Holland, and who was the only soldier by profession in the whole company. This redoubtable warrior (the Mr. Greatheart of the Progress of these Pilgrims) was a man little in stature, but remarkably strong and active, and of the most fiery and resolute courage. The company marched inland for ten miles, following a party of Indians, whom they could not overtake. Weary and thirsty, they came at last to a spring, where, says one, "we sat us down and drank our first New England water, with as much delight as ever we drank drink in all our lives." They found and examined an Indian grave, carefully replacing the articles deposited there, "thinking it would be odious unto them to ransack their sepulchres." From a subterranean store-house, however, which they discovered, they thought fit to carry off a supply of provisions, among which were "six and thirty goodly ears of corn, some yellow and some red, and others mixed with blue, which was a very goodly sight." Reparation was afterwards made to the owners, and, it is said, that the grain thus obtained, preserved for seed, eventually secured the colony from famine. In other expeditions of survey, both store-houses and wigwams were "ransacked," and the simple wealth of the absent Indians unjustly appropriated—though, with the saving clause of intended restitution. "*Some of the best things wee took,*"

ten constitu-  
America. It  
re of freedom  
Hemisphere.  
amiable char-  
was forthwith  
ure of affairs,  
the early his-  
ot find, as in  
ne of any one  
lusively iden-  
the names of  
with, are each  
s whose desti-  
aping; while,  
the memories  
Winthrop—of  
associate wor-  
f the country.  
e. Principle,  
fish or gener-  
of the actors  
rise; and all  
time merged  
upting of reli-

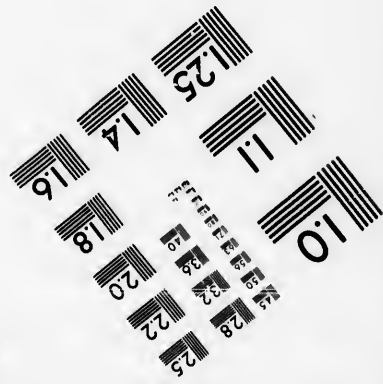
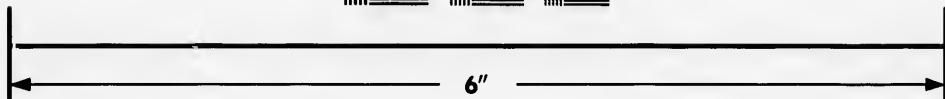
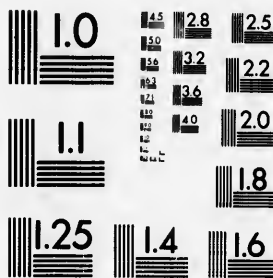
ING PARTY.  
VOYAGE TO  
SAVAGES.  
EAT SUP-  
GRIMS.

y-Flower, the  
e for immeli-  
ve been more





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503





remarks the narrator, with that happy unconsciousness of impropriety which, almost throughout our colonial history, marks the record of violence, of fraud, or of spoliation committed on the natives.

The adjoining regions having been partially explored, at a consultation, it was thought best by some, for the convenience of fishing and other advantages, to settle on Cape Cod; but the pilot, Mr. Coppin, suggesting that there was a good harbour on the western side of the bay, it was resolved to examine it. On the 6th of December, a bitter cold day, Carver, Winslow, Bradford, Standish, and fourteen more, embarked in the shallop, and followed the coast southward. The spray, falling on their clothes, froze instantly, "and made them many times like coats of iron." On the morning of the second day of their voyage, while at prayers on the shore, they were assailed with arrows by a party of savages. Muskets were discharged in return, but no serious result seems to have ensued on either side. The Indians finally retreated, leaving, among other trophies, eighteen arrows, "headed with brass, some with harts' horns, and others with eagles' claws." "The cry of our enemies," says one of the pilgrims, "was dreadful. Their note was after this manner, '*woach, woach, ha ha hach woach.*'" This peculiar succession of sounds has descended to our own day, as the war-whoop of certain native tribes.

All that day, the voyagers sailed swiftly, with a fair wind, along the coast; but toward night, the weather grew heavier, and the rudder breaking from its hinges, they had much ado to scud before the wind, steering with oars. "The seas were grown so great that we were much troubled and in great danger; and night grew on. Anon, Master Coppin bade us be of good cheer, he saw the harbour. As we drew near, the gale being stiff, and we bearing great sail to get in, split our mast into three pieces, and were like to have cast away our shallop. Yet, by God's mercy, recovering ourselves, we had the flood with us, and struck into the harbour."

This harbour, already surveyed and named by Captain John Smith, was that of Plymouth. The location appeared so favourable that it was resolved to plant the settlement there, and, accordingly, the party of survey returned to Cape Cod, on the 16th, the ship, with all her company (except one who had died at sea, and four who had died at the cape), came into the harbour. "On the 22d of December, 1620, a day for ever memorable in the annals of America, the little band of Pilgrims landed on that rock, now, like the Stone of Mecca, the object of enthusiastic pilgrimage to their

business of impropriety, marks the record on the natives.

explored, at a convenience of fishing but the pilot, Mr. Bour on the western side on the 6th of December, Standish, and viewed the coast southward instantly, "and the morning of the 7th, they were discharged on either side. trophies, eighteen men, and others with one of the pilgrims, 'woach, woach, woach' has descended the shore.

a fair wind, along with heavier, and the wind to scud before dawn so great that night grew on. we saw the harbour. bearing great sail to be like to have cast over ourselves, we "ir."

by Captain John feared so favourable, and, accordingly, died, on the 16th, and died at sea, and harbour. "On the 17th, in the annals of that rock, now, like pilgrimage to their

descendants." A site was selected for the town, and timber being cut, nineteen houses, with all possible dispatch, were erected: but, so severe was the season, and so great the unavoidable exposure, (especially in wading on the shallows, to and from their barge,) that, before the end of February, twenty-five more of them had perished of disease and privation.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

THE INDIANS OF NEW ENGLAND: THINNED BY PESTILENCE.  
 —THE PEQUOTS, NARRAGANSETTS, AND OTHER TRIBES.  
 —EXTRAORDINARY OPINIONS OF THE ENGLISH CONCERNING THEM.—BIGOTED ACCOUNTS OF THE ANCIENT HISTORIANS, ETC.

By a desolating pestilence, which, not long before their arrival, had swept New England, the country around Plymouth had been, in great measure, denuded of its original inhabitants. Many powerful tribes had been almost annihilated, and others reduced to a fraction of their original numbers. The most considerable nations yet surviving, were those of the Pequots and Narragansetts, often at war with each other, and with other neighbouring tribes. The former, whose chief stronghold was on a commanding eminence in Groton, in the east of Connecticut, numbered, says Roger Williams, thirty thousand souls. This, undoubtedly, is an excessive exaggeration. The latter, a noble and magnanimous people, dwelt in the state of Rhode Island, where, *it is said*, they numbered five thousand warriors. The Pokanokets, a confederacy of smaller tribes, including the Wampanoags, Pocassets, Sogkonates, and many others, dwelt in Eastern Massachusetts, and on the upper waters of Narragansett Bay. Before the ravages of the pestilence, they are said to have comprised three thousand warriors; but afterwards only five hundred. The Massachusetts, dwelling around the Bay of that name, had formerly been a great people, but, from the same cause, were reduced to a mere remnant. These tribes mostly acknowledged the supremacy of Massasoit, chief of the Wampanoags, whose chief seat was at Mount Hope, near the present town of Bristol. The Paw-

tuckets, who, we are told, had also numbered three thousand warriors, had been almost completely exterminated. Many small clans, mostly dwelling in the westward of Connecticut and Massachusetts, are not included in this estimate.

All these tribes, except the Pequots and Narragansetts, were tributary to the Mohawks, inhabiting the east of New York, one of the fiercest and most powerful of the celebrated Five Nations. "Two old Mohawks," says Dr. Trumbull, "every year or two might be seen issuing their orders, and collecting their tribute, with as much authority and haughtiness as a Roman dictator." Any disobedience of their commands was speedily punished by an avenging war-party, which cut off the offenders without mercy. The Mohawks, it is said, would sometimes pursue their victims into the houses of the English, yelling, "We are come! we are come to suck your blood," and slaying them on the very hearth-stone. This powerful league, however, long at mortal feud with the French of Canada, regarded the English, as rivals of the latter, with complacency, and never offered any molestation to their persons or property.

"It was now just a century since the Conquest of Mexico, by Cortes, had first brought the races of Europe into direct collision with those of the Western Continent. In that interval, the Reformation had arisen, had spread, and had produced perhaps its finest fruit in the little band of self-devoted exiles\* who sought in the wilderness a foothold for civil and religious freedom. As a matter of course, the world was more enlightened, yet, strange to say, hardly a step had yet been taken in the direction of the fairest and noblest result to which enlightenment can tend—the acknowledgment of the universal humanity and brotherhood of all mankind. Our pious forefathers, like the Spaniards of the century before, still

\* Some idea of the noble spirit of tolerance which distinguished the first exiled Puritans may be gathered from the farewell address of their pastor, breathing sentiments infinitely in advance of his age, and even, in some degree, of our own. "I charge you," he says, "before God and his blessed angels, that you follow me no further than you have seen me follow the Lord Jesus Christ. The Lord has more truth yet to break out of his Holy Word. I cannot sufficiently bewail the condition of the reformed churches, who are come to a period in religion, and will go at present no further than the instruments of their reformation.—Luther and Calvin were great and shining lights in their time, yet they penetrated not into the whole counsel of God.—I beseech you, remember it—'tis an article of your ehreh covenant—that you be ready to receive whatever truth is made known to you from the written word of God."

regarded the dwellers of the New World as the direct offspring or certainly the direct worshippers of Satan, and as enjoying all the familiarity to which his most favoured *protégés* could be entitled. Nothing is more strange than to read the opinions and conclusions on this subject of the men of that age—men otherwise just, sagacious, and, for their day, liberal in the extreme."

According to one of the early historians of New England, the aborigines, on learning of the arrival of the pilgrims, took extraordinary pains to exorcise the advent of Christianity. "They got," he says, "all the powaws of the country, who, for three days together, in a horrid and devilish manner, did curse and execrate them with their conjurations, which assembly and service they held in a dark and dismal swamp. Behold how Satan labored to hinder the gospel from coming into New England."

In his "Good News from New England," Governor Winslow, with a sort of ludicrous reiteration, dwells on the same point. "Another power they worship," he informs us, "whom they call *Hobbamoock*, and to the northward of us *Hobbamoqui*; this, as far as we can conceive, is the devil. \* \* \* This *Hobbamoock* appears in sundry forms unto them, as in the shape of a man, a deer, a fawn, an eagle, &c., but most ordinarily a snake. He appears not to all, but the chiefest and most judicious among them; though all of them strive to attain to that hellish height of honor. \* \* \* The *paniesses* are men of great courage and wisdom, and to these the devil appeareth more familiarly than to others, and, as we conceive, maketh covenant with them to preserve them from death by wounds with arrows, knives, hatchets, &c. \* \* \* And to the end that they may have store of these, they train up the most forward and likeliest boys, from their childhood, in great hardness, and make them abstain from dainty meat, observing divers orders prescribed, to the end that, when they are of age, the devil may appear to them. \* \* \* Also they beat their shins with sticks, and cause them to run through bushes, stumps, and brambles, to make them hardy and acceptable to the devil, that in time he may appear to them."

Hear the reverend William Hubbard, the painful historian of New England, only a few years before the commencement of the eighteenth century. He concludes a dissertation on the origin of the Indians in the following lucid and summary manner: "Mr. Mede's opinion about the passage of the natives into this remote region, carries the greatest probability of truth with it; of whose conjecture it may be

said, in a sense, as sometimes of Achithopell's counsell in those dayes, that itt was as the oracle of God. His conceitt is, that when the devill was putt out of his throne in the other parts of the world, and that the mouth of all his oracles was stopt in Europe, Asia, and Africa, hee seduced a company of silly wretches to follow his conduct" (guidance) "into this unknowne part of the world, where hee might lye hid, and not be disturbed in the idolatrous and abominable, or rather diabolicall service hee expected from these his followers; for here are no footsteps of any religion before the English came, but meereley diabolicall \* \* and so uneonth, as if it were framed and devised by the devill himselfe, and 'tis transacted by them they used to call pawwows, by some kind of familiarity with Satan, to whom they used to resort for counsell in all kinde of evils, both corporall and civill."

"To opinions such as these, the result of ignorance and prejudice, must doubtless be attributed a large measure of that cruel and uncharitable spirit, which dictated not only the wrongs and massacres committed on the natives, but the still more displeasing exultation over their sufferings and extermination, which glows with an infernal light in the pages of the chronicles of the day, and especially in those of the reverend historians, Hubbard and Mather.

"Continually on the alert against the assaults of the infernal enemy, our fathers saw his finger in witchcraft, in Indian warfare, and in many another annoyance, the result of natural causes. Anger and hatred were thus aroused—hatred, indeed, of an imaginary foe, but still hatred, bitter, personal, and vindictive to a degree which we can hardly conceive, and which found its gratification in vengeance on the supposed agents of the invisible Tormentor.

"It could hardly, perhaps, be expected that men engaged in the deadly terrors of savage warfare should have much sympathy for their vanquished enemies—especially when regarded as children of the devil; yet the daring ferocity of the Indian-fighters, occasionally relieved by a touch of good feeling and humanity, is far more agreeable to contemplate than the venomous spirit exhibited by the honourable and reverend recorders of their deeds, whose minds, imbued with the wretched notion of Satanic agency, seem actually to revel in the torment, destruction, and assured damnation of their unfortunate foes. In this particualar, we perceive a superstition strangely variant from that of the Spaniard, who, while slaying and tormenting the miserable bodies of the aborigines, was ever anxious, even at the

stake or the gallows, that their souls might escape the eternal penalty, and be admitted to the same heaven which he expected to enjoy in person."\*

---

## CHAPTER V.

SAMOSSET: "WELCOME, ENGLISHMEN."—THE VISIT OF MASSASOIT.—TREATY AND ALLIANCE.—MORTALITY AMONG THE COLONISTS.—DEATH OF GOVERNOR CARVER.—DUEL, AND ITS PUNISHMENT.—VISIT TO MASSASOIT: TO IYAN-TOUGH.—AFFECTING INCIDENT.

THE first Indian with whom the settlers of Plymouth had any communication, was one Samoset, a sagamore or petty chief, who had learned a little English from the traders of Manhegin, and who, on the 16th of March, 1621, entered the little settlement, and saluted the pilgrims with the ever-memorable words, "Welcome, Englishmen." A friendly intercourse, by his means, was immediately established with the neighbouring Indians, who heretofore had held cautiously aloof. One whom he brought on a subsequent visit, was Squanto, the only surviving native of Patuxet, the country around Plymouth. He was one of the twenty-four whom "that wicked varlet Hunt" had kidnapped, and, having been at London, and learned English, he proved of great value as an interpreter. He brought information that Massasoit, the greatest sachem of the adjoining regions, with many of his subjects, was close at hand. That chief, attended by sixty men, presently appeared on the hill above Plymouth, and Edward Winslow, with the interpreters, was sent to meet him. "We sent to the king," says the old historian, "a pair of knives, with a copper chain and a jewel at it. To Quadequina" (his brother) "we sent likewise a knife, and a jewel to hang in his ear, and withal a pot of strong waters." In compliance with a friendly invitation, Massasoit, leaving Winslow as a hostage, descended the hill, and, with twenty attendants, came to one of the houses, where preparation had been made to receive him.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

Governor Carver, with the sound of drum and trumpet, presently entered, and the two dignitaries were soon in convivial and political harmony. "After salutations, our governor kissing his hand, the king kissed him, and so they sat down. The governor called for some strong waters, and drank to him, and he drank a great draught," &c., &c. An interview thus propitiously commenced, soon ripened into treaty and alliance—alliance faithfully observed by both parties for more than fifty years; and the sachem (influenced, it is to be feared, a trifle overmuch by the vigorous draught he had imbibed) "acknowledged himself content to become the subject of our sovereign lord, the king aforesaid, his heirs and successors; and gave unto them all the lands adjacent to them and to their heirs forever. \* \* All which the king seemed to like well, and it was applauded of his followers. All the while he sat by the governor, he trembled with fear. In his person he is a very lusty man, in his best years, of an able body, grave of countenance and spare of speech; in his attire, little or nothing differing from the rest of his followers, only in a great chain of white bone beads about his neck; and at it, behind his neck, hangs a little bag of tobaceo, which he drank and gave us to drink," (*i. e.* smoke.)

Under the instruction of Squanto and Samoset, the English, with the coming on of spring, applied themselves to fishing and to the agriculture suitable to the country. Twenty acres of Indian corn were planted. Thirteen more of the colonists died during March, reducing them to half of their original number, and the May-Flower, half of whose crew was also dead, on the fifth of April, sailed for England. On the following day, died good Governor Carver, who, while toiling in the unwonted heat of an American sun, had received a mortal *coup de soleil*. "His care and pains were so great for the common good, as therewith, it is thought, he oppressed himself and shortened his days." Such is the brief but honourable epitaph of the first New England executive. William Bradford, a young man, but ardent and energetic, was elected to succeed him. Under his rule the first punishment was inflicted in the colony. Two servants of Mr. Hopkins, for fighting a duel, with sword and dagger, were adjudged, by general vote, to be tied, neck and heels together, and so to remain twenty-four hours; but the judges, moved by the excruciating tortures of the culprits (both of whom had been wounded in their duello) released them within an hour, on promise of better carriage for the future.



trumpet, presently  
vivial and political  
aving his hand, the  
governor called for  
nk a great draught,"  
enced, soon ripened  
ved by both parties  
luenced, it is to be  
at he had imbibed)  
ubject of our sover-  
sors; and gave unto  
heirs forever. \* \*  
as applauded of his  
r, he trembled with  
is best years, of an  
peech; in his attire,  
followers, only in a  
; and at it, behind  
e drank and gave us

t, the English, with  
fishing and to the  
eres of Indian corn  
died during March,  
and the May-Flower,  
of April, sailed for  
ernor Carver, who,  
an sun, had received  
ere so great for the  
pressed himself and  
onourable epitaph of  
dford, a young man,  
ed him. Under his  
ony. Two servants  
d and dagger, were  
heels together, and  
, moved by the ex-  
a had been wounded  
n promise of better

Winslow and Hopkins, setting forth, in July, on a visit to Massasoit, passed through many fields well cleared and ready for cultivation, but depopulated by the pestilence, numerous skeletons still bleaching on the ground. Massasoit, though friendly and hospitable, was ill-prepared for the reception of company, the royal larder, it seems, just then, being woefully unsupplied. Two fish, which the poor king caught with his own hands, were all the refreshment he could offer them. Agreements for traffic were made, and the chief, turning to his assembled subjects, made a long oration, "the meaning whereof," says Winslow, "was, as far as we could learn, thus, 'Was not he, Massasoit, commander of the country round about them? Was not such a town his and the people of it? and should they not bring their skins unto us?' To which they answered, they were his, and would be at peace with us, and bring their skins to us. After this manner he named at least thirty places, and their answer was as aforesaid to every one; so that, as it was delightful, it was tedious unto us. This being ended, he lighted tobacco for us, and fell to discoursing of England and of the King's Majesty, marvelling that he would live without a wife." After a friendly sojourn of some days, the envoys returned, leaving the chief "both grieved and ashamed that he could no better entertain them."

A party of the English, searching for a lost child, (who was found, and well cared for by the Indians,) put into Cummaquid, (Barnstable,) the seat of the sachem Iyanough, "a man not exceeding twenty-six years of age, but very personable, gentle, courteous, and fair conditioned; indeed, not like a savage, saving for his attire. His entertainment was answerable to his parts, and his cheer plentiful and various. One thing," proceeds the narrator, "was very grievous to us at this place. There was an old woman, whom we judged to be no less than a hundred years old, which came to see us, because she never saw English; yet could not behold us without breaking out into great passion," (emotion,) "weeping and crying excessively. We demanding the reason of it, they told us she had three sons, who, when Master Hunt was in these parts, went aboard his ship to trade with him, and he carried them captives into Spain, (for Tisquantum, "Squanto) "was at that time carried away also,) by which means she was deprived of the comfort of her children in her old age. We told them we were sorry that any Englishman should give them that offence, that Hunt was a bad man, and that all the English that heard it condemned him for the same; but for

us, we would not offer them any such injury, though it would gain us all the skins in the country. So we gave her some small trifles, which somewhat appeased her."

---

## CHAPTER VI.

ARRIVAL OF THE FORTUNE.—CHALLENGE FROM CANONICUS:  
HIS SUPERSTITIOUS DREAD.—PLYMOUTH FORTIFIED.—  
WESTON'S COLONY AT WEYMOUTH: ITS MISERABLE CON-  
DITION.—MASSASOIT ILL: CURED BY THE ENGLISH.  
—DANGEROUS PLOT REVEALED.

A SMALL vessel, called the Fortune, in November, 1621, arrived at Plymouth, bringing thirty-five additional emigrants—not enough, indeed, to replace those who had already perished of privation and exposure—and bringing neither arms nor provision to the weak and hungry colonists. That the settlement, in its infancy, was not speedily cut off, was due only to the friendliness of Massasoit and other chiefs, and to the courageous attitude of the few Englishmen who remained alive. By the energy and promptitude of Standish, a germ of native hostility was suppressed, and many petty chieftains even subscribed their marks to an acknowledgment of allegiance to the king of England. One Hobbamock, a noted *paniese* or warrior of Massasoit, came to live with the English, and during the rest of his life, was faithful to their service.

Canonicus, the great sachem of the Narragansetts, who, at one time, had sent a friendly message to the colonists, for some unknown reason—perhaps the arrival of the additional emigrants—changing his policy, assumed an attitude of open hostility. He sent a messenger to Plymouth, who, without any explanation, presented "a bundle of new arrows, lapped in a rattlesnake's skin." The English, amazed at this odd present, were informed by Squanto, "that it imported enmity, and was no better than a challenge." On hearing this, the governor, with much spirit, drawing forth the arrows, stuffed the skin, in turn, with powder and shot, and sent it back, adding a bold message of defiance. The hostile chief, his superstition awakened by the mysterious contents of the skin, declined taking

up the gauntlet he had so hastily thrown down—"insomuch as he would not once touch the powder and shot, nor suffer it to stay in his house or country. Whereupon, the messenger refusing it, another took it up; and having been posted from place to place a long time, at length it came whole back again." Vigilance being thus awakened among the colonists, they fortified the town, and under the direction of Standish, observed strict rules of discipline. Squanto also thought proper to do his part, by informing his countrymen that the English had the plague buried in their store-house, and could let it loose on the whole country, if they had a mind.

In the summer of 1622, two vessels were dispatched from England by a Mr. Weston, which landed at Wessagusset (Weymouth) some fifty or sixty idle and profligate emigrants. By their shiftlessness, and the encroachments of the neighbouring savages, (who soon saw of what stuff they were made,) they were reduced ere long to a woeful condition. In March of the same spring, a messenger was dispatched to Plymouth with "a pitiful narration of their lamentable and weak estate, and of the Indians' carriages," (demeanour,) "whose boldness increased abundantly, insomuch that the victuals they got, they would take out of their pots, and eat before their faces; yea, if in anything they gainsaid them, they were ready to hold a knife at their breasts; *that, to give them content, they had hanged one of them, that stole the Indians corn,* and yet they regarded it not; that one of their company was turned salvage; that their people had mostly forsaken the town, and made their rendezvous where they got their victual, because they would not take the pains to bring it home; that they had sold their clothes for corn, and were ready to starve both with cold and hunger also, because they could not endure to get victuals by reason of their nakedness."

These disagreeable tidings of Indian hostility were presently alarmingly confirmed. News arriving that Massasoit was mortally ill, Winslow, with Hobbamock and another companion, was dispatched to his assistance, with such simple remedies as the poverty of the colony could afford. The goodness of the chief and the attachment of his followers was evidenced by the grief of Hobbamock, who, on the way, "manifesting a troubled spirit, brake forth into these speeches: *Neen womasu sagamus! Neen womasu sagamus!* &c.—'My loving sachem, my loving sachem! Many have I known, but never any like thee.' And turning him to me" (Winslow) "said, whilst I lived I should never see his like among the Indians;

saying he was no liar, he was not bloody and cruel, like other Indians; in anger and passion he was soon reclaimed; easy to be reconciled toward such as had offended him; ruled by reason in such measure that he would not scorn the advice of mean" (humble) "men; and that he governed his men better with few strokes than others did with many; truly loving where he loved; yea, he feared we had not a faithful friend left among the Indians; showing how he oft times restrained their malice, &c., continuing a long speech, with such signs of lamentation and unfeigned sorrow, as it would have made the hardest heart relent."

Arriving at Pokanoket, the visitors, with difficulty, forced their way into the king's house, which was so crowded with Indians, that, although the latter did their best to make a passage, it was no easy matter. This assembly was performing incantations for his relief, "making such a hellish noise," says Winslow, "as it distempered us that were well, and therefore unlike to ease him that was sick." His sight was quite gone, but on hearing who had come, he put forth his hand, and took that of the Englishman. "Then he said twice, though very inwardly," (faintly,) "*Keen Winsnow?* which is to say, 'Art thou Winslow?' I answered *Alhe*, that is yes. Then he doubled these words, *Mattu neen wonckanet namen, Winsnow!* that is to say, 'Oh, Winslow, I shall never see thee again.'" Despite the unfavourable circumstances, his guest contrived to get down his throat a "confection of many comfortable conserves," which wrought so effectually that the patient soon began to mend apace. The other sick in his village was also physicked and tended by the good Winslow; and Massasoit, finding himself recovering, "broke forth into the following speeches, 'Now I see the English are my friends and love me; and whilst I live, I will never forget this kindness they have showed me.'" In gratitude, he revealed a formidable plot among the Massachusetts and other tribes, which he had lately been solicited to join, for the destruction of the two settlements of Plymouth and Wessagusset.

Followed by the blessings of the whole village, the Englishmen returned, lodging on their way, at Mattapoiset, with the sachem Caunbitant, whose attitude had been dubious, and whom they wished to conciliate. "By the way," says our old traveller, "I had much conference with him, so likewise at his house, he being a notable politician, yet full of merry jests and squibs, and never better pleased than when the like are returned again upon him." The people of

this town Winslow endeavoured to impress with the truths of religion, and especially of the ten commandments; "all which they hearkened unto with great attention; and liked well of; only the seventh commandment they excepted against, thinking there were many inconveniences in it."

---

## CHAPTER VII.

EXPEDITION OF STANDISH TO WEYMOUTH.—DARING POLICY.—SLAUGHTER OF THE CONSPIRING INDIANS.—THE COLONY OF WESTON BROKEN UP.—PRIVATIONS AND SUFFERINGS AT PLYMOUTH: DROUGHT: SEASONABLE SUPPLY OF RAIN.—ADDITIONAL ARRIVAL.

THE information given by Massasoit being confirmed by further evidence, it was resolved, with extraordinary boldness, to take the offensive, and strike a deadly blow at the heads of the conspiracy. Captain Standish, with only eight companions, set forth for Wessagusset, to protect the people there, and especially to get the head of one of the chief conspirators—"Wittawamut, a notable insulting villain, who had formerly imbued his hands in the blood of French and English, and had oft boasted of his own valor and derided their weakness, especially because, as he said, they died crying, making sour faces, more like children than men." The captain, on arriving there, warned the settlers of their danger, and collected them within the town. An Indian spy, who presently entered, under pretence of trading in furs, reported to his people that, though he spoke smoothly, "he saw by his eyes that he was angry in his heart." Seeing their plot discovered, the conspiring chiefs made no attempt to conceal their enmity. "One Peeksuot, who was a paniese, being a man of notable spirit," told Hobbamock, who had come with the party, that they had heard that Standish was come to kill them—"tell him," he said, "we know it, but fear him not, neither will we shun him; but let him begin when he dare, he shall not take us at unawares."

One or two at a time, the savages would present themselves, whetting their knives before the captain's face, and making other men-

acing gestures. "Amongst the rest, Wittawamut bragged of the excellency of his knife. On the end of the handle was pictured a woman's face, 'but,' said he, 'I have another at home that hath killed both French and English, and that hath a man's face on it; and by and by these two must marry.' Further he said of that knife he there had, *Hannaim namen, hannaim michen, malla c's*, that is to say, 'By and by it should see, and by and by it should eat, but not speak' \* \* \* These things the captain observed, yet bare with patience for the present.

"On the next day, seeing he could not get many together at once, and this Pecksuot and Wittawamut being both together, with another man, and a youth of some eighteen years of age (which was brother to Wittawamut, and, villain-like, trod in his steps) and having about as many of his own company in a room with them, gave the word to his men, and the door having been fast shut, began himself with Pecksuot, and snatching his own knife from his neck, though with much struggling, killed him therewith, (the point whereof he had made as sharp as a needle and ground the back also to an edge.) Wittawamut and the other man the rest killed, and took the youth, whom the captain caused to be hanged. But it is incredible how many wounds these two pineses" (panieses) "received before they died, not making any fearful noise, but catching at their weapons and striving to the last." Three more were killed by the same party, and in a fight in the woods (in which Hobbamock took an active part) the Indians were defeated and put to flight.

The news of these successes was received with much joy at Plymouth, and the head of Wittawamut, a grisly token of vengeance, was affixed to the fort at that place. The worthy Robinson, indeed, received the account of this sanguinary (though perhaps necessary) affair, with great grief and mortification. "Would," he writes lamentingly to his exiled people, "that you had converted some of them before you killed any."

Weston's colony, which had proved so miserably unfitted for the country, was now completely broken up; a part of the settlers proceeding to Manhegin, and the rest accompanying Standish to Plymouth. They might probably have remained in security where they were; for such an impression did this fierce and energetic conduct make on the hostile savages, that, for fifty years they made no further attempts against the English.

The summer of 1623 brought grievous famine and distress, the

colonists being compelled to search the woods for nuts and the sea sands for elms, as their only sustenance. Once, it is said, a pint of corn being the entire stock of provisions in the town, it was divided, giving five kernels to each—an incident since commemorated, by a similar division at the entertainments of their descendants, in the same venerated spot. A long drought also threatened the destruction of the crops, to secure which all their little store of corn had been planted. These sufferings they bore with extraordinary fortitude and cheerfulness; and finally set aside a day of fasting and humiliation, and prayer for relief to God, "if our continuance there might any way stand with his glory and our good"—a sublime and touching sentiment. Toward the close of the day, clouds gathered, "and on the next morning," says the narrator, with quaint eloquence, "distilled such soft, sweet, and moderate showers of rain, continuing some fourteen days and mixed with such seasonable weather, as it were hard to say whether our withered corn, or our drooping affections, were most quickened and revived; such was the bounty and goodness of our God."

The Indians were greatly surprised at this unlooked-for result, and especially, according to Winslow, at "the difference between their conjuration, and our invocation to God for rain; theirs being mixed with such storms and tempests, as sometimes, instead of doing them good, it layeth the corn flat on the ground, to their prejudice; but ours in so gentle and seasonable a manner, as they had never observed the like." The harvest proved plentiful, and all fear of starvation was allayed. In July and August of the same summer, two ships, with sixty additional settlers, arrived. In a letter sent by those who yet remained, was the following prophetic and consoling sentiment: "Let it not be grievous to you that you have been the instruments to break the ice for others who come after you with less difficulty; *the honor shall be yours to the world's end*: we bear you always in our breasts, and our hearty affection is toward you all, as are the hearts of hundreds more who never saw your faces."

## CHAPTER VIII.

NEW SETTLEMENTS FOUNDED: NEW HAMPSHIRE AND MAINE.—ENDICOTT'S COMPANY.—THE REVELLERS OF MERRY MOUNT: BROKEN UP BY THE PURITANS.—SETTLEMENT OF MASSACHUSETTS.—FOUNDATION OF BOSTON.—GREAT EMIGRATION.—MORTALITY AND SUFFERING.

THE progress of the Plymouth colony was slow, but sure, and although the original settlement, at the end of ten years, numbered but three hundred souls, at an early day, it began to send offshoots into the adjoining regions. In 1625, their admirable pastor, Robinson, died at Leyden, having been prevented from emigrating by an adverse influence in England. The remainder of his congregation, as soon as practicable, joined their brethren in America. Enterprise, directed to the same region, was revived in the mother-country. New patents were issued to Gorges and other projectors, and settlements, as early as 1623, were made on the banks of the Pisetaqua. Portsmouth and Dover were settled, and the foundation of New Hampshire was thus permanently laid. That of Maine was not long in succeeding, the temporary trading and fishing stations on its coast being gradually converted to permanent occupation. Roger Conant, a man of extraordinary courage and perseverance, with only three companions, laid the foundation of a settlement at Naumkeag (now Salem) near Cape Ann. Preparations for a Puritan emigration, on an extensive scale, were made in England; and in the summer of 1628, John Endicott, a man of brave and religious, but rugged and bigoted nature, with about a hundred companions, arrived at the diminutive outpost of Salem. The vigorous and practical spirit of Puritanism, as well as its more gloomy and ascetic qualifications, were not long in making their demonstration.

"A small settlement, named Mount Wollaston, (Quincy), had fallen into the hands of one Thomas Morton, described as 'a petty fogging attorney of Furnival's Inn,' who, with a crew of dissolute companions, lived there in much excess and licentiousness. He changed the name of the place to Merry Mount ('as if this jollity could have lasted always') and, besides selling fire-arms to the Indians, kept a haunt for all the idle serving men and lewd companions in the country. Thus they lived for some time, 'vainly quaffing and drinking



both wine and strong liquors in great excess (as some have reported, ten pound's worth in a morning) setting up a May-pole, drinking and dancing about it, and frisking about it like so many fairies, or furies rather—yea, and worse practices. \* \* \* The said Morton, likewise, to show his poetry, composed sundry rhymes and verses, some tending to lasciviousness, and others to the detraction and scandal of some persons' names, which he affixed to his idle or idol May-pole.'

"These dissolute courses received their first check from 'that worthy gentleman, Mr. John Endicott,' who, soon after the foundation of his settlement, paid them a visit, cut down their May-pole, read them a terrible lecture, and once more changed the name of their abode, calling it Mount Dagon. The whole community was finally broken up by a small force dispatched from Plymouth, under Captain Standish. This party seized Morton, and 'demolished his house, that it might no longer be a roost for such unclean birds.' The culprit was sent over seas. 'Notwithstanding, in England he got free again, and wrote an infamous and scurrilous book against many of the godly and chief men of the country, full of lies and slanders, and full fraught with profane calumnies against their names and persons and the ways of God.' Returning imprudently to Boston, he was imprisoned 'for the aforesaid book and other things,' and finally 'being grown old in wickedness, at last ended his life in Piscataqua.'"

Many persons of wealth and eminence of the Puritan party having formed the design of emigration, a charter, in 1629, was obtained from the king for the formation of a new company, under the title of the "Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England." In the latter part of June, that same year, two hundred more emigrants, dispatched by this corporation, arrived at Salem, and a new settlement was founded at Charlestown. During the months of June and July, 1630, eleven ships, bearing a great number of emigrants, arrived in Massachusetts Bay. At this time, the only person living on the peninsula of Shawmut (the site of the present city of Boston) was an Episcopal clergyman, the Rev. William Blackstone, who, on account of ecclesiastical scruples, had quitted England, and betaken himself to the American wilderness. He had built a cottage and planted an orchard. The new comers first settled at Charlestown, where a small colony had already been estab-

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

lished; but, on the invitation of Mr. Blackstone, and attracted by the natural advantages of the place, their governor, the celebrated John Winthrop, with other persons of distinction, removed thither. The principal place of the plantation was, accordingly, erected on that admirable locality, which, in all the wide region of which it is the metropolis, could hardly find a rival, in beauty or convenience. In the course of the year, five more vessels, with more emigrants, making the number fifteen hundred, arrived. Buildings were erected with all possible dispatch, but such were the numbers, that proper shelter for all was unobtainable. Before December, two hundred had died of disease occasioned by their hardships, and more than a hundred had retreated to England. These sufferings were endured with much fortitude by the survivors. "We here enjoy God and Jesus Christ," wrote Winthrop (who had lost a son) to his wife, "and is not this enough? I would not have altered my course, though I had foreseen all these afflictions. I never had more peace of mind." Despite these discouragements, the spirit of enterprise was fairly awakened in the Puritan party, and during the next few years, such numbers continued to flock to the new colony, that an Order in Council was issued by the king to restrain the emigration. Nevertheless, for a long time, great numbers of the persecuted faction resorted to Massachusetts—the year 1635 being especially memorable for the arrival of a large company, among whom were the afterwards celebrated Hugh Peters (chaplain to Cromwell) and Mr. (afterwards Sir Henry) Vane, who, the year after his arrival, was elected governor. It is said that Hampden, Cromwell, and Pym, (three names the most formidable in the great revolution,) had also embarked, but, by an order of court, were constrained to remain, to the destruction of the power and the person that withheld them.

## CHAPTER IX.

CHARACTER OF THE FOUNDERS OF MASSACHUSETTS.—REGULATIONS FOR PUBLIC MORALITY: FOR APPAREL, ETC.—AMUSING PENALTIES.—INTOLERANCE IN RELIGION.—COMMENCEMENT OF PERSECUTION.

"THE wealth and importance of this new community were commensurate with the growing power of the Puritan party. That party, originally so humble and depressed, was already beginning to uplift its voice in the councils of the English nation, and to provoke fresh and suicidal efforts of that arbitrary power, which was destined, ere long, to fall, with such terrible circumstances, before it. Accordingly, the men who now transferred their fortunes to the New World, though aiming, as earnestly as their predecessors, at the foundation of a religious commonwealth, brought with them somewhat of that insolence which is always the handmaid of new prosperity. 'Their characters,' says the candid and judicious Baylies, 'were more elevated, but their dispositions were less kindly, and their tempers more austere, sour, and domineering than those of their Plymouth brethren. They had brought themselves to a positive conviction of their own evangelical purity and perfect godliness, and therefore they tolerated not even the slightest difference in theological opinions.' They were composed, in short, of that stuff which, according to circumstances, makes a martyr or a persecutor; and, unfortunately for their reputation, the latter had opportunity for development. This, however, can hardly be laid at the door of their faith. Having power to persecute, they persecuted; and where is the religious community, which, having such power, ever forbore to use it? Until, indeed, aroused by opposition (which did not occur for many years, the arbitrary and intolerant spirit of the authorities, for the most part, lay dormant, only indulging itself in municipal regulations and fantastic penalties, rather fitted to provoke mirth than indignation."\*

Though the sweeping generalities and searching particulars of a "Maine Law," never suggested themselves to the legislation of our forefathers, acts for the restraint of intemperance were not wanting.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

As early as 1634, we find a traveller complaining that if a gentleman went into either of the two public houses in Boston, he was followed by an officer appointed for the purpose, who watched his potatoes narrowly, and when of opinion that he had enough, would countermand his orders, and cut off all further supply—"beyond which," says our author, bitterly, "he could not get one drop!" Another ordinance enjoined on all constables to keep special watch over all "common coasters, unprofitable fowlers, and tobacco takers." But when the clergy began to use the inhibited weed, the severity of this provision was relaxed. Vanity in dress was severely reprehended, especially "immoderate great sleeves, slash apparel, and long-wigs." Any one who should "give offence to his neighbor by the excessive length of his hair," might be arraigned before the General Court, and compelled to remove the obnoxious surplusage.

No regular system of law, common or statute, being adopted at first, sentences of punishment were framed according to the ingenious fancy of the court. These sentences, gravely perpetuated in the records, sound oddly enough to modern jurisprudence. Josias Plaistowe, for stealing, is fined, and doomed thereafter to be called Josias, "and not Mr. as he formerly used to be." "Mrs. Cornish, found suspicious of incontinency," is (probably in default of sufficient evidence for conviction) "seriously admonished to take heed." Mr. Robert Shorthose, who had thought proper to swear by the blood of God, is adjudged to have his tongue put in a cleft stick, and so to remain for half an hour. Edward Palmer, who had made a new pair of stocks for the town, for presenting the extortionate bill of two pounds and upward, is sentenced to pay a fine of five, and for one hour personally to test the efficacy of his own handiwork—a salutary warning to all public creditors. Nothing seems to have been more sharply repressed than any question of the authority of the court. In 1632, according to the record, "Thomas Knower was set in the bilboes for threatening ye court, that if he should be punished, he would have it tried in England, whether he was lawfully punished or no."

Religious conformity, at first not enforced to a sanguinary extreme, was a regular part of the political system. All persons, under pain of a fine, were compelled to attend meeting. Mr. Painter, it seems, "on a sudden turned Anabaptist," and would not have his child baptised, "Whereupon," says Governor Winthrop, with delightful discrimination between an opinion and the expression of it, "because

he was very poor, so as no other but corporal punishment could be fastened on him, he was ordered to be whipped, *not for his opinion, but for reproaching the Lord's Ordinance.* He endured his punishment with much obstinacy, and said, boastingly, that God had marvellously assisted him." Hugh Bretts, for heresy, was ordered to be gone out of the jurisdiction, "and not return again, on pain of being hanged." By a piece of intolerance, quite as unjustifiable as any which the Puritans themselves had endured in England, restraint was laid on the consciences of the Indians, who, under penalty of five pounds, were forbidden to worship the devil, or to practice any of the religious rites of their forefathers. It was ordered, moreover, at a later day, that if any negro slaves should take refuge among them, as many Indians should be "captivated" in their place.

---

## CHAPTER X.

REV. ROGER WILLIAMS.—HIS LIBERAL OPINIONS.—HE IS PERSECUTED BY THE AUTHORITIES OF MASSACHUSETTS.—EXPULSED FROM THAT PROVINCE.—TAKES REFUGE IN THE WILDERNESS.—FOUNDS PROVIDENCE PLANTATIONS AND THE STATE OF RHODE ISLAND.

INTOLERANCE in the province of Massachusetts, ere long, was the exciting cause of fresh schemes of colonization. Roger Williams, a clergyman of liberal opinions in religion and enlightened views in politics, in 1631, attracted by the expectation of tolerance in the newly-peopled wilderness, made his way to Boston. He was first settled at Salem, but on account of the illiberal hostility of the Massachusetts authorities, who had some idea of his sentiments, removed to Plymouth, where he was appointed assistant minister, and by his piety and eloquence, became much endeared to the people. From benevolent motives, he took much pains to learn the language and manners and to conciliate the affections of the neighbouring Indians. "God was pleased," he says, "to give me a painful, patient spirit, to lodge with them in their filthy, smoky holes, even while I lived in Plymouth and Salem, to gain their tongue." Massasoit and the two great sachems of the Narragansets (Canonius and his nephew Mi-

antonimo) accorded him their friendship—that of the latter eventually proving of no small moment to the prosperity and even the existence of the New England colonies. He resided two years in Plymouth, and then moved again to Salem, followed by a considerable number of his congregation.

There (August, 1634) he was regularly installed as pastor, and by his liberal preaching speedily revived the prejudice and hostility of the authorities. In that day, it was considered a startling novelty to declare that a man was the proper guardian of his own religious belief, and that the state had no right to intermeddle with it. In reading the terrible history of martyrdom, three reigns before this, we do not find many objections raised to the practice of burning men alive, abstractly considered—but the question was debated with intense earnestness as to what shade of opinion was fittest to be repressed by the flames. Probably a good many tenets might have been enumerated, which nearly all parties in the English Church would have united in denouncing as worthy of punishment. Yet, doubtless, it was well for mankind that martyrdoms, though on points ostensibly the most trifling and immaterial, should have been bravely undergone; for, if it had once been established that death and suffering would make men belie the faith that was in them, self-will and error, and consequent misfortune to the race, would have found the means for their eternal perpetuation. To the end of time, the only rule would have been that of the naturally violent, self-willed, and cruel. But then, and long after, it was considered allowable, by nearly all sects of Christians, to repress opinions of some sort by the strong arm of the law. It was, therefore, to the no small annoyance of the Massachusetts magistrates, as a reflection on their systematic intolerance, that the preacher boldly announced “that no human power had the right to intermeddle in matters of conscience; and that neither church, nor state, nor bishop, nor priest, nor king, may prescribe the smallest iota of religious faith. For this, he maintained, a man is responsible to God alone.” Especially he deprecated the unjust laws compelling universal attendance at meeting and a compulsory support of the clergy, affirming that the civil power “extends only to the bodies and goods, and outward estates of men,” and maintaining that with their belief “the civil magistrate may not intermeddle, even to stop a church from apostacy and heresy.”

He had frequently been censured by the authorities or vexatiously summoned before them; and on the promulgation of these incendiary

Y.  
the latter eventu-  
ty and even the  
ed two years in  
l by a considera-

as pastor, and by  
and hostility of  
startling novelty  
is own religious  
dle with it. In  
igns before this,  
e of burning men  
as debated with  
fittest to be re-  
might have been  
h Church would

Yet, doubtless,  
points ostensibly  
vely undergone;  
suffering would  
and error, and  
d the means for  
only rule would  
and cruel. But  
y nearly all sects  
e strong arm of  
ce of the Massa-  
atie intolerance,  
n power had the  
t neither church,  
cribe the smallest  
an is responsible  
laws compelling  
r support of the  
ly to the bodies  
aining that with  
lle, even to stop

es or vexatiously  
these incendiary



ROGER WILLIAMS,

THE FOUNDER OF RHODE ISLAND.

BORN IN WALES, 1593; ARRIVED IN NEW ENGLAND, 1631; FOUNDED PROVIDENCE  
1636; DIED, 1683.

doct  
brin  
and  
for  
cong  
next  
the s  
reca  
broac  
the a  
any r  
Suffe  
hensie  
In  
a vess  
desigr  
took  
anothe  
quaint  
aged  
taind  
a num  
and co  
from W  
settled  
for fear  
remove  
partly-b  
passed  
in the w  
the high  
cheer, N  
country,  
the new  
ulous an  
honour  
the majo  
the settle  
it should



doctrines, as they were considered, immediate steps were taken to bring him to justice. Salem, which supported him, was disfranchised, and in July, 1635, the audacious minister was put regularly on trial, for his "dangerous opinions." After a protracted debate, he and his congregation were allowed "time to consider these things till the next General Court, and then, either to give satisfaction, or expect the sentence." At the next sitting, in October, as he still refused to recant, a resolution was passed that, whereas the offender "hath broached and divulged divers new and dangerous opinions against the authority of magistrates, and yet maintaineth the same without any retraction," his sentence should be banishment from the colony. Suffered to remain for a time, many people "taken with an apprehension of his godliness," resorted to him.

In alarm at this evidence of his popularity, the court dispatched a vessel to seize and transport him over seas. Informed of this design, in the dead of winter, (January, 1636) he left his family, and took refuge in the forest, where, passing from one Indian hut to another, he found a miserable subsistence. "These ravens," he says quaintly, "fed me in the wilderness." At Mount Hope, where the aged Massasoit was still residing, he was kindly received, and obtained from that chief a grant of land on the Seekonk river. Thither a number of his friends, in the spring, betook themselves from Salem, and commenced a plantation. A letter, however, presently came from Winslow, the governor of Plymouth, advising him that he had settled within the jurisdiction of that colony, and requesting him, for fear of offence to their powerful neighbour, Massachusetts, to remove yet a little farther. The fields already planted, and the partly-built dwelling were abandoned, and with five comrades he passed down Seekonk river in a canoe, in quest of a home yet deeper in the wilderness. As they paddled toward its mouth, an Indian on the high western bank saluted them with the friendly cry, "What cheer, Nctop,\* what cheer!" Espying a fair spring and a fertile country, the exiled preacher and his companions landed, and founded the new colony of "Providence Plantations," on the site of the populous and wealthy city which yet commemorates the name. To the honour of this little association of free spirits, they resolved that the majority should govern in civil matters and in none other, and the settlement speedily became, what Williams had earnestly desired it should—"a shelter for persons distressed in conscience."

\* Friend.

By his influence with the Narragansett sachems, land and the permission to settle had been obtained; and this influence, two years after the foundation of Providence, was again exerted in behalf of a large number of persons, expelled from Massachusetts as heretics, but "lovingly entertained" at the new colony of religious freedom. On very moderate terms he procured for them a grant of the beautiful island of Rhode Island, which has since given its name to the entire state, and a very flourishing settlement soon sprang up there. "It was not price or money," he writes, many years afterwards, "that could have purchased Rhode Island. It was obtained by love; by the love and favor which that honorable gentleman Sir Henry Vane and myself had with the great sachem Miantonimo, about the league which I procured between the Massachusetts English and the Narragansetts, in the Pequot war." (That war, with the causes which originated it, and the important influence of Williams, in behalf of the English, will presently be recounted.)

---

## CHAPTER XI.

SETTLEMENT OF CONNECTICUT BY PLYMOUTH: BY MASSACHUSETTS.—HARDSHIPS OF THE COLONISTS.—FOUNDATION OF HARTFORD, ETC.—EMIGRATION UNDER HOOKER: NEW HAVEN FOUNDED.—COMMENCEMENT OF THE PEQUOT WAR.—INFLUENCE OF ROGER WILLIAMS.

A SETTLEMENT on the fertile banks of the Connecticut river had been projected at an early day, and the flourishing commonwealth of Massachusetts had been urged to undertake it; but the authorities of that province, deterred by many opposing circumstances, especially the dread of Indian hostility, had deferred or neglected it. With more courage and enterprise, the little colony of Plymouth undertook the task. Thence, in October of 1633, William Holmes sailed for the Connecticut in a vessel, carrying the frame of a house, and a small number of men, to establish a trading post, and perhaps a plantation. Passing up that river, he was warned off by the Dutch, who had a small fort at what is now known as Hartford, but sailed on, and built his house a few miles above, a little below the junction of the Farmington and Connecticut rivers.

Y.

land and the per-  
uence, two years  
ted in behalf of a  
assets as heretics,  
religious freedom.  
nant of the beauti-  
its name to the  
sprang up there.  
afterwards, "that  
ned by love; by  
Sir Henry Vane  
about the league  
ish and the Nar-  
the causes which  
ams, in behalf of

BY MASSACHU-  
FOUNDATION OF  
OOKER: NEW  
HE PEQUOT  
LIAMS.

ecticut river had  
g commonwealth  
but the authorities  
stances, especially  
glected it. With  
mouth undertook  
elms sailed fer  
of a house, and a  
st, and perhaps a  
off by the Dutch,  
artford, but sailed  
below the junction



The example thus set, emigration from Massachusetts rapidly followed. In October, 1635, a company of sixty—men, women, and children—took up their march westward from Massachusetts. These people, their supplies cut off by the freezing of the river, suffered great hardships, and numbers betook themselves to the coast. In May, the next year, a much larger emigration occurred—a hundred colonists, under the Rev. Thomas Hooker, a divine eminent for his eloquence and piety, proceeding overland in the same direction. A numerous drove of cattle, the milk of which sustained them on the way, was driven before them. Small settlements had already been made at Hartford, Wethersfield, and Windsor, and a form of government had been instituted at an early day. By the end of the year 1636, about eight hundred settlers had made their way to the banks of the Connecticut.

Not long afterwards (April, 1638) a new colony of Puritans was founded at New Haven, under the two friends, Theophilus Eaton, and the Rev. John Davenport, the former of whom, until his death, for twenty years held by election the office of governor. Villages and plantations, springing from this source, spread rapidly along the shores of Long Island Sound. An Indian war, the first in New England, almost immediately after the foundation of the settlements on the Connecticut, menaced their destruction. To avenge certain murders committed, years before, by the Pequots, Massachusetts had dispatched an expedition by sea, which committed wanton and indiscriminate reprisals. Hostilities thus precipitated, a murderous warfare ensued. Cotton Mather, indeed, sees fit to ascribe the whole matter, as usual, to the direct intervention of the enemy. "Two colonies of churches," he says, "being thus brought forth, and a third conceived, within the bounds of New England, it was time for the devil to take the alarm, and make some attempt in opposition to the possession which the Lord Jesus Christ was going to have of these utmost parts of the earth. These parts were then covered with nations of barbarous indians and infidels, in whom the prince of the power of the air did work as a spirit; nor could it be expected that nations of wretches, whose whole religion was the most explicit sort of devil-worship should not be acted by the devil to engage in some early and bloody action, for the extinction of a plantation so contrary to his interests, as that of *New England* was."

Whatever the cause, the whole weight of Indian hostility and resentment fell on the feeble settlements of Connecticut. The Pe-



EMIGRATION OF HOOKER AND HIS PARTY TO HARTFORD.

quots kept constant watch to surprise all stragglers, and frequently put their captives to death with the most cruel torments. A small fort had been erected by the English at Saybrook, near the mouth of the river, and the little garrison, under their governor, Gardiner, held out against the besieging savages with much resolution. Sassacus, the principal sachem of the hostile tribe, now used every exertion to gain the alliance of his old enemies, the Narragansetts, sending ambassadors to Canonieus and Miantonimo, urging every motive of policy and self-preservation for the relinquishment of their feud and uniting their arms against the common enemy. This piece of diplomacy was defeated by the agency of Roger Williams, whose influence with those great sachems has been already mentioned, and who, at the request of the Massachusetts authorities, promptly set forth in his canoe, and made his way, in a dangerous storm, to the Narragansett court. There he stayed for three days, countervailing by his persuasions the arguments of the Pequot ambassadors, whose hands were still reeking with the blood of his countrymen, and "from whom he nightly looked for their bloody knives at his throat also." These persuasions, combined with ancient enmity, outweighed the influence of the Pequots, and Canonieus entered into league with the English.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

THE PEQUOT WAR, CONTINUED.—THE ATTACK ON WETHERSFIELD.—EXPEDITION UNDER MASON.—SURPRISE AND STORMING OF THE PEQUOT FORT: TERRIBLE SLAUGHTER AND CONFLAGRATION.—FINAL DEFEAT AND DESTRUCTION OF THE TRIBE.—BARBAROUS EXULTATION OF THE EARLY HISTORIANS.—REFLECTIONS.

In April, 1637, the Pequots attacked the little town of Wethersfield, and killed nine of the settlers. The English now saw the necessity for immediate and energetic action. Ninety men were speedily equipped, and put under the command of Captain John Mason, an active soldier, and a party of seventy Mohegan Indians, headed by the notorious Uncas, (then in revolt against his chief and

kinsman, Sassacus,) were persuaded to join the expedition. Letters, entreating aid, were dispatched to Massachusetts. Early in May, the allied force proceeded down the river, and at Saybrook, set sail for the country of the Narragansetts, intending to take the enemy by surprise. Though apprized that a force from Massachusetts was on the way to join him, Mason, fearing lest the Pequots should learn of his design, resolved to strike a blow without delay. Strengthened by a considerable force of native allies, he marched westward from the Narragansett country, with great secrecy, and on the 5th of June, a little before daylight, came to "Pequot Hill," (in the present town of Groton,) on which the strongest fort of the enemy was situated.

The barking of a dog gave the first alarm to the unsuspecting garrison, who, though taken by surprise, and startled from profound slumber, hastily snatched their rude weapons, and fought with much courage. Mason, wearied at the length of the contest, at last cried, "We must burn them!" and snatching up a brand, set fire to the matting in one of the wigwams. The whole village was composed of the driest and most combustible materials, and the flames, urged by a strong wind, spread swiftly through the fort. The warriors continued to shoot until their bowstrings were snapped by the heat, and then mostly perished in the flames, or were shot down, in attempting to escape over the palisades. Women, children, and old people met the same terrible fate. It seems certain that at least four hundred perished, and possibly many more. "It was supposed," says Dr. Increase Mather, "that no less than 500 or 600 Pequot souls were brought down to hell that day." The reverend gentleman, it would seem, took an especial comfort in considering the future torment of the enemy; for elsewhere, he tells of "two and twenty Indian captains, slain all of them and brought down to hell in one day," and of a certain chief, who snerced at the religion of the English, "and withal, added a hideous blasphemy, immediately upon which a bullet took him in the head, and dashed out his brains, sending his cursed soul in a moment amongst the devils and blasphemers in hell forever."—*Prevalency of Prayer*, page 7.

Perhaps we cannot better arrive at a knowledge of the state of public sentiment in that day, and, indeed, for half a century afterward, than by perusing a few more of these precious extracts from the old New England historians.

"It was a fearful sight," says Mr. Morton, (*New England's Memo-*

RY.

ers, and frequently ornaments. A small ark, near the mouth of the river, was the residence of the governor, Gardiner, and his council. His resolution. Sassacus used every exertion to persuade the Narragansetts, and the Pequots, to join him, urging every promise of assistance and conquest, and the punishment of the enemy. This piece of policy, says Mr. Williams, whose name is already mentioned, was not approved by the authorities, promptly rejected, and the generous station, to the contrary, was maintained, and the ambassadors, whose names are mentioned, and whose countrymen, and whose knives at his throat, and whose enmity, outweighed the arguments, and were introduced into league with

BOOK ON WETHERS-  
RISE AND STORM-  
LAUGHTER AND  
DESTRUCTION  
TION OF THE  
IONS.

the town of Wethers-  
English now saw the  
Ninety men were  
led of Captain John  
by Mohegan Indians,  
against his chief and

rial,) "to see them thus frying in the fire, and the streams of blood quenching the same; and horrible was the stink and scent thereof; but the victory seemed a sweet sacrifice, and they gave the praise thereof to God, who had wrought so wonderfully for them, thus to enclose their enemies in their hands," &c. The Pequots from other villages, on hearing the disastrous tidings, hastened in numbers to the scene, and their very natural anguish is mocked by Cotton Mather in a strain of satire as dull as it is wicked. "When they came to see the ashes of their *friends*," he says, "mingled with the ashes of the *fort*, and the bodies of their countrymen so terribly *barbikew'd*, where the English had been doing a good morning's work, they howl'd, they roar'd, they stamp'd, they tore their hair; and though they did not *swear* (for they knew not how) yet they *curs'd*, and were the pictures of so many devils in desparation." Is not the feeling which prompted this truly diabolical sentence identical with that which animates the red warrior when beholding his foe consuming at the stake or running the gauntlet through innumerable blows?

Separated into small bodies, the Pequots were speedily cut off, in detail, by the victors. Closely pursued by their allied enemies, a portion retreated westward, and finally, in a swamp at Fairfield, after a brave defence, were completely routed. Most of the warriors were slain, and the women and children were made slaves, a portion being shipped to the West Indies. Sassacus, and a small body of his warriors, took refuge among the Mohawks, but were put to death by that inimical tribe. Several hundred of the broken nation, on one occasion, were taken by the English in the Narragansett country. "The men among them," says the Reverend William Holland, "to the number of 30, were turned presently into Charon's ferry boat, under the command of Skipper Gallop, who dispatched them a little without the harbour." "Twas found," says Reverend Cotton Mather, "the quickest way to feed the *fishes* with em." The women and children were enslaved. Thus thinned by massacre and transportation, the forlorn relics of the tribe thereafter remained in entire subjection to the victors.

"In reading accounts like these, it seems hard to determine which is the savage and which the child of civilization—and the hasty conclusion would be, that, except in the possession of fire-arms to defeat the Indians, and of letters to record their destruction, the authors and approvers of such deeds were but little in advance of the unhappy race, whose extermination left room for their own



e streams of blood  
and scent thereof;  
ey gave the praise  
y for them, thus to  
Pequots from other  
d in numbers to the  
y Cotton Mather in a  
ey came to see the  
e ashes of the *fort*,  
*urbikew'd*, where the  
e, they how'd, they  
hough they did not  
d were the pictures  
ing which prompted  
hich animates the  
at the stake or run-

re speedily cut off,  
eir allied enemies, a  
swamp at Fairfield,  
Most of the warriors  
ade slaves, a portion  
d a small body of  
s, but were put to  
f the broken nation,  
n the Narragansett  
Reverend William  
sently into Charon's  
op, who dispatched  
nd," says Reverend  
hes with em." The  
ed by massacre and  
ereafter remained in

to determine which  
ion—and the hasty  
sion of fire-arms to  
eir destruction, the  
little in advance of  
oom for their own

increase and prosperity. But until our own day is free from the disgrace of scenes parallel in cruelty, enacted by those who have had the advantage of two centuries of civilization, it ill becoms us to question with too great severity the deeds of men struggling for existence, in the wilderness, not only with a savage foe, but with all those hardships and uncertainties which render the heart of man fierce, callous, and unscrupulous in the means of self-preservation. The most disagreeable part of the whole business, as we have remarked before, is the fiendish exultation of the learned historians, who, sitting in their arm-chairs at Boston and Ipswich, record with godless sneers and chuckles, the defeat and sufferings of the savage patriots of the soil.

"These gentlemen, possessed with a happy conviction of their own righteousness, appear to have thought that the Lord, as a matter of course, was on their side, and that only the Adversary or his agents could be arrayed against them. A long course of ecclesiastical dictation had made them as infallible, in their 'conceit,' as so many popes; and a constant handling of Jewish scriptures had supplied them with a vast number of historical texts, all susceptible of excellent application in behalf of their position. These were the wars of the Lord; the extirpation of the uncircumcised occupants of the Promised Land; crusades against Edomites, Philistines, and Og, king of Bashan; and any severity toward the vanquished, or any elation at their defeat, might find an easy precedent in the exterminating policy of priests and prophets, and the pæans of victory chanted over their fallen foes."\*

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

# THE SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND.

---

## CHAPTER I.

SIR GEORGE CALVERT: HIS SCHEMES FOR SETTLEMENTS IN AMERICA: HE OBTAINS THE GRANT OF MARYLAND: FOUNDS A COLONY THERE.—SETTLEMENT OF ST. MARY'S.—RELATIONS WITH THE INDIANS.—EXPULSION OF CLAYBORNE.—DISCONTENT AND INSURRECTION.—PROTESTANT SETTLERS.—ACT FOR THE TOLERATION OF ALL CHRISTIAN SECTS.

SIR GEORGE CALVERT, a secretary of state under James I., having conscientiously become a Catholic, and finding, in the adoption of this proscribed faith, an insuperable bar to political ambition at home, had, from an early day, directed his exertions to the enterprise of peopling and governing new regions in America. He had made strenuous and protracted, but unavailing endeavours to found a permanent and prosperous settlement on the rugged shores of Newfoundland; and, finally, turned his attention to the milder and more fertile regions of Virginia. His desire to plant a colony there being thwarted by the prejudice of the authorities against his faith, he returned to England, where his court-favour, despite this obstacle, being good, he obtained from the crown the grant of an extensive region northward of the southern bank of the Potomac, and extending to the fortieth degree of north latitude.

Over this wide tract, almost unlimited personal jurisdiction was conferred on him, with some reservation in favour of self-government by the settlers; and the title of Lord Baltimore, which he received at the same time, was an additional proof of the royal favour. In honour of the queen, Henrietta Maria, he bestowed on the region of his projected colony the name of Maryland. Before the final ratification of the charter, he died, but his rights were confirmed to his son Cecil, the second Lord Baltimore, who devoted himself with

# MARYLAND.

SETTLEMENTS IN  
MARYLAND: FOUNDS  
ST. MARY'S.—  
PULSION OF  
RECTION.  
OR THE  
SCTS.

er James I., having  
in the adoption of  
political ambition at  
tions to the enter-  
America. He had  
leavours to found a  
ed shores of New-  
e milder and more  
colony there being  
ainst his faith, he  
spite this obstacle,  
nt of an extensive  
omae, and extend-

al jurisdiction was  
of self-government  
which he received  
royal favour. In  
d on the region of  
ore the final ratifi-  
confirmed to his  
oted himself with

much energy to the completion of his father's plan. In November, 1633, he dispatched his brother, Leonard Calvert, with about two hundred emigrants, mostly Catholics, in two vessels, the Ark and Dove, to found the projected settlement. This company first touched at Point Comfort, in Virginia, where, though with no sincere cordiality, they were courteously received by the authorities; and in March of the following year, proceeded to the Potomac.

Intercourse, generally friendly, was established with the natives inhabiting its shores; and, on the St. Mary's, at an Indian town, called Yoacomoco, (afterwards St. Mary's,) it was resolved to plant a settlement. The chief received the emigrants with extraordinary kindness and hospitality, and for hatchets, hoes, and other European articles, they obtained not only a large tract of land, but half of the village itself, with the corn growing adjacent, and were thus at once provided with comfortable shelter. This peaceful and friendly intercourse with the native inhabitants continued for nearly ten years, when it was interrupted by hostilities. These, after a continuance of two years, were ended by treaty, and a long interval of peace succeeded.

Only a few years after the establishment of the new colony, its tranquillity was disturbed by a species of civil warfare. Captain William Clayborne, who had planted a trading establishment on Kent Island, opposite to the settlements of Lord Baltimore, and who had expended large sums on the enterprise, was summoned by the proprietary to yield it up, as lying within the limits of his patent. Despite forcible remonstrance, both from Virginia and the English government, Baltimore resolved to enforce this obnoxious claim by an appeal to arms. After a number of hostile encounters, the plantation on the isle of Kent was carried by a night assault, and its tenants were made prisoners or put to flight. On the complaint of Clayborne, the king (July, 1638) strongly reprehended these violent proceedings, but, on account of the liberal political opinions of the injured party, the Commissioners of Plantations decided that, "concerning the violences and wrongs by the said Clayborne and the rest complained of, they found no cause at all to relieve them," &c.

Founded, as the new colony was, by a sect persecuted in England, it did not imitate the example of other settlements originating in a similar cause, but allowed free liberty of conscience and of worship to all, at least of the Christian faith. The overbearing claims of the proprietor to almost complete personal jurisdiction, however, occasioned much discontent and uneasiness, and, in 1645, excited an

actual insurrection, by which Calvert, the governor, was compelled to retreat into Virginia. The government of the proprietor, a year or two afterwards, was reinstated—an amnesty being granted for all political offences. In 1649, the year of the king's execution, the people, taking advantage of the success of the revolutionary party in England, wrung from Lord Baltimore an act by which some portion of legislative power was secured to their deputies.

To increase the population of his province, that nobleman now began to invite Protestant settlers, both from New England and Virginia. The former, strongly prejudiced, declined the invitation, but from the latter, on account of the arbitrary spirit of the authorities, great numbers migrated to Maryland. In 1649, the Catholic assembly, to their honour, passed a statute, explicitly declaring (what had always been matter of custom in the province) perfect freedom in matters of Christian faith. "Whereas the enforcing of the conscience in matters of religion," proclaims this liberal enactment, "hath frequently fallen out to be of dangerous consequence in those commonwealths where it has been practised, and for the more quiet and peaceable government of this province, and the better to preserve mutual love and amity among the inhabitants, no person within this province, professing to believe in Jesus Christ, shall be any ways troubled, molested, or discountenanced for his or her religion, in the free exercise thereof." The object sought in the explicit enactment of this statute was, doubtless, as well to attract and conciliate Protestant emigration, as for self-protection in event of the Catholics themselves falling into the minority.

## CHAPTER II.

ARBITRARY SYSTEM OF LORD BALTIMORE.—DISAFFECTION OF THE PROTESTANT SETTLERS.—INTERFERENCE OF THE VIRGINIA COMMISSIONERS.—AFFAIRS IN ENGLAND.—TRIUMPH OF THE PROTESTANTS.—REPEAL OF TOLERATION.—CIVIL WAR.—VICTORY OF THE PROTESTANTS.—FENDALL'S INSURRECTION: HIS SUCCESS AND FINAL RUIN.—TOLERATION RESTORED.

THE Virginian settlers, imbued with a spirit of political liberty, were surprised and grieved, ere long, at being required to take an oath of allegiance to Lord Baltimore, couched in terms of such arrogance, as appeared to them "far too high for him, and strangely unsuitable to the present liberty which God hath given to English subjects." The proprietor sternly rejected any modification of the obnoxious form, and ordered Stone, his governor, to enforce forfeiture and banishment against all who should fail within three months to comply with his requisition. But that functionary thought it imprudent to carry out such an arbitrary ordinance, and, accordingly, deferred its execution.

A commission had been appointed to reduce Virginia under the parliamentary rule, and it so happened that Bennet and Clayborne, both at enmity with the proprietary, had the principal control of its transactions. The former being made governor, and the latter secretary of Virginia, they speedily found occasion to interfere in the affairs of Maryland. After considerable debate with Stone, they so far modified their demands as only to claim the nomination of most of the colonial officers. Baltimore, exceedingly indignant, sought redress from the revolutionary party, which he had endeavoured by all means to conciliate; and it is supposed that he obtained some secret promise of countenance from the Protector; for, in 1654, he sent word to his governor to resist the proceedings of the commission at all hazards, to displace their officers, and to expel from the province all who would not take the disputed oath of allegiance. Stone, accordingly, feeling confident, it would seem, in the support of some high authority, proceeded, with much impetuosity, to put these obnoxious instructions into force.

Three months of negotiation ensued, when the commission, resolving to carry matters with a high hand, set forth for Maryland, and issued a proclamation deposing him, and declaring Cromwell the head of the government. With a strong force of Protestants, they advanced against the governor, who, on his part, could gather but a comparatively small and timid levy of the opposite sect and faction. In despair of success, he resigned his authority into the hands of the two commissioners, who, thereupon, appointed ten others, to administer affairs in the several departments. By an edict, the same summer, they deprived the Catholics of their elective franchise; and the next assembly, strongly Protestant, repealed the act for universal toleration, so far as the obnoxious religion was concerned.

Though this bigoted act was not carried to the extreme of actual persecution, it naturally produced great resentment in the minds of the aggrieved sect. To be thus excluded, at least by the law, from the province they had founded, and to see their religion, a refuge for which had induced them to undertake their exile, proscribed by aliens, was more than human patience could endure. The Catholics and others attached to the house of Baltimore, rallied around the governor, and soon presented a formidable attitude. They seized on the public records at Patuxent, reduced a considerable tract of country to submission, and advanced upon the chief station of the Protestant party, at Providence, in Anne Arundel. Overawed at these formidable demonstrations, the latter made overtures of peace, and even of submission, but receiving no answer, resolved to fight the quarrel out. In March, 1655, the Catholic force, two hundred and fifty strong, sailed up the Severn and disembarked. Their enemies, less than half that number, made a desperate stand against them, and battle was joined with cries of "Hey for St. Mary!" and "God is our strength!" After a sharp but brief contest, victory fell to the weaker but more valiant party of Puritans; Stone, with his chief officers, being made captive, and all the rest of his force except five being killed or made prisoners. Baggage, artillery, and a store of beads and relics, and similar "trash wherein they trusted," also fell into the hands of the victors. The life of the defeated leader was hardly saved from the vengeance of his enemies, and four of the chief persons of his party were tried by a council of war, and were executed.

Not long after these events, Josias Fendall, an active partisan of the Baltimore faction, rallying the Catholics, raised a counter-insurrection, which was suppressed, not without difficulty. The proprie-

tary, pleased with his exertions, now appointed him governor, and he gained possession of the district of St. Mary's. By March, 1658, by his policy and address, he contrived to have the authority of Baltimore and of himself acknowledged throughout the province. Religious freedom, and the relinquishment of the obnoxious claims of the proprietary, were among the conditions on which this agreement was founded.

When, in March, 1660, tidings of the Restoration of Charles II., came to Maryland, the assembly, supposing that Baltimore, on account of his intrigues with the revolutionary party, would be a mark for the royal displeasure, hastily and prematurely disowned his authority, substituting their own, in the king's name. But the proprietor, easily making his peace at court, was fully reinstated in his privileges, and speedily sent out his brother, Philip Calvert, as governor. Fendall, who had been implicated in the proceedings of the assembly, was tried and convicted of high treason, but was suffered to escape with comparatively slight punishment. For a subsequent insurrectionary movement, he was fined, imprisoned, and banished from the colony.

The population of the province, at this time, (1660,) has been variously estimated at from eight to twelve thousand. The Quakers, who had experienced such persecution in other colonies (see New England, &c.) resorted there in considerable numbers, and were tolerated in the exercise of their worship.

# VIRGINIA,

CONTINUED.

---

## CHAPTER I.

REIGN OF CHARLES I.: HIS VIEWS OF VIRGINIA.—YEARDLEY,  
GOVERNOR: WEST: HARVEY: HIS DEPOSITION BY THE PEOPLE:  
HE IS SUPPORTED BY THE CROWN.—WYATT.—SIR WIL-  
LIAM BERKELEY, GOVERNOR.—LOYALTY OF THE COL-  
ONY.—PERSECUTION OF DISSENTERS.—SECOND INDIAN  
CONSPIRACY AND MASSACRE.—OPECHANCAUGH  
A PRISONER: HIS SPEECH: MURDERED BY A  
SOLDIER.—REDUCTION OF THE INDIANS.—  
TRIUMPH OF THE PURITANS IN ENGLAND.  
—ROYALIST EMIGRATION TO VIRGINIA.  
—LOYALTY OF THE PROVINCE.

THE main object of Charles I., from the time of his accession to the throne, in governing Virginia, seems to have been to derive as great a pecuniary profit from it as possible. Sufficiently arbitrary in his domestic policy, he probably regarded any republican spirit in this weak and distant colony as too inconsiderable to deserve his attention; while, continually seeking the means of supporting a government without the necessity of resorting to parliament for supplies, his only anxiety was to derive as large a revenue as possible from the importation of tobacco. When Wyatt, in 1626, returned to England, Sir George Yeardley, the author, as it were, of Virginia's political freedom, was appointed governor. Under his just and equal administration, the province prospered and increased greatly in numbers; as many as a thousand emigrants arriving in a single year. He died in 1627, leaving a high character, and a memory revered by the people. Francis West was elected his successor, as governor, by the council, which, in such case, was authorized to fill the vacancy. John Harvey, who, soon after, was



appointed by the king to that office, and who arrived in Virginia in 1629, appears, by his system of favouritism, to have excited much discontent in the province, which, nevertheless, by its popular form of government, enjoyed a good share of prosperity and freedom. A remarkable order and steadiness seems to have characterized its early legislation.

The cession to Lord Baltimore of a large tract, which the Virginians had always been accustomed to consider as lying within their own jurisdiction, created no little alarm and uneasiness. Harvey, however, who was a strong partisan of the crown, when Clayborne, defeated and outlawed in Maryland, took refuge in Virginia, so far from taking advantage of the opportunity to exert an influence over the sister province, sent the fugitive a prisoner to England. The people, and the majority of the council, indignant at this act, summarily deposed the governor, appointing Captain John West in his place, till the king's pleasure could be known. Supported by the royal favour, however, he re-assumed his office, which he continued to hold until 1639, when he was replaced by Sir Francis Wyatt.\* Two years afterwards, (February, 1642,) Sir William Berkeley, in turn appointed to that office, arrived in Virginia, where, by his cordial agreement with the legislature, many improvements were made in the civil code, and important acts were passed for the benefit of the colony.

To a province like Virginia, alike prosperous and loyal, the triumph of the popular and Puritan party in England brought no satisfaction. On the contrary, to mark its attachment to the established church, the colonial government even went to the length of instituting a religious persecution (the first in Virginia) in its behalf—an especial order being issued in 1643, by the council, for the banishment of non-conformists, and the silencing of all except Episcopal preaching.

Hostility with the Indians, long confined to sudden forays and petty skirmishes, in the next year ripened to a general war. Remembering the sanguinary success of their former attempt, the savages, with profound secrecy, again concerted a simultaneous attack on the intruders. On the 18th of April, 1644, the frontier settlements were assaulted, and some three hundred of the colonists fell victims; but the assailants, losing heart, their design only commenced, returned to the forests, where their enemies were not long in pursuing them. In this war, Opechaneanough, so long the terror

of the whites, was made prisoner. He was now in extreme old age, being unable to raise his eyelids, which, when he desired to see, were opened by his attendants. Being brought before the governor, a spectacle for the eager curiosity of the crowd, he said, haughtily, "Had Sir William Berkeley fallen into my hands, I would not have exposed him thus to the gaze of my people." A ruffianly soldier, to avenge, it is said, some former grievance, extinguished, by a cowardly murder, the feeble spark of life yet lingering in his frame. These successes were followed up with much vigour, repeated incursions being made against the Indians; and, in 1646, peace was concluded with Necotowance, their chief, (the successor of Opechanough,) on terms of submission and cession of territory.

This difficulty, (the last with the natives in their immediate vicinity,) thus overcome, the Virginian settlements continued to increase and prosper. In the winter of 1648, more than thirty vessels, at one time, were trading in their ports. The number of colonists had risen to twenty thousand; and the triumph of the Puritans in England, compelling the opposite party to exile, brought about an emigration of numerous loyalists and cavaliers, some of them men of distinction. The loyalty of the province, confirmed by this means, stood firm for the House of Stuart. Immediately after the execution of Charles, the government of Virginia had recognized his son, and the latter, from his retreat in Berda, had sent to Berkeley a new commission; and that officer, in 1651, wrote to the king, with ardent expressions of attachment and fidelity, and even hinting the advisability of his taking refuge in his American colonies. It was deemed possible, by the over-sanguine cavaliers, that this little province, the last to submit to the commonwealth, might make a successful stand for royalty against the entire power of England.

## CHAPTER II.

ACT FOR THE REDUCTION OF VIRGINIA.—THE NAVIGATION ACT.—MODERATION OF THE PARLIAMENT.—SUBMISSION OF THE PROVINCE.—BENNETT, GOVERNOR: DIGGS: MATHEWS.—JEALOUSY OF THE ASSEMBLY AGAINST FOREIGN INTERFERENCE.—FREEDOM AND PROSPERITY OF VIRGINIA UNDER THE COMMONWEALTH.—DEATH OF CROMWELL.—BERKELEY, GOVERNOR.—RESTORATION OF CHARLES II.—ITS ILL EFFECT ON THE PROVINCE.

THE Parliament, triumphant over its enemies at home, at last turned its attention to the refractory province of Virginia. The council of state was empowered to reduce it to obedience; and the "Navigation Act," passed in 1651, deprived it, nominally, at least, in common with the other English colonies, of foreign trade, except that carried on by English vessels. Considering the bold front of opposition which Virginia had exhibited to the popular government of England, the measures adopted were characterized by singular moderation and leniency. Two of the three commissioners, appointed for the reduction of the province, were Virginians; and they had charge to use all mild and persuasive means before resorting to force. The liberties of the colony were amply secured, in case of peace, and the Virginians, not feeling called on to contend for the claims of a dethroned monarch to the extreme of actual resistance, on learning the moderate nature of the parliamentary commission, laid aside all thought of resistance. Full power of self-government, and equal privileges with Englishmen at home, were provided for the colony; but the influence of the dominant party, and the submission or assent of the colonists, were sufficiently evinced in the election of Richard Bennett, a strong revolutionist, by the burgesses, to the office of governor. On his retirement, in 1655, Edward Diggs received the same office at the hands of the assembly—Cromwell, during his tenure of power, never interfering with the right exercised by the Virginians of choosing their own officers.

In 1658, an old planter, named Samuel Mathews, described as one who "kept a good house, lived bravely, and was a true lover of

Virginia," was chosen to the same post. Becoming, ere long, involved in a dispute with the assembly, he announced his intention of referring the matters in issue to the decision of the Protector. Alarmed at the prospect of dependence on a foreign authority, that body proceeded to make a bold and startling declaration of the popular sovereignty, and actually deposed Mathews, whom they had lately elected. Having thus vindicated their dignity, they forthwith reinstated him in office, while he submitted to their requirements with a readiness which sufficiently shows that, whatever the temporary disagreement, no serious ill-feeling had existed between the executive and legislative powers. The spirit of public liberty, by this bold demonstration, gained a great accession of strength and firmness.

On the death of the Protector, the assembly of burgesses, after private deliberation, resolved to acknowledge his son, Richard Cromwell, as the head of the English government; and when, by his resignation and the death of their governor, (1660,) the destinies of Virginia seemed fallen entirely in their hands, they resolved that the supreme power should be lodged in their own body, and that all writs should issue in its name, "until there shall arrive from England a commission, which the assembly itself shall judge to be lawful." The prospect of the Restoration was hailed with joy by Virginia, and the election of Sir William Berkeley to the office of governor, was an earnest of its renewed loyalty. That faithful adherent to the House of Stuart, in accepting the office, however, expressly acknowledged the authority of the assembly, of which, he said, he was but a servant, and waited eagerly for news of the reërection of the monarchy.

During the civil wars, the parliamentary government, and the Protectorate, Virginia had been steadily gaining, by precedent, fortifications to her system of self-government. Commerce was free, (for the Navigation Act soon became a dead letter,) and religious toleration (except to the Quakers, a sect at that time almost universally proscribed) was fully established. Universal suffrage of freemen prevailed, and in consequence of the fertility of the soil, and the high price commanded by the staple production, tobacco, remarkable prosperity prevailed. These advantages, unalloyed by any act of oppression by the home government, had rendered the province one of the most desirable places of residence in America.

The elevation of Charles II. to the throne of his fathers, marked by

ning, ere long, in-  
 ceed his intention  
 of the Protector.  
 igned authority, that  
 aration of the pop-  
 s, whom they had  
 nity, they forthwith  
 their requirements  
 whatever the tem-  
 l existed between  
 t of public liberty,  
 cession of strength

of burgesses, after  
 his son, Richard  
 ent; and when, by  
 1660,) the destinies  
 they resolved that  
 own body, and that  
 e shall arrive from  
 f shall judge to be  
 hailed with joy by  
 ley to the office of  
 lty. That faithful  
 the office, however,  
 embley, of which, he  
 ly for, news of the

overnment, and the  
 g, by precedent, for-  
 Commerce was free,  
 etter,) and religious  
 time almost univer-  
 rsal suffrage of free-  
 lity of the soil, and  
 uction, tobacco, re-  
 ages, unalloyed by  
 t, had rendered the  
 ndence in America.  
 is fathers, marked by

the northern colonies with such gloomy forebodings, was received with exultation by Virginia. Berkeley at once réassumed his official functions, under the royal authority, and, in the king's name, summoned an assembly, which, from its loyalist composition, clearly indicated the prevalent sympathy of the colony. With strange indifference to the blessings the country had enjoyed under self-government, the dominant party at once proceeded to pass acts of an arbitrary and intolerant nature. Suffrage was restricted to freeholders and householders, the English Church was exclusively réestablished, and the persecution of dissenters, which had before compelled them to seek refuge in other colonies, was renewed. The assembly, like the Long Parliament, made its sitting, in a manner, perpetual, the members retaining their seats for more than ten years, and, finally, dissolving only when compelled by necessity. The restoration of arbitrary power was systematically pursued.

The réerection of the monarchy, to which Virginia had looked with such sanguine hope, was presently the means of inflicting great evil on the colony. The provisions of the Navigation Act, restricting all commerce to the parent-country, had been evaded or disregarded at an early day by the American provinces, and had latterly fallen into complete disuse. This obnoxious statute was now réenacted with increased strictness, and enforced with practical rigour—the influence of the London merchants, who derived great profits from the monopoly, proving sufficient to outweigh all the complaints and remonstrances of the colonists. In vain did Berkeley, deputed by the Virginians, repair to court, and urge on the ear of the king, with all the influence which his ancient loyalty could command, the disastrous effects produced on the province by this arbitrary restriction of its growing intercourse with European nations, and complain that the disloyal colonies of New England were suffered to set the act in question at nought, while the faithful province of Virginia was forced to a strict compliance. His remonstrances availed nothing, and thus the first fruit which Virginia reaped from the Restoration, long cherished with such ardent expectation, was the infliction of a monopoly calculated greatly to retard her progress and impair her prosperity.

# NEW ENGLAND,

CONTINUED.

---

## CHAPTER I.

INIMICAL MEASURES ADOPTED IN ENGLAND.—SPIRIT OF MASSACHUSETTS: THREAT OF REVOLT.—THE ENGLISH REVOLUTION.—INDUSTRY AND PROSPERITY OF NEW ENGLAND: ITS INDEPENDENCE.—NEW HAMPSHIRE ANNEXED TO MASSACHUSETTS.—FORMATION OF THE NEW ENGLAND CONFEDERACY.

THE first blow aimed by the English crown at the growing spirit of mingled freedom and intolerance in New England, was the appointment of a commission, consisting of the Archbishop of Canterbury and others, with full power to establish a government there, both ecclesiastical and civil, and to revoke any charter, the provisions of which might seem to infringe on the royal prerogative. (April, 1634.) The news of this invidious ordinance awakened universal alarm and indignation. A general spirit of resistance was evinced, and hasty provision was made for the fortification and defence of Massachusetts. All the clergy of the province, assembled at Boston, unanimously agreed to resist the imposition of a foreign governor. "We ought," they declared, "to defend our lawful possessions, if we are able; if not, to avoid and protract." A fresh intrigue, directed against the peace of the new commonwealth, was that of the Plymouth Company, which surrendered its charter into the king's hands, its members hoping to obtain extensive private grants, and using all their influence to get that of the Massachusetts Company revoked. Legal proceedings were commenced against the latter, but the death of Mason, the patentee of New Hampshire, and the prime mover of these inimical proceedings, prevented them from being carried to the extreme.

The council, in 1638, demanded of Winthrop, that the patent should be given up; but the authorities, in reply, urged strong demonstrations against the projected arbitrary enforcement. It was backed, indeed, by a judgment from the Court of King's Bench, but such judgment had been obtained by the intrigues of their enemies, and doubtless owed its origin to royal dictation or influence. They concluded their reply with an implied threat of independence in case matters were forced to an extremity. "If the patent be taken from us," they declare, "*the common people* will conceive that his majesty hath cast them off, and that hereby they are freed from their subjection and allegiance, and therefore will be ready to confederate themselves under a new government, for their necessary safety and subsistence, which will be of dangerous example unto other plantations, and perilous to ourselves, of incurring his majesty's displeasure." This covert menace of revolution, it may be imagined, was encouraged by the growing power and influence of the Puritan party in England, where, indeed, the authority of the sovereign was already beginning to find sufficient employment in suppressing the popular movement, without crossing the ocean to seek a sparsely-peopled wilderness. In fact, numbers, who, in the day of persecution, had sought refuge in America, now hastened back to England to take their share in the extraordinary events which were there beginning to transpire. "By the year 1640, the tide of emigration, which, for many years, had flowed steadily to New England, gradually ceased. The ascendancy of the Puritan party in England soon removed the grievous wrongs and disabilities under which that numerous body had once laboured, and the temptation to share the success of the triumphant faction at home was greater than that to retreat into the wilderness which had been its refuge when weak and persecuted by its destined victims."

More than twenty thousand emigrants, however, before the year 1640, had arrived in New England, and by their extraordinary industry and enterprise, prosperity and comfort had been developed to a degree which, considering the asperity of the climate and country, seemed hardly possible. Little more than ten years had elapsed since the foundation of the Massachusetts colony, yet in that interval, says Mr. Bancroft, fifty towns and villages had been planted, and nearly as many churches had been built; and foreign commerce, in furs, timber, grain, and fish, had already been established on a permanent base. Nay, the manufacture of cotton

ND,

LAND.—SPIRIT OF  
—THE ENGLISH  
PERITY OF NEW  
W HAMPSHIRE  
FORMATION  
EDERACY.

at the growing spirit  
w England, was the  
e Archbishop of Can-  
h a government there,  
charter, the provisions  
prerogative. (April,  
e awakened universal  
esistance was evinced,  
eation and defence of  
assembled at Boston,  
f a foreign governor.  
wful possessions, if we  
resh intrigue, directed  
was that of the Ply-  
arter into the king's  
e private grants, and  
assachusetts Company  
ed against the latter,  
w Hampshire, and the  
prevented them from

(the staple being supplied from Barbadoes) had already made a commencement.

As a matter of course, the Long Parliament, the Puritan and revolutionary element of which was so greatly in the ascendant, looked with warm sympathy to the New England colonists; but the latter seem to have avoided, at first, any decided commitment of themselves either to the political or ecclesiastical strife which at this time raged in England. From this distracted condition of the mother-country, and the favour of the dominant party, they came to possess, what they enjoyed for nearly twenty years, the blessings of actual independence and self-government. This, however, must be understood in the restricted sense of partial suffrage, and of the entirely preponderate influence of "the church" over that of "the people." The most important political event of 1642, was the annexation to the jurisdiction of Massachusetts of the neighbouring settlements of New Hampshire, which, it was claimed, fell within the patent of the former, and the inhabitants of which, by their own action, confirmed the claim, and were admitted, on equal terms with the Massachusetts people, as an integral portion of that province.

As early as 1637, immediately after the dangers of the Pequot war had shown the necessity of union, a confederacy of the New England colonies had been proposed, and in the following year had again been discussed, but on account of the jealousy of Connecticut, had been deferred. The latter province, however, wishing assistance against the encroachments of the Dutch, at length renewed the negotiation; and in 1643, the states of Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven, formed a union for mutual aid and protection—"the first germ of that mighty confederacy which now numbers more millions than its original did thousands, and which, from a bleak corner of New England, has extended, for twenty degrees of latitude, over the thousand leagues of mountain, forest, and prairie, that divide the two oceans."

The chief objects of this alliance were protection against hostile savages, resistance to Dutch and French encroachment, and the fortification of the degree of civil and religious liberty which the several colonies had obtained or permitted. Two commissioners from each colony (none but church members being eligible to the office) were to manage the affairs of the federal government, and to have the control of peace and war, of making public improvements, and, generally, of any matters which might properly pertain to the



and already made a

t, the Puritan and  
in the ascendant,  
l colonists; but the  
ed commitment of  
strife which at this  
l condition of the  
party, they came to  
ars, the blessings of  
, however, must be  
uffrage, and of the  
" over that of "the  
1642, was the an-  
f the neighbouring  
lained, fell within  
which, by their own  
on equal terms with  
of that province.

gers of the Pequot  
deracy of the New  
following year had  
usy of Connecticut,  
ver, wishing assist-  
length renewed the  
husetts, Plymouth,  
for mutual aid and  
deracy which now  
ousands, and which,  
tended, for twenty  
of mountain, forest,

tion against hostile  
oachment, and the  
s liberty which the  
Two commissioners  
eing eligible to the  
government, and to  
blic improvements,  
perly pertain to the

government of a confederation. These powers, apparently so extensive, were held in check by the dependence of this central authority on the separate states for the means of carrying its enactments into effect. Neither the people of New Hampshire, nor those of Rhode Island or of Providence Plantations, although they desired it, were admitted to this league, which, indeed, was doubtless more harmonious than it could have been, had opinions more liberal in politics, or more tolerant in religion, been permitted to mingle in its councils.

## CHAPTER III.

UNCAS AND MIANTONIMO.—DEFEAT AND DEATH OF THE LATTER.  
—DISCREDIT TO THE ENGLISH.—RHODE ISLAND: ITS LIBERTIES GUARANTEED BY THE PARLIAMENT.—LETTER TO SIR HENRY VANE.—REMARKABLE FREEDOM ENJOYED THERE.  
—MAINE ANNEXED BY MASSACHUSETTS.

A TRAGEDY, purely native in its origin and execution, but in which the English authorities contrived to play a very discreditable part, was enacted in 1643. Miantonimo, the Narragansett sachem, accused by Uncas, the Mohegan, of hostility to the colonies, had been compelled to appear in an ignominious manner at Boston, and had met with much humiliation at the hands of the English. To revenge himself on his accuser, despite a peace, guaranteed by the latter, with a thousand warriors he attacked the hostile tribe. Defeated by the superior strategy of his rival, and taken prisoner, he was conducted to Hartford, where Uncas, with a moderation which might seem surprising, but for the result which he probably considered as certain, referred the destiny of his captive to the Commissioners of the Confederacy. These, acting under advice and counsel of the clergy, so far from interposing in behalf of mercy, and actuated, doubtless, by jealousy of the tribe of the defeated chief, decided that he might lawfully be put to death, and delivered him into the hands of the victor. The latter, with his brother, Wawequa, and other Indians, and accompanied by two white men, led his prisoner along a solitary pathway, in which, at a silent signal from Uncas, Wawequa, stepping up behind, sunk his tomahawk in the brain of

the victim. The revengeful chief, *it is said*, cut a morsel of flesh from the shoulder of his enemy, and ate it, saying that it was "the sweetest meat he ever eat; it made his heart strong." The tribe of the fallen chief, who were warmly attached to him, lamented deeply over his unhappy fate, and complained with bitterness that large quantities of wampum, which they had sent to the Mohegans as a ransom for his life, had been retained, while the life of their leader, which it should have purchased, was treacherously taken. His brother, Pessacus, who succeeded to the command, took signal revenge on the enemy, and, but for the interposition of the English, would doubtless have inflicted on Uncas the same fate as that which the latter had wreaked on the chief of the Narragansetts.

While the other New England provinces, secure in union, and holding their political existence and possession of their territories either by royal charter, or purchase from the original grantees, presented an almost unassailable front to foreign interference, Rhode Island, whose only tenure of possession was that derived from the native chieftains, had cause alike to dread the ambition and encroachment of her powerful neighbours, and acts of usurpation on the part of the government at home. To place on a more secure basis the state he had founded, Williams, in 1643, sailed for England, and pleaded the cause of freedom before the parliamentary authorities. By the influence of Sir Henry Vane, who was now a member of the council for the government of America, and by the reputation which his own exertions had already acquired for him, a charter, insuring extraordinary freedom of civil government, was granted to Rhode Island by the parliament. On his return, he was welcomed with enthusiastic gratitude by the citizens, and the people of Providence, in an eloquent letter of thanks to Sir Henry Vane, expressed their acknowledgment of his continual kindness and protection. "From the first beginning," declares this admirably-written document, "you have been a noble and true friend to an outcast and despised people; we have ever reaped the sweet fruits of your constant loving kindness and favor. We have long been free from the iron yoke of wolfish bishops; we have sitted dry from the streams of blood, spilt by the wars in our native country. We have not felt the new chains of the presbyterian tyrants, nor in this colony have we been consumed by the over-zealous fire of the (so called) godly Christian magistrates. We have not known what an excise means; we have almost forgotten what tithes are. We have long

a morsel of flesh  
g that it was "the  
g." The tribe of  
, lamented deeply  
terness that large  
the Mohegans as a  
fe of their leader,  
ously taken. His  
and, took signal  
on of the English,  
fate as that which  
unsetts.

are in union, and  
of their territories  
inal grantees, pre-  
terference, Rhode  
derived from the  
ambition and en-  
of usurpation on  
on a more secure  
B, sailed for Eng-  
the parliamentary  
, who was now a  
erica, and by the  
quired for him, a  
government, was  
his return, he was  
us, and the people  
Sir Henry Vane,  
kindness and pro-  
admirably-written  
end to an outcast  
ect fruits of your  
g been free from  
en dry from the  
untry. We have  
mor in this colony  
of the (so called)  
n what an excise  
We have long

drank of the cup of as great liberties as any people that we can hear of, under the whole heaven. When we are gone, our posterity and children after us shall read in our town records your loving kindness to us, and our real endeavor after peace and righteousness." A more honourable testimonial, or one more gratifying to a pure and benevolent mind, has seldom been offered by a state to its benefactor.

The good people of Rhode Island, in possession of their coveted privileges, did not abuse them. Our liberty, they had boasted, shall not degenerate into an anarchy. Nor was this an idle vaunt. Although a very great diversity of creeds, some wild and fanatical enough, it is said, had taken refuge in the asylum from American persecution, and, though perfect freedom of debate prevailed, and was sometimes exercised stormily enough, the legislation of the little state was characterized by singular good sense and impartiality. Williams, who made another voyage to England to repel a menaced assault on its franchises, ever fostered the popular spirit, and despite the earnest wishes of the assembly, refused to obtain or accept from the English authorities the appointment of himself as governor—his wise prescience dreading any unnecessary commitment of the affairs of the state to a foreign, even though a friendly power.

In Maine, disputes arising between the agents of rival patentees, and no settlement of the question being issued from England, the inhabitants of several towns, by their own action, erected an independent government, and Massachusetts, ever willing to extend its influence, whether by force or invitation, over its neighbours, decided that the territory in question came within her own jurisdiction. Commissioners were dispatched there, and the whole country was speedily, with the consent of its inhabitants, brought under the government of the more powerful province. This summary change, however, appears to have been generally satisfactory to the residents.

## CHAPTER III.

OPPOSITION TO THE MASSACHUSETTS AUTHORITIES.—PARLIAM-  
 ENTARY ENCROACHMENT RESISTED AND RELINQUISHED.—  
 NEW ENGLAND FAVOURED BY CROMWELL.—BIGOTED AND  
 INTOLERANT LAWS OF MASSACHUSETTS.—PERSECUTION OF  
 BAPTISTS.—THE QUAKERS: PERSECUTION OF THEM: FOUR  
 EXECUTED: THEIR COURAGE AND FORTITUDE.—  
 APOLOGISTS FOR THE HANGINGS.—REFLECTIONS.

THE authorities of Massachusetts, in close league with the clergy, the elders, and the more intolerant church party, were not long in awaking a spirit of opposition among the partisans of a more liberal and tolerant policy. At an early day, indeed, that party had shown much jealousy of any thing like a prescriptive government or dictation in elections, and when it had been proposed that the office of governor should be held for life, it was forthwith resolved by the deputies, that no magisterial office should be held for more than a year. A direct collision between the two parties had occurred in 1645, on a question of small moment in itself, but involving the legal extent of the authority of the magistrates. A small majority of the deputies to the general court held that, from the assumption of power by these authorities, the liberty of the people was in danger; the rest, and, of course, nearly all the magistrates themselves, resolved that "authority was overmuch slighted," and that there was danger of "a mere democracy." The popular party, by the enactment of a law on the point in question, obtained a nominal triumph, but the magistrates, the governor (Winthrop) and the clergy retained their ascendancy in the government, and circumstances favouring their purpose, were even enabled to extend their actual power.

In November, 1646, at an assembly of the general court of Massachusetts, a firm stand was made by the government of that colony against threatened encroachments by the parliament on its independence. A vehement and eloquent remonstrance was forwarded to England, where Winslow, their agent, and Sir Henry Vane, who, despite some unkind usage, was still a fast friend of the liberty of the colonies, exerted all their influence against the anticipated dan-

ger. The parliament, possessed of the true circumstances, confirmed their liberties and refused to listen to appeals from their justice. When, a few years afterwards, the supreme power became vested in Cromwell, as Protector, that great man, with a natural sympathy both for their virtues and their errors, looked with uncommon favour on the rugged colonists of New England. He favoured their commerce, allowed them full independence of self-government, and was even willing to extend their political power by a gift of the rich island of Jamaica, which had been wrested by him from the Spaniards. The Protectorate, without doubt, was the golden age of New England liberty.

The Massachusetts authorities, hardened by their triumph over the popular party, and provoked by opposition, ere long, by their sanguinary persecutions, inflicted on New England the darkest stain which her character had ever sustained. Sharp laws against both infidelity and heresy were enacted—the penalty of death being denounced against such as should deny the infallibility of any part of the Bible—anabaptism being made a penal offence—and absence from meeting being punishable by fine.

Had the whole community been entirely united in opinion, these bigoted laws might have remained simply an expression of the intolerance of those who contrived them. But a strong party in favour of full liberty of conscience already existed in New England, and in Plymouth, the proposition was even made for toleration to all, "without exception against Turk, Jew, Papist, Arian," &c., &c. The opponents of this plan contrived, by protracting, to defeat it; but it was evidently popular with the citizens, for, writes Winslow to Winthrop, "You would have admired to see how sweet this carnion relished to the palate of most of them."—(Baneroft.)

The magnates, the elders, the clergy, and the church generally, it would seem, were of opinion, that the sharp arm of the law should be used to restrain all dissent from their own views. Clarke, of Rhode Island, a Baptist, having attempted to preach at Lynn, was seized, and compelled to attend the Congregational meeting, where, says Mr. Baneroft, "he expressed his aversion by a harmless indecorum, which yet would have been without excuse, had his presence been voluntary." Heavy fines and severe whippings were used to repress the spread of the dreaded heresy. (1651.)

An obstacle to conformity far more formidable, and one irrepressible by persecution, was soon found in the fanatical courage of the

Y.  
 TIES.—PARLIA-  
 INQUISHED.—  
 BIGOTED AND  
 ESECUTION OF  
 THEM: FOUR  
 ITUDE.—  
 ECTIONS.

with the clergy,  
 were not long in  
 of a more liberal  
 party had shown  
 ernment or dicta  
 that the office of  
 resolved by the  
 d for more than a  
 had occurred in  
 out involving the  
 A small majority  
 n the assumption  
 people was in dan-  
 erates themselves,  
 " and that there  
 ar party, by the  
 tained a nominal  
 nthrop) and the  
 ent, and circum-  
 d to extend their

eral court of Mas-  
 ent of that colony  
 ment on its inde-  
 eece was forwarded  
 (Henry Vane, who,  
 of the liberty of  
 e anticipated dan-

then rapidly increasing sect of Quakers—a sect, in external demeanour and popular consideration, almost the reverse of that which bears the title in our own day. An enthusiastic and purely self-abnegating zeal for their faith, caused them voluntarily and gratuitously to expose themselves to the extremest dangers of persecution; and at the time we write of, they were pretty generally proscribed throughout the Christian world. Two women of this persuasion, arriving at Boston in 1656, were seized at once, kept in close confinement for five weeks, and then, their books having been burned by the hangman, were expelled from the province. One of them, Mary Fisher, soon after, set forth alone to deliver a message to the Great Turk, an errand which she actually performed at Adrianople—the sanctity attached to her supposed insanity, protecting her from any wrong or insult. Many others of the obnoxious sect were sent back to England, or otherwise banished; and when, the next year, some of them returned, imprisonment and whipping were freely resorted to. Fines were imposed upon any who should attend the Quaker meetings or entertain any of the Quakers; and loss of ears and boring the tongue with a hot iron were provided for the obstinate.

As a natural consequence, a people so fearless, and even so unannoyed, as it were, of persecution, soon flocked in numbers to Massachusetts; and the general court of that province, with a rash and cruel persistence in their policy of exclusion, enacted that death should be the penalty of returning from banishment. This sanguinary decree, precipitated by the turbulent and eccentric demeanour of some of the proscribed zealots, was, in 1659, carried into execution on the persons of Mary Dyer, who had returned, and of Stephenson and Robinson, who had come, as voluntary martyrs, to shame, with their blood, the cruelty of the authorities. At the place of execution the woman was reprieved, but answered with spirit, "Let me perish with my brethren, unless you will annul your wicked law." She was sent out of the colony, but, returning, also perished by the hands of the hangman. William Leddra, who was offered his life, on condition of promising to keep away, refused the proffer, and was also hanged. At the very time of his trial, Christison, also banished on pain of death, boldly returned, and entered the court; he was adjudged to die, but told his persecutors, truly enough, that for every one they hanged, five more would come to glut them with bloodshed.

Awed, it would seem, by the determination of the sufferers, and

yielding to popular opinion, which was shocked at these cruelties, the magistrates finally paused in their sanguinary career. The life of Christison was spared, and he, with many others, was released from prison. A royal order, not long after, prohibited the repetition of these extreme atrocities, though the minor devices of persecution were still freely resorted to.

It is extraordinary what pains have been taken by many of our writers to clear the skirts of their ancestors of the stain attaching to the most undeniable persecution on record. "It was in self-defence," thus the ablest and most accurate of American historians commences an elaborate apology for these transactions, "that Puritanism in America began those transient persecutions of which the excesses shall find in me no apologist." Not to dwell on the several inconsistencies, and even the contradictions in terms involved in this affirmation, it may be said confidently, that such a plea could be admissible, even on the odious ground of necessity, only where some natural right of the oppressors was in danger of infringement. Though the Quakers, or some of them, indeed railed at the worship of the Puritans, and even denied their right to self-government, surely it cannot be pretended that the principle of freedom was in any way endangered by the mere denunciation of a feeble few, then almost universally proscribed, and utterly destitute of political influence. But the argument evidently is, that, by retiring from the rest of the civilized world, and erecting a commonwealth by themselves, the Puritans had acquired a species of claim, if opposed, to infringe the natural right of others; that, having established a certain order of things, they were entitled to use, or, at least, were excusable in using, for its maintenance, means at which the natural sense of right in man revolts.

It has been as sedulously attempted to shift the blame from the shoulders of the persecutors to those of their victims. "But for them," (the Quakers,) says the same authority, "the country had been guiltless of blood!" The same may be said of the sufferers under any martyrdom, nay, under any crime or oppression. But for Prynne and his fellows, the mutilators of Charles would have had a sincere; but for Servetus, the black cloak of Geneva might have remained uncrimsoned with the smoking blood of *vivo-cremation*; but for Joan Boucher, the memory of Cranmer had descended to us that of a martyr only, and not a relentless woman-burner; but for Cranmer himself, Rome had been spared her archest deed of

combined treachery and cruelty. No persecution, of course, can exist without its legitimate prey. That prey is, almost invariably, a small, but brave and stubborn minority, which, by its unbending opposition, inflames to madness the pride, the self-will, the passion of long-accustomed power. But methinks it rather hard that those who bravely surrendered their lives, in defiance of a wicked law, should have the dishonour of the transaction laid at their door, and be accused, at this day, of shaming with their blood the posterity of their murderers.

Nor is it fair to assume that the Quakers used any greater measure of provocation to their oppressors than has often been customary even with the most undeniable martyrs. The spirit of man, when sought to be crushed by superior physical power, will at least assert itself in bold and defiant words; and whatever the extravagances committed by some wrong-headed zealots among them, the demeanour of the victims, at least on their trial, seems to have been characterized by remarkable dignity and decency. The plain fact—so plain that its assertion is almost superfluous—seems to be, that the early rulers of Massachusetts were men of extraordinary force of character, bigoted, self-willed, and unusually disposed to tyrannize. They had resolved *to have their own way*, at whatever cost, even to the shedding of blood. The people against whom their cruel and tyrannical laws were directed, were few in number, but possessed by a spirit of daring, enthusiasm, and stubbornness, such as the world has seldom witnessed. They resolved that these sanguinary statutes, whose existence proclaimed them felons, by the very shame and horror of their execution should be annulled; and in laying down their lives in accomplishment of this purpose, they certainly earned as fairly the crown of martyrdom as any of the multitudes who, for conscience, for independence, for fame, or for salvation, had trodden the same thorny path before them.



## CHAPTER IV.

EDUCATION IN MASSACHUSETTS.—HARVARD COLLEGE.—RESTORATION OF CHARLES II.—OPPRESSIVE ENACTMENTS CONCERNING COMMERCE.—ATTITUDE OF THE COLONIES.—WINTHROP, THE YOUNGER.—CONNECTICUT OBTAINS A CHARTER: HER FREEDOM AND PROSPERITY.

WITH our forefathers, in nearly all the New England states, education, from the first, was a subject of solicitous care. Provision was made that all children in Massachusetts should at least learn to read and write, and schools of a higher character were not long in succeeding. Only a few years after the arrival of the Puritans in Massachusetts, John Harvard, dying there, by the bequest of his library and of half his estate, founded that admirable university which still commemorates his name, and which has exercised such extraordinary influence, from the first, in promoting the intelligence and refining the manners of New England. Fostered by the care of the state, and at times assisted by the neighbouring provinces, it enjoyed a continually increasing prosperity and usefulness.

The restoration of Charles II. to the throne of England was the signal for a renewal of those more obnoxious claims of sovereignty over the American colonies, which had either been relinquished or suffered to fall into disuse by the government of the commonwealth. The Navigation Act (the child of that government indeed, but, in its original, not designed rigidly to fetter their commerce) was reenacted, with new and oppressive provisions; a monopoly being secured to English merchants, English ships, and English navigators, in the entire foreign intercourse of those provinces. The exportation of a long list of articles, including tobacco, sugar, cotton, and other produce, was prohibited excepting to England; and ere long the importation of any European goods, except those supplied by English merchants, was in like manner made illegal. Commercial intercourse between the northern and southern colonies was burdened with oppressive duties; and, by degrees, the very manufacture of articles which might compete with that of the home country in foreign trade, or even in furnishing their own supplies, was also forbidden. Such was the oppressive system, the commencement of

which signalized to the colonists the restoration of English monarchy, and which, finally pursued to an extreme incompatible with their growing strength and spirit of independence, resulted in the loss to England of the most splendid provinces ever founded by the enterprise of her sons, or reared into greatness by their genius and industry.

While Massachusetts, both its political and moral prepossessions shocked by the prospect of the elevation of a character like that of the new king to the sovereignty of England, waited, with a species of sullen expectaney, the event of the change, and even meditated opposition, in case a royal governor should be sent to rule over it; the other New England colonies, weaker in numbers, and less determined in spirit, proclaimed the new sovereign with alacrity, and hastened to conciliate his favour. Winthrop the younger, a man of high character, and of most engaging address, was dispatched to London on the part of Connecticut, to obtain from the king a patent of that province for the hardy adventurers who, as yet, held it only by native conquest and purchase, and by the assignment of the representatives of the Earl of Warwick. Aided by some court influence, this emissary obtained an audience with Charles, who was so agreeably impressed with his character and demeanour, that he granted an ample charter to the petitioners. Hartford and New Haven were connected in one colony, and this vast patent extended westward across the entire continent, including in its limits the already numerous and prosperous settlements of the Dutch on the banks of the Hudson. By the same liberal instrument, complete independence, excepting the reservation of allegiance to the crown, was secured to the colonists. All power, both civil and criminal, judicial and executive, elective and legislative, was lodged in their own hands—a constitution more completely independent in effect, could hardly have been framed by the most ardent lover of liberty. Winthrop, after this successful result of his mission, returned to the province, where, in gratitude for his services, the office of chief magistrate, for fourteen years, by annual election, was conferred on him. Under these favourable auspices, the colony of Connecticut commenced a career of continual increase, of rational prosperity, and of tranquil happiness. The care for popular education, which has always characterized her legislation, was manifested at an early day. Common schools always existed, and the higher wants of the intellect, by the beginning of the next century, were provided for in the

foundation of an institution, the modesty and humbleness of whose origin contrast strongly with the strength and prosperity of its subsequent career—the college of Yale.

New England, said Mr. Webster, contained in its system three institutions which alone would have sufficed to make it free—the Town Meeting, the Congregational Church, and the Common School—institutions which still flourish in a nearer approach to perfection, the independent form of church government being confined to no shade of belief, in its privileges or its support. The peace and prosperity of Connecticut, founded on domestic harmony and freedom from foreign interference, remained for a century, uninterrupted by any serious disturbance.

---

## CHAPTER V.

THE CHARTER OF RHODE ISLAND.—CIVIL AND RELIGIOUS LIBERTY.—CARELESS AND EXTENSIVE GRANTS OF CHARLES II.—THE ATTITUDE OF MASSACHUSETTS: DISTRUST OF THE RESTORATION.—REQUISITIONS OF CHARLES II.—APPOINTMENT OF A COMMISSION.—ALARM OF THE COLONY.

ROGER WILLIAMS, having visited England, and obtained the sanction of parliament to the existence of the infant state he had founded, in 1652 returned to New England, leaving, as his agent, John Clarke, a man of great worth and indefatigable patience. This efficient emissary obtained from the crown, on the Restoration, the permission, earnestly besought by the colonists of Rhode Island, "to hold forth a lively experiment, that a most flourishing civil state may stand, and best be maintained with a full liberty of religious concerns." Powers of self-government, as ample as those granted to Connecticut, were secured to the little province, and, to gratify the benevolent request of the petitioners, it was expressly provided, that "no person within the said colony, at any time hereafter, shall be any wise molested, punished, disquieted, or called in question, for any difference of opinion in matters of religion; every person may at all times freely and fully enjoy his own judgment and

conscience in matters of religious concernment." Under this ancient charter, which has been in existence to our own day, Rhode Island enjoyed uncommon political blessings, both civil and religious. Its first benefit was the protection of that feeble colony against the ambitious encroachments of Massachusetts, which was desirous of extending its jurisdiction over its weaker neighbours, and which was effectually checked by this direct action of the crown. Rhode Island, at the time of this foundation of her political existence, numbered only between two and three thousand souls.

An extraordinary mixture of liberality and carelessness characterized the king's whole management of his North American provinces. To his brother James, and to several favourites and courtiers, he gave immense grants of territory, comprising nearly all the best part of the North American continent—that to William Penn, laying the foundation of a commonwealth of peace, being almost the only one whose origin was of a purer nature than mere personal rapacity or ambition.

Until it was absolutely certain that the commonwealth was at an end, and that the House of Stuart was reinstated on the throne, Massachusetts hesitated to commit itself to any decided recognition of sovereignty. But when, in the fall of 1661, the news of that event arrived, the general court, knowing that the province would be readily exposed to odium with the new government, hastened to prepare addresses to the crown and parliament. They stated plainly the religious scruples which had induced the Puritans to quit their country, averring that they were "true men, fearing God and the King," and praying that Charles, himself so lately in exile, would feel a sympathy for men suffering the same misfortune. The agent of the province was instructed to make what interest he could with the court and parliament, and, especially, to resist the allowance of appeals from the colonial government to that of England.

Upon this point, however, the new government seemed resolved to insist; and the general court, in view of a probable collision, with much boldness, published a declaration of rights, claiming for the province the entire power of appointing all its officers, of exercising all powers of government, legislative, executive, and judicial, and the right of resisting any infringement of its liberties, as theretofore enjoyed. Little more than a nominal allegiance to the crown was acknowledged; and when, in 1661, the Restoration was publicly proclaimed, it was done with much coldness and apathy.

Messengers were dispatched to England to sustain the interests of the province, with instructions to persuade the king of its loyalty, and to parry, if possible, any attempt upon its liberties. They were only in a measure successful. The charter was confirmed, but the king demanded, with some reason, that the laws should be administered in his name, that the oath of allegiance should be taken, that the Church of England should be tolerated; and that none, except a property restriction, should be continued on the elective franchise. The latter of these demands, striking more closely than any other at the religious government and the prejudices of the colonists, excited the greatest discontent; and a stricter censorship was held over all except the established religion.

Stimulated by rumours, partly true and partly false, of the disloyal spirit of the province, (it was even rumoured that Goffe and Whalley, who had lately come over, and were in hiding, had raised an army against the crown,) the English sovereign proceeded to appoint a commission of four persons to investigate matters in New England, and to use a very discretionary authority in settling its affairs. On the news of this obnoxious measure reaching Boston, hasty measures were adopted for precaution and defence. The safety of the charter, and restraint upon the landing of soldiers, were especially provided for; and in view of the impending trials of the Commonwealth, a day of solemn prayer and fasting was appointed.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

REMONSTRANCE OF MASSACHUSETTS — DOINGS OF THE COMMISSIONERS: THEIR DISPUTES WITH THE AUTHORITIES: THEIR DISCOMFITURE AND RETURN TO ENGLAND.—SUCCESSFUL RESISTANCE OF MASSACHUSETTS.—INERTNESS OF THE CROWN.—PROSPERITY AND TRADE OF THE PROVINCE.

THE fleet, dispatched from England for the reduction of Manhattan and other Dutch settlements (see "New Netherlands") in July, 1664, arrived at Boston, bearing the commissioners. The general court, promptly assembled, in token of their loyalty, agreed

to levy a force in assistance of the expedition; and, while the fleet was busied at Manhattan, prepared a forcible and eloquent remonstrance, addressed to the king. Reciting the privileges of their charter, the sacrifices they had made to obtain it, and the liberties they had enjoyed under it; they foretold the trouble and ruin which any persistence in controlling the affairs of the colony would occasion. "God knows," they say, "our greatest ambition is to live a quiet life, in a corner of the world." Any thing but their liberties, they declared, they were willing to offer in testimony of their loyalty.

Meanwhile, the commissioners, not caring to make themselves unnecessarily odious, had busied themselves, in harmony with the colonists, in settling certain matters in Connecticut and Rhode Island—the "dutifulness and obedience" of which former, they averred, was "set off with the more lustre by the contrary deportment of Massachusetts." Plymouth, which was promised a separate charter, if it would submit the nomination of its governor to the commissioners, protested much loyalty, but declined the intermeddling proposition.

These gentlemen, returning to Boston, demanded that all the men should be assembled to hear the king's message; but their requisition was refused, though they denounced as traitors those who opposed the proceeding. The Massachusetts authorities refused to state directly whether they would obey the commission or not; and the members of it, to try their power, gave notice that they would hold a court for the trial of a cause to which the colony was a party. But the general court, by sound of trumpet, and proclamation of a herald, forbade all persons to take part in their proceedings. Foiled in this point, the visitors proceeded to intermeddle in the affairs of Maine and New Hampshire. The court, with equal promptitude and fearlessness, met them by an order to the inhabitants of the latter to forbear obeying or abetting them, at their peril. In Maine, indeed, they set up a royal government; but not long after their departure, Massachusetts, by force of arms, reestablished its authority there. They finally returned to England in much wrath and disappointment, without having accomplished any permanent alteration in the condition of the provinces.

The king, in very natural displeasure, now summoned (1666) some of the chief persons of Massachusetts to appear before him, and answer for the doings of that refractory province. The general court, which met to consider this demand, after protracted prayer, refused compliance, declaring that they had already expressed their

views in writing, "so that the ablest person among us could not declare our case more fully."

In all this peremptory resistance, and almost defiance of the authority of the crown, there was no lack of patriotic feeling, or of affection for the mother-country; for very effective assistance, in provisions and materials, was rendered to the English navy, in the contest with France, commencing at this time; and whether from fear or negligence, the king, immersed in sensuality, took no active measures to vindicate his claims. After much discussion in the council, it was considered that the refractory colony was too strong to meddle with; that it might, at a moment's warning, throw off its allegiance; and that the safest policy was to overlook its transgressions, and wait a more favourable opportunity for enforcing the obnoxious claims.

Meanwhile, the province, left to its own management, by the enterprise and industry for which its people have ever been distinguished, prospered in an extraordinary degree. Foreign commerce (for the Navigation Act was set at naught) sprung up with surprising rapidity; fish and furs were exported in quantities; and lumber, which, by the then recent invention of saw-mills, was prepared with unaccustomed ease from the almost exhaustless forests of Maine and New Hampshire, had already assumed high importance as an article of traffic.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

CONDITION OF THE NEW ENGLAND INDIANS: CONVERSION OF SOME OF THEM: THEIR NUMBERS AND STRENGTH.—  
THE POKANOKETS.—METACOMET. OR KING PHILIP:  
HIS GRIEVANCES: DISSIMULATION: SCHEME FOR THE  
DESTRUCTION OF THE ENGLISH.—CAPTAIN  
CHURCH: HIS CHARACTER, ETC.: HE DIS-  
CONCERTS AN INTRIGUE OF PHILIP.

THOUGH liable to the imputation of blame, for too persistent encroachment, even under the guise of purchase, upon the domains of the native tribes adjoining them, the English colonists, to their credit, were sincerely desirous of civilizing and converting their

Indian neighbours. Many of the latter, by the praiseworthy pains of their white friends, had learned to read and write, and one of them even graduated at the university of Cambridge. The missionary labours of the admirable John Eliot and of the two Mayhews, had been crowned with much success in their conversion. The former, with wonderful patience and diligence, had even prepared and published, for their benefit, a translation of the Bible, in the Indian tongue. The race for whose salvation this pious and laborious monument of learning was erected, has passed entirely away. The Bible may still be found on the shelf of an ancient library, but no man living is able to peruse it. Around Boston, and on the cape and its adjoining islands, villages of "praying Indians" had been established, and friendship with the settlers had been thus confirmed and strengthened. But the powerful tribe of the Narragansetts, and that of the Pokanokets, at this time (1675) nearly as numerous, still elung, with a jealous fidelity, to the religion of their fathers.

In 1675, the number of Indians in New England was roughly computed at fifty thousand. Unprincipled traders had supplied them with fire-arms, which they had learned to use with deadly accuracy, and the possession of which gave them a dangerous consciousness of power. Confined, in a good measure, by the continual extension of the English settlements, to peninsulas and necks of land on the coast, many of the tribes began to suffer from insufficient room to procure their customary subsistence.

On the death of Massasoit, the earliest and firmest friend of the English, his son, Wamsutta, or, as he was called by the latter, Alexander, succeeded him in the sway of the Pokanokets. Only a few months after his accession, on some vague suspicion, he was seized by a party of English, and carried prisoner into Plymouth, where, in a few days, he died of a fever, brought on by anger and irritation. His brother, Metacomet, more commonly known as the famous King Philip, succeeded to the throne, and, from profound policy, maintained an appearance of great friendship for the whites. For nine years, with extraordinary dissimulation, though cherishing feelings of revenge for the death of his brother, and the encroachments on his territory, he maintained the appearance of amity. Some disputes, indeed, caused by the latter grievance, as early as 1671, had occurred; and Philip, strangely enough, subscribed a set of articles, yielding almost every point in question, and, in a manner, "delivering himself, body and soul, into the hands of the Plymouth author-



ities. His motive, doubtless, was to blind his enemies as to the extent and dangerous nature of the conspiracy he was meditating. His plan was nothing less than the complete extermination of the whites, and in its prosecution he displayed a policy, courage, and perseverance, which, in a savage, have never been surpassed. To knit the clans of New England, immemorially disaffected by traditional feud and enmity, into a confederacy against a foe so terrible as the English, might well have seemed to the most sanguine a hopeless task; yet such was the object to which Philip bent all his policy and energy, and in which, to a great extent, he succeeded." Argument, persuasion, and menace, were each, in turn, applied with the utmost adroitness.

In the spring of 1675, he sent six ambassadors to Awashonks, queen of the Sogkonates, demanding, on pain of his own vengeance, and of exposure (by an artful device) to the resentment of the English themselves, that the tribe should join his league. A solemn dance was appointed, to decide the question, and Awashonks, that the opposite party might not be unrepresented, sent for her neighbour, Captain Benjamin Church, the only white man in her domains. This celebrated man, one of the most famous Indian fighters in New England history, had just settled in the wilderness of Sogkonate. "He was a man of undaunted courage, of a sagacity fitted to cope with the wildest tactics of Indian warfare, and, withal, of a kindly and generous disposition, which, except when engaged in immediate hostilities, seem to have secured for him the respect and attachment of the wild tribes which he so often encountered. His narrative,\* written in his old age, by his son, from his own notes and dictation, is one of the choicest fragments of original history in our possession. As a literary performance, it is just respectable; but for vividness of detail and strength of expression, it is something more, and may well be entitled to rank with such rude but stirring productions as the 'True Conquest' of Bernal Diaz, and the 'True Adventures' of Captain John Smith."

On his arrival, a grand council was held, at which the six Wampanoags appeared in great state, making, says Church, "a formidable appearance, with their faces painted, and their hair trimmed back in comb fashion, with their powder-horns and shot-bags at their backs, which among that nation is the posture and figure of preparedness for war." A fierce discussion ensued, and a privy counsellor, named

\* "The Entertaining History of King Philip's War."

Little Eyes, attempted to draw Church aside, to privately dispatch him, but was prevented by others. The Englishman, with great boldness, advised Awashonks, "to knock those six Mount Hopes\* on the head, and shelter herself under the protection of the English. Upon which, the Mount Hopes were for the present dumb." He then sharply rebuked them, as faithless wretches, thirsting for the blood of their neighbours, and assured them, that if they would imvo war, he should prove a sharp thorn in their sides. The queen and her people, overmastered by his eloquence and energy, dismissed the embassy, and, for a time, observed neutrality, if not fidelity.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

COMMENCEMENT OF PHILIP'S WAR.—EXPLOIT OF CHURCH —  
 RETREAT OF THE INDIANS.—PHILIP ROUSES THE TRIBES.  
 —DESTRUCTION OF TOWNS, ETC.—THE ATTACK ON  
 HADLEY: REPULSED BY GOFFE.—GREAT LOSSES  
 OF THE ENGLISH.—SPRINGFIELD BURNED.

It was soon evident that Philip was preparing for active war. He sent all the women and children of his tribe into the Narragansett country, and held a great dance, lasting for several weeks, with all the warriors of his neighbourhood. The first blow was struck on the 24th of June, in an attack on the little town of Swansey. Nine of the settlers were killed, and the rest fled, while the Indians fired their deserted dwellings. Soldiers were sent from Massachusetts, and Church, with a company from Plymouth, hastened to the frontier. Philip was compelled to flee, but only to ravage the country in other remote spots. Church, with only nineteen men, holding on in pursuit, at last, on the site of the present town of Tiverton, fell in with three hundred of the enemy. "The hill," he tells us, "seemed to move, being covered over with Indians, with their bright guns glittering in the sun, and running in a circumference with a design to surround them." From a place of vantage, the English defended themselves with much courage and desperation, till taken off by a vessel which came to their aid, covering their

\* So called, from Mount Hope, the favourite seat of Philip.

y.  
privately dispatch  
man, with great  
Mount Hopes\*  
of the English.  
nt dumb." He  
hirsting for the  
hey would have  
The queen and  
y, dismissed the  
fidelity.

OF CHURCH —  
THE TRIBES.  
TTACK ON  
LOSSES  
RNE D.

active war. He  
e Narragansett  
weeks, with all  
was struck on  
wansey. Nine  
e Indians fired  
Massachusetts,  
ed to the fron-  
ge the country  
en, holding on  
f Tiverton, fell  
" he tells us,  
ms, with their  
circumference  
f vantage, the  
d desperation,  
covering their  
Phillip.



KING PHILIP.







*THE SETTLERS OF NEW ENGLAND GOING TO CHURCH,  
IN THE TIME OF THE INDIAN WARS*

embarkation with her fire. When all were on board but Church, that daring man, who had left his hat and cutlass by a spring, declared he would never leave them as trophies for the enemy. Loading his gun with his last charge of powder, he went back, and brought them off, amid a shower of bullets, some of which grazed his person.

The English forces, at last uniting, after some indecisive engagements, compelled Philip and his warriors to take refuge in a great swamp at Poasset; their camp, consisting of a hundred new wigwams, being deserted. A great number of Indians, who had surrendered under fair promises, were treacherously transported as slaves—a piece of perfidious cruelty against which Church vainly remonstrated. That active officer, if permitted, could at this time, probably, by a close pursuit of the Indians, have ended the war, but he was continually thwarted and embarrassed by the inactivity and obstinacy of his superiors.

Defeated, with a loss of thirty warriors, in another engagement, Philip fled westward, and excited the remoter tribes to warfare. Numbers of the English were killed, and several flourishing villages on the frontier were burned. In Brookfield, however, a small force, under Captain Wheeler, besieged in a building, held out for two days against several hundred savages, who, after losing, it is said, eighty of their number, were compelled by the arrival of reinforcements to raise the siege. "From this time, an almost continual succession of Indian attacks and massacres occurred, and town after town was laid in ashes. Aided by the continually exciting causes of enmity, developed by war with a foe so indefinite as 'the Indians,' Philip had succeeded in awaking a general hostility among the numerous tribes of the frontier. It was supposed that he was present at many of the scenes of midnight assault and massacre which, at that time, filled New England with alarm; but it is certain that he was seldom recognised. Once, it is said, he was seen at a successful attack, riding on a black horse, leaping fences, and exulting in the scene of destruction; and again, that he once ordered an arm-chair to be brought forth, that he might enjoy at his ease the conflagration of a village."

On the 1st of September, a simultaneous attack was made on Hadley and Deerfield, the latter of which was mostly destroyed. The people of Hadley assembled at their meeting-house, armed as usual; but, taken by surprise at the unexpected assault of the savages, would probably have been overwhelmed, but for an unexpected



TO CHURCH,

assistance. An old man, with long white hair, dressed in the fashion of a former day, suddenly appeared, and assumed the command. By his courage and skillful strategy, he put the enemy to flight, and then disappeared as suddenly and mysteriously as he came. Many of the people supposed him to be an angel, providentially sent to their aid; but he was, in reality, Major-General Goffe, one of the regicide judges, who, with his companion, Whalley, had been concealed for ten years in the cellar of Mr. Russell, minister of the town. "There are few incidents in history more striking than that of the old soldier, so long immured in this dismal habitation, roused once more by the clash of arms and the discharge of musketry, to mingle, for the last time, in the half-forgotten scenes of combat, and then shrinking back for ever into the gloom and twilight of his subterranean abode."

Thirty-six men, dispatched to the relief of Northfield, (where a number of the people had been slain,) were mostly cut off by an ambuscade, and a hundred more, consisting of the finest young men in the country, marching to Deerfield, under Captain Lathrop, surrounded by an overwhelming force of the enemy, after a desperate defence, were all killed, except seven or eight. Thirty houses were burned at Springfield, together with "the brave library" of Rev. Pelatiah Glover, which had once been carried to a place of safety—"but the said minister, a great student, and an *helluo librorum*, being impatient for want of his books, brought them back, to his great sorrow, for a bonfire for the proud insulting enemy. Of all the mischiefs," continues Rev. Mr. Hubbard, ("Indian Wars,") "done by the said enemy before that day, the burning of this said town of Springfield did more than any other discover the said actors to be the children of the devil, full of all subtlety and malice," &c., &c. The sympathy of the learned and studious may well travel back a couple of centuries, to condole with the unfortunate scholar, widowed of his library—his loss irreparable—bookless—in the American wilderness.



dressed in the fash-  
 oned the command.  
 enemy to flight, and  
 as he came. Many  
 rovidentially sent to  
 l Goffe, one of the  
 lley, had been com-  
 minister of the town.  
 ng than that of the  
 itation, roused one  
 usketry, to mingle  
 f combat, and then  
 ight of his subter-

Northfield, (where a  
 y cut off by an an-  
 finest young men  
 aptain Lathrop, sur-  
 y, after a desperate  
 Thirty houses were  
 e library" of Rev.  
 a place of safety—  
*illuo librorum*, being  
 back, to his great  
 ay. Of all the mis-  
 Wars,) "done by  
 this said town of  
 e said actors to be  
 allice," &c., &c. The  
 ravel back a couple  
 ar, widowed of his  
 ican wilderness.

CHAPTER IX.

PHILIP'S WAR, CONTINUED.—DESTRUCTION OF THE NARRAGANSETT FORT: TERRIBLE MASSACRE.—MALIGNANT EXULTATION OF THE EARLY HISTORIANS.—INDIAN SUCCESSSES.—CAPTURE AND DEATH OF CANONCHET: HIS HEROISM AND MAGNANIMITY.—DIPLOMACY OF CHURCH.

At Hatfield, in October, the garrison and town's people beat off a body of seven or eight hundred savages who attacked the place; and during the beginning of the ensuing winter, little was done by either party, the Indians suffering greatly from want and exposure. Philip and his warriors, it was supposed, had taken refuge with the Narragansetts. The English now resolved to crush this latter tribe, as the most easily accessible, on account of the shelter they had afforded to the enemy. Five hundred soldiers, under command of Josias Winslow, governor of Plymouth, were dispatched against the devoted tribe, and on the afternoon of December 19th, a bitter winter's day, after a forced march, arrived at their principal fort. It was built on a plateau of elevated ground in a great swamp, and the only access to it was by the trunk of a large tree, lying in the water. Across this bridge of peril, the assailants, with much loss, made their way, and after a desperate battle within, lasting for some hours, firing the fort, renewed the terrible tragedy of Groton. Seven hundred of the Narragansett warriors are said to have fallen in the fight, and nearly half that number afterwards perished of their wounds. "The number of old men, women, and children," says Rev. Mr. Hubbard, "that perished either by fire, or that were starved with cold and hunger, none could tell." "They were ready," he narrates, in a strain of disgusting levity, "to dress their dinner, but our sudden and unexpected assault put them beside that work, making their cook-rooms too hot for them at that time when they and their mitchen fried together: And probably some of them eat their suppers in a colder place that night, most of their provisions as well as huts being consumed by fire, and those that were left alive forced to hide themselves in a cedar swamp, not far off, where they had nothing to defend them from the cold but boughs of spruce and pine trees!"

The defeated nation did not fall unavenged, eighty of the English being slain outright, and an hundred and fifty wounded, many of whom perished on the return march, rendered terrible by the severity of the season, and the want of proper supplies. Canonchet, (the son of Miantonimo,) the brave young sachem of the Narragansetts, with the relics of his force, took refuge in the west, where, in concert with Philip, he planned schemes of vengeful reprisal. Lancaster and Medfield (the latter only twenty miles from Boston) were burned, and nearly a hundred of the settlers were killed or carried off. Portions of Providence and Weymouth were also destroyed, and two companies, each of fifty men, were successively "swallowed up" by the victorious enemy.

The first check to this spirited renewal of the war, was the capture of the brave Canonchet, who, having raised a force of many hundred men, to ensure provision for their support, had ventured eastward with a few warriors, to procure seed for plantation. He was shot at Stonington, having "refused to purchase his life by procuring the submission of his injured tribe; and met his death with the highest courage and fortitude—a true patriot, and a hero, whose soul, to judge from his brief sayings, was cast in an almost classical mould."

"This," says Mr. Hubbard, "was the confusion" (confounding) "of a damned wretch, that had often opened his mouth to blaspheme the name of the living God, and those that make profession thereof. He was told at large of his breach of faith, and how he had boasted *that he would not deliver up a Wampanoag nor the paring of a Wampanoag's nail*, that he would burn the English alive in their houses; to which he replied, *others were as forward for the war as himself, and he desired to hear no more thereof*. And when he was told his sentence was to die, he said, *he liked it well, that he should die before his heart was soft, or he had spoken anything unworthy of himself*. He told the English before they put him to death, *that the killing him would not end the war*; but it was a considerable step thereunto."

In the spring of 1676, the war continued to rage, several desperate actions being fought, with alternate success—part of Plymouth and other towns being burned, and great loss resulting to both parties. The Indians, indeed, suffered grievously from cold and hunger; and a force of cavalry, from Connecticut, aided by a body of Mohegans, was very effectually employed against them. Two hundred were

ghty of the English wounded, many of rrible by the severa. Canochet, (the the Narragansetts, vest, where, in conful reprisal. Lanfrom Boston) were re killed or carried ere also destroyed, sively "swallowed

war, was the capd a force of many port, had ventured or plantation. He ase his life by promt his death with and a hero, whose n an almost class-

ion" (confounding) his mouth to blasat make profession fith, and how he noag nor the paring e English alive in forward for the war And when he was well, that he should ng unworthy of him- to death, that the a considerable step

e, several desperate t of Plymouth and ng to both parties. d and hunger; and body of Mohegans, wo hundred were

made prisoners on one occasion; five or six hundred surrendered on a doubtful promise of mercy; and many migrated to the west. Philip and his people still held out, and kept the settlements in continual dread of attack. His final defeat and destruction was due to the energy of Captain (afterwards colonel) Church, who had performed active service during the war, and who, immediately on recovering from his wounds, devoted himself to the task of bringing it to an end.

The Sogkonates, at this time, were in alliance with Philip, and to detach them from the hostile league, with only a single companion the captain boldly ventured into their country. He narrowly escaped with his life from the vengeance of some of the, but, by his persuasions and arguments, at last so completely won the confidence of the tribe, that the chief warrior rose, and placed himself and all the rest at his disposal, saying, "We will help you to Philip's head, ere the Indian corn be ripe." With an extraordinary savage pantomime, the clan performed the ceremony of swearing allegiance to their new commander, and the desertion of these allies, we are told, "broke Philip's heart as soon as he understood it, so as he never rejoiced after, or had success in any of his designs."

---

## CHAPTER X.

PHILIP'S WAR, CONTINUED.—SUCCESSFUL CAMPAIGN OF CHURCH.—DEFEAT AND CAPTURE OF THE SAVAGES.— PHILIP'S DESPAIR: HE RETREATS TO MOUNT HOPE: IS DEFEATED AND SLAIN: BARBAROUS EXPOSURE OF HIS REMAINS: HIS CHARACTER.

WITH an English force, and a considerable number of Indian warriors, Church, in June, 1676, commenced an active campaign against the enemy, scouring the woods in all directions, and killing or making prisoners of great numbers of the hostile savages. "In the midst of this uncompromising warfare, we find him exhibiting a humanity and good faith uncommon at the time, using every exertion to prevent torture and cruelty, and vehemently protesting against any ill usage of the natives who surrendered. Once he fell

in with Little Eyes, (who would have killed him at Awashonk's dance,) and his Indians wished him to be revenged. 'But the Captain told them it was not Englishmen's fashion to seek revenge,' and took especial care for his safety and protection." The finest of his captives he selected for his own service, and, singular to state, such was the fascination of his manner, and his acquaintance with the Indian character, that he generally converted these recruits into devoted followers.

Pursuing the enemy into the Narragansett's country, "he came to Taunton river, over which the Indians had felled a large tree for the purpose of crossing. On the stump, at the opposite side, sat a solitary warrior. Church quietly raised his gun, but was prevented from firing by the suggestion that it was a friend. The Indian, aroused by the noise, looked up. It was Philip himself, musing drearily, no doubt, on the fallen fortunes of his race. Ere a gun could again be levelled, he sprang up, and bounded like a deer into the forest." Closely following his track, the English at last came up with the relics of the enemy, who were posted in a swamp. The latter, after a sharp skirmish, were defeated, and an hundred and seventy-three, including women and children, were taken captive. Philip and most of his warriors escaped, but his wife and child were among the prisoners. The latter described his condition as forlorn in the extreme, and said, that after this last misfortune, he was quite inconsolable.

"The unhappy sachem, after seeing his followers, one after another, fall before the English, or desert his failing cause, had betaken himself, like some wild animal hard driven by the hunters, to his ancient haunt, the former residence of his father, the friendly Massasoit. In all the pleasant region washed by the circling Narragansett, there is no spot more beautiful than that miniature mountain, the home of the old sachems of the Wampanoags. But with what feelings the last of their number, a fugitive before inveterate foes and recreant followers, looked on the pleasant habitation of his fathers, may more easily be imagined than described. Still, he sternly rejected all proposals for peace, and even slew one of his own followers, who had ventured to speak of treaty with the English. The brother of this victim, naturally enraged and alienated from his cause, at once deserted to the enemy, and gave the information which led to his final ruin.

"A few brave warriors yet remained faithful to him, and with

these and their women and children, he had taken refuge in a swamp hard by the mountain, on a little spot of rising ground. In that troubled night, the last of his life, the sachem, we are told, had dreamed of his betrayal,\* and awaking early, was recounting the vision to his companions, when the foe came suddenly upon him. His old enemy, Chureh, who was familiar with the ground, coming up quietly in the darkness of night, had posted his followers, both English and Indian, so as, if possible, to prevent any from escaping. The result was almost immediate. After several volleys had been rapidly fired, Philip, attempting to gain a secure position, came in range of an ambush, and was instantly shot through the heart by one Alderman, an Indian under Church's command. He fell on his face with his gun under him, and died without a struggle. (August 12, 1676.)† Most of the warriors, under old Annawon, Philip's chief captain, made their escape.

The body of the unfortunate sachem was drawn from the swamp, a spectacle of exultation for "the army;" and Chureh, following the barbarous fashion of the time, declared "that, forasmuch as he had caused many an Englishman's body to be unburied and to rot above ground, no one of his bones should be buried." "This *Agag*," says Cotton Mather, spitefully enough, "was now cut into quarters, which were then hanged up, while his head was carried in triumph to Plymouth, where it arrived on the very day that the chureh there was keeping a solemn *thanksgiving* to God. God sent 'em the head of a leviathan for a thanksgiving feast." The festivity of the modern observance of the same name, it is certain, could hardly be enhanced by the arrival of a human head, even though it were that of a brave and inveterate foe.

"The ghastly relie was long exposed in that town, an object of mingled horror and satisfaction to the citizens; and when the flesh was fallen away, and the dry jaw could be rattled with the skull, a grave historian records with satisfaction his odions trifling with the remains, which, in their life-time, he would not have dared to approach 'for all below the moon.' The only reward allotted to the victors was a bounty of thirty shillings on the head of every slain Indian; and Church, with some reason, complains that Philip's was

\* Mr. Hubbard, for a wonder, does not fully adopt this account, but dismisses it parenthetically, "(whether the devil appeared to him in a dream that night, as he did unto Saul (?) foreboding his tragical end, it matters not,)" &c., &c.

† Discoverers, &c., of America.

rated no higher than the rest. The sinewy right hand of the sachem, much scarred by the bursting of a pistol, was given to Alderman, 'to show to such gentlemen as would bestow gratuities upon him; and accordingly he got many a penny by it.\*

"Thus died Philip of Pokanoket, the last sachem of the Wampanoags, the originator and the head of that terrible confederacy which so long kept New England in dread and consternation, and which, at one time, seemed almost to threaten its entire destruction. He was, undoubtedly, a man far superior to the generality of his race, in boldness, sagacity, and policy; his powers of persuasion were extraordinary; and the terrifying results of his enmity sufficiently evinced the ambitious nature of his scheme, and the genius with which it was conducted. The division and barbarous exposure of his remains entailed disgrace, not on him, but on the authors of the profanation; his sufferings and the injuries of his family have awakened in succeeding generations somewhat of that sympathy which is always due to misfortune; and though the defeated leader of a ruined confederation, his name, more than that of any other of the Indian race, has always excited the interest, if not the admiration of mankind.†

---

## CHAPTER XI.

PHILIP'S WAR, CONCLUDED.—CAPTURE OF ANNAWON AND HIS WARRIORS, BY CHURCH.—ROMANTIC INCIDENTS.—SUMMARY OF THE WAR.—PHILIP'S SON.—BARBAROUS POLICY OF THE VICTORS.—MURDEROUS ADVICE.—THE CHARACTER OF THE PURITANS.—REFLECTIONS.

CHURCH, with a small force, followed closely on the track of Annawon and the few warriors whom death and desertion had yet left to maintain the ruined cause of the Pokanokets; and, after long and wearisome pursuit, at length learned from a captive the place of his retreat. In his eagerness to surprise the foe (who never camped two nights in the same place), with only half a dozen friendly Indians, he set forth, with extraordinary boldness, on the adventure.

\* "Church's "Entertaining History."

† Discoverers, &c., of America.

R. Y.

and of the sachem,  
to Alderman, 'to  
upon him; and

m of the Wampa-  
confederacy which  
ation, and which,  
destruction. He  
ality of his race, in  
asion were extra-  
ufficiently evinced  
ius with which it  
ure of his remains  
f the profanation;  
awakened in suc-  
ich is always due  
a ruined confed-  
the Indian race,  
on of mankind."†

ANNAWON AND  
INCIDENTS.—  
—BARBAROUS  
ADVICE.—  
FLECTIONS.

on the track of  
esertion had yet  
; and, after long  
otive the place of  
ho never camped  
ozen friendly In-  
n the adventure.

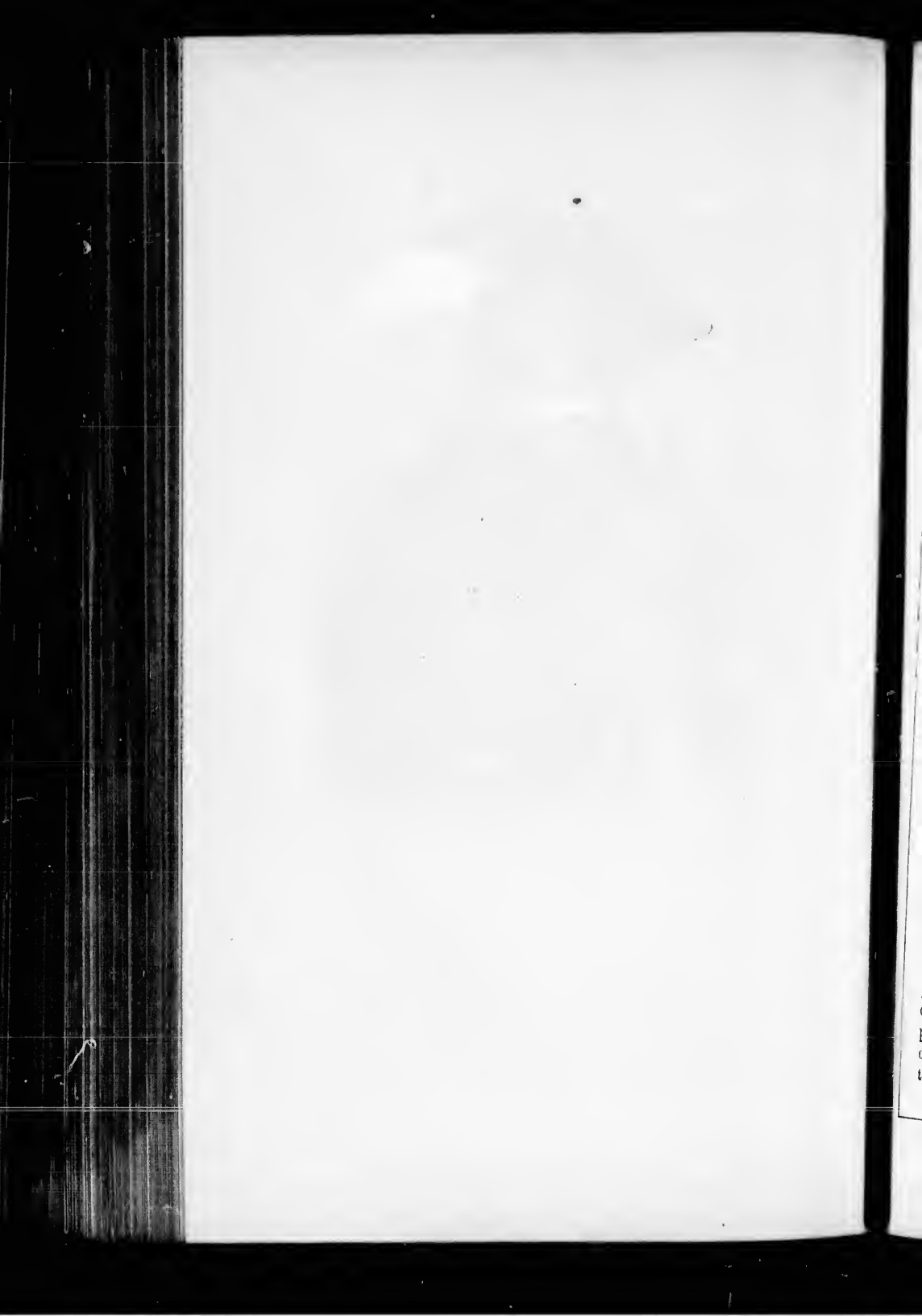
&c., of America.



CAPTAIN BENJAMIN CHURCH.

THE INDIAN FIGHTER.

BORN 1640. OVERCAME METACOMEP (KING PHILIP), AUGUST 12, 1676. DIED  
JANUARY 17, 1710.





The bivouac of the fugitives was in a place of remarkable security and difficulty of access, yet the captain, with his allies, lowering themselves by bushes over the face of a precipitous rock, took the enemy, mostly sleeping, by surprise, and secured their guns, which were all stacked together at the head of Annawon. That redoubted warrior, his weapons lost, surrendered, and the rest followed his example, Church promising to use all his influence in behalf of their lives. "I am come to sup with you," he said, pleasantly, to Annawon, and the latter bidding his women prepare a meal, the two captains feasted together in perfect harmony.

Did these limits allow, it would be pleasing to dwell on the romantic incidents of this most wonderful surprise; how the whole company, wearied with pursuit and flight, were soon wrapped in slumber, all but the two leaders, who lay looking at each other by the glimmering light of the embers; how Annawon arose and disappeared in the darkness, but ere long returned, bearing a powder-horn, a scarlet blanket, and two splendid belts of wampum, the regalia of the unfortunate Philip; how he solemnly invested Church with these royalties, as the victor over the last of the hostile tribe; and how, in the words of the captain, "they spent the remainder of the night in discourse, and Annawon gave an account of what mighty success he had formerly in wars against many nations of Indians, when he served Asahmequin," (Massasoit,) "Philip's father."

This exploit ended Philip's war—a war which, though it lasted only a year and a half, seemed almost to threaten the destruction of New England. Thirteen towns had been laid in ashes, and many others partially destroyed, six hundred dwellings, in all, being burned by the enemy. Six hundred Englishmen had lost their lives, and the prosperity of the whole country had been grievously checked and retarded. But if misfortune was experienced by the victors, utter ruin and almost annihilation awaited the vanquished. In war, in conflagration, by starvation and cold, such vast numbers had perished, that the effective force of the hostile tribes was completely broken, and many of them were nearly extinguished. With the great number of prisoners, and the almost equally numerous portion, who surrendered on the promise or in the hope of mercy, a cruel and barbarous policy was adopted. The chief warriors were put to death; among them, Annawon, whose life Church vainly endeavoured to save, as well from good faith and humanity, as for the value of his services in future warfare. The rest, with the

women and children, were made slaves, most of them being transported and sold in the West Indies.

"In regard to the son of Philip, (a child only nine years old,) the authorities seem to have been greatly exercised in spirit. There were so many nice precedents for his execution to be found in Scripture, and severity, as well as vengeance, would be satisfied by the destruction of the whole house of their dreaded enemy. Nothing can better show the venomous spirit of the times, or the depraving influence of a barbarous theology, than the following extract from a letter, written by Rev. Increase Mather, the minister of Boston, to his friend, Mr. Cotton: 'If it had not been out of my mind, when I was writing, I should have said something about Philip's son. *It is necessary that some effectual course should be taken about him. He makes me think of Hadad, who was a little child when his father (the chief sachem of the Edomites) was killed by Joab, and had not others fled away with him, I am apt to think, that David would have taken a course that Hadad should never have proved a scourge to the next generation.*' More humane counsels, however, prevailed, and the poor child was *only* shipped as a slave to Bermuda!

"Incidents, such as these, commonly suppressed by popular writers, are not uselessly recalled, in obtaining a just view of the spirit of the past. With all honour to the truly great and respectable qualities of our New England ancestors—to their courage, their constancy, their morality, and their devotion—it is useless to disguise the fact that, in the grand essentials of charity and humanity, they were no wise in advance of their age, and in the less essential, but not less desirable articles of amenity and magnanimity, most decidedly behind it. But a certain infusion of disagreeable qualities seems almost an inseparable constituent of that *earnestness*, which alone can successfully contend with great obstacles, either human or natural—with civil tyranny and religious persecution—with the privations and dangers of the wilderness, and the unsparing enmity of its savage inhabitants.

"The communities, founded by men thus strongly but imperfectly moulded, have, with the genial influence of time, and by the admirable elements of freedom contained in their origin, gradually grown into a commonwealth, freer from the errors which disgraced their founders than any other on the face of the earth. Their prejudice has become principle, their superstition has refined into religion; and their very bigotry has softened down to liberality. While

of them being trans-  
 y nine years old,) the  
 sed in spirit. There  
 tion to be found in  
 would be satisfied by  
 ded enemy. Nothing  
 ones, or the depraving  
 following extract from  
 minister of Boston, to  
 of my mind, when I  
 out Philip's son. *It*  
*taken about him. He*  
*l when his father (the*  
*, and had not others*  
*vid would have taken*  
*a scourge to the next*  
*er, prevailed, and the*  
*nadal*

sed by popular writers,  
 e view of the spirit of  
 and respectable quali-  
 r courage, their con-  
 e is useless to disguise  
 y and humanity, they  
 the less essential, but  
 magnanimity, most de-  
 disagreeable qualities  
 hat *earnestness*, which  
 acles, either human or  
 persecution—with the  
 the inspiring enmity

rongly but imperfectly  
 ne, and by the admira-  
 rigin, gradually grown  
 which disgraced their  
 arth. Their prejudice  
 refined into religion;  
 to liberality. While

enjoying the results of this ameliorating process, their descendants may well be charitable to those whose footsteps not only broke through the tangled recesses of the actual forest, but who, in treading pathways through the moral wilderness, occasionally stumbled, or left behind them a track too rugged or too tortuous to be followed.\*

CHAPTER XII.

RENEWED INTERFERENCE OF THE CROWN IN MASSACHUSETTS.—SEVERANCE OF NEW HAMPSHIRE: ATTEMPT TO TYRANNIZE THERE: ITS FAILURE.—ACTION OF MASSACHUSETTS.—PROCEEDINGS AGAINST ITS CHARTER.—  
 —VAIN OPPOSITION AND REMONSTRANCE.—  
 THE CHARTER ANNULLED.

THE English government, gaining courage from the gradual establishment of arbitrary power at home, and still desirous to curb the growing spirit of independence in Massachusetts, in 1676, dispatched thither Edward Randolph as its special agent. This functionary was coldly received by the provincial authorities, who again explicitly denied the right of the crown or the parliament to intermeddle with its government. Returning, after a sojourn of only six weeks, to England, he excited the jealousy and inflamed the cupidity of the court by very exaggerated accounts of its wealth and population. By a decision of the privy council, the claim of Massachusetts, certainly rather untenable, to jurisdiction over Maine and New Hampshire, was set aside. Nevertheless, by purchase from the heirs of the patentee (Gorges) she speedily again got possession of great part of the former province; and, whereas it had formerly been considered an integral part of her dominion, it was now governed as a mere colony of Massachusetts, the officers being appointed by those of that state. This change naturally led to much discontent, the manifestation of which, however, was forcibly suppressed by the new claimant of sovereignty.

In New Hampshire, severed from Massachusetts, a direct royal

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

government was set up, the offices of president, &c., being filled by the act of the crown. A popular assembly was allowed, which, at its first meeting (1680), took occasion to assert the independence of the province, declaring that no law or ordinance should be valid unless "made by the assembly and approved by the people." The patentee, at issue with the colonists on matters of title, procured for himself the authority of appointing a governor. Cranfield, the person selected, a man of rapacious and arbitrary disposition, hastened to the infant colony, in strong hopes of making a fortune at the expense of its inhabitants. Disappointed in his expectations, he committed a thousand rash and tyrannical acts, continually interfering in matters beyond his authority, both civil and religious, and striving, on false and impudent prettexts, to wring money from the slenderly-filled purses of the settlers. To these exactions the assembly and people opposed as determined a resistance—a resistance which the latter finally carried to the extreme of openly maltreating his officers; and, with his hopes of plunder and profit almost quite ungratified, he returned to England, bearing a malicious report of the condition of the province.

In view of the prospective danger to the liberties of Massachusetts, a general synod of all the churches was convoked, while the general court, by some formal enactments, in testimony of its loyalty, sought to avert the royal displeasure. The king's arms were put up on the court-house, and two or three acts in support of the royal dignity were passed; and, though the Navigation Act was expressly declared illegal and not binding the general court, by an act of its own, rendered its provisions valid and effective. The king, who certainly exhibited considerable moderation, twice again dispatched a message of remonstrance to Massachusetts on its opposition to the home-government, and it was evident that extreme measures would finally be resorted to. The province, in 1682, dispatched agents to England to defend its interests; and, if possible, to bribe the king into protecting them. Their mission was in vain; and that the charter was in danger, was evident from the systematic warfare against civic corporations then being waged by the court in England. Great agitation pervaded the province. Maine was surrendered, but it was resolved to hold the charter as long as possible.

Legal proceedings were commenced against its holders in the English courts; and the judges, in those times, being generally mere creatures of the crown, only one issue could be looked for. The

&c., being filled by  
 s allowed, which, at  
 the independence of  
 ce should be valid  
 y the people." The  
 of title, procured for  
 Cranfield, the per-  
 disposition, hastened  
 ng a fortune at the  
 is expectations, he  
 s, continually inter-  
 il and religious, and  
 ng money from the  
 exactions the assem-  
 stance—a resistance  
 f openly maltreating  
 l profit almost quite  
 malicious report of

ies of Massachusetts,  
 ed, while the general  
 of its loyalty, sought  
 s were put up, on the  
 of the royal dignity  
 t was expressly de-  
 ert, by an act of its  
 ve. The king, who  
 ice again dispatched  
 its opposition to the  
 eme measures would  
 dispatched agents to  
 e, to bribe the king  
 vain; and that the  
 systematic warfare  
 the court in England.  
 was surrendered, but  
 possible.

t its holders in the  
 being generally mere  
 be looked for. The

king, at this juncture, once more suggested the wisdom of a direct submission, promising, on that condition, his favour, and as little infringement on their charter as might consist with the right of his government. Judging from the fate of the civic corporations in England, (for even London had been compelled to succumb before the royal power,) the prospect of successful resistance in the courts of law appeared entirely hopeless. The governor and magistrates accordingly resolved at last to try the effect of an unqualified submission, and throw themselves on the king's forbearance. A proposal that agents, to receive the royal commands, should be dispatched to England, was sent in to the house of deputies; but that more popular body, after an animated debate of a fortnight, refused, by their own act, to sanction the surrender of their liberties. The successful opposition of former times was recalled, and it was even urged as a matter of religion not voluntarily to put the state into the hands of a power inimical to its professed faith. With extraordinary firmness and spirit, they resolved to make no voluntary sacrifice, and only to fall, as a body politic, before the pressure of superior power. The latter result must have been foreseen. Remonstrance to the king proved fruitless; and in June, 1684, the English judges, then, as from the earliest times, mere agents to effect the pleasure of the crown, declared the charter forfeited. Thus, for a time, fell the independence of Massachusetts—an independence, it must be owned, at times, ungraciously asserted and arbitrarily exercised; but of which the main defects lay in the fact that it was an independence rather in name than in fact; the authority of the magistrates, and the overshadowing influence of the church, constituting a species of mingled aristocracy and theocracy sufficiently repugnant to more enlightened ideas of freedom. Yet, doubtless, even this imperfect form of liberty and self-government was in the highest degree useful in training the minds of the colonists to a jealousy of foreign power, and fostering the germ of a firmer and more liberal national spirit.

## SETTLEMENT OF THE CAROLINAS.

---

FAILURE TO PLANT COLONIES IN THE SOUTH.—EMIGRATION FROM VIRGINIA TO NORTH CAROLINA: FROM BARBADOES TO SOUTH CAROLINA.—THE PATENT OF CHARLES II.—LEGISLATION OF LOCKE AND SHAPTESBURY.—CUM-BROUS SYSTEM OF GOVERNMENT.—DISCONTENT OF THE SETTLERS.—INSURRECTION IN NORTH CAROLINA.—SOTHEL DEPOSED BY THE PEOPLE.—CHARLESTON FOUNDED.—CONSTITUTION OF LOCKE RELINQUISHED.

THE first attempt of the English to found a settlement in America had been made in the mild regions lying south of Virginia. The disastrous failure of that attempt (Raleigh's), combined with the difficulty of access and a dread of Spanish cruelty, had retarded any further effort in the same direction; and while the bleaker and less fertile provinces of the north were rapidly filling up with continued emigration, no enterprise was directed to the rich soil and genial climate of the south. Sir Robert Heath, in 1630, indeed, obtained of Charles I. a patent for the foundation of a colony there; but this instrument, from his failure to effect a settlement, became forfeited.

Colonists from Virginia, between the years 1640 and 1650, suffering from religious intolerance, took refuge beyond the borders of that province, and formed settlements on the northern shores of Albemarle Sound—since known as North Carolina. By the fertility of the soil and the mildness of the winters, they soon lived in ease, their cattle and swine finding subsistence in the natural products of the country; and their numbers were yearly increased by fresh emigration. Some adventurers from Massachusetts, in 1661, made an attempt to found a settlement near Cape Fear; but the experiment proved unsuccessful. Their places were, however, supplied by a party of emigrants from Barbadoes, who proceeded to the same

region, and planted a colony there, selecting as their governor Sir John Yeomans, one of their number.

Among the lavish grants which distinguished the administration of Charles II., was one, in 1663, to the Duke of Albemarle (Gen. Monk), Lord Ashley Cooper (afterwards the famous Earl of Shaftesbury), to Berkely, the governor of Virginia, and others, conveying to them all Carolina, from the thirty-sixth degree of latitude to the river San Matheo. The patentees, desirous to people their vast territory, gave much encouragement to those who had already settled there, assuring them of considerable political privileges; and Berkely, bringing additional emigrants from Virginia to North Carolina, settled them under the popular rule of Drummond.

By a fresh patent, issued in 1665, the proprietors, their claims extended westward across the entire continent, were empowered to create titles and to institute orders of nobility. This singular privilege was granted, in order that an elaborate constitution, devised by Shaftesbury and the celebrated Locke, might be carried into effect. By this extraordinary instrument, the fruit, doubtless, of painful ingenuity and labour, a system of government was set up, entirely without a precedent in the history of legislation. Its main feature was a hereditary landed aristocracy, dependent on property alone for its right to rule. The territory was divided into counties, of four hundred and eighty thousand acres each, in each of which were to be appointed one landgrave, or earl, and two caciques, or barons. All power was lodged in the holders of real estate, and the proprietors were always to continue exactly eight in number, neither more nor less. With a childish minuteness, the details of pedigree, of fashion, and ceremony, were made the especial province of one of these dignitaries. Such was the constitution, carefully elaborated by the most philosophical mind of the age, which yet, from the unfamiliarity of its author with the practical workings of political machinery, and the needs of a new country, never took practical effect, and soon lapsed into neglect and abrogation.

The colonists at Albemarle, who had already adopted a simple code of laws for their own government, received with much disgust the aristocratic and complicated system which the proprietors had devised; and the latter, not to increase the popular discontent, did not press the immediate adoption of all its particulars. They insisted, however, on establishing a provisional government, but without success; for the people, dissatisfied, imprisoned their collector

## CAROLINAS.

— EMIGRATION  
 BARBADOES TO  
 CHARLES II.—  
 VIRGINIA.—CUM-  
 CONTENT OF  
 NORTH  
 PEOPLE—  
 FOUND-

ment in America  
 of Virginia. The  
 ned with the diffi-  
 had retarded any  
 bleaker and less  
 up with continued  
 h soil and genial  
 indeed, obtained  
 y there; but this  
 became forfeited.  
 and 1650, suffer-  
 d the borders of  
 rthern shores of  
 . By the fertility  
 soon lived in ease,  
 tural products of  
 ecreased by fresh  
 ts, in 1661, made  
 ; but the experi-  
 owever, supplied  
 eeded to the same

and other officers, seized the public funds, and took all the functions of government into their own hands. Their chief leader, who proceeded to England to defend their cause, was there tried for treason, and was acquitted only by the eloquence and influence of Shaftesbury, who considered the insurrection as rather a dispute among the colonists themselves than a revolution against the home government.

The better to carry out their obnoxious constitution, the proprietors next sent out Seth Sothel, one of their own number, as governor. This man, corrupt and greedy, for six years mismanaged the affairs of the province, enriching himself by bribes and extortion. At the end of that time the people put him under arrest, and the assembly tried him and banished him from the province. The proprietors, however ill pleased at the independence of that body, could not deny the justice of the sentence. They approved the measure, and appointed Philip Ludwell as his successor.

In 1670, they dispatched a body of emigrants, under William Sayle, to Port Royal, in South Carolina. In the following year, dissatisfied with the situation, he removed the settlement to the neck of land lying between the rivers Ashley and Cooper, where he founded a settlement named Charleston, in honour of the king, and since known as one of the fairest and wealthiest of southern cities. At his death, which occurred not long after, Sir John Yeomans, already, for some years, governor at Cape Fear, was appointed in his place; and the new settlement gradually absorbed into itself the colonists from that region. A separate government thus established over the two colonies, the names of North and South Carolina came into common usage.

Yeomans, accused of converting his office into an instrument for his own profit, was replaced by West, under whose popular rule the colony continued to increase and prosper. The proprietors, indeed, reaped no fruits from their enterprise, having expended large sums without getting any return. Dutch emigrants, both from New York and the mother-country, attracted by the mildness of the climate and the political freedom enjoyed by the settlers, resorted to South Carolina; and the oppression of the French Protestants, under Louis XIV., also induced numbers of the persecuted sect to take refuge there.

In 1686, James Colleton, a brother of one of the proprietors, was appointed governor, with the title of landgrave. Popular discon-



tent, especially at the elaborate and aristocratic system devised by Locke, was not long in making its demonstration; and the new governor was soon involved in disputes with the colonists. An assembly, elected expressly to resist him, met in 1687; and three years afterwards, an act was passed for his banishment from the province. The English revolution of 1688 had saved the proprietors from a seizure of their charter by the crown. On learning these news, they sent out Ludwell to examine the affairs of Carolina, and to report grievances. Such was the discontent manifested toward the constitution, that it was thought wisest to relinquish it; and, accordingly, in 1693, the whole cumbrous system, with its child's-play at nobility, and its attempt to create institutions which can be made respectable only by long usage and national association, was entirely abrogated and done away.

# VIRGINIA, CONTINUED.

---

## CHAPTER I.

RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS IN VIRGINIA.—REVIVAL OF INTOL-  
ERANCE AND OPPRESSION.—GRANT OF VIRGINIA TO CUL-  
PEPPER AND ARLINGTON.—POPULAR DISCONTENT.—  
INDIAN WAR.—MURDER OF THE CHIEFS.—INSURREC-  
TION UNDER BACON.—TRIUMPH OF THE PEOPLE.

THE unfavourable effect of the Restoration on Virginia has been mentioned. The renewal and enforcement of the Navigation Act fettered her rapidly increasing commerce, and the triumph of royalty at home was followed by that of tyranny and intolerance in the provincial government. The great number of servants, or slaves, in effect, for a term of years, who had been brought from England, even after their emancipation, constituted an inferior and uneducated class, easily kept down by an aristocracy of masters and slaveholders, whose power in the state was continually on the increase. There seems to have been even a systematic desire among the government party to keep a portion of the colonists in dependent ignorance. Berkeley thanks God that free-schools or printing presses were unknown in Virginia, and says he hopes there will be none this hundred years; "for learning," he sagely remarks, "has brought disobedience, and heresy, and sects into the world, and printing hath divulged them," &c. Negro slavery, by this time considerably on the increase, was absolute, the control of the master being almost unfettered by any law of restraint.

The Episcopal church was established as the religion of the state; and persecution of dissenters, especially of Baptists and Quakers, was revived. The assembly of burgesses appropriated extortionate sums for their own pay, as legislators, and, by refusing, for many years, to dissolve, set up a species of prescriptive government, little

short of actual usurpation. The fruit of the royal triumph, in the domestic economy of Virginia, was, in short, as accurately summed up by an elegant historian—"a political revolution, opposed to the principles of popular liberty and the progress of humanity. An assembly continuing for an indefinite period at the pleasure of the governor, and decreeing to its members extravagant and burdensome emoluments; a royal governor, whose salary was established by a permanent system of taxation; a constituency restricted and diminished; religious liberty taken away almost as soon as it had been won; arbitrary taxation in the counties by irresponsible magistrates; a hostility to popular education and to the press;—these were the changes which, in about ten years, were effected in a province that had begun to enjoy the benefits of a virtual independence and a gradually ameliorating legislation."

Fresh misfortune awaited the colony in the rash liberality of Charles, who, in 1673, bestowed on Lord Culpepper and the Earl of Arlington, (the latter connected with him by a discreditable tie,) the entire control of Virginia for a term of thirty-one years. The assembly, on learning the news, fearing for the safety of their estates, dispatched agents to remonstrate with the crown, and to endeavour to obtain a charter for the colonial government; but their efforts, after a year's trial, proved ineffectual.

The oppression to which the people of Virginia, after the restoration of loyal and aristocratic power, were subjected, at last drove them into open resistance. Discontented gatherings and a tendency to revolt had prevailed for some time; and, considering that the outrageous taxes levied by their rulers swallowed up nearly all their earnings and profits, it is remarkable how long they endured the usurpation of the authorities. An Indian war was the first cause of insurrection. Hostilities were carried on with the Susquehannahs and other tribes, both in Virginia and Maryland, and on one occasion, six chiefs, presenting themselves to treat of peace, were murdered by the enraged settlers. Berkeley, irascible, cruel, and tyrannical, was not without feelings of honor. On hearing of the crime, he exclaimed, "If they had killed my father, and my mother, and all my friends, yet if they had come to treat of peace, they ought to have gone in peace."

The savages, their passions inflamed to madness at this piece of cruelty and ill faith, renewed hostilities with much fury, attacking the English plantations in Virginia, and wreaking a tenfold revenge

IVAL OF INTOL-  
 INIA TO CUL-  
 CONTENT.—  
 -INSURREC-  
 E PEOPLE.

Virginia has been  
 Navigation Act  
 triumph of roy-  
 d intolerance in  
 of servants, or  
 n brought from  
 an inferior and  
 y of masters and  
 continually on the  
 tic desire among  
 nists in depend-  
 ools or printing  
 es there will be  
 y remarks, "has  
 the world, and  
 y, by this time  
 ol of the master

ion of the state;  
 ts and Quakers,  
 ted extortionate  
 using, for many  
 government, little

for the loss of their chiefs. The movement spread, and the people—their lives, by the insufficiency of the government, constantly exposed—demanded the permission to carry on the war themselves. But Berkeley, ever despising the popular opinion, and his interest, it is said, being enlisted in behalf of peace by a monopoly of the beaver-trade, which he held, stubbornly refused his consent. A general insurrection was the result. Under Nathaniel Bacon, an English planter, of wealth and influence, of high courage and independence, five hundred men assembled in arms, resolved on a campaign against the enemy. Berkeley, enraged, proclaimed them rebels, and was levying forces to suppress the movement, when a fresh and formidable insurrection of the people, who demanded the immediate dissolution of the assembly, compelled him to desist, and return to Jamestown. With almost the entire force of the people arrayed against them, the governor and the aristocracy were compelled to yield. The assembly, which had so long sat an incubus on the province, was dissolved, and on the election of a new one, Bacon (successful in his Indian campaign) and a majority of his partisans were returned as members. The successful leader acknowledged his error in acting without a commission, and, to the universal joy of the people, was appointed commander-in-chief.

---

## CHAPTER II.

THE POPULAR ASSEMBLY.—MEASURES OF REFORM.—OPPOSITION AND TREACHERY OF BERKELEY.—CIVIL WAR.—TRIUMPH OF THE INSURGENTS.—JAMESTOWN BURNED.—DEATH OF BACON: HIS CHARACTER.—RUIN OF THE POPULAR CAUSE.  
—NUMEROUS EXECUTIONS.—DEATH OF BERKELEY.  
—ADMINISTRATION OF CULPEPPER ETC.

THE new assembly, with a rational and moderate zeal for reform, proceeded to pass many salutary acts, restricting the magistrates in their arbitrary and extortionate course, providing for the purity of elections, curtailing exorbitant fees and salaries, taking precautions against the spread of intemperance, and finally, by a general amnesty, extinguishing, it was hoped, the seeds of civil conflagration,

The demeanour of the governor was dubious, and Bacon, leaving Jamestown, presently returned, at the head of five hundred determined men, in whose presence resistance was in vain. Berkeley advanced to meet them, and, baring his breast, exclaimed, "A fair mark—shoot!" but Bacon told him that not a hair of his head or any man's should be hurt; and the passionate old governor, yielding to necessity, issued the required commission for war against the Indians, and, with the council and assembly, even dispatched to England high commendations of the loyalty and patriotism of his rival.

How insincere were his intentions is evident from the fact that, just as the province was regaining confidence, and Bacon commencing a campaign against the enemy, he repaired to Gloucester county, and again proclaimed him a traitor. The latter, in turn, summoned a convention of the principal persons of the colony at Williamsburgh, when all present took oath to maintain the Indian war, and, if necessary, to support their leader against the governor himself. The latter was endeavouring to levy an army on the eastern shore of the Chesapeake, and, on the advice of Drummond, who had been governor of North Carolina, the governor's term having expired, his retreat was held as an abdication, and a convention of the people was summoned for the settlement of the government. By the promise of plunder, and of freedom to the servants of his opponents, Berkeley gathered, in Accomack, a large force, of the baser sort, with which, transported in fifteen vessels, he sailed for Jamestown. Landing, he fell on his knees, returning thanks to God, and forthwith again proclaimed Bacon and his followers traitors.

The latter, after having made a successful expedition against the Indians, had disbanded his troops; but, on learning these tidings, with a small, but trusty body of followers, at once marched upon the capital. The ignoble forces of the governor showed more disposition for plunder than fighting; and he was compelled to evacuate Jamestown by night, and take refuge, with 100 people, aboard the fleet. Bacon entered the deserted town the next day, and, as it was doubtful how long he could retain possession, it was resolved to burn it. This was accordingly done, some of his chief adherents firing their own houses, and the little capital, for seventy years the chief, nay, almost the only town in Virginia, was laid in ashes. The half-ruined church, still standing, is all that attests to the passing voyager the former existence of the earliest of American settlements.

After further and signal successes, the career of the insurgents

Y.  
and the people—  
constantly ex-  
war themselves.  
and his interest, it  
monopoly of the  
his consent. A  
aniel Bacon, an  
ourage and inde-  
olved on a cam-  
proclaimed them  
vement, when a  
o demanded the  
m to desist, and  
ce of the people  
racy were com-  
sat an incubus  
n of a new one,  
majority of his  
assful leader ac-  
tion, and, to the  
ler-in-chief.

—OPPOSITION  
—TRIUMPH OF  
BATH OF BA-  
AR CAUSE.  
ERKELEY.  
ETC.

zeal for reform,  
magistrates in  
or the purity of  
ing precautions  
a general am-  
l conflagration,

was brought to a sudden end by the untimely death of their gallant leader, who, on the 1st of October, 1676, perished of a disease contracted by exposure to the damp nights of that unhealthy region. His memory, if tarnished by some errors, will always be held in high respect, as that of the first leader in the cause of American independence. He was, it seems, brave in the field, eloquent in council, magnanimous, honourable. The liberal and moderate legislation of the party which he headed bears witness to his talent for government. The enthusiastic affection of his friends and followers evinces his amiable nature. That he was forced into insurrection and continued civil warfare was, doubtless, the fruit of the tyranny of the ascendant faction, and the ill faith of the arbitrary governor at its head.

With Bacon expired the hope and success of the revolutionary party. Without a leader of talent or influence sufficient to combine them, the isolated and disorganized sections of that party were, in turn, defeated, and severally suppressed by the loyalists. Berkeley was restored to power, and, by frequent and merciless executions, evinced the natural cruelty of his disposition, and the tyrannical sentiment of the cause which he headed. Drummond, and more than twenty others, were hanged; and nothing but a remonstrance from the assembly finally availed to stay the hand of the executioner. Charles II. learned with much indignation of the sanguinary proceedings of his governor, and said that the old fool had taken more lives in the wilderness of Virginia than himself had for the murder of his father. In a proclamation, he severely censured these atrocities, and when Berkeley, not long after, returned to England, public opinion condemned him with equal severity. His death, which took place soon after his arrival, was probably hastened by a sense of the condemnation of the sovereign and the people.

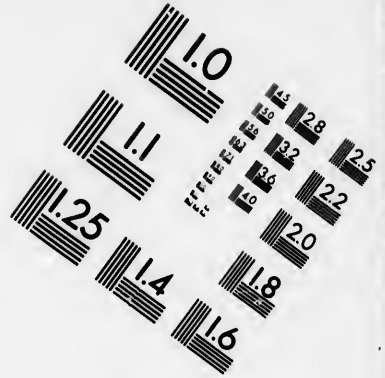
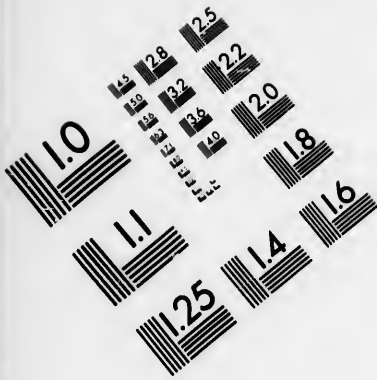
As usual on the suppression of any popular movement, the futile insurrection in Virginia only entailed fresh evils on the country, being made the pretext for refusing it a charter, and continuing its dependence on the crown. All the late acts of the reformed assembly were repealed, and all the ancient grievances and oppressions were reinstated. No printing was allowed, and freedom of speech was entailed by grievous penalties. Excessive and arbitrary taxes were levied by the authorities, and the condition of the people, especially the poorer classes, was again that of subjection and oppression.

Not long after the departure of Berkeley, Lord Culpepper, one of the two patentees of Virginia, a man of grasping and avaricious nature, obtained from the crown an appointment as governor of that province for life. He arrived in 1680, desirous of nothing but of turning his office to profitable account. His salary was doubled, and, to the great grief of the planters, he had a law passed for levying a perpetual export duty of two shillings on every hogshead of tobacco. After remaining in Virginia but a few months, just long enough to look out for his pecuniary interests, he took his departure for England. The misery of the province, consequent on its late disturbed condition, on the restriction of commerce, and the low price of its staple product, tobacco, produced disorder. Riot and insubordination prevailed, and were suppressed by executions. Culpepper returned for a few months to reap all possible advantages from his patent, at the expense of the suffering colonists.

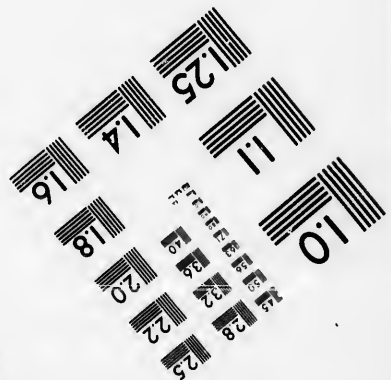
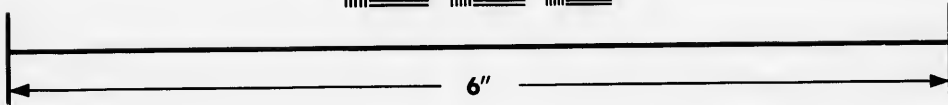
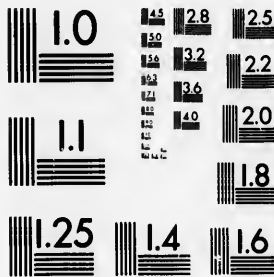
In 1684, the obnoxious grant was annulled, and the government of Virginia was resumed by the crown. Effingham, the first royal governor, used his office only as a means of procuring petty emoluments, and thus rendered himself contemptible in the eyes of the people. The accession of James II., in the following year, and the ill-fated rebellion of Monmouth, increased the population of Virginia, by a number of convicts, who, on the suppression of that movement, were bestowed by the king on his favourites, and by them, with shameless venality, were sold into slavery in America. Under the arbitrary rule of the new sovereign, scarcely a shadow of self-government was allowed to the people of Virginia. A feeling of resistance being manifested in the assembly, that body was dissolved; but the people, a spirit of liberty reawakened, assumed an attitude so insurrectionary, that the governor, destitute of a force adequate to suppress it, was compelled to temporize, and to forego any attempts at renewed oppression.







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

1.5 2.8 2.5  
1.8 3.2 2.2  
2.0  
1.8

10  
5  
5

## THE SETTLEMENT OF DELAWARE.

---

THE FIRST DUTCH COLONY IN DELAWARE: ITS DESTRUCTION.—SWEDES AND FINNS UNDER MINUIT.—CONQUEST OF THE SWEDISH SETTLEMENTS BY THE DUTCH, UNDER STUYVESANT.—DELAWARE UNDER THE DUKE OF YORK: UNDER PENN.—DISPUTES WITH MARYLAND CONCERNING BOUNDARIES.—SEPARATION OF DELAWARE FROM PENNSYLVANIA.

THE disastrous attempt of the Dutch, under De Vriez, in 1631, to found a settlement in Delaware, has been described. ("Dutch in America.") The unfortunate little colony left by that navigator near the site of Lewistown, numbering only thirty-four souls, was cut off by the Indians to avenge the death of a chief, whose life had been sacrificed to the implacable sulkiness of the governor, Gillis Osset. De Vriez, returning from Holland the next year, found no relics of the settlement, except the bones of his countrymen, which lay bleaching on the shore.

The next enterprise in the same direction was that of a small body of Swedes and Finns, who, in 1638, under Minuit, (some time governor of the Dutch at Manhattan, and afterwards in the service of Christina of Sweden,) landed near Cape Henlopen, purchased land of the natives, and built a fort not far from the present site of Wilmington. Attracted by tidings of the mildness and fertility of New Sweden, for so the country was called, Swedish and Finnish emigrants hastened in numbers to the province. A new fort was built on an island below Philadelphia. The claims of the Dutch were resisted, and English adventurers were not allowed to settle. The building of Fort Casimir, by the former people, and its treacherous seizure by Risingh, the Swedish governor, have been described in their appropriate place, as well as the conquest of New Sweden by Peter Stuyvesant, the doughty governor of the New Netherlands. The Dutch company, stimulated by aggression, and fearing little from the distracted and feebly-governed kingdom of Sweden, had

## DELAWARE.

ITS DESTRUCTION.  
CONQUEST OF THE  
H, UNDER STUY-  
DUKE OF YORK.  
RYLAND CON-  
ATION OF  
VANIA.

De Vriez, in 1631, to  
scribed. ("Dutch in  
ft by that navigator  
thirty-four souls, was  
chief, whose life had  
f the governor, Gillis  
next year, found no  
s countrymen, which

s that of a small body  
nuit, (some time gov-  
n in the service of  
open, purchased land  
e present site of Wil-  
s and fertility of New  
sh and Finnish emi-  
A new fort was built  
s of the Dutch were  
owed to settle. The  
e, and its treacherous  
ve been described in  
of New Sweden by  
e New Netherlands.  
n, and fearing little  
dom of Sweden, had

## THE SETTLEMENT OF DELAWARE.

175

ordered their officer, "to revenge their wrong, to drive the Swedes from the river, or compel their submission." Accordingly, in September, 1655, with a force of six hundred men, Stuyvesant sailed up the Delaware, on an avowed errand of conquest. Before a force, comparatively so formidable, the feeble colonies of Sweden, after a national existence of only seventeen years, were speedily compelled to succumb. The forts were reduced; a portion of the Swedes were sent to Europe, and the remainder, on taking the oath of allegiance, were suffered to remain. Many of their descendants are still living in Delaware.

On the conquest of the New Netherlands by the English, in 1664, the Dutch and Swedish settlements of Delaware came under the authority of the Duke of York. Disputes respecting boundaries soon arose. Lord Baltimore, the proprietor of Maryland, had claimed all the region on the west side of the Delaware as included in his grant; and incursions had been made from that province for the purpose of repelling settlers from the disputed territory. William Penn, the grant of Pennsylvania obtained, desirous of extending his coast line, (it was "more for love of the water," he said, "than of the land,") procured from the duke a cession of all the land for twelve miles around Newcastle, and all lying between that and the sea. On his arrival in America, (1682,) solemn possession of the territory was given to him by the duke's agent, at that town, and Penn addressed a multitude of his new subjects—Swedes, Dutch, and English—who had assembled to witness the ceremony, promising to all freedom, both civil and religious, and recommending virtue, religion, and sobriety of life.

The claim of Baltimore, still asserted, was for some time the subject of negotiation—the two proprietors at first exhibiting a polite, and afterwards a rather acrimonious pertinacity in maintaining their respective pretensions; but, in 1685, it was decided invalid by the Lords of Trade and the Plantations; and the boundary of the rival patentees was fixed by a pacific agreement. The three counties which Penn called his "Territories," and which now constitute the state of Delaware, for twenty years sent their delegates to the general assembly of Pennsylvania; but, in 1703, dissatisfied with the action of that body, procured permission to act by a legislature of their own; the proprietor, however, retaining his claims, and the same governor exercising executive functions over both Pennsylvania and Delaware.

## THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW JERSEY.

---

CONQUEST BY THE ENGLISH.—NICHOLS, BERKELEY, AND CARTERET.—EMIGRATION FROM NEW ENGLAND.—SALE OF WEST NEW JERSEY TO THE QUAKERS.—FENWICK, BYLLINGE, AND PENN.—QUAKER SETTLEMENTS.—REMARKABLY FREE CONSTITUTION.—FRIENDLY DEALINGS WITH THE INDIANS.—USURPATION OF ANDROS: ITS DEFEAT.—EAST NEW JERSEY.

AFTER the conquest of the New Netherlands by the English, in 1664, Nichols, the first governor, encouraged the emigration of his countrymen from the adjoining settlements of New England and Long Island into the regions south of Manhattan; and settlements were made at Elizabethtown, Newark, and other localities. The Duke of York, the patentee of the whole country, in the very year of the conquest, assigned to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret the territories lying between the Hudson and the Delaware. In compliment to the latter, who, during the civil contests in England, had held the island of Jersey for the royal party, the country received its present name.

Philip Carteret, appointed governor by the new proprietors, came over the next year, and selected Elizabethtown as the capital of the province. By offering favourable terms, he induced many to emigrate thither from New England, and the population of the colony continued to increase. A question concerning the titles issued by Nichols, combined with other causes of discontent, in 1672, excited a popular movement against the governor, which, however, was finally quieted by concessions from the proprietors.

Berkeley, disappointed in his expectation of profitable returns, in 1674, for the inconsiderable sum of a thousand pounds, sold his share of New Jersey to the Quakers, who were eager for an opportunity to purchase in the New World a refuge for their proscribed

## NEW JERSEY.

BERKELEY, AND CAR-  
ND.—SALE OF WEST  
WICK, BYLLINGE,  
—REMARKABLY  
DEALINGS WITH  
ANDROS: ITS  
RSEY.

nds by the English, in  
d the emigration of his  
of New England and  
nattan; and settlements  
other localities. The  
untry, in the very year  
and Sir George Carteret  
and the Delaware. In  
ivil contests in England,  
yal party, the country

e new proprietors, came  
wn as the capital of the  
e induced many to emi-  
population of the colony  
ng the titles issued by  
content, in 1672, excited  
, which, however, was  
riectors.

of profitable returns, in  
usand pounds, sold his  
ere eager for an oppor-  
age for their proscribed

faith and persons. The assignment was made to John Fenwick in trust for Edward Byllinge, whose affairs were embarrassed. A dispute between these two was settled by the intervention of William Penn; and, in 1675, the former, with a large company of Friends, sailed for the Delaware. At a place which he called Salem, near Elsingburg, he established a settlement, and, by agreement with Sir George Carteret, the western portion of the province—thenceforward called West New Jersey—was set off and separated as the share of the new proprietors. Penn and two others, being made the assigns of Byllinge, as trustees for his creditors, divided the country into one hundred shares, which they set up for sale. All the purchasers made vigorous efforts to promote the growth of the province; and, in 1677, a large number of emigrants, mostly Quakers, came over and settled in and around Burlington.

The constitution, which, under the benevolent auspices of Quakerism, was adopted the same year, was of a nature extraordinarily liberal and democratic, considering the age. Perfect freedom of conscience and religion; universal suffrage by ballot; universal eligibility to office; strict accountability of representatives to their constituents; direct election of justices, &c., by the people; extraordinary privileges of jury; non-imprisonment for debt, and prohibition of slavery; such were the grand principles on which rested the earliest legislation of the Friends in the Old or the New World.

Lands were purchased of the Indians, whose rights were especially protected by law, and the chiefs, gathered in council at Burlington, pledged a perpetual league and friendship with the peaceful comers. "You are our brothers," they said, "and we will live like brothers with you. We will have a broad path for you and us to walk in. If an Englishman falls asleep in this path, the Indian shall pass him by, and say, 'He is an Englishman; he is asleep; let him alone.' The path shall be plain; there shall not be in it a stump to hurt the feet."

The tranquillity of this happy province was first disturbed by the violent interference of Andros, the governor of the Duke of York, who forcibly exacted customs of ships trading to the new colony, levied taxes on the inhabitants, and carried matters with a high hand when resisted. On the remonstrance of the people, most forcibly and eloquently set forth, the duke consented to refer the matter of jurisdiction to an impartial commission. By this the claims of his governor were pronounced illegal, and the liberties of New

Jersey were fully confirmed. An attempt of Byllinge, as proprietor, to assume undue rights, was resisted with equal success, and the Quakers, by advice of Penn, amending their constitution, elected a governor for themselves.

In 1682, East New Jersey was purchased by Penn and a number of others, from the heirs of Carteret. Robert Barclay, conspicuous for his defence of the Quakers, was appointed governor, and strong inducements to emigration were held forth. The cruelties enacted at this time against the Presbyterians of Scotland, caused numbers of that persecuted people to avail themselves of the opportunity for a refuge across the Atlantic. Their coming contributed materially to the well-being of the country—industry, endurance, and piety, being distinguishing traits in their character; and the two Jerseys, not many years afterwards reunited under a single government, owed much of their prosperity to the elements of virtue in the persecuted sects by which they were peopled.

STORY.

f Byllinge, as propri-  
with equal success, and  
ir constitution, elected

y Penn and a number  
Barclay, conspicuous  
governor, and strong  
The cruelties enacted  
tland, caused numbers  
of the opportunity for  
contributed materially  
endurance, and piety,  
; and the two Jerseys,  
a single government,  
s of virtue in the per-

## THE SETTLEMENT OF PENNSYLVANIA.

### CHAPTER I.

WILLIAM PENN: HIS YOUTH: HE TURNS QUAKER: IS EXPELLED  
FROM COLLEGE AND HOME: IMPRISONED FOR HIS OPINIONS:  
SEVERITY OF HIS FATHER: FRESH IMPRISONMENT: EXER-  
TIONS IN BEHALF OF HIS SECT: HE ENGAGES IN THE  
SETTLEMENT OF NEW JERSEY.

WILLIAM PENN, son of the distinguished admiral of the same name, was born at London on the 14th of October, 1644. At the early age of fifteen, he was placed at the University of Oxford, where, being of a temperament naturally religious and enthusiastic, he became deeply impressed by the teachings of Loe, a prominent member of the then almost universally persecuted sect of Quakers. For implication with this obnoxious community, and for resistance to the college authorities, (it has even been said that Penn and his friends tore the surplices of the students over their heads, when an order for the wearing of those garments had been issued,) he and several of his associates were expelled. His father, a man loyal, choleric, and prejudiced, unable to reclaim him by persuasion or argument from his eccentric views, turned him out of doors; but, afterwards, a partial reconciliation being effected, supplied him with the means for foreign travel, hoping, probably, that change of scene and adventure might dissipate his fantastic notions. Turning aside from his journey, the youth engaged in the study of theology at Saumur; whence he returned to England, and commenced that of the law at Lincoln's Inn. Distinguished by purity of life rather than by asceticism of manners, he made a figure corresponding with his social position; was esteemed a young gentleman of fashion, skilled in courtly and even martial accomplishments.

On coming of age, he was dispatched by his father to Ireland, to



take charge of his estates there, and falling in with his Quaker friend, Loe, at a meeting in Cork, all his old impressions readily revived. Imprisoned for attending the proscribed assemblies, but finally released through the favour of the lord-licutenant, he returned home, where his father, grieved to the soul, used every exertion to change his persuasion. The old admiral, who now probably began to respect the stuff his son was made of, at last even offered to compromise matters so far as to agree that William might wear his hat any where except in presence of himself, of the king, and the king's brother—but even these easy terms of capitulation were refused, and he was again driven from the paternal roof.

He now became openly a preacher of the persecuted sect, which he defended in several publications—an offence for which he was committed to the Tower, and kept close prisoner for some months. In this, as well as his other difficulties, his judges seem to have been entirely at a loss for the motives which could induce a youth of fortune and family to connect himself with a cause so ignominious from the poverty, and so dangerous from the persecution which attended it. Discharged from prison, he returned to Ireland, where he busied himself in comforting his imprisoned brethren, and in procuring their release. He was again committed for public preaching, his trial creating no little excitement; but his father paid the fine which the young Quaker, from motives of principle, had refused to settle, and thus procured his discharge. A complete reconciliation took place, the brave and magnanimous old seaman finally appreciating the traits of courage, of honour, and of independence which his son inherited, though displayed in a field of action so different from his own. "Son William," he said on his death-bed, "if you and your friends keep to your plain way of living and preaching, you will make an end of the priests."

By the death of his father, Penn came into possession of an estate of fifteen hundred pounds a year, and, in 1672, was married to a woman in every way worthy of him—one distinguished by beauty, intelligence, principle, and sweetness of temper. He continued to preach and to write in behalf of the oppressed sect whose cause he had espoused; and the productions of his pen, characterized by simplicity, eloquence, and sound argument, laid a strong hold on public sentiment.

His first action in regard to settlements in the New World, was in 1676, when, having served as arbitrator between Byllinge and

in with his Quaker  
 impressions readily  
 described assemblies, but  
 lieutenant, he returned  
 every exertion to  
 now probably began  
 even offered to com-  
 might wear his hat  
 king, and the king's  
 tion were refused, and

persecuted sect, which  
 nce for which he was  
 mer for some months.  
 ges seem to have been  
 d induce a youth of  
 cause so ignominious  
 the persecution which  
 ned to Ireland, where  
 ned brethren, and in-  
 ted for public preach-  
 t his father paid the  
 principle, had refused  
 complete reconcilia-  
 s old seaman finally  
 and of independence  
 field of action so dif-  
 on his death-bed, "if  
 of living and preach-

possession of an estate  
 72, was married to a  
 distinguished by beauty,  
 er. He continued to  
 sect whose cause he  
 en, characterized by  
 id a strong hold on

the New World, was  
 between Byllinge and

Fenwick, he became one of the trustees of the former proprietor in Western New Jersey. He drew up a plan of government for that province. Religious toleration, trial by jury, and non-imprisonment for debt, were its main constitutional features. In the following year, large numbers of Quakers resorted there from England, and the province soon became a favourite refuge for that oppressed people. Penn, whose efforts were still unwearied in behalf of his suffering brethren, continued, with all his energy, to defend their cause at home, and to aid them in their emigration to the land of freedom and toleration.

---

## CHAPTER II.

PENN OBTAINS FROM CHARLES II. THE GRANT OF PENNSYLVANIA: HIS ADMIRABLE PROCLAMATION TO THE SETTLERS: HE REPAIRS TO AMERICA: GAINS POSSESSION OF DELAWARE: HONOURABLE DEALINGS WITH THE INDIANS: THEIR ATTACHMENT TO HIM.—THE GREAT TREATY.

His designs enlarged by successful experience, and his enterprise aiming at the foundation of a commonwealth more free and perfect than any the world had yet witnessed, in 1680 Penn made application to the crown for a share of the American territory then distributed by Charles II. with such a lavish hand among ambitious or profligate courtiers. If his proscribed opinions were calculated to retard his suit, his personal address and fortunate circumstances were equally suited to favour it. A large sum of money, due to his father from the government, he offered as the price of the desired grant. In March, 1681, a strong opposition overcome, he obtained from the king the patent of a vast tract of territory, containing three degrees of latitude and five of longitude.

In naming his province, his modesty prevented any allusion to himself. He "suggested Sylvania, on account of its woods, but they would still add Penn to it." The king, it is said, was pleased especially to command and sanction this compliment. The vast tracts of Pennsylvania, thus appropriately titled, he was to hold by the payment of two beaver-skins yearly to the crown, and one-fifth of

any precious metals discovered there. Very extensive powers of government were conferred on him personally; powers of which he never availed himself for purposes of selfish profit; and which he used or surrendered only to further the establishment of complete freedom, justice, and toleration over his vast domain. The more effectually to carry out his extensive scheme, he now relinquished the care of the affairs of New Jersey, which province, under his judicious management, had continually improved, both in increase and prosperity. His brief and admirable proclamation to the colonists (Swedes and others), who had already settled in the limits of his grant, cannot be too highly extolled for its simplicity, directness, and honesty. "*My Friends*," he said, "I wish you all happiness, here and hereafter. These are to let you to know, that it hath pleased God in his Providence to cast you in my Lott and Care. It is a business, that, though I never undertook before, yet God has given me an understanding of my duty and an honest heart to do it uprightly. I hope you will not be troubled at your change and the king's choice; for you are now fixt, at the mercy of no Governour that comes to make his fortune great. You shall be governed by laws of your own makeing, and live a free, and, if you will, a sober and industrious people. I shall not usurp the right of any, nor oppress his person. God has furnisht me with a better resolution, and has given me his grace to keep it. In short, whatever sober and free men can reasonably desire for the security and improvement of their own happiness, I shall heartily comply with—I beseech God to direct you in the way of righteousness, and therein prosper you and your children after you. I am your true friend, Wm. Penn." (April, 1681.)

Fresh emigrants were speedily forwarded to the land of refuge; and Penn, with noble self-denial and thought for the common good, rejected a great offer made to him, by a private company, for a monopoly (very common at the time) of Indian traffic. A system of government was devised, to be submitted to the approval of the settlers themselves; and by a grant procured from the Duke of York, the territory of the present state of Delaware was added to the already vast domain of Pennsylvania. With many of his friends and neighbours, of the proscribed persuasion, the proprietor set sail for America; and after a tedious voyage and numerous deaths on board, on the 27th of October, 1682, arrived at Newcastle.

The next day, great numbers of the original settlers—Swedes,

STORY.

by extensive powers of  
y; powers of which he  
profit; and which he  
establishment of complete  
domain. The more  
e, he now relinquished  
h province, under his  
oved, both in increase  
oclamation to the colo-  
settled in the limits of  
s simplicity, directness,  
ish you all happiness,  
ow, that it hath pleased  
ott and Care. It is a  
ere, yet God has given  
est heart to do it up-  
t your change and the  
eracy of no Governour  
a shall be governed by  
d, if you will, a sober  
the right of any, nor  
ith a better resolution,  
short, whatever sober  
urity and improvement  
mply with—I beseech  
s, and therein prosper  
our true friend, Wm.

to the land of refuge;  
for the common good,  
private company, for a  
ian traffic. A system  
to the approval of the  
ed from the Duke of  
elaware was added to  
ith many of his friends  
the proprietor set sail  
numerous deaths on  
at Newcastle.  
inal settlers—Swedes,



WHITNEY, JOCELYN, ANIM. Sc.

THE TREATY OF PENN WITH THE INDIANS.

Dutch, and English—assembled at that town; and ceremonious legal possession of Delaware was delivered to Penn by the agent of the Duke of York. Recommending peace and sobriety to the inhabitants, the proprietor journeyed through the settlements of his grant, and visited his friends in the neighbouring provinces.

With a conscientious regard to the rights of the native inhabitants, seldom evinced by European founders of colonies, he had made strict provision in the articles of emigration and settlement for the protection of the Indians against either fraud or violence. The goods employed in traffic with them, were to be rigidly examined, to test their quality, "that the said Indians might neither be abused nor provoked;" and any difference between the two races was to be decided by a jury of twelve, half Indians and half white men. On his return to the Delaware (1683), occurred that memorable treaty, the delight of history, the favourite theme of art, and the perpetual honour of the faith and truthfulness of both the parties concerned in it.

With a few of his Quaker friends, he met the delegation, itself numerous, from the several tribes with whom the new settlers were to live as neighbours, or to mingle in traffic, or in the chase. Beneath a spreading elm at Shakamaxon, hard by the present city of Philadelphia—then a lonely river bank, covered with pines—in simple and truthful words, he addressed the assembled Algonquins, impressing the advantages of just and loving dealing, and of constant peace and friendship. "I will not call you children," he said, "for parents sometimes chide their children too severely; nor brothers only; for brothers differ. The friendship between me and you I will not compare to a chain; for that the rains might rust, or the falling tree might break. We are the same as if one man's body were to be divided into two parts; we are all one flesh and blood." In reply, the chiefs said, "We will live in love with William Penn and his children as long as the sun and moon shall endure." Presents were exchanged, and the wampum-belts, in commemoration of the event, were given.

No oath confirmed this simple treaty, made in the free forest, by the lonely river, beneath the arching sky, between the wild tribes of America and a people proscribed in civilized Europe as the enemies of society. No deeds were signed, no record of the compact, except the simple wampum, was preserved. But it was never broken. The hands of the savages were never imbrued with



JERELYN. ANIM.

INDIANS.

Quaker blood; and, while their descendants inhabited the same land, peace and good-will ever prevailed between them.

"In the following year," to use the language of an elegant historian, "Penn often met the Indians in council and at their festivals. He visited them in their cabins, shared the hospitable banquet of hominy and roasted acorns, and laughed and frolicked, and practised athletic games with the light-hearted, mirthful, confiding red men. He spoke to them of religion, and found that the tawny skin did not exclude the instinct of a Deity. 'The poor savage people believed in God and the soul without the aid of metaphysics.' He touched the secret springs of sympathy, and succeeding generations on the Susquehannah acknowledged his loveliness."

---

### CHAPTER III.

LIBERAL LEGISLATION OF PENNSYLVANIA.—PENN FOUNDS PHILADELPHIA: ITS RAPID INCREASE.—FORMATION OF A CONSTITUTION.—GREAT EMIGRATION FROM EUROPE.—GROWTH OF THE PROVINCE.—PENN RETURNS TO ENGLAND.—HIS SUBSEQUENT CAREER.

A POPULAR convention, assembled at Chester, in December, 1682, was entrusted with the settlement of the government. Under the just and liberal spirit of the proscribed society of Friends, extraordinary improvements in legislation appeared. Primogeniture was abolished, and equal suffrage was secured to all tax-payers. No tax could be levied except by force of law. Murder alone, at a time when capital offences, on the English statute-books, were almost without number, was to be punished by death. The punishment for other offences was mild and reasonable. The original settlers—Swedes, Finns, and Dutch—were assured of the same rights as Englishmen. The benevolent proprietor, rejoicing in his success in founding a free community, and amply repaid for his sacrifices and exertions by the gratitude of his people, concluded the work of legislation, as usual, with words of religious counsel and exhortation.

In the first months of 1683, he selected for the site of his capital that admirable location, close by the scene of his treaty, lying be-

tween the Schuylkill and the Delaware. Here he laid out and founded the city of Philadelphia—a city which sprung into existence with a rapidity and prosperity unprecedented at the day, and almost rivalling the Aladdin-like structures in our western regions, which seem the growth of a night—the work of enchantment. In August of that year, it consisted of but three or four cottages. Within two years it contained six hundred houses.

Immediately after its selection, indeed, (March, 1683) a convention was assembled there for the purpose of forming a constitution. By that instrument it was provided that a council and assembly should be elected by the people, the first for three years, and the latter for one. The initiative of laws was reserved to the governor and council, and their ratification depended on the assembly, directly representing the action of the people. The governor was allowed a negative voice on the action of the council. The people received the charter, so unexpectedly liberal, with gratitude and exultation; but the former of these feelings, always short-lived with communities, was, not long after, merged in the eager desire to establish a still more complete form of democracy.

When the tidings of this unexampled generosity and tolerance on the part of the proprietor reached Europe, numbers, especially of the persecuted, from the British isles, from Holland, and from Germany, flocked across the seas to share in the blessings provided by the forethought and magnanimity of a single man. The sudden growth of Philadelphia has been mentioned. That of the whole province was on a corresponding scale—outrivalling even the rapid increase of New England. "I must, without vanity, say," affirms Penn, with just pride, "I have led the greatest colony into America that ever any man did upon a private credit, and the most prosperous beginnings that ever were in it are to be found among us." His humane and glorious mission in the New World accomplished, the executive power entrusted to a commission of the council, the generous founder of Pennsylvania took an affecting leave of the people who owed him so deep a debt of gratitude. Tender remembrance and pious counsel mingled in his last words. "I have been with you," he said, "cared over you, and served you, with unfeigned love; and you are beloved of me and dear to me beyond utterance.

\* \* You are come to a quiet land, and liberty and authority are in your own hands. Rule for Him under whom the princes of this world will one day esteem it an honour to govern in their places."

RY.

ced the same land,

of an elegant his-  
and at their fes-  
l the hospitable  
ed and frolicked,  
ed, mirthful, con-  
l found that the

"The poor sav-  
the aid of meta-  
y, and succeeding  
s loveliness."

-PENN FOUNDS  
MATION OF A  
EUROPE.—  
RETURNS  
REER.

December, 1682,  
ent. Under the  
Friends, extraor-  
imogeniture was  
payers. No tax  
alone, at a time  
ks, were almost  
The punishment  
original settlers—  
ne rights as Eng-  
a his success in  
his sacrifices and  
ed the work of  
and exhortation.  
ite of his capital  
treaty, lying be-



Returned to England, (1684,) Penn employed his fortune, his influence, his eloquence, in behalf of the oppressed. Thanks to his name, his successful enterprise, and the respect which high integrity will ever command, his voice at court was potential. At his intercession, many hundreds of his unfortunate brethren were released from the prisons in which they had been so long immured. The eagerness of the new sovereign (James II.) to secure immunity for his fellow-communicants, the Catholics, led him to listen favourably to applications in behalf of other dissenters from the Establishment. Penn, in advance of all who sought either exclusive supremacy or mere toleration for their respective creeds, boldly contended for unlimited freedom of conscience, and won immortal honour by the wisdom, the logic, and the eloquence with which his writings in behalf of that grand object continually abound.

The first fruit of his generous concessions to the colonists, was the display of a rather turbulent spirit of freedom. His legislators, new to their business, soon became involved in quarrels with the executive, and evinced much jealousy even of the limited share of power and profit which the single-minded proprietor had reserved as his own. "The maker of the first Pennsylvania almanac was censured for publishing Penn as a lord. The assembly originated bills without scruple; they attempted a new organization of the judiciary; they alarmed the merchants by their lenity towards debtors; they would vote no taxes; they claimed the right of inspecting the records, and displacing the officers of the courts; they expelled a member who reminded them of their contravening the provisions of their charter." These tokens of ingratitude, leading, indeed, to no disastrous results, must have borne somewhat heavily on the heart of the benefactor of the province—that benefactor, who, having expended his estate in delivering the oppressed and founding a nation, and having relinquished in favour of his people the vast profits which avarice, or even common custom might have grasped, found himself, in old age, confined for debt within the rules of the Fleet prison. But a steadfast hope and a serene conscience, the prompters and supporters of his noble career, were equally his consolers under its unprosperous personal termination. His fame, emerging from the clouds of envy and detraction, shines, century after century, with a purer and more steady ray. His memory will ever be cherished by mankind as that of one of the wisest, worthiest, and least selfish of their race.

STORY.

d his fortune, his influ-  
enced. Thanks to his  
t which high integrity  
ential. At his inter-  
rethren were released  
long immured. The  
secure immunity for  
m to listen favourably  
om the Establishment.  
exclusive supremacy or  
boldly contended for  
mortal honour by the  
which his writings in  
l.

to the colonists, was  
dom. His legislators,  
l in quarrels with the  
of the limited share of  
oprietor had reserved  
sylvania almanac was  
ne assembly originated  
w organization of the  
their lenity towards  
aimed the right of in-  
ers of the courts; they  
their contravening the  
of ingratitude, leading,  
rne somewhat heavily  
—that benefactor, who,  
oppressed and found-  
r of his people the vast  
n might have grasped,  
within the rules of the  
serene conscience, the  
were equally his com-  
mination. His fame,  
raction, shines, century  
ly ray. His memory  
t of one of the wisest,

## THE NORTHERN COLONIES,

CONTINUED.

### CHAPTER I.

SIR EDMUND ANDROS COMMISSIONED BY THE DUKE OF YORK: HIS ATTEMPTS TO EXTEND HIS AUTHORITY OVER CONNECTICUT.—THOMAS DONGAN.—UNION OF THE COLONIES UNDER A ROYAL GOVERNOR.—ANDROS APPOINTED GOVERNOR-GENERAL.—OPPRESSION IN THE COLONIES.—PROCEEDINGS AGAINST CONNECTICUT AND RHODE ISLAND.—ANDROS'S VISIT TO CONNECTICUT.—PRESERVATION OF THE CHARTER.—THE NORTHERN PROVINCES FORCED TO SUBMISSION.—DOINGS IN NEW ENGLAND UPON THE OCCURRENCE OF THE REVOLUTION OF 1688.

At the period of the recession to England of the territories of the New Netherlands, after a brief possession by the Dutch, in 1673-4, James, Duke of York, procured a new royal patent, by which his former rights of proprietorship were secured to him, with enlarged governmental powers. He chose a fit emissary for the furtherance of his arbitrary intentions respecting his New England territory, in the person of Major Edmund Andros, who came over in the autumn of 1674, armed with nearly absolute authority, and entered upon the exercise of his office as governor at New York, in the month of October.

The people of Connecticut, justly proud of the privileges bestowed upon them in the charter obtained from Charles II., by the exertions of Winthrop, made open resistance to the attempt by Andros to extend his jurisdiction over their territory as far as the Connecticut river, which he claimed to be the boundary of New York. The

patent of the duke certainly covered this district, and extended eastward as far as the Kennebec. The year after his appointment, the governor, with several armed vessels, made a demonstration upon the fort at Saybrook, but such was the aspect of determination on the part of the colonial militia, and such the tone of a protest forwarded by the assembly then in session at Hartford, that he judged it prudent to withdraw.

At a later period, after the accession of James II. to the throne of England, the policy of uniting the New England colonies, and subjecting them to the sway of the royal governor, was more energetically pursued. Andros was superseded, in 1683, by Colonel Thomas Dongan, a man of more enlarged views, and generally far more acceptable to the colonists than his predecessor. During the three years of this administration, the principal events of political interest are connected with the history of that powerful aboriginal confederacy, known as the Six Nations.

Upon the demise of the crown, in 1685, the new monarch, with characteristic tyranny and short-sightedness, determined on pushing forward his scheme for a union of the provinces. The charter of Massachusetts was annulled by legal process in the English courts, New Hampshire having been previously separated from that colony, and constituted a royal province, in opposition to the wishes of its inhabitants. Writs of *Quo Warranto* were also issued against the authorities of Connecticut and Rhode Island, requiring them to appear and show by "what warrant" they exercised powers of government. Joseph Dudley, a native of the country, was temporarily placed at the head of affairs in the eastern colonies, but was superseded at the close of the year 1686 by Andros, now Sir Edmund, who came out as Governor-General of New England, and in whom, assisted by a royal council, were vested all powers, legislative and executive. He brought with him a small body of regular troops, then, for the first time, quartered upon the New England colonies.

Andros is spoken of as a man of undoubted abilities and attainments; and he appears to have possessed a spirit of military pride which led him to respect an open and bold opposition. The principal acts of tyranny which rendered his administration unpopular, were in direct accordance with instructions from the English court. Power, such as his, can safely be entrusted with no man.

Among other grievances, the liberty of the press was abolished, and the unpopular Edward Randolph, who had previously been

strict, and extended  
 ter his appointment,  
 ade a demonstration  
 spect of determination  
 he tone of a protest  
 tford, that he judged

II. to the throne of  
 d colonies, and sub-  
 ; was more energet-  
 , by Colonel Thomas  
 generally far more  
 . During the three  
 s of political interest  
 al aboriginal cofied-

new monarch, with  
 determined on push-  
 vinces. The charter  
 cess in the English  
 y separated from that  
 position to the wishes  
 re also issued against  
 d, requiring them to  
 cised powers of gov-  
 ntry, was temporarily  
 onies, but was super-  
 es, now Sir Edmund  
 gland, and in whom,  
 wers, legislative and  
 dy of regular troops,  
 v England colonies.

abilities and attain-  
 irit of military pride  
 opposition. The prin-  
 nistration unpopular,  
 n the English court  
 h no man.

press was abolished,  
 had previously been

sent out as inspector of customs, was appointed censor. The reli-  
 gious privileges and prejudices of the colonists by various regu-  
 lations were invaded or outraged. In Massachusetts, marriages were  
 required to be celebrated by a clergyman of the Episcopal Church,  
 to the great disgust and inconvenience of the population. Even the  
 Act of Toleration, by which dissenters in general were freed from  
 former disabilities, was looked upon with suspicion, as being but  
 one step taken by a Catholic monarch towards the final establish-  
 ment of his own church.

An assessment of taxes, by the governor and council, was at first  
 met by a general refusal and resistance; but the levy was enforced,  
 and obstinate defaulters were punished with severity by fines and  
 imprisonment. A favourite and most productive method of extor-  
 tion, was the impeachment of titles to lands held under the old  
 grants from towns or from the general assemblies, and ruinous fees  
 were exacted from those who were thus compelled to procure new  
 patents from the royal officials.

Legal process against the governments of Connecticut and Rhode  
 Island had been stayed upon the transmission of memorials to the  
 king, which had been construed into submission to the royal pleasure;  
 but the charters of these provinces had not been formally surren-  
 dered. In January of 1687, Sir Edmund proceeded in person to  
 Rhode Island, and put an end to the existing government. He  
 destroyed the public seal, and, without material opposition, estab-  
 lished the royal authority, as represented by himself and his creatures.

The General Assembly of Connecticut, being in session during the  
 month of October following, was visited by the governor-general,  
 who came, with an armed force, to compel a surrender of the charter,  
 and to dissolve the provincial government. The treasured docu-  
 ment was produced, and the question was discussed at great length.  
 Night came on, and, as it was evident that Andros was fully  
 determined to enforce his claims, a plan was concerted by which the  
 instrument that had assured a free government to Connecticut was at  
 least preserved, although rendered, for the time being, of no effect.  
 The lights were extinguished, and, in the darkness and confusion  
 which ensued, Captain Wadsworth, of Hartford, seized upon the  
 charter, and, making his way out of the assembly-room, succeeded  
 in depositing it unseen in a place of security, viz: the hollow of a  
 huge oak. This tree is still living, and forms an object no less  
 interesting from its antiquity, (being one of the few denizens of the

aboriginal forest now standing in the thickly-settled portions of New England,) and from the great size of its gnarled and picturesque trunk, than from its association with the incident above related. The original charter is still preserved at the secretary's office, in Hartford.

Andros met with no further opposition, and all New England, with New York and New Jersey, finally submitted to his dictation. He maintained his position until the revolution of 1688, by which William and Mary gained possession of the throne of England. An unprofitable eastern expedition against the French and Indians, under the Baron of St. Castine, was among the most noticeable events of the latter portion of his administration.

Upon receipt of the first definite intelligence of the revolution, the people of Boston rose in mass. Andros, his Secretary Randolph, and other officials, were seized and thrown into prison. The venerable Simon Bradstreet, former governor of the colony, was put at the head of a provisional government.

The whole of New England followed the example of Massachusetts. Connecticut and Rhode Island were reorganized under their violated charters, and all the other colonies, in resuming their old forms of government, rejoiced over the forced abdication of the king, and the establishment of a Protestant succession.

Andros was sent to England, and the various charges against him were examined by William and his council. It appeared, however, that he had in no material instance exceeded the powers expressly bestowed upon him, and the complaints were dismissed. Connecticut and Rhode Island received the royal confirmation of their old charters; but Massachusetts was less fortunate, having made defence in the proceedings under the *quo warranto*, to final judgment, which, it was decided, could only be reversed on writ of error.

TORY.

ttled portions of New  
rled and picturesque  
cident above related.  
secretary's office, in

d all New England,  
mitted to his dictation.  
on of 1688, by which  
one of England. An  
French and Indians,  
the most noticeable  
n.

ce of the revolution,  
his Secretary Ran-  
wn into prison. The  
of the colony, was put

o example of Massa-  
re reorganized under  
es, in resuming their  
ced abdication of the  
cession.

rious charges against  
il. It appeared, how-  
exceeded the powers  
aints were dismissed.  
royal confirmation of  
ortunate, having made  
arranto, to final judg-  
ersed on writ of error.



WILLIAM PENN,

THE FOUNDER OF PENNSYLVANIA.

BORN AT LONDON, OCTOBER 14, 1644; FOUNDED PHILADELPHIA, 1683; DIED JULY 30, 1718.

c  
c  
h  
m  
th  
co  
N

## CHAPTER II.

NEW YORK SUBSEQUENT TO THE REVOLUTION OF 1688.—ASSUMPTION OF AUTHORITY BY JACOB LEISLER: OPPOSITION BY THE COUNCIL.—INDIAN INCURSIONS.—ARRIVAL OF SLOUGHTER AS GOVERNOR.—TRIAL AND EXECUTION OF LEISLER AND MILBOURNE.—COLONEL FLETCHER: HIS FUTILE ATTEMPT TO ENFORCE AUTHORITY IN CONNECTICUT.—CHURCH DIFFICULTIES.—BEL-LAMONT'S PEACEABLE ADMINISTRATION.—CAPTAIN KIDD, THE PIRATE.

IN New York, the first news of the English revolution created great confusion and terror. Vague reports of intended outrages on the part of the Catholics excited the populace, and hastened a movement which proved fatal to its leaders. Jacob Leisler, a captain of militia, and a Dutch merchant of wealth and respectability, was prevailed upon to take command of a body of insurgents, and to seize upon the fort. The lieutenant-governor, Colonel Francis Nicholson, fled the country, and Leisler, at the head of a "committee of safety," assumed the administration of government, in opposition to the regular municipal authorities. The news of the accession of William and Mary having arrived, he made public proclamation of loyalty to the new sovereigns, and dispatched a letter to them, rendering an account of his proceedings, with a detail of the causes which had rendered such action necessary or expedient. In the month of August, Milbourne, a son-in-law of Leisler, came over from England, and received the appointment of secretary by the self-constituted government. The members of the old council, having retreated to Albany, there proclaimed their intended adherence to the new succession, and their denunciation of the rebellious Leisler. The people of Albany, in convention, determined to await a direct appointment by the crown, and, having conferred on Major Schuyler the command of the fort, refused to submit to the requirements, or yield to the persuasions of Milbourne, who, with a force of fifty men, had come to demand possession in the name of his superior.

In December (1689) came out a royal commission, directed to Nicholson, "or such as, for the time being, takes care for preserving



the peace, and administering the laws," &c. Leisler adopted this as his own warrant for the exercise of the powers he had assumed. Insecure in his position, and opposed by a powerful party, the governor was unable—some say incompetent—to make necessary preparations for the protection of the northern frontier. War existed between England and France, and parties of French and Indians, sent out by Frontenac, the Canadian governor, ravaged the country. In an attack upon Schenectady, some sixty of the inhabitants were slain, twenty-five were carried into captivity, and many who escaped suffered every extremity from exposure during their flight towards Albany. An expedition against Canada, undertaken by New York, Connecticut, and Massachusetts, from want of timely coöperation between the different parties, proved a complete failure.

Leisler succeeded in silencing the open opposition at Albany, but his supremacy was destined to be of short duration. Henry Sloughter, with a commission from the crown, came out as governor in March, 1691. A certain Captain Ingoldsby had landed at New York with troops three months previous, had announced this appointment, and claimed possession of the fort. Leisler refused to surrender the place, and, on the arrival of Sloughter, by order of that official, was arrested, together with Milbourne, and several members of his council.

The first steps taken by the governor, were to appoint a special court for the trial of the prisoners, and to issue warrants for an assembly, or council, to assist him in the administration. The result was what might be expected from the character of Sloughter, and the arbitrary nature of the proceedings. The accused were convicted of high-treason, and sentenced to death. The council concurred with the sentence, and the governor, at first hesitating to push matters to such an extremity, finally signed the death-warrants of Leisler and Milbourne. It has been said that his assent was obtained during a fit of intoxication. The victims perished on the gallows, in the month of May (1691). They met their fate with a composure and in a Christian spirit which must have enlisted general sympathy. Their heirs afterwards received their estates, the attainder being reversed, and the vain ceremonial of funeral honours was performed over the bodies of the unfortunate governor and his secretary.

Colonel Fletcher succeeded Sloughter in 1692, the latter having died suddenly, after holding office about four months. He was commissioned by the crown as commander of the militia of New

Leisler adopted this  
 wers he had assumed.  
 powerful party, the  
 —to make necessary  
 frontier. War existed  
 French and Indians,  
 ravaged the country.  
 the inhabitants were  
 and many who escaped  
 g their flight towards  
 rtaken by New York,  
 of timely cöoperation  
 te failure.

opposition at Albany,  
 ort duration. Henry  
 n, came out as gov-  
 oldsby had landed at  
 s, had announced this  
 art. Leisler refused to  
 sloughter, by order of  
 ilbourne, and several

e to appoint a special  
 issue warrants for an  
 nistration. The result  
 cter of Sloughter, and  
 ceused were convicted  
 he council concurred  
 esitating to push mat-  
 ath-warrants of Leisler  
 ent was obtained dur-  
 ed on the gallows, in  
 fate with a composure  
 sted general sympathy.  
 , the attainder being  
 onours was performed  
 and his secretary.

1692, the latter having  
 our months. He was  
 of the militia of New

Jersey and Connecticut, and in the following year proceeded to Hartford for the purpose of enforcing his military claims. The Connecticut authorities refused to submit to his demands, as being opposed to privileges secured to them by charter. The militia companies were assembled, but when Fletcher ordered the reading of his commission, Captain William Wadsworth, the principal officer, caused the drums to be beat, and, adding to this violence a personal threat, "that he would make day-light shine through him," so overawed the colonel, that he desisted from the attempt to take command, and the next day set out for New York.

Fletcher held office until 1698. He had much controversy with the assembly respecting laws for the settlement of clergymen. Favouring the English Church, he was greatly exasperated when the house, after providing for the appointment of ministers to be elected by their parishioners, refused to add an amendment by which the sanction of the governor was required to their settlement. He prorogued the assembly forthwith, accusing the members, in his farewell speech, as being possessed of "a stubborn ill-temper."

Lord Bellamont, who succeeded him in 1698, as governor of the northern colonies, (with the exception of Connecticut and Rhode Island,) was a man of noble and generous disposition, and throughout his three years' administration gave general satisfaction to the people. It was at this time that the notorious Captain Kidd obtained a commission from the crown to cruise after pirates, with which the seas were infested. He was furnished with a vessel by Bellamont and others, for this purpose, it being supposed that great treasures might be recovered by the capture of these outlaws, and by ferreting out their places of retreat. The treachery of Kidd, his subsequent piratical exploits, his audacious appearance in public, his capture, and execution, mingled with many fabulous and exaggerated accounts of adventure, have ever since been favourite themes for rude nautical songs and tales. The search for treasures which he was supposed to have buried, has been continued even to the present day.

## CHAPTER III.

NEW CHARTER OF MASSACHUSETTS.—TRIALS FOR WITCHCRAFT IN SALEM.—FIRST EXECUTION.—PARRIS AND HIS FAMILY.—COURT OF EXAMINATION AT SALEM.—COTTON MATHER.—ARRIVAL OF PHIPPS.—NUMEROUS EXECUTIONS.—CONFESSIONS.—CRUELITIES INFLICTED.  
—CHANGE IN PUBLIC OPINION.

IN Massachusetts, after the Revolution, a regular government was established under a new charter, brought out by Sir William Phipps, in 1692, which included under one government with that province the colony of Plymouth, and the partially conquered wilderness eastward to the mouth of the St. Lawrence.

This year is memorable in the history of New England, as the period when a fatal delusion, a superstitious terror, and a bloody fanaticism, resulted in acts which reflected an indelible disgrace upon the eastern colonies. We cannot, perhaps, at this date, arrive at satisfactory conclusions respecting the reputed witchcraft at Salem. Within the last few years a belief, in manifestations as strange, and as apparently supernatural as those recorded by Mather and other early historians, has been steadily gaining ground: it numbers among its converts men of every condition, and of every variety of intellectual culture and endowment; and were the same interpretation, as in the seventeenth century, put upon the experiments whereby the phenomena are developed now, and were the same necessity felt for literal obedience to the Hebrew law, scenes more horrible than those we are now about to record, would be renewed in our midst.

We cannot, however, give the actors in those disgraceful proceedings credit for entire honesty and sincerity. Even granting that a foundation for suspicion and accusation was laid by the occurrence of events so unaccountable, that, in that age, reference to the devil and his familiars as their originators was but a natural explanation of the mystery, we can discover too much evidence of private malice, of duplicity, and misrepresentation, to allow of much room for charity towards those who took an active part in the persecutions, or those who endeavoured to justify or gloss over their crimes.

I.  
 TRIALS FOR WITCH-  
 PARRIS AND HIS  
 SALEM.—COTTON  
 NUMEROUS EXE-  
 CUTIONS INFLICTED.  
 NION.

regular government was  
 by Sir William Phipps,  
 and with that province  
 conquered wilderness

New England, as the  
 terror, and a bloody  
 and delible disgrace upon  
 at this date, arrive at  
 and witchcraft at Salem.  
 manifestations as strange, and  
 by Mather and other  
 ground: it numbers  
 and of every variety of  
 the same interpreta-  
 upon the experiments  
 , and were the same  
 drew law, scenes more  
 ard, would be renewed

those disgraceful pro-  
 priety. Even granting  
 was laid by the occur-  
 tence, reference to the  
 was but a natural ex-  
 too much evidence of  
 tion, to allow of much  
 tive part in the per-  
 justify or gloss over

The first prosecutions for witchcraft took place several years previous to the time of which we are now speaking. An unfortunate old Irish woman, named Glover, was executed as a witch in 1688. Her accusation appears to have resulted from personal pique, but she was a Catholic, she spoke indifferent English, and her broken answers were easily interpreted against her.

The first case that occurred in 1692, was that of an Indian woman, named Tituba, a servant in the house of Samuel Parris, minister of Salem. A daughter and a niece of the latter, of the ages respectively of about nine and twelve, became afflicted with strange convulsions, and complained of pains and torments unexplainable by the faculty. They were pronounced bewitched, and Tituba was flogged by her master into a confession that she was the guilty party. Without undertaking to reason upon the cause of the phenomena, to what extent some strange sympathetic mental delusion (such as has from time to time been observed in all ages), may have prevailed, how far men in their sober senses may have become the dupes of artful children, or what really unaccountable physical manifestations may have taken place, we can only give the facts as they actually occurred.

Accusations multiplied with the number of the supposed possessed or afflicted persons. They extended from the poor and helpless to those of good standing and reputation, and a universal panic was excited, which finally worked its own cure. Meantime, a special court was convened at Salem (now Danvers) meeting-house, in the month of April, and the trials formally commenced. The accusers were personally confronted with their supposed tormentors, and added to their former declarations what appeared, to the prejudiced and excited court, direct and convincing evidence.

For minute accounts of the proceedings throughout these trials, as well as for experiments carried out at great length upon the possessed, in a spirit of philosophical inquiry, see the writings of Cotton Mather. He appears to have been a firm believer in the reality of these diabolical manifestations, but such was his dogmatic obstinacy, and his excessive self-esteem, that he never could or would confess to having been deceived. In reading his works, while we laugh at his absurdities, we cannot restrain feelings of the strongest indignation at his cruelty, bigotry, and intolerance. As a historian, he is notoriously fallacious, but we may believe that he saw, or thought he saw, the things which he describes as coming under his personal

observation, for he could scarcely appear in a more unamiable light than that in which he is exhibited upon his own testimony.

In the midst of the excitement (May 14th) Governor Phipps arrived, and assumed his office. He entered at once into the spirit of persecution, and ordered into irons the unfortunates with whom the jails were crowded.

Several sessions of the special court were held during the summer, and by the close of September no less than twenty persons, of various ages and of both sexes, had perished on the gallows as witches or necromancers. Among the most noted of these, was George Burroughs, formerly minister at Salem, and a rival of his successor, the infamous Parris. His demeanour on the scaffold was so strongly indicative of innocence, and such was the effect produced by his prayers and dying address, that it is said that the execution might have been prevented by the spectators if Cotton Mather had not made his way through the throng on horseback, and exerted his usual influence over the people, by vituperation against the victim of superstition. The principal point made against Burroughs, was his denial of the reality of the supposed witchcraft. So strong, indeed, was the popular prejudice, that those only of the accused could hope for favour or safety who were willing to minister to it by confessions and self-accusations.

The wildest absurdities respecting diabolical witch-meetings and incantations thus received corroboration. There was no difficulty in finding evidence against those who refused to confess, provided they had come, from any cause, to be in bad odour, or had personal enemies. The trials, as far as any form of law or rules of evidence are concerned, were the merest mockery; for whatever contradictions in testimony might occur, they were easily explained by the hypothesis that this was only an attempt by the devil to bewilder the witness by taking away his memory, or by making further false impressions. In various instances, direct and cruel bodily torture was resorted to, in order to extort confession. One old man of eighty or ninety, named Giles Cory, refused to plead, and was barbarously pressed to death, being subjected to the "*peine forte et dure*," as provided by the law of England. We must recollect, however, in passing judgment upon all these acts, that, provided their premises were correct, the early colonists only carried out principles universally received, and acted upon for ages, in the parent country. And yet there are those who speak of the degeneracy of modern times, and presume

more unamiable light  
on testimony.

h) Governor Phipps  
t once into the spirit  
fortunates with whom

d during the summer,  
ty persons, of various  
lows as witches or ne-  
as George Burroughs,  
accessor, the infamous  
strongly indicative of  
by his prayers and  
might have been pre-  
d not made his way  
d his usual influence  
victim of superstition.  
was his denial of the  
indeed, was the pop-  
ould hope for favour  
confessions and self-

l witch-meetings and  
re was no difficulty in  
confess, provided they  
had personal enemies.  
vidence are concerned,  
ntradictions in testi-  
d by the hypothesis  
bewilder the witness  
her false impressions.  
rture was resorted to,  
of eighty or ninety,  
arbarously pressed to  
e," as provided by the  
in passing judgment  
ises were correct, the  
versally received, and  
And yet there are  
times, and presume

to draw comparisons unfavourable to the present age, between the existing state of public morals and theology, and that of a former generation.

The first public intimation of any change in feeling or opinion respecting the Salem murders appears in a remonstrance sent in to the general court, at its October session, by the minister of Andover and his parishioners. The special court was then and there abolished, and the interval between that period and the month of January, (1693,) when the regular criminal court was to sit, allowed time for reflection on the part of the excited populace. When the new cases came before a grand jury, twenty-six indictments (out of fifty-six) were found true bills, but upon trial, there were but three convictions. Even those found guilty were reprieved, and finally set at liberty.

Mather himself, giving his own ideas, or endorsing those of another, confesses that the matter might have been carried too far; for, he says: "at last it was evidently seen that there must be a stop put, or the generation of the children of God would fall under that condemnation." And again: "It cannot be imagin'd that in a place of so much knowledge, so many, in so small a compass of land, should so abominably leap into the devil's lap all at once."

## CHAPTER IV.

CONTROVERSY CONCERNING REVENUE.—SUSPECTED NEGRO REVOLT  
IN NEW YORK: MOCK-TRIALS OF THE ACCUSED: BARBAROUS  
PUNISHMENTS.—CONNECTICUT: THE SAYBROOK PLATFORM.  
—MASSACHUSETTS: BURNING OF DEERFIELD: DIFFICULTIES  
BETWEEN THE GOVERNORS AND ASSEMBLIES.—NEW  
HAMPSHIRE: ATTACK ON COHECO: EASTERN IN-  
DIAN WAR.—RHODE ISLAND: ITS COMMERCIAL  
PROSPERITY.—NEW JERSEY: OPPOSITION TO  
ARBITRARY TAXATION: SCOTCH IMMIGRA-  
TION: PROSPERITY OF THE COLONY: ITS  
UNION WITH NEW YORK.

WITH the commencement of the eighteenth century a series of movements and conflicts commenced in the colonies, the tendency

of which was directly and steadily towards the establishment of those principles which resulted in their final independence. In New York, under the governments of the reckless and profligate Lord Cornbury, of Hunter, of Cosby, and Clark, vexed questions arose respecting the collection and application of the colonial revenues. The public monies had been so scandalously appropriated or misapplied by Cornbury, that, under his successors, care was taken by the assembly to secure the country against similar loss by the dishonesty or incompetency of the executive. The result was an almost constant altercation between the house and the governor's council. The attempt by the latter to alter or amend the fiscal provisions of the former was met by determined resistance, and again and again was the assembly dissolved by the governor.

During the administration of Clark, who, as senior member of the council, took the office of lieutenant-governor upon the death of Crosby, in 1736, the assembly made express declaration, in an address to the governor, of the principles by which their legislation should be governed, in the following language: "We therefore beg leave to be plain with your honour, and hope you will not take it amiss when we tell you, that you are not to expect that we will either raise sums unfit to be raised, or put what we shall raise into the power of a governor to misapply, if we can prevent it; nor shall we make up any other deficiencies than what we conceive are fit and just to be paid; nor continue what support or revenue we shall raise, for any longer time than one year" (a provision for securing an annual session of the assembly); "nor do we think it convenient to do even that, until such laws are passed as we conceive necessary for the inhabitants of the colony," &c.

In the year 1741, scenes occurred in New York of a character strikingly illustrative of the truth, that the extreme of cruelty is generally the offspring of terror and cowardice. A number of fires took place at short intervals, and although many of them were plainly attributable to accident, suspicion arose that a plot had been formed by the negroes, of whom between one and two thousand were there held as slaves, to destroy and plunder the city. The testimony of two infamous informers, given in the one instance to secure a reward, and in the other, to escape punishment after conviction of a crime, gave form and directness to the accusation. As early as 1712, a panic somewhat similar had resulted in the death of nineteen victims of popular rage and terror, and the old feeling



establishment of those  
ence. In New York,  
profligate Lord Corn-  
red questions arose  
the colonial revenues.  
appropriated or misap-  
are was taken by the  
loss by the dishonesty  
t was an almost con-  
ernor's council. The  
cal provisions of the  
again and again was

senior member of the  
upon the death of  
aration, in an address  
eir legislation should  
e therefore beg leave  
will not take it amiss  
t that we will either  
shall raise into the  
vent it; nor shall we  
conceive are fit and  
or revenue we shall  
provision for securing  
e think it convenient  
e conceive necessary

York of a character  
xtreme of cruelty is

A number of fires  
many of them were  
ose that a plot had  
ne and two thousand  
nder the city. The  
the one instance to  
unishment after con-  
the accusation. As  
esulted in the death  
, and the old feeling

was now revived with tenfold virulence. A great number of arrests were speedily made, and when the trials came on, so strong was the public prejudice that, of the eight lawyers who then constituted the entire legal fraternity of the city, none would lend his services in the defence of a prisoner. "All assisted by turns on behalf of the prosecutions. The prisoners, who had no counsel, were tried and convicted upon most insufficient evidence. The lawyers vied with each other in heaping all sorts of abuse on their heads, and Chief-Justice Delancey, in passing sentence, vied with the lawyers. Many confessed, to save their lives, and then accused others. Thirteen unhappy convicts were burned at the stake, eighteen were hanged, and seventy-one transported."\*

Two of the victims were white men; the others were partly slaves and partly free blacks. One of the whites appears to have been condemned rather from the circumstance that he was a Catholic, and, as such, obnoxious to popular prejudice, than from any respectable evidence of guilt. There is no probability that any plot had been formed, although some of those who received punishment may have been guilty of incendiarism.

The history of Connecticut, during the first half of the eighteenth century, presents little of historical importance, except its connection with the other provinces in military operations, elsewhere briefly described. The most important local measure of the period was the establishment of "the Saybrook Platform," by an ecclesiastical convention, called in 1708, by a legislative act. "At a subsequent session of the legislature, it was enacted that all the churches united according to the Platform, should be owned as established by law, allowing, however, to other churches the right of exercising worship and discipline in their own way, according to their consciences."†

In the frontier war with the French and Indians, which lingered through the latter portion of the seventeenth century, and after a short interval of peace, broke out again in 1704, the border towns of Massachusetts suffered severely. In February of the latter year, a party of three hundred French and Indians, the former under command of Hertel de Rouville, attacked the town of Deerfield in the night. The place had been partially protected by palisades, and about twenty soldiers were quartered there, but these had been

\* Hildreth's History of the United States.

† Hale's History of the United States.



grossly negligent in not mounting guard, and the surprise was complete. The popular narrative of Mr. Williams, the minister, gives a vivid description of the calamity. "Not long before the break of day," he says, "the enemy came in like a flood upon us, our watch being unfaithful." The inhabitants made what resistance they could, but such was the suddenness of the assault, and the superiority of the enemy's force, that the strife was soon at an end. The town was burned; forty-seven of its defenders perished on the spot; and a great number of prisoners—men, women, and children—were marched off through a deep snow towards Canada—"nineteen of whom," says the narrator, "were afterwards murdered by the way, and two starved to death near Coos, in a time of great scarcity or famine the Indians underwent there." Mrs. Williams was among the victims on the route. Those who finally reached their place of destination, were kept prisoners for several years. Fifty-seven of them were sent back to Boston in 1706.

The operations against Canada, in which the New England colonies were jointly engaged, during the few years succeeding this period, have already been described in the history of the French Canadian settlements. The long-continued war had greatly checked the growth of the exposed colonies, and, at the conclusion of peace in 1713, Massachusetts was left burdened with a heavy debt.

For many years thereafter, the general assembly of this colony was in continual controversy with a succession of royal governors respecting the establishment of a fixed salary, which should render the position of the latter more independent. The demand for this measure was firmly refused, and it was finally settled that the governor should be paid only by an annual appropriation.

For the important colonial expedition against Canada in 1745, and the fall of Louisburg, see the articles upon Acadia, the settlement and history of Canada, &c., under the title of the French in America.

We find little of public interest to record of the sparsely populated colony of New Hampshire from the time of its separation from Massachusetts, at the close of Andros' administration, up to the events which immediately preceded the American revolution. Many strange tales are told of incidents connected with the Indian wars, the frontier position of the colony rendering it peculiarly liable to hostile incursion. Among these is the account given of the attack upon Cocheeco, or Dover, in 1689. One Major Waldron had com-

the surprise was com-  
s, the minister, gives  
g before the break of  
upon us, our watch  
resistance they could,  
and the superiority of  
to an end. The town  
ed on the spot; and a  
children—were marched  
nineteen of whom,"  
by the way, and two  
at scarcity or famine  
s was among the vic-  
their place of destina-  
Fifty-seven of them

e New England colo-  
years succeeding this  
history of the French  
r had greatly checked  
a conclusion of peace  
a heavy debt.  
embly of this colony  
on of royal governors  
which should render  
The demand for this  
settled that the gov-  
poriation.

st Canada in 1745,  
on Acadia, the settle-  
title of the French in

he sparsely populated  
separation from Mas-  
on, up to the events  
revolution. Many  
with the Indian wars,  
t peculiarly liable to  
given of the attack  
r Waldron had com-

mand of a garrison sufficient to protect the post, if due care had been taken to guard against surprise.

The enemy were let in, in the night, by two squaws who had obtained permission to sleep in the fortified houses. "The English were completely overpowered, fifty-two were killed or carried away captive; among the former was Major Waldron. The old warrior (he was eighty years of age) defended himself with astonishing strength and courage, but was finally struck down from behind. Bruised and mangled, he was placed in a chair upon a table, and the savages, gathering round, glutted their long-cherished vengeance by cutting and torturing the helpless captive. He was in bad odour with the Indians for having, as they alleged, defrauded them in former trading transactions. It was reported among them that he used to 'count his fist as weighing a pound, also that his accounts were not crossed out according to agreement.' Placed, as above-mentioned, upon a table, some of them 'in turns gashed his naked breast, saying, I cross out my account. Then, cutting a joint from his finger, would say: will your fist weigh a pound now?' They continued these cruelties until he fainted from loss of blood, when they dispatched him."\*

The expeditions of this period against the eastern Indians and French, are described in the quaint narrative of Colonel Benjamin Church, who closed his military career in these services. In the three years' Indian war, which broke out in 1722, the settlements in New Hampshire were constantly endangered, and on many occasions suffered severely from savage depredations. Of all the events of the war, none was more celebrated in its time, than the expedition under Captain John Lovewell, and the fight at Pigwacket, on the Saco, in which he and more than half his companions perished.

The colony of Rhode Island, under the charter of 1663, resumed upon the deposition of Andros, continued to prosper. Its position secured it against danger from Indian invasion, and its excellent harbours gave opportunity to the enterprising population for extensive commercial operations. A large back country was supplied with foreign goods from Newport. It is even said to have been a matter of serious question, in early times, whether New York could ever compete with this prosperous sea-port; so true it is that a stimulus to enterprise and exertion is far more important to the welfare of a country than the greatest natural advantages. The

\* Indian Races in America.

rugged soil of New England has nourished a race, the field of whose exertions is boundless: the inhabitants of the barren island of Nantucket have been, so to speak, driven to employ their energies in enterprise, than which none has proved more permanently profitable.

New Jersey was among the foremost and most earnest of the northern colonies, in resistance to arbitrary power on the part of her governors. The imposition of a duty, and the levy of a tax by Andros, when he was first commissioned by the Duke of York, was the occasion of a remonstrance, in which the standing claim, that taxes should not be imposed without the people's assent, was strongly and successfully urged.

Under the management of Penn and his associates, a new impetus was given to the prosperity of the colony by the immigration of a vast number of the persecuted Presbyterians from Scotland. They formed a sober and industrious population, well fitted to mingle upon terms of sympathy and brotherhood with the Quaker inhabitants and the descendants of the Puritans, by whom the country was peopled. Glowing accounts are given of the rapidity with which the lands were brought under cultivation, of the efficient means which were taken to secure the blessings of free education, and of the general thrift and prosperity of the colony.

New Jersey, together with New York and the New England colonies, was brought under the domination of Sir Edmund Andros in 1688. For many years after the revolution of that date, its affairs remained in an unsettled state; but in 1702, a surrender of their legislative powers by the proprietors, resulted in the temporary union of the province with New York, then under the government of Cornbury.

TORY.

ace, the field of whose barren island of Nan-  
poy their energies in permanently profitable.  
most earnest of the power on the part of  
the levy of a tax by the Duke of York, was  
standing claim, that people's assent, was

ociates, a new impetus the immigration of a  
from Scotland. They well fitted to mingle  
the Quaker inhabit- y whom the country  
the rapidity with which of the efficient means  
free education, and of

the New England colo- r Edmund Andros in  
of that date, its affairs a surrender of their  
ed in the temporary under the government

## THE SOUTHERN COLONIES, CONTINUED.

### CHAPTER I.

CHARTER OF THE COLONY OF GEORGIA.—FIRST ARRIVAL OF COLONISTS.—SETTLEMENT OF SAVANNAH.—INDIAN NEGOTIATIONS.—MARY MUSGROVE.—CESSION OF INDIAN CLAIMS.—CHARACTER OF IMMIGRANTS TO GEORGIA.—TRAFFIC IN NEGROES PROHIBITED.—FREDERICA FOUNDED.—WAR WITH SPAIN.

As late as the year 1732, when plans for the settlement of the country included between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers were first actively undertaken, the whole district, together with the adjoining territory, now included in the state of Georgia, remained untenanted, except by savages, and a debatable ground between the English colonies and those of Spain. In the month of June, in the year above-mentioned, James Oglethorpe, with twenty associates, in England, obtained a charter from George II., for the foundation of a colony in this unoccupied region—the special object of the grantees being to provide an asylum for poor and imprisoned debtors, for the subjects of religious persecutions, and for all standing in need of charity, who might, by removal to a new country, be rendered eventually self-dependent, useful, and prosperous.

The leader in this enterprise was a soldier and a scholar, and, although yet a young man, was possessed of experience in public life, and maturity of judgment, which well qualified him for his responsible undertaking. He had been for several years engaged in efforts for the amelioration of the condition of the multitudes confined for debt, in Great Britain, and his exertions had awakened much attention among the benevolent and philanthropic. He met with a ready response to his call for funds to aid in the transportation and establishment of the members of his new colony.

Oglethorpe sailed for America in November, 1732, with one hundred and thirteen emigrants. He first landed at Charleston, where provisions were provided by the inhabitants for the present support of the voyagers, and boats for their conveyance to their new homes.

The site occupied by the present city of Savannah, on Yamacraw Bluff, was fixed upon for the first settlement. Elevated above the surrounding level, a few miles from the entrance of the river, this position commands a beautiful and extensive view in the direction of the sea. A tribe of the Muscogees, or Lower Creeks, dwelt in the vicinity. These "were peaceably disposed towards the white settlers, but the governor of the infant colony thought it advisable to put himself upon safe ground as regarded the Indian claims. He therefore secured the services of a half-breed woman, named Mary Musgrove, who could speak English, and, by her mediation, brought about a conference with the chiefs of the tribe.

Mary had formerly married a white trader from Carolina. Besides her usefulness as an interpreter, she had such influence over her tribe, that Oglethorpe thought it worth his while to purchase her services at the rate of one hundred pounds a year. She became, afterwards, a source of no little danger and annoyance to the English.

Fifty chiefs of the Creek nation were assembled at the place of conference, and Tomochichi, the most noted among those then known to the settlers, made an amicable speech, proffering, at the same time, a present of a buffalo-skin, adorned with eagles' feathers."\* By the terms of the treaty, the king of England was acknowledged by the Indians as their sovereign, and provisions were made for the preservation of peace and quiet between them and the settlers.

"The lands lying between the Savannah and Altamaha were made over to the English, with all the islands on that coast, except St. Catharine's and two others, which were reserved for the use of the Indians as bathing and fishing stations. A tract was also set apart for the latter to encamp upon when they visited their white friends, a little above the Yamacraw Bluff."

The liberal offers of the patrons and proprietors of the new colony of Georgia—religious freedom, (to the exclusion, however, of Papists,) personal security, free grants of land, free passage, and a temporary supply of provision—proved strong inducements to

\* Indian Races of America.

ber, 1732, with one hundred at Charleston, agents for the present conveyance to their

annah, on Yamacraw. Elevated above the course of the river, this view in the direction of the lower Creeks, dwelt in and towards the white thought it advisable of the Indian claims. A freed woman, named and, by her mediation, the tribe.

from Carolina. Be- l such influence over is while to purchase ds a year. She be- and annoyance to the

bled at the place of among those then eh, proffering, at the ith eagles' feathers."\* d was acknowledged ns were made for the and the settlers.

and Altamaha were on that coast, except erved for the use of A tract was also set y visited their white

tors of the new col- lusion, however, of free passage, and a ng inducements to

immigration. Not only the poor outcasts who had gladly availed themselves of the assistance of the charitable, thronged to the settlement, but a thrifty and industrious population poured in from Scotland, Switzerland, and Germany. A considerable body of Moravians, from the latter country, arrived in March, 1734, and with the assistance cordially proffered by Oglethorpe, commenced a settlement at the mouth of Ebenezer creek, which empties into the Savannah, a considerable distance above the capital. The Scotch, who arrived in the following year, settled at Darien, called by them New Inverness.

In February, 1736, the governor, returning from England, whither he had voyaged to procure contributions and recruits for his colony, brought with him about three hundred immigrants. A portion of these were Moravians, and among them was the celebrated John Wesley, who came out fired with religious zeal for the conversion of the Indians.

A general spirit of good-will, peace, and content, seemed to pervade the community. The powers of government were, it is true, vested in the trustees, under the charter, but these benevolent individuals, who received no emoluments for their services, appear to have had the interests of the colony at heart. A vain attempt was made, indeed, to secure the settlement against the evils of slavery, the importation of negroes being forbidden; but within a few years the inhabitants became convinced that the condition of their neighbours, who availed themselves of the labour of blacks, was more prosperous and promising than their own, and the natural result of this conclusion, was the permanent establishment of the present servile system.

In February, (1736,) the town of Frederica, on St. Simon's Island, was laid out, under the superintendence of the governor, in person, advantage being taken of an old Indian clearing in that locality. From St. Simon's, Oglethorpe extended his journey southward, through the inland channels, which border the whole coast, taking possession of the country in the name of the king, and marking out sites for defensive posts. The English claim included all north of the St. John's, while, on the other hand, the Spaniards asserted title to the whole of Georgia, and even included in their demands a portion of South Carolina, limiting their territory by St. Helena Sound.

These, and other conflicting claims, resulted in war between the two nations. Oglethorpe having received a military commission

as brigadier-general over the forces of Georgia and South Carolina, busied himself in precautionary measures for the defence of the colonies. The fort at Frederica was completed and strengthened, as forming one of the most important strongholds on the coast. His special attention was devoted to a confirmation of the good-will of the natives, among whom Spanish agents had been for some time occupied in sowing distrust and suspicion. The Creeks, however, still retained the greatest personal attachment to Oglethorpe. He was among the few officials who kept faith with them, and they could not fail to appreciate his heartiness and sincerity. In 1739, he attended a great meeting of the chiefs, far in the interior, on the Chattahoochee, where he smoked the calumet of peace with the assembly, and renewed the old treaties of friendship and mutual protection.

---

## CHAPTER II.

OGLETHORPE'S EXPEDITION AGAINST ST. AUGUSTINE: SIEGE  
OF THE TOWN: FAILURE AND RETURN OF THE EXPEDITION.  
—SPANISH INVASION IN 1742.—DEFENCE OF FRED-  
ERICA.—STRATAGEM OF OGLETHORPE.—THOMAS  
BOSMOWORTH: HIS INTRIGUES WITH THE IN-  
DIANS: LITIGATION WITH THE COLONY.—  
GEORGIA A ROYAL PROVINCE.

WITH the commencement of the year 1740, an expedition was undertaken by General Oglethorpe against St. Augustine. He readily reduced two small Spanish outposts, and encamped his forces in the vicinity until he could procure reinforcements from Carolina. These arrived about the close of May, and, with no less than one thousand regular troops and militia, and a considerable body of Creek allies, he laid siege to the town. The undertaking resulted in disappointment. St. Augustine was well garrisoned and fortified; the besieging troops were reduced in numbers and efficiency by desertion and by the diseases incident to the season, and the general was compelled to raise the siege and to retreat into Georgia.

and South Carolina, for the defence of the island and strengthened, as the Creeks, however, to Oglethorpe. He with them, and they sincerity. In 1739, on the interior, on the of peace with the friendship and mutual

AUGUSTINE: SIEGE  
THE EXPEDITION.  
ENCE OF FRED-  
PE.—THOMAS  
TH THE IN-  
OLONY.—  
NCE.

, an expedition was  
St. Augustine. He  
and encamped his  
reinforcements from  
y, and, with no less  
, and a considerable  
n. The undertaking  
well garrisoned and  
n numbers and effi-  
nt to the season, and  
and to retreat into

No further hostile demonstration, of any importance, was made by either colony for a space of two years, at the end of which period the inhabitants of Carolina and Georgia were alarmed by reports of the approach of a large Spanish fleet. The force embarked at the West Indies for the conquest of the Southern English colonies, is set down at some three thousand men; the fleet numbered over thirty sail. Oglethorpe, who could procure no aid from Carolina, exhibited great bravery, energy, and good generalship in the defence of Georgia. He reinforced the garrison at Fort William, on Cumberland island, already beset by the enemy, and then betook himself, with his main force—greatly inferior to that of the assailants—to his most defensible position, at Frederica.

Thither he was pursued by the Spanish fleet, which entered the inlet on the 5th of July, (1742,) in spite of the English batteries, and effected a landing on the island. Fortunately, the only road leading to Frederica, was defensible, being flanked by a swamp on one side and a thick forest on the other. Several attempts to force a passage were met by an obstinate and successful resistance. Some days later, by a pretended dispatch, designedly allowed to fall into the hands of the enemy, Oglethorpe succeeded in deceiving the Spanish commander into a belief that large reinforcements were momentarily expected from Carolina. This idea was strengthened by the appearance of some small vessels off the coast.

The Spaniards made one more vain attack upon the position of the English, and then reembarked—the invasion having proved as fruitless as that against St. Augustine, in 1740. Oglethorpe bade a final adieu to the colonies in the year following these events. He lived to a venerable old age, respected and admired for every quality, moral and personal, that can command esteem and conciliate good-will.

After his departure, the provisions against slavery soon became a dead letter, and there were not wanting advocates of the system among the most noted religionists of the day. George Whitefield, whose preaching had already given him a wide celebrity, expressed himself in its favour, trusting that the negro race might be benefitted by translation from a savage life to the society of Christians. The number of white colonists, at this period, was probably not far from three thousand.

"The year 1749 was memorable for a most audacious attempt on the part of one Thomas Bosomworth to aggrandize himself by



attaining a supremacy over the Creeks. He had been, formerly, a chaplain in Oglethorpe's regiment, and had married Mary Musgrove, his half-breed interpreter. In December, of 1747, this man fell in with a company of chiefs, belonging to the nation, then on a visit to Frederica; and persuaded them to sign certain articles, acknowledging one of their number, named Malatche Opiya Meco, as rightful king over the whole Creek nation. Bosomworth then procured from Malatche a conveyance, for certain considerations—among other things, a large quantity of ammunition and clothing—of the islands formerly owned by the Indians, to himself and his wife Mary, their heirs and assigns, 'as long as the sun shall shine, or the waters run in the rivers, for ever.' This deed was regularly witnessed, proved before a justice of the peace, and recorded in due form. Bosomworth made some efforts to stock and improve these islands, but, his ambition becoming aroused by success in his first intrigue, he entered upon one much more extensive. By his persuasions, his wife now made the extraordinary claim that she was Malatche's elder sister, and entitled to regal authority over the whole Creek territory."\*

No matter how shallow a claim may be, if openly and obstinately persisted in, it will generally obtain credit with some. A great disturbance ensued, and, at one time, the town of Savannah was in no small danger from the Indians of Mary's party, who appeared in defence of her asserted rights. A long and wearisome litigation in the courts of Great Britain was maintained by Bosomworth and his brother, Adam, the Indian agent in Carolina, with the colony of Georgia. Final decision was not rendered until 1759, when Mary and her husband had their title to St. Catharine's island confirmed. They, passed the remainder of their lives in quiet possession of the property.

Prior to this period, in 1754, a royal government had succeeded the surrender of their chartered rights by the trustees. The colony was not exempt from the usual difficulties, jealousies, discontent, and hardships which so generally beset new settlements, and to which Georgia was peculiarly exposed from the heterogeneous character of its inhabitants. The only important events in which she bore a part during the further continuance of the colonial system, are connected with the Cherokee wars, of which a brief account will be given hereafter.

\* Indian Races of America.

had been, formerly, a  
 married Mary Mus-  
 1747, this man  
 to the nation, then on  
 to sign certain articles,  
 Malatehe Opiya Meco,  
 ion. Bosomworth then  
 certain considerations—  
 munition and clothing—  
 ans, to himself and his  
 g as the sun shall shine,  
 This deed was regularly  
 ce, and recorded in due  
 ook and improve these  
 d by success in his first  
 extensive. By his pri-  
 mary claim that she was  
 egal authority over the

if openly and obstinately  
 with some. A great dis-  
 n of Savannah was in no  
 party, who appeared in  
 d wearisome litigation in  
 by Bosomworth and his  
 lina, with the colony of  
 until 1759, when Mary  
 arine's island confirmed.  
 a quiet possession of the

vernment had succeeded  
 he trustees. The colony  
 ealousies, discontent, and  
 ettlements, and to which  
 heterogeneous character  
 ents in which she bore a  
 e colonial system, are con-  
 a brief account will be

## CHAPTER III.

SOUTH CAROLINA: RELIGIOUS CONTROVERSIES: ARCHDALE'S  
 ADMINISTRATION: MOORE'S EXPEDITION AGAINST ST. AUGUS-  
 TINE: INVASION OF INDIAN TERRITORY: FRENCH FLEET  
 ON THE COAST: CULTURE OF RICE: INDIAN CONSPIRACY:  
 REVOLT AGAINST THE PROPRIETORS: THE CHARTER  
 DECLARED FORFEIT: SOUTH CAROLINA A ROYAL  
 PROVINCE.—NORTH CAROLINA: POLITICAL DIS-  
 TURBANCES: A PROSPEROUS ANARCHY: SEP-  
 ARATION FROM SOUTH CAROLINA.

FROM the period of the revolution, in 1688, until about the close  
 of the century, South Carolina, although steadily increasing in pop-  
 ulation, wealth, and political importance, was much disturbed by  
 religious dissensions. The sober and peaceable Huguenots were in  
 favour with the colonial proprietors, but a strong opposition arose  
 in the province to the admission of these foreigners to equal privi-  
 leges with those of English descent and attached to the established  
 church. This controversy distracted, in a greater or less degree, the  
 successive administrations of Sothel, Ludwell, and Smith. The  
 appointment of John Archdale, a Quaker, and a man of generosity and  
 liberality, in the year 1695, gave promise of a better state of things.

This worthy governor, by moderate but effective regulations, suc-  
 ceeded in quieting the turbulent factions of the colony, and in con-  
 ciliating, by protection and kind offices, the neighbouring tribes of  
 Indians and the Spanish colonists of Florida. The dangerous  
 shoals of Cape Fear, lying nearly out of sight of the low shore, have  
 always been the dread of navigators upon the coast, and in these  
 early times the want of proper instruments for determining the  
 longitude, rendered their condition much more perilous. It was no  
 small blessing to the unfortunate mariners who, at this period, from  
 time to time, suffered shipwreck on the cape, to meet with kind  
 treatment, shelter, and assistance from the coast Indians. From  
 first to last, the aborigines of America have shown themselves ready  
 to reciprocate kindness and good-will. In almost every instance  
 when they have made unprovoked attacks upon the whites, the  
 cause can be traced to some error or misconception.

When Archdale left the colony, former dissensions were revived, although he still exerted all his influence with the proprietors for the maintenance of religious liberty. The appointment of James Moore, represented as a grasping and selfish man, to the office of governor, was little conducive to quiet and prosperity.

Under his administration, war having broken out between England and Spain, a colonial expedition was planned against St. Augustine. Bound on this enterprise, Moore sailed for Florida, in the month of September, 1702, at the head of about six hundred volunteers. He succeeded in capturing the town, but the strong military fortress constituted a safe and defensible place of retreat for the Spaniards. While waiting the arrival of artillery for the reduction of the fort, several Spanish vessels arrived off the harbour, and Moore was obliged to beat a retreat by land, leaving his vessels, stores, &c., to the enemy. The expense of the fruitless undertaking was defrayed by a large issue of colonial bills of credit.

In the month of December, of the same year, Governor Moore retrieved his credit as a general, by a successful march through the extensive intervening wilderness, and a descent upon the Indians and Spanish, on the coast of Appalache. The hostile settlements of that whole neighbourhood were broken up. The Spaniards were enabled to defend the fort of Ayavalla, but the assailants burned the adjoining church. Between one and two hundred Indians were carried off captives, to be afterwards sold as slaves.

In 1706, the Episcopal establishment was extended to South Carolina, but the condition of dissenters was, at the same time, rendered more safe by a definite toleration in their religion, and security of their civil rights. Sir Nathaniel Johnson at this time held the office of governor, and had an opportunity to distinguish himself by a brave and determined defence of the coast against a French fleet sent out from Cuba to invade the country. The enemy met with heavy loss at every attempt to land, and one of their vessels fell into the hands of the colonists.

The culture of rice, introduced a number of years previous, had by this time become extensive, and proved a source of profit to the planter unequalled by any previous agricultural enterprise. Indigo, an article which has been of late years neglected, was also found a profitable crop by the early planters of the southern colonies.

In the spring of 1715, the machinations of the French and Spaniards stirred up a most dangerous conspiracy of the Yemassee,



almost without law; but an immigration of industrious and frugal Swiss, Germans, and other Europeans, continued to extend civilization through the comparatively barren district. The province was already noted for its large exportation of lumber, pitch, tar, and turpentine. In 1729, when, as before mentioned, the disputes between the inhabitants of Carolina and the proprietors were settled by an assumption, or purchase, of the rights of the latter by the crown, North Carolina was first constituted an entirely separate province, the governor being selected by royal appointment, and the legislative assembly being chosen by the people.

---

#### CHAPTER IV.

VIRGINIA UNDER ROYAL GOVERNORS: STATE OF THE COLONY: CHURCH CONTROVERSIES.—PENNSYLVANIA A ROYAL PROVINCE: THE PROPRIETOR REINSTATED: POLICY OF PENN.—DELAWARE: DEATH OF PENN. HIS SUCCESSORS.—MARYLAND: ITS CATHOLIC POPULATION: GOVERNMENT OF THE ASSOCIATION: OPPRESSIVE ENACTMENTS: THE PROPRIETORS RESTORED.

VIRGINIA, subsequent to the English revolution, remained a royal province during her continuance as a colony. Legislation was confided to a governor appointed by the crown, assisted by a council of his own nomination, and to an assembly elected by the people. The first successive incumbents of the highest office in the province were Francis Nicholson and Sir Edmund Andros; the same whose tyranny and exactions had previously exasperated the New England colonies.

These officials were invested with high, and even arbitrary powers, but the character of the people with whom they had to deal, compelled moderation in their exercise. The population, although quite numerous, was extensively scattered, and the isolated position of the planters and farmers tended to develop a strong sense of personal freedom and independence. The administration of government was not carried on without considerable conflict between the different departments, but no very serious difficulties arose. The

STORY.

industrious and frugal  
ed to extend civiliza-  
t. The province was  
umber, pitch, tar, and  
ned, the disputes be-  
roprietors were settled  
s of the latter by the  
an entirely separate  
appointment, and the  
ole.

TE OF THE COLONY:  
IA A ROYAL PROV-  
POLICY OF PENN.  
SUCCESSORS.—  
ION: GOVERN-  
RESSIVE EN-  
RESTORED.

olution, remained a  
ny. Legislation was  
assisted by a council  
lected by the people.  
office in the province  
ros; the same whose  
rated the New Eng-

even arbitrary pow-  
m they had to deal  
population, although  
the isolated position  
strong sense of per-  
istration of govern-  
conflict between the  
difficulties arose. The

THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.

213

Church of England was the established religious system, so far as any parochial system could be established over so wide an extent of scattered hamlets or detached plantations. Tobacco was the great staple production of the province, and served for the principal circulating medium. Taxes and church dues were specifically payable in tobacco. From a complaint, on the part of the clergy, that they were made losers by a legislative provision for compounding the latter assessment by a payment in paper money, arose that celebrated controversy relative to the "parson's money," in which the eloquence of Patrick Henry, then a young advocate, prevailed against a plain legal claim (1763).

Pennsylvania, in consequence of domestic disturbance, fomented by George Keith, a seceding Quaker, and because of suspicions which had fallen upon the proprietor, was subjected, in 1693, to a governor holding commission from the crown, and became, for a short period, a royal province. Benjamin Fletcher, governor of New York, received the appointment. His brief administration was marked only by strife with the assembly. In the summer of the following year, Penn, having regained the favour of the king, was reinstated in his colonial rights.

In reëstablishing his prerogatives, with a new settlement of the government of his colony, after restoration of the proprietary government, William Penn took every precaution to secure the full acquiescence of the inhabitants. The powers of the governor—a deputy of the proprietor—were not very dissimilar to those now conferred upon the governor of either of the independent states. The council was simply advisory, and the principal legislation was confided to the popular assembly.

The inhabitants of the present state of Delaware, then known as "The Territories," conceiving that they were insufficiently represented, had, some years previous, moved for a separation. This had been accorded by the proprietor, but the two provinces were reunited during Fletcher's administration. A final separation was effected in 1702. The governor of Pennsylvania still retained a nominal authority, but the new assembly had, in effect, entire control over the province of Delaware.

Although Penn had ever pursued a far more generous policy than any other of the colonial proprietors, and, with opportunities for enriching himself which few would have had the self-denial to neglect, was growing old in poverty, all could not shield him from

suspicion and ill-will on the part of a portion of the colonists. "From various causes, principally a neglect of his own interests in extending civilization in America, he became so far involved, that he was for a time compelled to reside within the rules of the Fleet Prison. In 1709 he mortgaged his province of Pennsylvania to relieve himself from the pressure of debt. During the last six years of his life his bodily and mental faculties were greatly impaired; he died, after a gradual decline, on the 30th of July, 1718." His rights as proprietor were exercised, subsequent to his death, by his widow, and afterwards by his sons. This form of government was continued until the commencement of the American revolution.

The province of Maryland, on the accession of William and Mary, was under the administration of deputies commissioned by the proprietor, Lord Baltimore, (son of the original patentee.) So large a number of the inhabitants were of the Catholic persuasion—the proprietor holding to the same faith—that, although the English church had been already established, it was hardly to be expected that a Protestant succession in England should be looked upon with general favour in the colony.

The proprietary government neglected to conform to the new order of things until compelled by a self-constituted association of the colonists. A provisional government was formed, which obtained the royal sanction, and existed until 1692, when a governor was appointed directly by the crown. Maryland became a royal province, and remained such for a period of twenty-three years. The general assembly confirmed the church establishment, and many disenfranchising regulations were passed for the suppression of papacy. Catholics were not only compelled to contribute to the support of the established church, but were subjected to the most galling disabilities. The legal successors of the proprietor were restored to their rights in 1715, and maintained their authority until the general overthrow of the old governments at the revolution.

TORY.

tion of the colonists, his own interests in so far involved, that the rules of the Fleet of Pennsylvania to bring the last six years greatly impaired; he y, 1718." His rights death, by his widow, nment was continued tion.

tion of William and es commissioned by ginal patentee.) So atholic persuasion— although the English rldly to be expected be looked upon with

onform to the new tuted association of rmed, which ob 2, when a governor and became a royal twenty-three years. blishment, and many the suppression of o contribute to the ojected to the most he proprietor were heir authority until the revolution.

## INDIAN WARS, ETC.

### CHAPTER I.

COMMENCEMENT OF THE CHEROKEE WAR: TREATY AT FORT ST. GEORGE: SIEGE OF THAT FORT: MURDER OF HOSTAGES: MONTGOMERY'S CAMPAIGN: DESTRUCTION OF THE LOWER CHEROKEE SETTLEMENTS: RETREAT: MASSACRE OF THE GARRISON OF FORT LOUDON: THE TOWNS OF THE MIDDLE CHEROKEES DESTROYED BY THE FORCES UNDER GRANT.

HAVING thus given a brief sketch of the affairs of the separate colonies, up to the occurrence of events which called for their united action, we may revert to matters of more general concern, in which the provinces, irrespective of political connection, were only united by a common necessity. The most important transactions in which the northern colonies were jointly engaged, were the early Indian wars, and the protracted contests with the French and Indians. Of these we have already spoken, as far as our limits would permit, in treating of English colonization, and of the French in America. It remains to notice, in military affairs, the Indian campaigns in the south and west, and to touch upon some topics of general interest to the colonies, before proceeding to the causes of discontent and the political issues which resulted in the war of the revolution.

After the abandonment of Fort Duquesne, by the French, a party of Cherokee Indians, who, during the campaign, had served in the English army, under General Forbes, set out upon their return to their own tribes and country. Impelled by necessity, they committed various depredations upon the property of the German settlers in Virginia. In some instances, they made use of horses which they found at large in the woods, and, as they were nearly destitute of



provisions, we may suppose that they occasionally made free with whatever might supply their wants.

These injuries were revenged by the backwoodsmen in the most violent and cruel manner. If we may credit Adair, an historian who had greater opportunities than any other writer of his time to acquaint himself with Indian character and the history of the southern tribes, they indulged their malice by tormenting and scalping their victims. He adds, that "those murderers were so audacious as to impose the scalps on the government for those of the French Indians; and that they actually obtained the premiums allowed at that time by law in such a case."

These outrages were not immediately resented by the nation, but after vain application for redress, and the experience of further wrongs and insults, the revengeful spirit of the Indian was fully aroused. The French and their Creek allies took the opportunity to lend their influence in exciting hostility. A war-party was accordingly dispatched to commence retaliation upon the western settlements of North Carolina. Many of the whites were put to death, and much injury was done upon the frontier.

These events took place in 1759, and, as it was now evident that a general disaffection existed among the Cherokees, active exertions were made by the governor of South Carolina, William Lyttleton, to avert the calamities of an Indian war, as well as to prepare measures for defence in case of extremity. A conference was brought about, towards the close of the year, at Fort St. George, on the Savannah. Six of the Indian chiefs, claiming authority to act for the tribe, appeared, and concluded a treaty of peace, surrendering thirty-two hostages, as security for their good faith.

This treaty was not considered binding by the nation, and a formidable body of Indians, led by Occónostota, a noted war-chief, laid siege to this fort in the month of February (1760). Coytnore, the commander of the garrison, who had, by some former transactions, acquired the special ill-will of the natives, was decoyed without the works, and shot by concealed marksmen. Several of his companions were wounded. The Indian hostages, from their place of confinement within the fort, hearing the report of fire-arms, shouted encouragement to their people. An order was accordingly given to put them in irons. To this they refused submission, making desperate resistance, and wounding three of the soldiers who were endeavouring to carry out the order. It was then concluded to put

them all to death, which was done accordingly, in a manner as cowardly as the design was base, viz: by firing down upon them, through a hole in the roof.

The whole frontier was, immediately subsequent to this outrage, involved in a general war. The British commander-in-chief of the regular forces in America, detached a regiment of Scotch Highlanders, under Colonel Montgomery, with other troops from New York, to the seat of disturbance. The legislatures of North and South Carolina offered premiums for scalps, and raised sums of money to purchase the assistance of the Creeks and other southern tribes.

In the course of the spring, Colonel Montgomery, with the regular and provincial troops under his command, overran the whole territory of the Lower Cherokees, laying waste every Indian settlement. The towns of Keowee and Estatoe, the latter containing two hundred houses, were destroyed, together with great quantities of stored provisions. Before the end of the campaign, there was not an Indian village left east of the Blue Ridge.

The Cherokees, instead of being disheartened by their reverses, refused to listen to any overtures of pacification, and prepared themselves to resist the advance of the troops into the interior. Near their principal town of Etchoe, they prepared an ambush in a narrow pass, where a muddy stream took its course between high and steep banks, nearly impassable from tangled undergrowth. In forcing this defile, the assailants met with heavy loss, and the commander, seeing that the Indians had made a new stand a little in advance, and were determined to resist to the last, concluded to retreat. This was in the month of June.

Immediately upon his return to the coast, Montgomery, in pursuance of orders, sailed for New York, leaving Major Hamilton, with but a small force, for the protection of the exposed districts. The failure of this second expedition revived the spirits of the Indians, and spread universal terror and consternation among the colonists of the frontier. At Fort Loudon, the garrison under Captain Stuart, after sustaining a long siege, evacuated the place, upon conditions conceded by Oeconostota, of free and safe passage to Fort St. George, or into Virginia. They had not, however, proceeded far, before they were set upon by the enemy, and all killed or taken prisoners.

Captain Stuart owed his life and liberty to the benevolence of an old chief, named Atakullakulla, a man of great influence in his

tribe, and peaceably disposed towards the colonists. The safety of Fort St. George was secured by a timely warning from Stuart of an intended attack by the Indians. An attitude of hostility was still maintained by the Cherokees, and constant efforts were made by French agents among them to avert any prospect of a peaceable settlement of difficulties.

In the spring of 1761, a force of more than two thousand British regulars, provincial troops, and friendly Indians, under command of Colonel James Grant, was marched into the interior. Old Attakulla-kulla made vain interposition in behalf of his people. On the 10th of June, a desperate effort was made by the main body of the Indians to check the advance of the enemy. The battle took place near the spot whither Montgomery had penetrated on his last expedition. The Cherokees were totally defeated; the town of Etchoe was burned; and "all the other towns in the middle settlement, fourteen in number, shared the same fate: the corn, cattle, and other stores of the enemy, were likewise destroyed, and those miserable savages, with their families, were driven to seek shelter and subsistence among the barren mountains."\*

The Indians were, of course, obliged to accept such terms as their conquerors saw fit to impose, but it does not appear that any ungenerous advantage was taken of their helpless condition. Indeed, after the conclusion of peace, efforts were made for the protection of the Indians in their landed rights, and to regulate the traffic with them so as to secure them against deception.

The whole of the southern tribes remained, comparatively, at peace with the colonies from this period until they became involved in the general Indian wars of the early part of the present century. "By a steady increase of numbers, and the adventurous spirit of pioneers, the white settlers every where made advances upon the Indian territory. Sometimes large acquisitions would be made by a government purchase; but, to no small extent, the opinion that the occupation of a few roving savages could give no natural title to lands, as opposed to the claims of those who had reclaimed, enclosed, and improved the wilderness, satisfied the consciences of the encroachers. The argument in favour of this conclusion is by no means without force; but who can take upon himself to draw the line of demarcation which shall decide, upon any principles of universal application, the bounds of so artificial a right as the ownership of land?"†

\* McCall's History of Georgia.

† Indian Races of America.

ists. The safety of  
ing from Stuart of  
de of hostility was  
t efforts were made  
pect of a peaceable

vo thousand British  
under command of  
or. Old Attakulla-  
people. On the 10th  
body of the Indians  
took place near the  
his last expedition.  
wn of Etchoe was  
settlement, fourteen  
le, and other stores  
e miserable savages,  
er and subsistence

such terms as their  
ear that any ungen-  
tion. Indeed, after  
e protection of the  
e traffic with them

Comparatively, at peace  
ame involved in the  
cent century. "By  
s spirit of pioneers,  
on the Indian terri-  
le by a government  
that the occupation  
al title to lands, as  
med, enclosed, and  
s of the encroachers.  
y no means without  
e line of demarca-  
niversal application,  
p of land?"†  
aces of America.

## CHAPTER II.

ENGLISH OCCUPATION OF THE WESTERN TRADING POSTS.—  
CONSPIRACY OF THE NORTH-WESTERN TRIBES, UNDER PON-  
TIAIC.—DESTRUCTION OF THE ENGLISH FORTS.—TAKING  
OF MICHILLIMACKINAC.—SIEGE OF DETROIT.—LOSS  
AT BLOODY-RUN.—CLOSE OF THE WAR.—MASSA-  
CRE OF THE CANESTOGA INDIANS.

By treaty, in 1760, the extended line of stations upon the western lakes, belonging to the French, were to be put into possession of the English. The long friendship that had subsisted between the former and the Ottawas, Chippewas, Pottawatomes, &c., who inhabited the country, caused these tribes to look with jealous eyes upon the proposed English occupation. They were united in a sort of confederation, at the head of which, in influence and authority, was Pontiac, the renowned Ottawa chief. Although he had formed the determination of restoring his old allies, the French, to the possession of their established trading posts, this bold, but crafty leader, suffered the first English detachment, under Major Rogers, to enter the country without molestation. In an interview, held with the commanding officer, he exhibited the pride and dignity of a monarch, expressly asserting his own rights of territory.

His plans being perfected, and the coöperation of other tribes—among them, the Miamis, Sacs and Foxes, Hurons, and Shawanees—being secured, the month of June, 1763, was appointed for a simultaneous attack upon all the English strongholds at the west. So extensive were the preparations for this outbreak, that entire secrecy could not be preserved respecting it, and intimation was, from time to time, given by white traders of the storm that was brewing. Either these reports were not fully credited, or the garrisons felt themselves strong enough to defy any attack from the Indians, for no extraordinary precautions were taken for defence.

When the blow fell, the Indians appeared in such numbers that, although divided into as many parties as there were points of attack, they overpowered the garrisons, and destroyed the works of nearly all the English forts. Nine of these were taken by force or fraud, and the defenders slain or carried away captive. The manner in

which Michillimackinae was seized, is thus described: "Hundreds of Indians, mostly Chippewas and Sacs, had been loitering about the place for some days previous, and, on the 4th of June, they proceeded to celebrate the king's birth-day by a great game at ball. This sport, carried on, as usual, with noise and tumult, threw the garrison off their guard, at the same time that it afforded a pretext for clambering into the fort. The ball was several times, as if by accident, knocked within the pickets, the whole gang rushing in pursuit of it with shouts. At a favourable moment, they fell upon the English, dispersed and unsuspecting of intended harm, and before any effectual resistance could be made, murdered and scalped seventy of the number. The remainder, being twenty men, were taken captive."\*

Early in May, Pontiac, in person, with a chosen body of warriors, laid siege to Detroit, the principal military post and trading station at the far west. The place was garrisoned by an hundred and thirty men, of whom Major Gladwyn had command. A plan was formed by the Indians to gain admission within the fort, on pretence of a conference, and then, with concealed weapons, (rifles, shortened, so as to be hid by the blanket,) to fall upon the garrison at a disadvantage, admit the main body from without, and, after a general massacre, to seize upon the valuable stores collected for protection. This device was betrayed to Gladwyn by a squaw to whom he had shown some kindness. The Indians were accordingly admitted without hesitation, but the troops were drawn up ready for an attack. Pontiac "heard the drums beat, and saw every soldier's musket levelled, and the swords of the officers drawn and ready for use. Major Gladwyn, stepping to the warrior nearest him, lifted his blanket, and disclosed the shortened rifle. He then upbraided the sachem for his intended villany, and, taking no advantage of the opportunity for securing him, gave proof of his own high-minded sense of honour by dismissing the whole party unharmed."

This magnanimity availed but little. The Indians, to the number of nearly a thousand, laid close siege to the fort, and, for months, it was only by hard fighting, and with heavy loss, that provisions and stores could be furnished from without. Many of the captives taken by the Indians, were put to death with savage barbarity. Three hundred men, commanded by a Captain Dalyell, were sent to Detroit to reinforce the garrison, in the month of July. With this additional

\* Indian Races of America.

cribed: "Hundreds  
loitering about the  
of June, they pro-  
great game at ball.  
tumult, threw the  
t afforded a pretext  
eral times, as if by  
e gang rushing in  
ent, they fell upon  
ded harm, and be-  
rdered and scalped  
twenty men, were

n body of warriors,  
nd trading station  
undred and thirty  
A plan was formed  
t, on pretence of a  
es, shortened, so as  
at a disadvantage,  
eneral massacre, to  
tion. This device  
e had shown some  
ed without hesita-  
n attack. Pontiac  
musket levelled,  
y for use. Major  
d his blanket, and  
d the sachem for  
f the opportunity  
ed sense of honour

ns, to the number  
nd, for months, it  
at provisions and  
the captives taken  
barbarity. Three  
ere sent to Detroit  
ith this additional

force it was thought practicable to commence offensive operations. A sally was made accordingly, but Pontiac had by some means gained intelligence of what was about to take place, and had prepared an ambush near the bridge over Bloody-Run. Instead of surprising the enemy, the whites were taken at a complete disadvantage, and retired with the loss, in killed and wounded, of more than one hundred men.

All throughout the north-western frontier, from the lakes to the Ohio river, this conspiracy of the Indian tribes spread desolation and distress for a whole year. Of the great leader of the confederation, we learn very little after his operations against Detroit. In the summer of 1764, a powerful force, under General Bradstreet, was marched into the Indian territory, and, by force or treaty, peace was established with the various tribes of the north-west.

Connected with the events of Pontiac's war, is the account of a barbarous outrage committed at Canestoga, near Lancaster, Pennsylvania. The settlers of this portion of the country were less exposed to savage incursions than those established further towards the north-west, but the reports constantly received of Indian massacres upon the frontier, excited their minds to the highest pitch of fear and hatred towards the natives. Heckewelder speaks as follows of the character of but too many of the rough pioneers of the western wilderness: "I have yet to notice a class of people generally known to us by the name of 'backwood's-men,' many of whom, acting up to a pretended belief that 'an Indian had no more soul than a buffalo;' and that to kill either is the same thing; have, from time to time, by their conduct, brought great trouble and bloodshed on the country. Such, then, I wish to caution not to sport in that manner with the lives of God's creatures. \* \* Believe that a time will come when you must account for such vile deeds! When those who have fallen a sacrifice to your wickedness, will be called forth in judgment against you! Nay, when your own descendants will testify against you." The truth of this prediction is strikingly manifest from the popular feeling at the present day respecting the Indians, their rights, and the treatment which they experienced at the hands of the early settlers.

At Canestoga, a small and peaceable body of Indians had been long established, under the care and teaching of the Moravian mission. As far as appears, they had not the slightest connection with the general conspiracy, nor had they given any provocation for the

wanton attack which was made upon them. A mob of more than fifty men, from Paxton, fell upon the settlement, in November, 1763. A portion of the inhabitants fled to Lancaster, where they sought an asylum in the jail-yards. Those who were left at Canestoga—men, women, and children—fourteen in number, were brutally murdered. The white savages, their cruelty unsatiated, then hastened to Lancaster, and, breaking open the jail, completed their work of destruction. From fifteen to twenty perished in the jail-yard, where they were seen by one whose account has reached us. "Men, women, and children, spread about the prison-yard; shot—scalped—hacked—and cut to pieces."

TORY.

A mob of more than  
in November, 1763.  
; where they sought  
left at Canestoga—  
ber, were brutally  
unsatiated, then has  
ompleted their work  
ed in the jail-yard,  
reached us. "Men,  
yard; shot—scalped

## EUROPEAN COLONIAL POLICY.

---

SPANISH AND ENGLISH RESTRICTIONS UPON TRADE AND COM-  
MERCE.—CONTRABAND TRAFFIC.—THE "ASSIENTO" TREATY.  
—THE SLAVE-TRADE: ITS GENERAL POPULARITY: CAUSES  
WHICH LEAD TO THE ABOLITION OF SLAVERY: MANNER OF  
PROCURING NEGROES FROM AFRICA: PROFIT OF THE  
TRADE: NUMBERS BROUGHT OVER: ENGLISH LAW UPON  
THE SUBJECT OF SLAVERY.—INTRODUCTION OF  
WHITE APPRENTICES, OR "REDEMPTIONERS."

It is difficult, at the present day, to comprehend the blindness of the European nations to their own interests, and those of their colonies, as exhibited in the prohibitions and restrictions once universally imposed upon trade and commerce. Experienced politicians must have foreseen the probable tendency of that short-sighted policy which, for the sake of present gain, was willing to destroy all identity between the parent states and their colonies, and to alienate the affections of a vast population, whose loyalty, gratitude, and friendship, by the exercise of a little forbearance, might have been retained for many generations.

We have had occasion, elsewhere, to speak more particularly of the insufferable tyranny of Spain in all the dealings with her colonies: in those of England, although the domestic privileges of the community were not so openly and grossly violated, there yet existed restraints on manufactures and trade, which, considering the difference in natural character, were hardly less galling. The most jealous care was taken to discourage the development of all internal resources which might interfere with British manufacture or produce; British vessels must be employed, and an English market sought, regardless of the interests of the merchant and the requirements of trade. Individual selfishness alone can account for the pursuance of such a policy, and we must conclude that those in



power foresaw the consequences of their proceedings, but trusted to reap the benefits in their own persons, leaving retribution to be visited upon their posterity.

The temptations held out to the contraband trader were sufficiently great for the incurrence of heavy risks, and the connivance of the home government at such irregularities, so far as they only affected the interest of a rival nation, gave special impetus to their commission. Severities practised upon offenders when detected, and mutual hostility engendered by continual conflict of claims, resulted in wars between the old countries, the burden of which fell most heavily upon the infant colonies, whose whole energies were required to overcome the natural difficulties of their situation.

By the "assiento" treaty, the privileges of which were made over to the celebrated South Sea Company, Spain conceded to England a limited right to transport slaves into the colonies of the former nation. This gave great impetus to the traffic, and so far was the community blinded by present interest to the claims of humanity and true policy, that it was generally "accounted a genteel employment," reflecting no discredit upon those who systematically pursued it. It is a singular thing how far the opinions of men, and how much farther their conduct, receive direction from custom. However much we may condemn the evils of a system, before denouncing its individual supporters, we should do well to inquire what would have been our own course of conduct had we passed our lives subject to the same influences, and dependent upon the same interests. Statistics of the proportion of those who have freed their slaves, *during their own lives*, from conscientious scruples, as compared with the whole slave-holding population, would furnish every man with a fair criterion for estimating the extent of his own disinterestedness. The treatment of slaves is, of course, as variant as the character of their owners, but where the institution of slavery exists, all, with a few rare exceptions, who can avail themselves of its convenience, openly support it.

In the Northern United States it existed until the influx of free labourers reduced the value of slave-labour, and created a majority in the community of those whose interests were directly opposed to the continuance of the system. We may venture to predict that no other influence than this will ever avail to produce a similar result in the southern states. Self-interest, when directly appealed to, must ever prevail with the majority, until mankind shall have

made an advance in benevolence and a sense of justice, beyond any present indications.

The manner of procuring negroes on the African coast, and of their conveyance to the shores of America, has undergone no material change from the period of their first introduction to the present day. The extent of coast upon which they can be procured, and the convenience of legal markets, have indeed been curtailed; but the unfortunates now brought over to the island of Cuba, are procured by the same species of traffic, confined in the same limited space on their passage, and subject to the same sufferings from short allowance and tempestuous weather, as in former times. Still are children kidnapped by strangers or sold by their relations; the same rude regulations still render one negro a slave to his fellow in his native land;\* one tribe may yet, as of old, make war upon another, upon the annual unfolding of a certain flower, for the sake of procuring prisoners.

The trade, carried on mostly by British merchants, proved as profitable to the ship-owners as acceptable to the colonists. It is computed that no less than three hundred thousand negroes were imported into the original states during their continuance as colonies. A vastly larger number were brought over in English bottoms, to the French and Spanish colonies. Mr. Bancroft's estimate is as follows: "We shall not err very much, if, for the century previous to the prohibition of the slave-trade by the American congress, in 1776, we assume the number imported by the English into the Spanish, French, and English West Indies, as well as the English continental colonies, to have been, collectively, nearly three millions; to which are to be added more than a quarter of a million purchased in Africa, and thrown into the Atlantic on the passage. The gross returns to English merchants for the whole traffic in that number of slaves, may have been not far from four hundred millions of dollars."

The question as to the exact bearing of the laws of England upon

\*A negro having a lien upon his own brother, for a debt, or some other cause, brought him on board a slaver, and concluded a bargain for him. As the vendor, however, was about to leave the vessel, he was informed that he might keep his brother company, and was presently elapped under hatches with the rest. The Rev. John Newton, who was long engaged in the slave-trade, as master of a vessel, says: "It often happens that the man who sells another on board a ship, is himself bought and sold in the same manner, and perhaps in the same vessel, before the week is ended."

the subject of slavery, was long a *questio vexata*. The institution had a gradual origin by custom, scarcely recognized, and never directly supported by legislative enactments. In the courts great difference of opinion prevailed, but the general legality of the system was maintained by their decisions, it being declared a valid custom. As has been remarked, such a custom would hardly possess all the requisites for validity laid down by Blackstone, viz: that it should be a "good custom," for "*malus usus abolendus est*;" that it should have existed "so long that the memory of man runneth not to the contrary;" that it should have been "continued," without interruption; that it should be "peaceable," "reasonable," "certain," "compulsory," and "consistent."

About the middle of the past century, the slave-trade, freed from restrictive laws, recognized in its legality by decisions of courts, and open to every adventurer, flourished to an extent never known before or since. The trade was the object of special attention to the British government, by which the forts on the coast of Africa were maintained. Slaves were even allowed to be taken to England, and the right of their masters to hold them in servitude on British soil was definitely acknowledged by the most able judicial authorities.

Notwithstanding the immense importation of negroes, the constant call for labourers was met, especially in Virginia and Pennsylvania, by the immigration of apprentices, or "redemptioners," being whites of the poorer class, who were bound to service for a term of years. To these, grants of land and temporary supplies were secured by law at the end of their term, but during its continuance they were substantially in the condition of slaves.

STORY.

ata. The institution  
cognized, and never

In the courts great  
legality of the system  
clared a valid custom.  
ardly possess all the  
e, viz: that it should  
us est;" that it should  
n runneth not to the  
ued," without inter-  
asonable," "certain,"

lave-trade, freed from  
ecisions of courts, and  
t never known before  
attention to the British  
of Africa were main-  
to England, and the  
de on British soil was  
cial authorities.

f negroes, the constant  
nia and Pennsylvania,  
tioners," being whites  
e for a term of years.  
opies were secured by  
ontinuanace they were

# THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

## CHAPTER I.

GENERAL RIGHTS OF COLONIES.—EARLY CAUSES OF COMPLAINT  
IN AMERICA.—ARBITRARY CUSTOM LAWS.—ILLEGAL  
CONDUCT OF ENGLISH OFFICIALS.—ACTS IN REGULA-  
TION OF TRADE.—EXPENSES OF THE LATE WARS IN  
AMERICA.—THE "SUGAR-ACT."—OPPOSITION  
AND REMONSTRANCE IN THE COLONIES.

How have words been multiplied in vain attempts to apply principles of abstract right to political movements, and how much more vainly has the search been made for principles of universal application in that uncertain code of maxims known as the law of nations. In a question between two communities, there is usually no tribunal, and they must severally do what is "right in their own eyes," provided it be, at the same time, practicable. Of all political questions, perhaps the most unsettled, is that concerning the rights of colonies.

It was said by Hutcheson, in 1755,\* that colonies "have a right to be released from the dominion of the parent state," "whenever they are so increased in numbers and strength as to be sufficient by themselves for all the good ends of a political union." Simply, that whenever they have the will, and, in their own opinion, the power, to stand alone, the right follows, of course. The case is similar to that of a child seeking release from parental control: in a state of nature he will do this when he has attained sufficient strength and self-dependence; but, for convenience and certainty, a time has been arbitrarily set by society for his emancipation. As regards states, no such time has been, or can be established, because its occurrence must always depend upon questions of fact, for the decision of which there is, as before mentioned, no tribunal. The question must

\* Bancroft's History of the United States.

always remain merely a question of ability, until the Utopian theory of an international code and court shall have been reduced to practice.

The opinion of the world has seldom, if ever, been called to be passed upon the violent rupture of the connection between a parent state and its colony, while the inhabitants of the latter were in the enjoyment of equal privileges and favour with those of the former. A feeling of affection and natural pride commonly causes them to cling to the land of their parentage until a long course of extortion and oppression has rendered the tie too onerous to be endured.

In America, the English colonies had submitted—not, it is true, without murmurs—to the most arbitrary restrictions upon manufactures in which they might profitably have engaged, imposed simply to compel importation from England. A steady, and, in most cases, an effectual stand had been made against the reiterated demand of a fixed salary for the royal governors. Burdensome restrictions upon foreign trade were protested against, and extensively evaded by contraband traffic. This gave occasion for arbitrary proceedings by the officers of the customs in searching for smuggled goods. Their conduct, in this respect, appearing to be illegal, they sought the aid of the superior courts of law, and “writs of assistance,” in the nature of search-warrants, were accordingly issued. The power of the court to issue these writs was called in question, and tested in Massachusetts, in 1761. The eloquent James Otis, and the learned jurist, Oxenbridge Thatcher, argued successfully against their validity.

The question, by this time, had come to be widely agitated, as to the probable tendency of the continual encroachments upon the liberties of the colonies. The legislatures of the different provinces, elected by a system more nearly approaching universal suffrage than any ever known in England, indulged in freedom of thought and expression, denounced as treasonable and rebellious in the parent-country. The duties and imposts which had been submitted to for a long term of years as being “regulations of trade,” for the protection of the British West India islands, and other collateral purposes, and, therefore, within the proper jurisdiction of the board of trade, when directed immediately towards the enlargement of revenue, excited universal disaffection and indignation.

The recent wars had enormously increased the public debt, and English politicians were busily engaged in framing schemes by which the American colonies should share the burden of expense

incur  
hand  
than  
the s  
more  
try, M  
trade  
prote  
inhab  
It  
to for  
in the  
repres  
never  
would  
What  
protes  
purpos  
flame  
In t  
quer, i  
of imp  
on cer  
French  
luxury  
met by  
courts  
propos  
of the  
There  
opposit  
right to  
object t  
was to  
lishmen  
for thei  
tyranni  
the Brit  
The  
excited

incurred, as was averred, expressly for their benefit. On the other hand, it was claimed that the colonies had already contributed more than their proportion towards these expenses; that, being frequently the seat of war, they had, in other respects, felt its calamities far more heavily than the people of England; and that the latter country, by reason of its immense income from the restricted colonial trade, was as directly and pecuniarily interested in maintaining and protecting the provinces from foreign encroachment as were the inhabitants themselves.

It was, moreover, evident that it would be impossible for any man to foretell to what extremes government might eventually proceed in the imposition of taxes upon a distant community, in no way represented in the legislature, whose condition and capabilities could never be fully understood in England, and whose growing resources would indubitably be met by a still more rapid increase of exaction. What had been accomplished, had been by sufferance, and under protest; it remained for the open extension of duties for revenue purposes, and the attempted imposition of a direct tax, to rouse to flame the discontent already kindled.

In the spring of 1764, George Grenville, chancellor of the exchequer, introduced and carried an act in alteration of the former rate of imposts upon West India goods, &c., by which, while the duties on certain articles were reduced, the restrictions were extended to French and East India produce, and to various foreign articles of luxury. The anticipated difficulty of enforcing the new tariff, was met by a provision extending the powers and jurisdiction of the courts of admiralty. At the same time, he laid before parliament a proposal, to be acted upon at a future session, for the enlargement of the revenue by the collection of duties upon stamped paper. There seems, at this period, to have been scarcely the shadow of opposition in the British legislature, to the general principle of the right to impose discretionary taxes upon the colonies. One principal object in the scheme for levying a direct and additional assessment, was to provide means for the permanent support of a military establishment in America; thus to compel the people to furnish means for their own enslavement, and for the enforcing of whatever future tyrannical enactments might result from the necessities or avarice of the British government.

The "sugar-act," as the new law respecting customs was called, excited the utmost dissatisfaction, especially in the northern colonies—

a feeling heightened and extended by the intimation of the intended stamp act, which accompanied its passage. The subject was discussed in the colonial legislatures, and letters of instruction were prepared for their agents in England, breathing the strongest spirit of opposition. In these debates, in the petitions and remonstrances forwarded to the home government, and in the writings of Otis, Thatcher, and other distinguished or rising politicians, the same principles were strenuously maintained and ably argued. Appeals to every man's individual sense of justice; reference to rights secured by magna charta, by the special charters of the provinces, and by the maxims of English common law; and representations of the extent to which experience had shown that the colonies would assume their just share of the burden of government, were urged with zeal, energy, and ability.

Few, if any, yet spoke of open resistance to the power of parliament, but succeeding events proved that public sentiment must have been rapidly preparing for such an extremity.

---

## CHAPTER II.

THE STAMP ACT: ARGUMENT IN THE HOUSE OF COMMONS: PASSAGE OF THE BILL: ITS EFFECT IN THE COLONIES.—RESOLUTIONS IN THE VIRGINIA ASSEMBLY.—PATRICK HENRY.—PROCEEDINGS IN MASSACHUSETTS: POPULAR TUMULTS: RESIGNATION OF THE STAMP OFFICERS.

In the month of February, 1765, the important act, providing for the increase of revenue by stamp duties in America, was introduced into the House of Commons. By its provisions all legal documents, promissory notes, deeds, commercial papers, official certificates, &c., must be written upon paper that had received a government stamp, and on which fixed duties had been paid. Of all that was said in argument upon the merits of the bill, nothing excited more general attention, in the community, than a short speech by Colonel Isaac Barré.

This member had seen service in America, during the French war, and, familiar himself with the character and condition of the people,

he intended  
bet was dis-  
uction were  
ngest spirit  
onstrances  
gs of Otis,  
, the same  
. Appeals  
hts secured  
ces, and by  
ons of the  
nies would  
were urged

r of parlia-  
ment must

ONS: PASS-  
-RESOLU-  
-NRY.—  
ULTS:

viding for  
ntroduced  
ocuments,  
ccates, &c.,  
vernment  
d that was  
ited more  
y Colonel

ench war,  
e people,





GEORGE III. AND HIS MINISTERS.

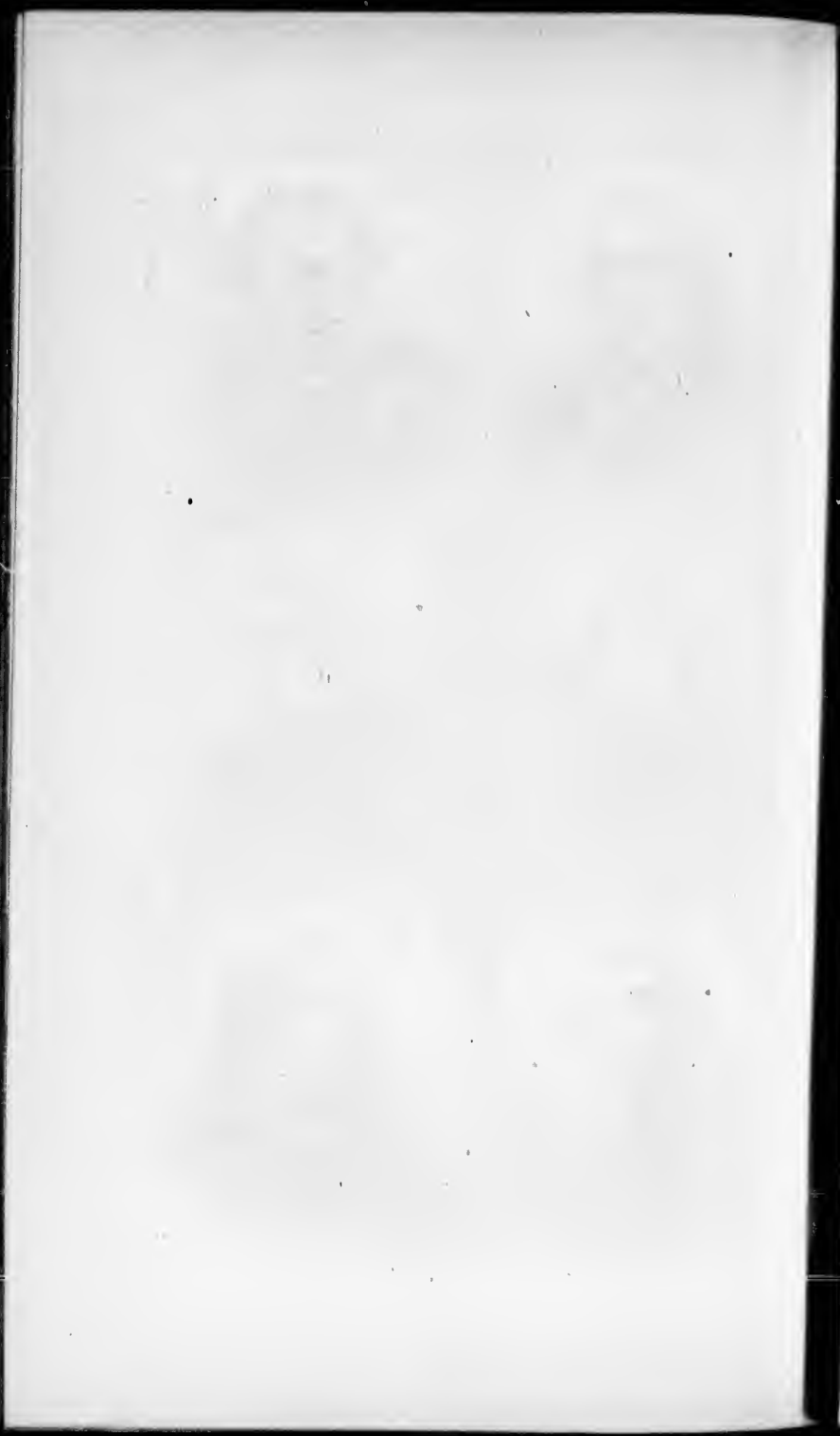


RS.



PATRIOTS OF THE REVOLUTION

2



a  
v  
e  
r  
a  
s  
o  
  
in  
p  
a  
g  
e  
be  
re  
th  
fo  
It  
to

he expressed a becoming disgust at the ignorance in regard to the colonies which characterized the speeches of several supporters of the bill. The eloquent Charles Townshend spoke in its favour, and concluded his remarks with an inquiry, whether the colonists could presume to refuse aid to the parent-country, by whose protection they alone had maintained their existence, and arrived at a position of comparative wealth and importance.

Barré rose, and, with great animation, exposed the fallacy of the declaration. He pointed out briefly the real origin of emigration to America, the unaided efforts and sufferings of the early colonists in establishing a civilized community in the wilderness, the neglect that they had experienced at the hands of the home government, their readiness in taking up arms in a national cause, their expenses and their losses by the continued wars. "I claim," continued he, "to know more of America than most of you, having seen and been conversant with that country. The people, I believe, are as truly loyal as any subjects the king has; but a people jealous of their liberties, and who will vindicate them if ever they should be violated."

The stamp act passed the house of commons on the 27th of February; a few days later, the house of lords concurred without debate; and the bill received a *quasi* assent from the deranged intellect of George III. To make the obnoxious measure more tolerable, it was provided that all revenues to be derived from it, should be expended exclusively for colonial purposes. Other conciliatory enactments, in the form of bounties upon importations, and the removal of sundry burdensome restrictions, were also resorted to as an offset to the first imposition of a direct tax. It was generally supposed, in England, that the measure would be carried out without a sign of forcible opposition.

The tone of public procedures in the colonies, upon receipt of intelligence that the act had passed, was generally moderate; but the passions and indignation of the people, fully aroused, were only awaiting fit opportunity to break forth in overt resistance. In Virginia, the legislature was in session at the time, but its leading members held aloof from taking active measures in opposition. It was reserved for a young man, who had but recently taken his seat in the house, to introduce and support a series of resolutions, setting forth colonial rights, and protesting against their proposed invasion. It is a singular fact, concerning those who, in all times, have possessed to its greatest extent the wonderful gift of eloquence, that little or noth-

ing has been recorded which may enable us to judge of their powers, excepting the effect of their speeches. An audience carried away by admiration and sympathetic excitement, is in no condition to remember and perpetuate the form of expression by which the tumult of feeling is aroused. It has been reserved for those who, like Cicero, have nicely remodelled their productions to meet the cool criticism of a reader, to be held up as patterns for imitation. The flow of forcible and unpremeditated words, by which a crowd of men, possessing every variety of character and temperament, is moved to unanimity, if here and there reported in detached sentences, loses all the force lent by the occasion, the state of mind of the auditory, and the manner of the speaker.

Such has been the ease, in many instances, with the most celebrated efforts of Burr, Randolph, and others; such, upon the occasion of which we have just spoken, was that of Patrick Henry. We are only told that, in tones of bold warning, he broke forth, in the heat of argument, with the expressions: "Caesar had his Brutus—Charles the First his Cromwell—and George the Third" (here he was interrupted by a cry of Treason! from the speaker and many members, but he firmly continued)—"may profit by their example. If that be treason, make the most of it!"

The resolutions were passed, after vehement debate: the concluding section, which read as follows, by a majority of one only: "Resolved, therefore, that the General Assembly of this colony have the sole right and power to lay taxes and impositions upon the inhabitants of this colony; and that every attempt to vest such power in any person or persons whatsoever, other than the general assembly aforesaid, has a manifest tendency to destroy British as well as American freedom." This resolution was afterwards struck out upon a reconsideration, during the absence of Henry, but it had already gone abroad, and was circulated throughout the colonies.

In Massachusetts, a more important measure was adopted, at the suggestion of James Otis. Letters were dispatched to the general assemblies of all the separate colonies, requesting and advising the appointment of a committee from each, to meet at New York in the ensuing month of October, and deliberate upon what could be done for the general good of the country. No allusion was made to any proposed union for purposes of resistance, other than the organization of a "united representation to implore relief." The call was first responded to by the legislature of South Carolina.

By this time, the speeches of Barré, of Henry, of Otis, and others, the Virginia resolutions, the call of Massachusetts, and the reiterated arguments of political writers on both sides the question, were familiar to the whole people of America, and occupied universal attention. A question, at first committed to the management of the learned and intelligent, assumed a new aspect when brought home to the minds of an excited populace.

Those residents of the colonies who had favoured the passage of the act, and those who had received appointment to the office of distribution of stamps, first felt the weight of lawless popular indignation. It seemed to be generally determined that all the stamp officers should be compelled to resign, by personal violence, should persuasion fail.

The first of a succession of mad scenes—conducted, however, systematically, and with deliberate purpose—took place at Boston, on the 14th of August, (1765.) Andrew Oliver, the appointed stamp distributor, was hung in effigy upon a noted tree, known as the Boston elm. In the evening, the image was burned, with the fragments of a building, supposed to be in process of erection for a stamp office, in the presence of an immense concourse. Oliver perceived, from the demeanour of the crowd, that his only safety consisted in compliance with the popular demand, and he resigned his office accordingly.

The office of the court of admiralty, rendered obnoxious by the provisions of the "sugar act," was next attacked. On the night of the 26th, the records were destroyed, and the house of Story, comptroller of customs, was broken open, and his furniture demolished. Hutchinson, the lieutenant-governor, suffered similar outrage upon his property on the same night. This officer had become unpopular from various circumstances, but the principal cry against him, at this time, was for having favoured the stamp act.

The example of Massachusetts was followed in Rhode Island, New York, and New Jersey, and with similar results. The stamp distributor of Maryland fled from popular violence to New York. On many of these occasions, the active agents were not the most respectable portion of the community, but, except where they overstepped the bounds of reason, and wantonly invaded private property, their proceedings met with general favour. All attempts at bringing individuals of the rioters to account for the outrages committed, were soon abandoned.

The other colonies exhibited the same state of public sentiment, and the officers commissioned to distribute stamps, either declined serving, or gave such public pledges as satisfied the people. It was plain that no stamps would be allowed to be sold. Ingersoll, the stamp officer for Connecticut, at first refused to submit to the popular requisition, announcing his intention of submitting the matter to the general assembly. He was on his way to Hartford, for that purpose, when he was intercepted, near Wethersfield, by a body of some hundreds of the substantial inhabitants of the colony, who, in military array, although armed only with staves, required of him an immediate resignation. The object of the company was to avoid the disagreeable consequences of any action by the assembly—as the colony might be held responsible for its public acts, while, as individuals, they felt little apprehension of any dangerous results from their proceedings. Ingersoll betrayed no unworthy pusillanimity; but when he perceived the determination of the people to prevent him from communicating with the assembly, and even to proceed to personal violence, should he refuse to accede to their demands, he signed a written resignation, and, at the direction of the crowd, shouted for "Liberty and property."

Of the packages of stamped paper which arrived in the country, some were seized and destroyed by the populace, and the rest remained packed and unnoticed.

---

### CHAPTER III.

SESSION OF THE FIRST AMERICAN CONGRESS: MODERATE TONE OF ITS PROCEEDINGS: CONCURRENCE OF THE SEPARATE COLONIES.—THE STAMP ACT NUGATORY.—THE ENGLISH MINISTRY.—DEBATE IN PARLIAMENT.—SPEECH OF PITT.—EXAMINATION OF FRANKLIN.—REPEAL OF THE STAMP ACT.

On the 7th of October, 1765, the first American congress assembled at New York. A regular delegation was present from six of the colonies, viz: Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and South Carolina: New York, Delaware, and

of public sentiment, camps, either declined and the people. It was sold. Ingersoll, the submit to the populating the matter to Hartford, for that field, by a body of the colony, who, in res, required of him company was to avoid the assembly—as the acts, while, as indangerous results from worthy pusillanimity; the people to prevent and even to proceed to their demands, election of the crowd,

ived in the country, ace, and the rest re-

T.  
S: MODERATE TONE  
THE SEPARATE  
Y.—THE ENG-  
NT.—SPEECH  
NKLIN.—  
CT.

can congress assem-  
present from six of  
Connecticut, Penn-  
York, Delaware, and

New Jersey were also represented, although not by a regular appointment of their houses of assembly. The legislature of North Carolina, not having been in session, could make no delegation, but the coöperation of this colony, as well as that of New Hampshire, could be depended upon, in the work to be accomplished. The assent of Georgia was obtained during the session.

It was agreed that the votes should be taken by colonies, neither claiming præminence by virtue of superior extent or population. The congress sat about three weeks, during which time a declaration of rights, and petitions and memorials to the king and parliament, were drawn up, debated, and finally agreed to, nearly unanimously. All question of proposed admission to representation in the English parliament was abandoned as impracticable, and the colonies, without menace or unseemly violence, recapitulated the claims so often urged, that, by natural right, by magna charta, and their own private charters, the right of taxation, as well as that of the management of all internal government, was vested in their own houses of assembly. The infringement of the right of trial by jury, in the extension of admiralty jurisdiction, by the provisions of the sugar act, was also animadverted upon.

The spirit of the resolutions and memorials adopted by congress, met with a hearty response from the people. The New York merchants agreed to discontinue all importation from England until the repeal of the obnoxious act. Their example was followed extensively in many of the other colonies, and plans were set on foot for the encouragement and support of domestic manufactures, and for devising substitutes for articles of luxury, comfort, or necessity, hitherto imported from the old country. Several of the colonial legislatures commented upon and approved the doings of the congress of deputies, and those few members who had stood aloof from or opposed the proceedings, received tokens of marked displeasure from their fellow-members and constituents.

All attempts to enforce the stamp act (which was to go into operation on the 1st of November) proved utterly vain. Business was conducted without the use of the stamps, in defiance of the restrictive provisions of the law, and where this could not be done in safety, as in some of the courts, various evasions were resorted to, and suits were continued or referred to arbitrament. As yet, all efforts pointed simply to the repeal of the law, and a modification of the obnoxious features of the provisions for the levy of customs.



News of these proceedings, and of the turn of public affairs in America, reached England during the administration of Rockingham. Grenville and his companions in the cabinet, who might have felt bound to make use of every expedient, violent or politic, for the maintenance of an act so deliberately framed, and passed with so little opposition as the one in question, were out of office, and the new incumbents were in a position to look dispassionately at the consequences of persistence in carrying out the arbitrary principles recently adopted. The question was, indeed, argued rather as one of policy than of right, for the great majority in parliament, and in the cabinet, had hitherto looked upon the power of the former to lay and enforce discretionary taxes as beyond dispute. It was easy to point to the gross inequality of representation in England, where populous towns and districts had no share in the electoral privilege, for precedents. The colonies of the continental nations of Europe presumed to make no question as to the right and power of the home governments to impose burdens far heavier, and of a far more arbitrary and oppressive character, than those now complained of; and it would be to the last degree humiliating to England, if, while deaf to the respectful entreaties of the provinces, she should be swayed from her course by the first threats of forcible opposition.

In December, (1765,) parliament met, and the whole subject was re-considered and debated at length. No determinate conclusion was arrived at during the short session, and an adjournment for a few weeks gave opportunity for the transmission of further intelligence from the seat of disturbance. It became matter of notoriety that, in America, the power of parliament was universally questioned, often defied, and that people began to speak "in the most familiar manner" of the possibility of open rupture, and the probable consequences of war with the parent-country.

At the January session, the aged William Pitt was present, and, notwithstanding his infirm health, took an open stand in opposition to the Grenville schemes of taxation—and to all direct taxation of the colonies by parliament—arguing the questions at issue with his usual power and perspicuity. He pointed out the sophistry of the supporters of the measures under examination; in reply to incentives, he uttered the most biting sarcasms; and, in plain terms, free from technicalities, he maintained the rights of the colonies, and approved their opposition. "I rejoice," said he, "that America has

of public affairs in  
 stration of Rocking-  
 cabinet, who might  
 t, violent or politic,  
 framed, and passed  
 n, were out of office,  
 look dispassionately  
 g out the arbitrary  
 was, indeed, argued  
 great majority in par-  
 upon the power of  
 s as beyond dispute.  
 of representation in  
 had no share in the  
 es of the continental  
 tion as to the right  
 burdens far heavier,  
 acter, than those now  
 egree humiliating to  
 ies of the provinces,  
 rst threats of forcible

the whole subject was  
 minate conclusion was  
 adjournment for a few  
 f further intelligence  
 ter of notoriety that,  
 iversally questioned,  
 "in the most familiar  
 nd the probable con-

Pitt was present, and,  
 n stand in opposition  
 all direct taxation of  
 ions at issue with his  
 the sophistry of the  
 n; in reply to invect-  
 l, in plain terms, free  
 of the colonies, and  
 e, "that America has

resisted. If its millions of inhabitants had submitted, taxes would soon have been laid on Ireland; and if ever this nation should have a tyrant for its king, six millions of freemen, so dead to all the feelings of liberty, as voluntarily to submit to be slaves, would be fit instruments to make slaves of the rest."

That America could effectually resist the power of England, he thought grossly improbable. "In a good cause, on a sound bottom," he proceeded, "the force of this country can crush America to atoms." \* \* \* "The will of parliament, properly signified, must for ever keep the colonies dependent upon the sovereign kingdom of Great Britain. But, on this ground of the stamp act, when so many here will think it a crying injustice, I am one who will lift up my hands against it. In such a cause your success would be hazardous. America, if she fell, would fall like the strong man; she would embrace the pillars of the state, and pull down the constitution along with her."\*

He coupled these strong denunciations of the proposed direct taxation with complete approval of the exercise of jurisdiction by parliament over all matters of trade and the regulation of manufactures, claiming to perceive "a plain distinction between taxes levied for the purposes of raising revenue, and duties imposed for the regulation of trade for the accommodation of the subject, although, in the consequences, some revenue may accidentally arise from the latter."

A large majority, both of the commons and of the house of lords, still favoured the English claims in their broadest extent, and a resolution was prepared, declaring that the powers of the king and parliament, in legislating for the colonies, were absolutely without limit. When the question of the stamp act was brought directly before the house of lords, those opposed to repeal, prevailed by a small majority. In the other house, the motion to repeal was considered, rather as a question of present policy, than as a test of future rights and powers. Benjamin Franklin, at this time one of the most prominent among the public supporters of freedom in America, underwent a long examination at the bar of the house. His clear and lucid exposition of the American claims, his accurate statistical knowledge, and his acquaintance with the character, spirit, and local politics of the colonies, enabled him to throw much light upon the question, and appear to have produced a powerful effect. He positively insisted that the enforcement of the stamp act was

\* Bancroft.

physically impossible. "Suppose," said he, "a military force sent into America; they will find nobody in arms. What are they then to do? They cannot force a man to take stamps who chooses to do without them. They will not find a rebellion: they may, indeed, make one." When the attempt was made to remove all distinction between direct taxes and imposts on importations, by the suggestion that these were often articles necessary for life; he replied, "The people may refuse commodities, of which the duty makes a part of the price; but an internal tax is forced from them without their consent." And again: "I do not know a single article imported into the northern colonies, but what they can either do without or make themselves."\*

The repeal—coupled, however, with the declaration before referred to, that parliament still retained absolute power in this as in all other colonial legislation—was carried by a very decided majority. The house of lords reluctantly concurred, and the bill received the royal assent on the 18th of March, 1766. The result gave great satisfaction to the commercial portion of the inhabitants of England; and the receipt of the intelligence in America was a signal for universal acclamation and rejoicing.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

INTERVAL OF QUIET.—NEW TAXES ON IMPORTATIONS.—NON-IMPORTATION AGREEMENT.—CIRCULAR OF MASSACHUSETTS.—RIOTS AT BOSTON.—ASSEMBLIES DISSOLVED.—TROOPS ORDERED TO BOSTON.—MEASURES OF THE BRITISH GOVERNMENT.—FATAL ENCOUNTER BETWEEN THE TROOPS AND POPULACE AT BOSTON.—CONCESSIONS OF PARLIAMENT.

A SHORT period of comparative repose ensued upon the settlement of the stamp question. Those who had suffered in the popular disturbances in New York and Massachusetts, were indemnified for their losses by the acts of the general assemblies. In the latter colony, however, this concession to the royalists was accompanied

\* Bancroft.

by a general act of amnesty for the protection of the individual rioters. The "sugar act," somewhat modified during the late session of parliament, still remained a bone of contention.

Under the Pitt administration, which succeeded that of Rockingham, Townshend, Grenville's staunchest supporter, held the office of chancellor of the exchequer. In this capacity, he introduced and carried through a new system of duties for the colonies, by which imposts were laid upon various articles hitherto exempt. A portion of these were of British production, as paints, paper, glass, &c. A specific duty of three pence a pound was laid on tea. The bill was, avowedly, for the sole purpose of obtaining revenue by indirect or external taxation. This and other odious measures, previously passed, respecting the maintenance of a standing army, and the quartering of troops upon the inhabitants during their removal from place to place, stirred up all former ill feelings. The ground was now generally taken by political agitators in America, that a tax on importations, if for revenue purposes merely, was no more defensible than a direct tax.

In October, 1767, a movement was commenced at Boston, at a public meeting, for the encouragement of native manufactures, and the organization of a system of non-importation from England. A more important step was taken at the session of the general assembly for Massachusetts, in the year succeeding; a circular-letter being, by a vote of the house, prepared, and dispatched to all the other colonial legislatures, urging the necessity for union in support of the rights of the provinces.

Foremost in these popular proceedings, were two men of widely different character, age, and worldly condition. Samuel Adams, the poor but uncompromising patriot, whose bold, energetic and able disquisitions upon American rights and policy had already gained him wide celebrity, and John Hancock, who possessed youth, fortune, and an ardent temperament. A small vessel belonging to the latter was seized, in the month of June, 1768, as having been engaged in smuggling wines from Madeira. This gave occasion for an outbreak, and the commissioners of revenue—officers recently appointed by parliament, for the superintendance of customs, &c.—were forced to seek protection from the mob in one of the forts of the harbour.

The assembly of Massachusetts was required by the governor, Bernard, to rescind the circular before mentioned, and, upon refusal

by a large vote, was dissolved. A favourable reception of the rebellious message, produced similar results in Virginia, Maryland, and Georgia. The New York assembly, proving refractory upon the question of quartering British troops, was also dismissed by the governor. In Massachusetts, the inhabitants of the several towns, unable to speak through legal representatives, elected delegates to a convention, whose proceedings, if unaccompanied with legitimate authority, might, at least, show to the world the true sentiments of the people.

For enforcing the revenue laws, as well as for the preservation of order in the turbulent city of Boston, General Gage, commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, ordered thither two regiments of regulars from Halifax. He had received previous instructions to this effect from government, but it was not then supposed that so large a force would be necessary to effect the purpose. The authorities refused to provide quarters for the troops, alleging that there was accommodation for them at the regular barracks; but Gage was determined to quarter them within the town, and accordingly a portion encamped on the common, and most of the others took possession of the state-house. Cannon were planted in front, and an ostentatious display of military force served to enrage and embitter the feelings of the inhabitants.

Accommodations for the soldiery could only be procured by an appropriation of the army funds, which was accordingly made, and full accounts of the fractious spirit of the colony were forwarded to England. The news excited a great degree of public indignation; parliament proceeded to pass resolutions of censure against the colonies, and—a matter of graver importance—voted instructions to the respective governors, for the seizure and transportation to England, for trial, of the leaders in disloyalty.

The legislature of Virginia, at the session in May, 1769, remonstrated against this infringement of the rights of persons, which, although sanctioned by an ancient law respecting treasons committed abroad, was opposed to all principles of liberty and justice. Resolutions upon this topic, embracing also a general proclamation of colonial rights, were transmitted to the other colonies. The consequence was a speedy dissolution of the assembly by the governor, Lord Botetourt. The non-importation agreement was, shortly after this, extensively adopted, both in Virginia and other of the southern provinces.

ception of the rebel-  
inia, Maryland, and  
refractory upon the  
o dismissed by the  
f the several towns,  
lected delegates to a  
ied with legitimate  
e true sentiments of

the preservation of  
age, commander-in-  
either two regiments  
vious instructions to  
en supposed that so  
rpose. The author-  
alleging that there  
barracks; but Gage  
n, and accordingly a  
of the others took  
lanted in front, and  
to enrage and em-

be procured by an  
accordingly made,  
ony were forwarded  
public indignation;  
ure against the colo-  
d instructions to the  
ortation to England,

May, 1769, remon-  
of persons, which,  
g treasons committed  
and justice. Reso-  
ral proclamation of  
olonies. The counse-  
ly by the governor,  
nt was, shortly after  
other of the south-

The Massachusetts legislature, at the same period, refused positively to appropriate funds for the army expenses. Requisition was made for the removal of the troops, and upon the governor's response that this was beyond the pale of his authority, all legislative business was stayed, with the exception of indignant discussion of the public wrongs. In March of the following year, the mutual hatred between the citizens of Boston and the hired soldiery quartered among them, aggravated by insults and injuries on either side, broke out in open hostilities. On the evening of the 5th of the month, a small body of soldiers, commanded by a Captain Preston, was attacked by a mob, and, without orders from their officer, fired upon the crowd, in self-defence. Four persons were killed by the discharge, and a number were wounded. The rage of the citizens, at this occurrence, was so great, that it was deemed advisable to remove the troops from the town to the barracks at Castle William. This being effected, those who had perished in the riot were buried with great ceremony, the whole population taking part in the exercises of the occasion, as if in commemoration of some national calamity.

The soldiers implicated in the alleged massacre were indicted for murder. They received a fair and impartial trial, being ably defended by John Adams and Josiah Quincy, both of whom were known as ardent advocates of the popular cause. Conclusive evidence was found against two only of the accused; these were convicted of manslaughter, and received but a light punishment.

In New York, the temporary ascendancy of the "moderate party" resulted in submission to the requisitions of the quartering act, but the same state of feeling existed there as in Boston between the troops and the populace.

Some concession was made by parliament, in 1770, to the demands of the colonies and the petitions of the English merchants. The duties on articles of British produce, &c., included in the list of commodities taxable under the regulations introduced by Townshend, were all removed, on motion of Lord North, with the exception of that on tea. This was retained simply as an assertion of principle; for, while parliament evidently desired to conciliate and assist the American colonies, it was plain that the great majority of the people of England and their representatives still retained all their former ideas respecting the sovereign power of the home government.

## CHAPTER V.

PARTY SPIRIT IN THE COLONIES.—WHIG AND TORY.—THE REGULATORS OF NORTH CAROLINA.—HUTCHINSON, GOVERNOR OF MASSACHUSETTS.—DESTRUCTION OF THE GASPEE.—SYSTEM OF POLITICAL COMMUNICATION BETWEEN THE COLONIES.—TEA DISPATCHED TO AMERICA BY THE EAST INDIA COMPANY.—REFUSAL OF THE COLONISTS TO RECEIVE IT.—VIOLENT PROCEEDINGS AT BOSTON: CLOSURE OF THE PORT.—EXTENSION OF CANADA.

THE bitterness of party spirit, by this time, throughout the colonies, was added to that of jealousy and resistance to oppression. The loyalists, under the name of tories, and the whigs, who constituted the popular party, looked upon each other with distrust and indignation. Between neighbours and former friends, and between members of the same family, a strife was engendered, rancorous in proportion to the depth of either party's convictions.

The names of whig and tory were applied, at this period, to two parties in the Carolinas; the first, self-styled regulators, who originally organized themselves as a party for the summary punishment of criminals, in a country where the population was sparse, and the course of justice tardy; the second, their opponents, known also by other titles. In North Carolina, those calling themselves "regulators," consisted of ignorant inhabitants of the more barren districts, and were simply combined to resist all civil authority. The difficulties which arose from the existence of such a party, resulted in actual, though brief, civil war. In May, 1771, "Governor Tryon, at the head of a body of volunteers, marched into the disaffected counties. The regulators assembled in arms, and an action was fought at Alamance, on the Haw, near the head-waters of Cape Fear river, in which some two hundred were left dead upon the field. Out of a large number taken prisoners, six were executed for high treason."\* The good-will of this turbulent faction was conciliated by a subsequent governor, Joseph Martin.

In the north, causes of discontent with English authority were

\* Hildreth's History of the United States.

multi  
inson,  
in 177  
him o  
satisf  
bound  
provol  
usual  
Ful  
relaxe  
of tea,  
purpos  
regulat  
enforce  
were en  
become  
interfer  
her offi  
arrogan  
statione  
decoyed  
burned  
1772.  
perpetra  
favour  
against  
The app  
large re  
punishm  
Agita  
tually  
tees of  
in New  
quence  
ceedings  
with the  
having  
appointe  
thereupo  
quence,

multiplied, notwithstanding the concessions of parliament. Hutchinson, upon receiving the appointment of governor of Massachusetts, in 1771, was made independent of the colony by the settlement upon him of a large salary to be paid by the crown. This gave great dissatisfaction, inasmuch as the governor and colony were no longer bound by a common interest. The measure, it is true, had been provoked by a neglect on the part of the assembly to make the usual appropriation for the governor's salary.

Fulfilment of the non-importation agreement had been gradually relaxed in most of the colonies, except in regard to the one article of tea, which, being alone retained of that list made out for revenue purposes merely, stood as a representative of all the rest. The old regulations of trade, as provided for in the "sugar act," were still enforced, and a number of vessels, armed for the revenue service, were employed on the coast. One of these, named the Gaspee, had become particularly obnoxious to the people of Rhode Island. She interfered most inconveniently in their smuggling transactions; and her officers, moreover, in carrying out their instructions, had, by arrogance and arbitrary conduct, excited popular ill-will. While stationed in Narragansett Bay, this vessel, by a stratagem, was decoyed upon a shoal, and, as she lay aground, was attacked and burned by a party from Providence, on the night of June 10th, 1772. Great efforts were made to secure the punishment of the perpetrators of this act of violence, but they were so shielded by the favour of the people, that no conclusive evidence could be obtained against them, although they were identified by common report. The appointment of a special court for their trial, and the offer of a large reward for evidence, alike failed to bring the offenders to punishment.

Agitation of political questions, throughout this period, was continually kept up by private associations and corresponding committees of different towns and districts. This movement, originating in New England, led to a more general system of union, in consequence of action by the Virginia legislature. A copy of the proceedings in the Massachusetts assembly, in which the controversy with the governor also involved general discussion of grievances, having been forwarded to that body, a committee was regularly appointed to inquire into the questions at issue, and to communicate thereupon with the other colonies. The assembly was, in consequence, dissolved by the governor, but the committee proceeded,



notwithstanding, to fulfil their instructions. This example was followed by the colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, Pennsylvania, and Maryland. Such an organization proved of inestimable service at the commencement of the contest upon which the country was about to enter. A publication, by Doctor Franklin, then agent for Massachusetts, as well as for several other of the colonies, in England, of certain letters written by Hutchinson and other loyalists, excited great indignation. These letters, which were never intended to meet the public eye, spoke contemptuously of the popular party, and recommended stringent measures for coercion.

Opportunity was not long wanting for open demonstration of the true state of feeling in the colonies. As already mentioned, the agreement to import no tea had been generally observed, and the East India Company, receiving no orders from American merchants, made the necessary arrangements for carrying on the trade by their own agents. Consignees were appointed in the more important seaports, and a number of vessels were freighted and dispatched. In New York and Philadelphia, these agents, alarmed at the threats of the people, thought it the part of safety not to enter upon the duties of their appointment, and the vessels were obliged to return to England with their cargoes. In Boston the consignees refused to resign their agency, and in the midst of the excitement attendant upon their contumacy, several vessels arrived loaded with tea.

A considerable body of citizens stationed themselves as a watch, to preclude the possibility of a secret landing, and the captain and consignees were notified that the only safe course for them to pursue, was immediately to comply with the popular demand, that the tea be sent back to England. But upon application at the customhouse, no clearance could be effected without a landing of the cargo, and the governor refused a permit to pass the defensive works of the castle.

The citizens held repeated mass meetings, in which the question was fully discussed, and nearly unanimous resolutions were adopted to resist to the last extremity all attempts at landing the tea. They were in session (December 16th, 1773) when the definitive reply of the governor, respecting a pass, was received. "A violent commotion instantly ensued. A person disguised after the manner of the Indians, who was in the gallery, shouted at this juncture the cry of war: the meeting was dissolved in the twinkling of an eye. The

multitude rushed in mass to Griffin's wharf. About twenty persons, also disguised as Indians, then made their appearance; all either masters of ships, carpenters, or caulkers. They went on board the ships laden with tea. In less than two hours, three hundred and forty chests were staved, and emptied in the sea. They were not interrupted: the surrounding multitude on shore served them as a safe guard. The affair was conducted without tumult: no damage was done to the ships, or to any other effects whatever.\*

The consequence of these acts of violence was the immediate passage, by parliament, of the act known as the "Boston port bill," by which the port was closed against all importations, the custom-house being removed to Salem. This restriction was not to be removed until full compensation should be made for the damage done by the populace. On motion of North, a further enactment passed, by a very large majority, for giving the appointment of all civil and judicial officers in Massachusetts directly to the crown. It was also enacted that, at any future prosecution for "homicide or other capital offence" committed in support of lawful authority, the governor might send the accused out of the colony for trial, either to another province, or to England, if it appeared to him necessary so to afford security against popular prejudice.

In anticipation of the possible result of such violent measures, acts were passed for the further regulation of government in Canada, the bounds of which province were extended "so as to embrace the territory situated between the lakes, the river Ohio, and the Mississippi."

\* Otis' Botta.

## CHAPTER VI.

GAGE, GOVERNOR OF MASSACHUSETTS: MILITARY PREPARATIONS: MINUTE-MEN.—DISTRESS IN BOSTON: SYMPATHY OF OTHER TOWNS.—CONVENTION PROPOSED BY VIRGINIA: DELEGATES CHOSEN BY THE COLONIES.—THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS: RESOLUTIONS AND DECLARATION ADOPTED.—VIOLENT MEASURES OF PARLIAMENT.

IN May, 1774, General Gage, having received the appointment of governor of Massachusetts, in place of Hutchinson, arrived in Boston. He was, personally, held in much greater esteem than his predecessor, and met with a suitable reception, notwithstanding the general state of disorder and indignation at the speedy enforcement of the port bill, which was to go into operation on the 1st of June. A number of regiments of regulars were concentrated at the town for the purpose of overawing the inhabitants, and, under the directions of the general, defensive works were erected on the neck by which the peninsula of Boston is connected with the main land.

These precautions were by no means premature or unnecessary, for, every where throughout the colony, appearances grew more and more ominous. The new officers, of royal appointment, were impeded in the exercise of their duties, by threats or violence; the organization and training of the militia was carried on with great zeal and perseverance; meetings were every where held, and resolutions were passed breathing the spirit of the most determined resistance. At a general meeting of Massachusetts delegates, at Salem, of which Hancock was president, "They enrolled twelve thousand of the militia, whom they called *minute-men*; that is, soldiers that must hold themselves in readiness to march at a minute's notice." Directions were openly and boldly given for the storing of provisions, the collection of ammunition, &c., as if the country were already involved in civil war.

The city of Boston necessarily suffered severely from the total cutting off of its commercial resources. The most hearty sympathy was expressed by the towns of Massachusetts, and by the other colonies, both in the form of resolutions of encouragement, and, more substantially, by subscriptions for the relief of the poor. At Salem

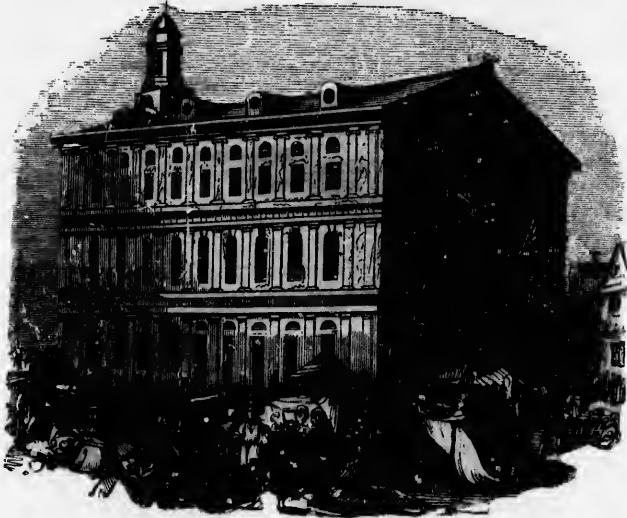
REPARA-  
TIONS OF  
A: DEL-  
MENTAL  
TED.

pointment  
arrived in  
than his  
ending the  
forcement  
t of June.  
the town  
the direc-  
neck by  
land.  
necessary,  
more and  
were im-  
equence; the  
with great  
and reso-  
etermined  
egates, at  
d twelve  
at is, sol-  
minute's  
e storing  
country

the total  
ympathy  
other col-  
nd, more  
At Salem



CONGRESS HALL, PHILADELPHIA



FANEUIL HALL, BOSTON.

THE Building was commenced in 1740, and was given by Peter Faneuil to the town of Boston, for a Town-Hall and Market-place. It is celebrated as being the scene of many of the early debates upon the great questions at issue between England and the Colonies

and  
to  
pu  
the  
exp  
saf  
I  
in  
par  
lent  
gen  
of s  
atte  
exp  
the  
shot  
the  
In  
mad  
to t  
At  
Brit  
imm  
the  
tion  
oper  
acts  
man  
cuted  
the a  
Th  
temb  
Carol  
this c  
in soc  
John  
other  
for a  
assem  
truly

and Marblehead, the merchants proffered the use of their warehouses to the Boston importers, and the inhabitants of the former made public profession of their determination not to take advantage of the position in which they were placed, to enrich themselves at the expense of those who had exposed their property and personal safety for the general good.

In the neighbouring colonies, the same state of affairs existed as in Massachusetts. Not only were the people busily engaged in preparing arms and ammunition, but, in several instances, they violently plundered the public stores. The legislative assemblies generally responded to the exigency of the occasion, by resolutions of sympathy and encouragement. In Virginia, it was resolved, that attempts to coerce one colony to submit to measures which all had expressed a common interest in opposing, were to be resisted by the others, and it was recommended that an annual convention should be held by deputies from all the colonies, to take counsel for the general good.

In accordance with this proposal, all the colonies except Georgia made choice of delegates, in number from two to seven, according to the population of each, who were to convene at Philadelphia. At the same time, resolutions to cease all commerce with Great Britain were renewed. Agreements to that effect were signed by immense numbers, and those who did not readily concur with the proposal, were effectually overawed by a threat of the publication of their names. A time was fixed for the agreement to go into operation. The state of public feeling was also demonstrated by acts of violence committed upon the persons of obnoxious Tories, many of whom were "tarred and feathered," or otherwise so persecuted as to be obliged to place themselves under the protection of the authorities at the fortified posts.

The continental congress met at Philadelphia, on the 5th of September, 1774. All were present except the deputies from South Carolina, who arrived on the 14th. Of the fifty-three delegates to this convention, nearly all were men of property and high standing in society: many of them—as Patrick Henry of Virginia, Samuel and John Adams of Massachusetts, Roger Sherman of Connecticut, and others—were already celebrated for eloquence, legal attainments, or for an active share in the first patriotic movements. It was no assembly of reckless political adventurers, but consisted of men who truly represented the intelligent portion of the community, and who

felt that their own good fame, their lives, property, and personal safety depended upon the performance of their duty to their constituents, in a manner as prudent and cautious, as firm and uncompromising. It was agreed that each colony should have but one vote, and the proceedings of the assembly were only to be made public so far as permitted by its own resolutions. The session was held with closed doors.

The first proceedings were the adoption of resolutions expressive of approval of those passed by the Massachusetts convention; a declaration of rights, accompanied by a specific enumeration of the instances in which these had been infringed by the British government; and a more efficient organization of the system of non-importation, which was to go into general operation on the 1st of the ensuing December, and to which was appended an agreement not to export goods to England or its dependencies, if, at a future period, redress should not have been obtained for injuries already committed. Incidentally to this agreement, the importation of slaves was condemned, and was prohibited by the articles of compact.

A petition to the king, and addresses, letters, and memorials to the people of Great Britain, and of the northern American provinces, were subsequently prepared, debated, and adopted. An unavailing communication had been previously addressed to General Gage, remonstrating against the military operations at Boston. Congress adjourned in the latter part of October, after providing for a future meeting, to take place in the following year.

During the winter, the colonics had opportunity to express their separate opinion upon the doings of Congress, either by their assemblies or by popular conventions. The acts passed generally met with hearty approval and concurrence. The sect of Quakers, at their yearly meeting, carrying out their principles of peace, condemned every thing that should tend to bring down upon the country the calamities of war; but, on the other hand, the eloquence and ardour of New England divines, especially of the Congregational societies, were lent, with little scruple or concealment, to the popular cause. The association for non-intercourse with England experienced more opposition in New York than elsewhere: the tories of that colony, by reason of wealth, influence, and numbers, occupied a more independent position than in either of the other provinces, and the self-interest of the large number of those dependent upon the commerce of New York, strengthened their opposition.

The parliament of Great Britain, upon receipt of intelligence concerning the American congress and the disorderly state of affairs in America, determined on violent coercive measures. The conciliatory and moderate policy of the elder Pitt was rejected; Franklin and the other colonial agents were refused a hearing; and, as a punishment to the colonies for their resistance to authority and refusal to import goods from Great Britain, all other foreign trade, except that to the British West Indies, was absolutely prohibited, as was also the prosecution of the fisheries on the banks. A large military and naval reinforcement was also ordered to America. A provision was, indeed, made for the exemption from taxation of any colony which should, by its own act, appropriate a "sufficient" sum for the necessary expenses of government and defence. In the new restrictions upon trade, exceptions were introduced in favour of New York and North Carolina, these being considered the most loyal and amenable of the colonies. The acts were passed in both houses by large majorities, notwithstanding the able argument of eloquent opponents, and a crowd of petitions from merchants, manufacturers, and inhabitants of other colonies, whose interests were directly dependent upon prosperous commerce with America.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

WARLIKE PREPARATIONS IN MASSACHUSETTS.—TROOPS DISPATCHED TO SEIZE MILITARY STORES.—FIRST BLOOD SHED AT LEXINGTON.—DISASTROUS RETREAT OF THE BRITISH TO BOSTON.—PROCEEDINGS IN THE NEIGHBOURING COLONIES.—BOSTON BESIEGED BY THE PROVINCIALS.—CONCURRENCE OF THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.—SECOND SESSION OF CONGRESS.—APPOINTMENT OF OFFICERS.—SEIZURE OF CROWN POINT AND TICONDEROGA.

THE inhabitants of Massachusetts, denounced as rebels by the late acts of parliament, cut off from all sources of former prosperity, and insulted by the presence of overbearing military officials and soldiery, were now ready for any extremity. It was with no small difficulty that supplies could be procured for the troops at Boston,



and the commanding officer heard, with alarm, of the unceasing preparations for war that were going on in all the neighbouring districts. The precarious position of the inhabitants of Boston excited universal concern, and various plans were suggested for their relief. Among others, it is said to have been seriously proposed, that "a valuation should be made of the houses and furniture belonging to the inhabitants, that the city should then be fired, and that all the losses should be reimbursed from the public treasure." The provincial congress of Massachusetts ordered the procurement of large quantities of ammunition and arms, which, as fast as they could be collected, were privately stored at different dépôts in the country towns. Cannon, balls, &c., were smuggled out of Boston, over the fortified neck, in manure-carts, and various other devices were successfully resorted to for deceiving the guard.

General Gage, having now nearly three thousand men under his immediate command, thought that the time had arrived for a forcible check upon the movements of the rebels. He had learned that arms and ammunition, belonging to the provincials, were collected in large quantities at Concord, about eighteen miles from Boston. These he determined to seize, and, having taken every precaution to prevent intelligence of the movement from being known, he dispatched several companies of grenadiers and light infantry, numbering about eight hundred men, upon this service, on the night of April 18th, (1775.) Doctor Joseph Warren, one of the most prominent of the Boston patriots, had, by some means, become acquainted with the intended attack, and sent messengers forthwith to spread the news through the country.

Early on the following morning the troops, commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel Smith, entered Lexington, a few miles from Concord. A company of provincial militia, to the number of little more than seventy, was under arms upon the green, near the meeting-house. Major Pitcairn, leader of the van-guard, called out, "Disperse, rebels! lay down your arms and disperse." The order not being obeyed, he immediately discharged a pistol, and, waving his sword, gave the command to fire. Several fell at the first volley, and, although the militia immediately retreated, they were fired upon in the act of dispersing. Eight were killed.

The troops then marched on to Concord. At that town the minutemen endeavoured to keep possession of a bridge, but were charged and driven from their position. The object of the expedi-

tion was accomplished, by the destruction of a quantity of ammunition and provisions, and the spiking and dismounting of two pieces of artillery. By this time the whole country was up in arms, and, as the troops commenced their retreat, they were exposed to a galling and destructive fire from places of concealment on either side of the road, while a large and constantly increasing force of the provincials hung upon their rear.

To protect the retreat, General Gage had, fortunately for the expedition, sent on a reinforcement of sixteen companies, who met the first detachment at Lexington. Wearing by their long night march and the fatigues of the morning, and with their ammunition nearly spent, the whole of the first detachment, it was thought, might have perished or fallen into the enemies' hands but for the aid thus opportunely afforded. After resting and recruiting their strength, the whole army marched towards Boston.

Harassed throughout the entire distance by an irregular but deadly fire from concealed marksmen, the worn-out troops reached Charlestown about sunset. They had sustained a loss, in killed and wounded, of not far from three hundred men: the provincials lost less than one-third of that number. What added to the difficulty of the march, was the intense heat of the weather, and a high wind, which raised clouds of dust.

The first blood had now been shed; the country was actually involved in war; and Massachusetts called upon the other colonies for assistance. Connecticut, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island, made response by raising troops and commissioning officers. In anticipation of this more regular levy, a large army of volunteers had collected and encamped around Boston. Generals Ward and Thomas received the highest commission under the provision of the Massachusetts provincial legislature. The volunteers from Connecticut were commanded by General Putnam, an old soldier, and a true man of the times. There was no difficulty, at this period, in procuring men: more, indeed, flocked in than could be supported, and upon the arrival of the regular provincial forces, great numbers of the volunteers disbanded and returned home. The universal indignation was increased by reports of British cruelties during the brief period of hostilities. These stories, it is said, the leaders of the people "never failed to propagate and exaggerate, in every place, repeating them with words of extreme vehemence, and painting them in the most vivid colours," thereby producing "an

incredible fermentation, and a frantic rage in the minds of the inhabitants."

The middle and southern colonies, as soon as the news of the opening of the campaign in the north could reach them, generally gave expression to the popular feeling of sympathy with the patriots, and of their conviction that the questions in dispute were of common interest. Military organizations, associations for purposes of defence, and seizures of public stores and funds for the popular cause, were the order of the day.

On the 10th of May, (1775,) in accordance with former provisions, the continental congress assembled, the second time, at Philadelphia. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, who had presided at the first meeting, was reelected; but upon his departure to attend the meeting of the Virginia assembly, his place was taken by Thomas Jefferson. The first proceedings were to prepare a further petition to the king, and addresses to the inhabitants of Great Britain and the American colonies. It was then voted, that war had been commenced by England, and that active measures should be taken for defence; but, at the same time, a nominal allegiance was professed to the parent-country.

Continental officers were next chosen—the office of commander-in-chief being bestowed upon George Washington, one of the members from Virginia; Artemas Ward, Philip Schuyler, Israel Putnam, and Charles Lee, were chosen major-generals; Horatio Gates received the appointment of adjutant-general. The two officers last mentioned had both held commissions in the British service.

These proceedings occupied some time, and, meanwhile, important scenes were enacting at the seat of war. On the very day that congress assembled, a bold and successful adventure was achieved by a volunteer force of the "Green Mountain Boys," commanded by Ethan Allen, one of the most active and enterprising of the popular leaders at the north. At Crown Point and Ticonderoga, fortified posts upon Lake Champlain, on the Canadian frontier, it was known that there was great store of artillery and ammunition, and a design was formed simultaneously in Connecticut and Vermont to accomplish its seizure. Colonel Benedict Arnold, of New Haven, at the time connected with the besieging army at Boston, was commissioned by the former. He is described as having been "possessed by nature of an extraordinary force of genius, a restless character, and an intrepidity bordering upon prodigy." Finding that Allen had already raised a force for the same object, Arnold joined the expedition as a subordinate.

TH  
for th  
Whe  
mon  
and t  
of A  
'Wh  
artil  
howi  
down  
Briti  
on Cl

COND  
BU  
C

EAR  
by fre  
Clinto  
with g  
for so  
althou  
therefo  
lay ash  
ity, ex  
cock a  
enemic  
The  
mande  
fortific  
Colone  
commi

The garrisons at the forts were grossly insufficient in numbers for their defence, and were, moreover, taken completely by surprise. When the commander of Ticonderoga, roused from sleep, and summoned by Allen to surrender, "in the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," was informed that he was "prisoner of America, he was much confused, and repeated, several times, 'What does this mean?'" About two hundred and twenty pieces of artillery, with a great quantity of ammunition, and a number of howitzers and mortars, were secured at these two posts. Proceeding down the Sorel in a schooner, Arnold surprised and captured a British corvette which lay at Fort St. John. The captured fortresses on Champlain were garrisoned and put under his command.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

CONDITION OF THE BRITISH ARMY IN BOSTON.—BATTLE OF  
BUNKER HILL.—WASHINGTON AT THE CAMP.—CON-  
GRESSIONAL PROCEEDINGS.—THE INDIAN TRIBES.  
—JOSEPH BRANT.—MILITARY PREPARATIONS  
IN THE SEPARATE COLONIES.

EARLY in June, the British forces in Boston had been increased by fresh arrivals of troops, under Generals Howe, Burgoyne, and Clinton, to more than ten thousand disciplined soldiers. It was with great difficulty that supplies of provisions could be procured for so large an army, beleaguered as was the town by a superior, although undisciplined force of the provincials. General Gage, therefore, first issued a proclamation of free pardon to all who would lay aside their attitude of rebellion, and submit to the royal authority, excepting, however, the prime movers of sedition, John Hancock and Samuel Adams. He then formed a plan to penetrate the enemies' lines, and open a free communication with the country.

The intended movement became known to the American commanders, and orders were immediately given for the erection of fortifications on Bunker hill, an elevation commanding the neck. Colonel William Prescott, with a body of one thousand men, was commissioned upon this service, on the night of the 16th of June.

Mistaking his point of destination, this officer commenced operations at Breed's hill, a position nearer to the town, and overlooking Charlestown, at that time a place of considerable size. Labouring with great diligence and silence, the provincials had thrown up, before day-break, a low earthen redoubt in the form of a square, sufficiently substantial to afford some protection for the troops.

As soon as these operations were discovered from the harbour, a tremendous fire was opened upon the works from the men-of-war which lay at anchor, from the city artillery, and from floating batteries. Notwithstanding the storm of shells and balls, the provincials continued their labour, and carried a trench and embankment from the redoubt down the north-eastern slope of the hill, nearly to the water's edge. A reinforcement of several companies had, meanwhile, been thrown into the intrenchment. As the height commanded the city, it was absolutely necessary to prevent the establishment of a battery there, in order to maintain possession of Boston; Gage, therefore, determined upon an immediate attempt to storm the redoubt.

Three thousand men were transported from the city to the foot of the hill, in boats. Major-General Howe and General Pigot were in command. The most exposed point was the interval between the trench and Mystic river, at the north-east: this was partially defended by a temporary breast-work of hay and feneing stuff. "The troops of Massachusetts occupied Charlestown, the redoubt, and part of the trench; those of Connecticut, commanded by Captain Nolton, and those of New Hampshire, under Colonel Starke, the rest of the trench." Generals Putnam and Warren were both present, and assisting in the directions of the defence. The troops were very scantily furnished with ammunition, and very few had bayonets.

Towards the middle of the afternoon, the arrangements for attack being perfected, the regulars marched up the hill; their officers were surprised at the silence from within the redoubt, for the provincials reserved their fire until a very near approach of the enemy. When the word was at last given, so heavy and destructive was the discharge, that the British fell back in disorder, and retreated to the foot of the hill. A second charge, to which the troops were, with difficulty, marshalled, resulted in a similar disaster. The number of officers who fell in these two first attempts is astonishing. "General Howe remained for some time alone upon the field of battle; all the officers who surrounded him were killed or wounded."

The town of Charlestown had been fired by order of Gage, at the

... operations  
... overlooking  
... e. Labouring  
... and thrown up,  
... n of a square,  
... the troops.

... the harbour, a  
... the men-of-war  
... m floating bat-  
... the provincials  
... ankment from  
... , nearly to the  
... and, meanwhile,  
... at commanded  
... blishment of a  
... ; Gage, there-  
... the redoubt.

... y to the foot of  
... Pigot were in  
... l between the  
... tially defended  
... "The troops  
... and part of the  
... n Nolton, and  
... e rest of the  
... n present, and  
... ops were very  
... d bayonets.

... ents for attack  
... ir officers were  
... the provincials  
... nemy. When  
... e was the dis-  
... ated to the foot  
... ere, with diffi-  
... he number of  
... ng. "General  
... battle; all the  
... "

... of Gage, at the



DEFENCE OF THE REDOUBT AT BUNKER-HILL.

BY THE SCULPTOR W. W. W.

time  
was  
inten  
field  
Clint  
neigh  
umns  
little  
now  
by se  
postir

From  
space  
point  
clubbe  
Charle  
from  
Englis  
the ne

In  
either  
ceeded  
commi  
was sh  
muske

The  
the col  
was pr  
contine  
sisting  
that th  
iating  
affected  
inimica  
power  
the coe  
true th  
of the  
Englan  
eral se

time of the first repulse, and, consisting chiefly of wooden buildings, was soon reduced to ashes. The scene had now become one of intense interest. Every hill and house-top from which a view of the field could be obtained, was thronged with spectators. General Clinton, who had witnessed the second charge from Cop's hill, a neighbouring height, hastened up, with additional forces. The columns were again formed, and marched up to the redoubt, suffering little from the slackened fire of the provincials, whose powder was now nearly spent. At the same time, the lateral trench was swept by several pieces of artillery, which the British had succeeded in posting at its extremity.

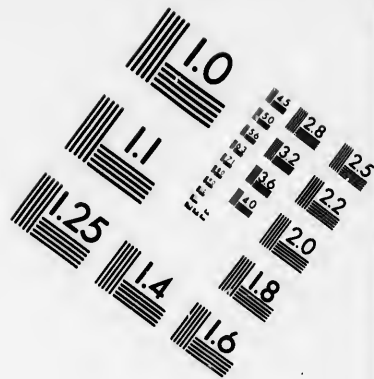
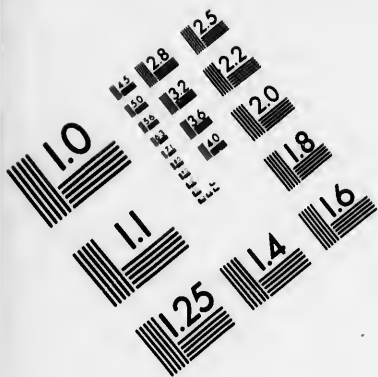
From three several quarters, the regulars poured into the enclosed space of the redoubt, from which the Americans were driven at the point of the bayonet, defending themselves lustily with their muskets clubbed. Their retreat was effected, with little further loss, across Charlestown neck, although the passage was exposed to a heavy fire from the floating batteries, and from one of the armed vessels. The English immediately fortified Bunker hill, to secure command of the neck for the future.

In this battle more than one-third of the entire British force were either killed or wounded. The loss of the provincials a little exceeded four hundred and fifty. Doctor Joseph Warren, recently commissioned as a general officer, perished during the retreat. He was shot down, it is said, by an English officer, who borrowed a musket from a private for the purpose.

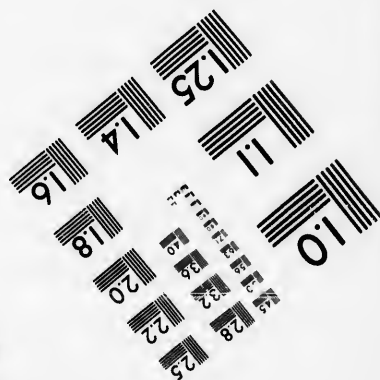
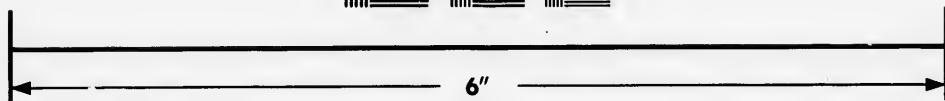
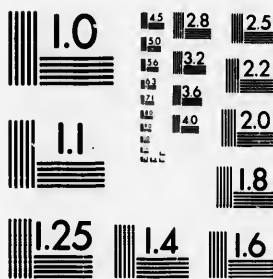
The provincial congress of Massachusetts had, ere this, declared the colony absolved from all allegiance to Gage, who, in the resolution, was pronounced "a public enemy." After communication with the continental congress, a provisional government was organized, consisting of town deputies and a council. It was, indeed, plain to all that there was no choice between a sanguinary contest and a humiliating submission. In England, the popular feeling, where not affected by the personal interest of commerce, was most decidedly inimical to the rebellious colonies, who had presumed to defy the power and question the authority of the British government, and the coercive measures adopted met with general approbation. It is true that there were not a few who foresaw the possible consequences of the war, and deprecated the violence that might cause the loss of England's most valuable foreign possession; others, of yet more liberal sentiments, felt and expressed a noble sympathy with their







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

1.5 1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5  
2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0

10  
1.5 1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5  
2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0

transatlantic brethren throughout the long and arduous struggle upon which they had now entered.

About the 1st of July, General Washington arrived at the camp, near Boston, and assumed command. The presence of an experienced commander-in-chief was absolutely requisite in the existing state of the army. About fourteen thousand men, new to the discipline of a camp, and very insufficiently provided with necessary accommodations, stores, and ammunition, were posted so as to guard the approaches to the city: this line extended over a space of not far from twelve miles. Washington's head-quarters were at Cambridge. Generals Ward and Lee were stationed at Roxbury and Prospect hill. The latter position had been fortified by the provincials immediately subsequent to the battle at Breed's hill.

The more important congressional proceedings during the months of June and July, in addition to those already briefly mentioned, were the issue of bills of credit, redeemable by apportionment among the colonies, to the amount of three millions of dollars; the establishment of a post-office system (at the head of which was Benjamin Franklin); and the commission of emissaries to treat with the Indian tribes. These, and various minor arrangements, being concluded, congress adjourned until September. The attempt to gain over the powerful confederacy of the Six Nations, proved a signal failure, except so far as related to the tribe of the Oneidas, over whom Mr. Kirkland, a missionary, had great influence. The munificence and crafty policy of the English Indian agent, Sir William Johnson, had for many years secured the admiration and affection of the rest of the Iroquois; and, upon his death, they proved equally loyal to his son-in-law and successor, Guy Johnson. Their most celebrated chief, Joseph Brant, Thayendanega, who had been brought up and educated under Sir William's patronage, received a commission in the British service, and took, as we shall have occasion to notice, an important part in border hostilities. The character of Brant has been generally mistaken by historians, and it is only by the research of modern writers that his abilities and good qualities have been brought to light, and the popular slanders, which pronounced him a monster of cruelty, refuted.

The spirit which actuated the general congress was also evinced in the separate colonies, either by popular movements, or the action of the provincial assemblies. The authority of the royal governors was, in many instances, set at naught: troops were raised, and

ISTORY.

and arduous struggle

n arrived at the camp, presence of an experi- quisite in the existing men, new to the disci- provided with necessary re posted so as to guard over a space of not far ters were at Cambridge. Roxbury and Prospect by the provincials im- hill.

ings during the months briefly mentioned, were portionment among the dollars; the establish- of which was Benjamin to treat with the Indian ents, being concluded, attempt to gain over the proved a signal failure, neidas, over whom Mr.

The munificence and William Johnson, had affection of the rest of red equally loyal to his ir most celebrated chief, n brought up and edu- ed a commission in the occasion to notice, an character of Brant has is only by the research od qualities have been hich pronounced him a

gress was also evinced ovements, or the action of the royal governors roops were raised, and



JOSEPH BRANT - THAYENDANEGER.

colonial  
As heret  
York, wh  
than else  
congress,  
provincia

VACILLAT  
FOR CAR  
DITION  
ALLE  
PIE

THERE  
crud policy  
In speakin  
with gener  
own fault  
decrees, sh  
conciliator  
But men  
to surmou  
delays, her  
enterprises

The who  
this time w  
awe. The  
ing the A  
beleaguere  
their depre  
provincials  
British ves  
mouth, aft  
October (1  
Congress

colonial bills were issued to defray the expense of their maintenance. As heretofore, the greatest conflict of public opinion was in New York, where the loyalists were enabled to make a stronger stand than elsewhere. The members for New York, at the late session of congress, were chosen, not by the assembly, but by a self-organized provincial congress elected by the people at large.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

VACILLATING POLICY OF ENGLAND.—PROVISIONS BY CONGRESS FOR CARRYING ON THE WAR.—NAVAL OPERATIONS.—EXPEDITION AGAINST CANADA.—SIEGE OF FORT ST. JOHN.—ALLEN'S ATTEMPT UPON MONTREAL.—THE CITY OCCUPIED BY MONTGOMERY.—MARCH TOWARDS QUEBEC.

THERE is much wisdom in the criticism of Botta, upon the general policy of the British government during these early hostilities. In speaking of Gage, he says: "He arrived in America accompanied with general affection: he left it abhorred; perhaps less through his own fault than that of the ministers, who, in place of rigorous decrees, should have sent powerful armies; or instead of armies, conciliatory conditions, consonant with the opinions of Americans. But men commonly know neither how to exert all their force, nor to surmount the shame of descending to an accommodation: hence delays, hesitations, and half measures, so often prove the ruin of enterprises."—(*Otis' Translation.*)

The whole proceedings of the British military and naval forces at this time were calculated rather to annoy and enrage, than to overawe. There were many cruisers busied upon the coast in hindering the American commerce, and in procuring supplies for the beleaguered garrison at Boston. The sea-port towns suffered from their depredations; and, in one especial instance, the action of the provincials in preventing the procurement of provisions, &c., by a British vessel, was punished by bombardment. This was at Fal-mouth, afterwards Portland, which was destroyed in the month of October (1775).

Congress was at this time in session, having come together early

in the preceding month. Delegates from all the original thirteen colonies were present; Georgia had elected deputies since the last meeting. The principal attention of this body was necessarily directed to the maintenance of the army, the difficulty of procuring ammunition and military stores being very great. Privileges of trade were granted to vessels in which gun-powder should be imported, and ships were dispatched to distant foreign ports, even to the coast of Guinea, for the purchase of this grand desideratum of modern warfare.

The three New England colonies, at an early period in the war, commenced retaliations upon British commerce, for the injuries committed at sea. The first step taken by the Massachusetts assembly, was to direct the arming of several vessels to protect the sea-coast. From this they proceeded to authorize private adventure, by the issue of letters-of-marque, and the allowance of reprisals. Courts of admiralty were also instituted to decide prize claims. The privateers thus commissioned were, however, restricted to the seizure of vessels containing supplies for "the soldiers who made war against the Americans."

The general congress adopted, soon after, substantially the same course. A fleet of thirteen vessels was ordered to be fitted out in the northern and middle colonies. Continental courts of admiralty were also created, and the public vessels received a general commission to "capture all those which should attempt to lend assistance to the enemy, in any mode whatever." It is singular to observe the manner in which congress, previous to the declaration of independence, while adopting every measure of open hostility, still aimed at a nominal distinction between rebellion against the British government and the resistance of illegal demands—still professing loyalty to the king, but denouncing his civil and military officials in the colonies as public enemies.

In the autumn of 1775, a plan was consummated for the invasion of Canada. It was supposed that the French inhabitants of that province would rejoice at an opportunity for successful resistance to an authority always galling to their national pride, and recently rendered more odious by the arbitrary provisions of the "Quebec act." The regular force at this time stationed in Canada was very small, and the opportunity seemed peculiarly favourable for a bold and unexpected offensive demonstration. Information had also been received by congress, that, with the opening of spring, the

British  
that num  
in order  
not seas

A det  
England  
strate C  
Sorel to  
Woosten  
Schuyler  
devoided  
Gener  
approach  
Sorel, by  
cans wer  
river, an  
command  
Advance  
districts,  
the object  
in driving

Many,  
ally recei  
were also  
Major Bro  
undertook  
was unabl  
latter, at  
superior fo  
to England

Carleton  
way thithe  
upon the  
dered on t  
into the h  
shells and  
nearly spen

Upon the  
treat, whic  
entered the



British government "was to make a grand effort in this province; that numerous forces, arms, and munitions, would be poured into it, in order to attack the colonies in the back: an operation which, if not seasonably prevented, might have fatal consequences."

A detachment of three thousand men, from New York and New England, under command of General Schuyler, was ordered to penetrate Canada by the route of Lake Champlain, passing down the Sorel to the St. Lawrence. Brigadier-Generals Montgomery and Wooster held subordinate commands; but, upon the detention of Schuyler at Albany, by sickness, the direction of the expedition devolved upon the former.

General Carleton, governor of Canada, receiving intimation of the approach of the enemy, endeavoured to secure the entrance of the Sorel, by dispatching thither several armed vessels; but the Americans were in advance of the movement. Montgomery entered the river, and, landing his forces, laid siege to Fort St. John, which commanded the passage, and was garrisoned by a considerable force. Advance parties were sent, by land, into the neighbouring Canadian districts, to circulate a proclamation of the Americans, setting forth the object of the invasion, and calling upon the inhabitants to join in driving the British garrisons from the country.

Many, accordingly, enlisted, and the scouting parties were generally received with kindness and hospitality. Arms and provisions were also furnished by the Canadians. Colonel Ethan Allen and Major Brown, in command of one of these advanced detachments, undertook the bold enterprise of an assault upon Montreal. Brown was unable to pass the river in time to cooperate with Allen, and the latter, at the head of a very small party, was overpowered by a superior force, under command of Governor Carleton. He was sent to England in irons.

Carleton next endeavoured to relieve Fort St. John, but, on his way thither, he met with so warm a reception from troops posted upon the river-bank, that a retreat was ordered. The fort surrendered on the 3d of November. A number of pieces of artillery fell into the hands of the Americans, and a considerable supply of shells and balls, but the provisions and powder of the garrison were nearly spent.

Upon the approach of the invading forces, Carleton fled from Montreal, which was untenable against a superior force, and Montgomery entered the city, without opposition, on the 13th. He took great

pains to conciliate the inhabitants, and succeeded in raising a body of volunteers to supply, in some measure, the diminution of his forces, by the return home of those whose term of service had expired. A necessary supply of warm clothing was also procured to protect the troops from the severity of the approaching winter. The establishment of garrisons at the captured posts, together with the defection alluded to, had reduced the effective force of the invaders to about three hundred men; but, with this handful of troops, Montgomery commenced his march towards Quebec, exposed to the rigours of a Canadian winter.

---

## CHAPTER X.

ARNOLD'S EXPEDITION AGAINST QUEBEC: PASSAGE OF THE WILDERNESS: FAILURE OF PROVISIONS: DEFECTION OF ENOS, WITH HIS COMMAND: ARRIVAL AT THE CANADIAN SETTLEMENTS: PROCLAMATIONS: ARNOLD AT THE HEIGHTS OF ABRAHAM: UNION WITH MONTGOMERY: ATTACK ON QUEBEC: DEATH OF MONTGOMERY: MORGAN'S RIFLE CORPS. AMERICAN FORCES DRAWN OFF.

IN accordance with the plan of the campaign, while Montgomery seized upon Montreal, Quebec was to be attacked from a most unexpected quarter. Fourteen companies, amounting to about eleven hundred men, were put under command of Colonel Arnold, in the month of September, with instructions to force a passage through the wilderness, by proceeding up the Kennebec river, in Maine, thence across the mountains to the head waters of the Chaudiere, and down that stream to its entry into the St. Lawrence, near Quebec.

To estimate the difficulties of such an undertaking, it must be considered that the whole route lay through an uninhabited country; that every natural obstacle of a rough, uncultivated region, must be overcome; that no provisions could be procured on the way; and that all supplies, arms, and camp furniture, must be transported by hand around the *portages*, or unnavigable places on the rivers, and over the highlands to be passed before reaching the Chaudiere.

As the detachment approached the sources of the Kennebec, the

supply of  
by expos  
and unna  
being in  
the sick  
This offic  
desertion  
tial, on t  
body cou

Before  
divided a  
any settle  
party, led  
quantity  
and enab  
adian sett  
Arnold is  
of the A  
people of  
of commo

The A  
pursuing  
Point Lev  
of the St.  
tion, no b  
across the

"It is e  
inhabitants  
not compr  
ported the  
them not r  
first mome  
he would h

Opportu  
ening the c  
night of the  
the heights  
gement  
American

supply of provisions was nearly exhausted. The soldiers, worn out by exposure, hardship, and toil, and compelled to resort to crude and unnatural aliment, suffered much from sickness. Colonel Enos, being in command of one division of the army, was ordered to select the sick and unserviceable, who were to be sent back to Boston. This officer accordingly withdrew his entire command—a species of desertion, which was afterwards excused upon a trial by court-martial, on the ground that provision for the sustenance of the whole body could not by possibility have been procured.

Before reaching the Chaudiere, the scant remains of food were divided among the soldiers, and, at a distance of thirty miles from any settlement, the whole store was exhausted. A small scouting party, led by Arnold in person, succeeded in procuring a sufficient quantity of provision to recruit the strength of their companions, and enable them to continue their march. Upon reaching the Canadian settlements, after more than a month spent in the wilderness, Arnold issued proclamations, drawn up by the commander-in-chief of the American army, disclaiming all hostile intent towards the people of Canada, and exhorting them to join as brothers in a cause of common interest.

The Americans were hospitably received and entertained; and, pursuing their march, they arrived, on the 9th of November, at Point Levy, nearly opposite the Canadian capital, on the right bank of the St. Lawrence. Unfortunately for the success of the expedition, no boats could be procured for the transportation of the army across the river.

“It is easy to imagine the stupor of surprise which seized the inhabitants of Quebec, at the apparition of these troops. They could not comprehend by what way, or in what mode, they had transported themselves into this region. This enterprise appeared to them not merely marvellous, but miraculous; and if Arnold, in this first moment, had been able to cross the river, and fall upon Quebec, he would have taken it without difficulty.”\*

Opportunity was given, by the delay thus occasioned, for strengthening the defences, and for organizing the citizen-soldiery. On the night of the 13th of November, Arnold crossed the river, and ascended the heights at the spot memorable as the scene of the decisive engagement between the French and English in the late war. The American general had hoped to come upon the city by surprise, but

\* Otis' Botta.

he ascertained, upon a nearer approach, that the garrison was under arms and on the alert. His own ardent feelings impelled him to an immediate assault, but he abandoned the rash design upon consideration of the unserviceable condition of the arms of his troops, and their very scanty stock of ammunition. He drew off his forces, and retired to Point au Tremble, twenty miles from the city, there to await the arrival of Montgomery.

The two detachments met on the 1st of December. United, they formed a body of less than one thousand men, but with these the commanding officer determined to attack the capital. Carleton had, in the mean time, made his way to the anticipated scene of conflict, and so disposed his available force of regulars and of the provincial militia, as to constitute an adequate garrison. Arriving at Quebec, on the 5th, Montgomery summoned the city to surrender, but the demand was treated with contempt, and the bearer of the flag was fired upon. For several days, the general then attempted to produce an impression by playing upon the city with a few pieces of artillery, planted behind an embankment of ice.

The weather now became intensely cold, and frequent and heavy falls of snow added to the discomfort and suffering of the invaders. The small-pox, moreover, broke out among them, and spread, in spite of all practicable precautions. Every day the chances of success were diminishing, and it was decided to assault the city without further delay. The little army, in two divisions, led by Montgomery and Arnold, made the attack before day-light, on the 31st of December. The garrison had obtained intimation of the design, and preparations were completed for the reception of the enemy. Montgomery was killed, at the first discharge of artillery, and his division fell back. Arnold entered the city from the opposite quarter, marching at the head of his troops. Upon approaching a barricade, defended by two pieces of artillery, he received a severe wound in the leg from a musket-ball, which entirely disabled him. The barricade was forced by the exertions of the intrepid and active Morgan, commander of the rifle corps; but further defences appeared, well guarded. A heavy fire, opened upon their front and rear, compelled the little band of assailants to disperse, and seek shelter in the buildings. Some three hundred of them fell into the hands of the enemy. The remainder of the army of invasion was drawn off, and encamped a few miles from the city.

WARLIK

BIES.—

BILLS:

ISH I

—E

AM

THE sta  
in the aut  
position ta  
ministry w  
Believing  
passed, the  
contempt,  
force in A  
United Ki  
seventeen  
The whole  
Canada, w

The colo  
intercourse  
ants were o  
under this a  
ican crews  
on board I  
eloquent op  
jority in p  
was conferr  
recalled. T  
manded the  
the rebellio

The cont  
most import  
forces, by ap  
the troops s

## CHAPTER XI.

WARLIKE PREPARATIONS IN ENGLAND.—GERMAN MERCENARIES.—PROCEEDINGS OF CONGRESS: ENLISTMENTS: ISSUE OF BILLS: DEFENCES IN NEW YORK.—CONDITION OF THE BRITISH IN BOSTON.—OCCUPATION OF DORCHESTER HEIGHTS.—EVACUATION OF THE CITY.—HOPKINS' CRUISE AMONG THE BAHAMAS.—AFFAIRS AT THE SOUTH.—ATTACK UPON CHARLESTON.—RETREAT OF THE AMERICAN TROOPS FROM CANADA.

THE state of feeling in England at the aspect of American affairs, in the autumn of 1775, was one of mingled mortification, at the bold position taken and maintained by the colonies, and discontent with a ministry which had "done too much to irritate, too little to subdue." Believing that the time for the adoption of conciliatory policy had passed, the government treated the late petition of congress with contempt, and hastened forward measures for increasing the regular force in America. Enlistments were encouraged throughout the United Kingdom, and, by arrangement with the German princes, seventeen thousand mercenaries were engaged to serve in America. The whole force expected to be raised, including those enlisted in Canada, was, numerically, over fifty thousand.

The colonies were proclaimed as being in a state of rebellion; intercourse with them was forbidden, and the effects of the inhabitants were declared liable to seizure. In the case of vessels captured under this act, an infamous provision was added, by which the American crews were made liable to impressment and compulsory service on board British armed vessels. Notwithstanding a vehement and eloquent opposition, these measures were sanctioned by a large majority in parliament. The chief command of the army in America was conferred upon General Howe, in place of Gage, who had been recalled. The brother of the former, Admiral Lord Howe, commanded the fleet destined to cooperate with the land forces against the rebellious colonies.

The continental congress, meanwhile, had not been idle. The most important proceedings related to the details of enlisting regular forces, by apportionment among the provinces. Great numbers of the troops stationed before Boston, unaccustomed to the hardships

and tedium of military life, had become completely disheartened; and, upon expiration of the short term of their enlistment, refused to continue longer with the army upon any promises, or any representations of necessity. To meet the increasing expenses of the war, an additional issue of three millions in bills of credit was resolved upon, redeemable, like the former, by instalments, payments to commence at the expiration of eight years.

Precautions were also taken, at the opening of the year 1776, for the defence of the city of New York, where the number and influence of the tories rendered dependence upon the local militia unsafe. Troops from New Jersey and Connecticut were introduced into the city, and the command was bestowed upon General Lee. Many acts of violence were committed at this time upon the persons and property of adherents to the royal cause.

At Boston, the British garrison suffered much hardship throughout the winter, from deficiency of fuel and provision. Many English vessels, freighted with stores, were taken by the colonial privateers, and others were lost on the coast. The army, encompassed by a superior force, was entirely unable to carry on any offensive operations against the enemy. As spring approached, it appeared necessary, to congress and to the officers of the continental army, that a decisive blow should be struck in this quarter, that the besieging forces might be free to act wherever occasion should require.

The heights of Dorchester commanded the city and harbour from the southward, and the attention of the commander-in-chief was directed to the occupation of that important position. On the night of March 4th, 1776, a force of about two thousand, men well provided with carts of fascines, &c., and all necessary working implements, was dispatched upon this service. A cannonade was kept up from batteries sufficiently near to throw shells into the city; and, favoured by the darkness of the night and the direction of the wind, the troops accomplished the important movement without discovery or suspicion. By day-light, when the British garrison first had intimation of the proceeding, substantial works had been already erected, and the business of intrenchment and fortification was going on with uninterrupted ardour.

A storm opportunely prevented the British general from crossing with his forces to attack the redoubt, and the delay thus incurred gave sufficient time for completing the intrenchments, and making all needful preparations for defence, and for a bombardment of the

city. How  
determina  
retreat. S  
General W  
city, and  
assent was  
of ships an  
sail unmo  
Americans  
some other  
of the city,  
to remain  
leaving the

The flee  
entirely in  
Washington  
and was re  
barkation  
during whic  
from the de  
tonly destr  
artillery an  
whether by  
able evacua  
transportati  
pieces of ar  
neighbourin

Ere this p  
frigates, thr  
and manne  
sailed upon  
The special  
stored there.

der, to the a  
The south  
calamities of  
under Lord  
ment of the  
A portion of  
remainder w

city. Howe saw that his position was untenable, and avowed his determination to evacuate the city quietly, if undisturbed in his retreat. Some of the principal inhabitants of Boston waited upon General Washington, with representations of the condition of the city, and requests that he would comply with this proposal. His assent was obtained, and the whole British army, crowded on board of ships and transports which lay in the harbour, was allowed to set sail unmolested. The place of their destination was unknown to the Americans, and it was feared that a descent would be made upon some other portion of the coast. Fifteen hundred of the inhabitants of the city, who, having openly taken part with the loyalists, feared to remain after the evacuation, embarked with the British troops, leaving their property subject to seizure and confiscation.

The fleet sailed for Halifax, the condition of the troops being entirely incompatible with any immediate hostile demonstration. Washington entered the city with his army, on the 27th of March, and was received with great enthusiasm and rejoicing. The embarkation of the British troops had occupied nearly a fortnight, during which period, the inhabitants had suffered considerable injury from the depredations of the more lawless and disorderly, who wantonly destroyed great quantities of provisions, &c. The British artillery and munitions of war were abandoned to the Americans, whether by private agreement, as a condition upon which a peaceable evacuation was permitted, or because of insufficient means of transportation, does not distinctly appear. Two hundred and fifty pieces of artillery—mostly spiked—were secured at Boston and the neighbouring fortifications.

Ere this period, congress had commenced operations at sea. Two frigates, three corvettes, and a number of gun-sloops were fitted out and manned. With eight of these vessels, Commodore Hopkins sailed upon a cruise among the Bahamas, in the month of February. The special object was the seizure of munitions of war known to be stored there. At New Providence a seasonable supply of gun-powder, to the amount of one hundred and fifty kegs, was secured.

The southern colonies, meanwhile, were not exempt from the calamities of war. The coasts of Virginia were harassed by a force under Lord Dunmore, the former governor, who, at the commencement of the year, made an attack upon the thriving town of Norfolk. A portion of the place was burned by the attacking party, and the remainder was fired by its defenders when no longer tenable. In

North Carolina severe contests took place, in the month of February, between the provincials and loyalists.

It was supposed in England that if a strong force were once landed in the southern colonies, those of the inhabitants who favoured the royal cause would hasten to join it, and that a permanent stand might be effected in that quarter. In North Carolina, the tory interest was known to have many adherents. A considerable fleet, with more than two thousand soldiers on board, was, therefore, sent, under command of Sir Peter Parker, to seize upon the more important sea-ports. The squadron was joined by Sir Henry Clinton, who took command of the land forces: the city of Charleston was selected as the first point of attack.

Timely notice of these preparations had been obtained by the Americans, and a fort was erected on Sullivan's island to protect the harbour. General Lee was entrusted with the principal command. On the 28th of June, the British fleet entered the harbour, and commenced bombarding the fort. A small regiment, under Colonel Moultrie, was stationed at that important post. The fire was returned with great effect, and the plans of the admiral being thwarted by the grounding of several of his vessels, the attempt was abandoned. No landing was effected, and the fleet set sail for New York, the appointed rendezvous for the reinforcements ordered from England and the German states.

Every thing had been prepared at the city of Charleston to give the invaders a warm reception. Great numbers of the militia had been called in to increase the garrison, and such measures were taken for the defence of the place as time and opportunity permitted. The enemy's loss, during the cannonade, could not have been much less than two hundred; that of the garrison at the fort was very trifling.

In Canada, the American forces effected nothing. Reinforcements were repeatedly sent out to the camp, but when British forces began to pour into the country, the troops, after several disastrous attempts to retrieve their fortune, were drawn off, and retreated homeward by Lake Champlain. The loss of several valuable officers, of a great number of men, and a great expenditure of money—not continental bills, but hard cash—were the only results of the Canadian expedition, concerning which such sanguine expectations had been formed. The remnant of the army of invasion returned in miserable plight, nearly destitute, and, worse than all, utterly discouraged and dispirited.

STATE OF I  
—DEBAT  
PENDE  
BRIT

THE FORM  
arate colonie  
the idea of a  
While the t  
of the prov  
political con  
Long before  
the Iroquois,  
of a federal  
ual experienc  
interest, with

In the win  
by Thomas F  
its appearanc  
lar declamati  
bility, and ev  
time that he  
ation of the d  
sion to Englan  
beyond quest

The late ac  
cenaries to ser  
tribes in favo  
indignation.  
dain; no me  
England; and  
but an open c  
for ever all tie  
extended for  
"At this ep



## CHAPTER XII.

STATE OF FEELING IN THE COLONIES.—PAINE'S WRITINGS.  
—DEBATES IN CONGRESS.—THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE: ITS EFFECT UPON THE PEOPLE.—THE BRITISH AT STATEN ISLAND.—PROCLAMATION OF GENERAL AND OF ADMIRAL HOWE.

THE formation of independent systems of government in the separate colonies, familiarized the minds of the American people with the idea of a permanent disconnection with the British government. While the thought of state sovereignty was flattering to the pride of the provincials, it was evident that, without some established political connection, no great national object could be obtained. Long before the revolution, it is said that the chiefs and orators of the Iroquois, or Six Nations, advised the adoption, by the colonies, of a federal union similar to their own, proving, from their individual experience, the practicability of union for all purposes of common interest, without infringement of the rights of each distinct tribe.

In the winter of 1776, a work, entitled "*Common Sense*," written by Thomas Paine, an Englishman, residing in Pennsylvania, made its appearance. By shrewd reasoning, logical argument, and popular declamation, the author endeavoured to establish the practicability, and even necessity, of American independence, at the same time that he excited the feelings of the people, by a vivid representation of the disgrace and misery that must follow close upon submission to England. The book was extensively circulated, and exercised, beyond question, a most powerful influence.

The late action of parliament, in the employment of Hessian mercenaries to serve in America, and the enlistment of the Indian border tribes in favour of the royal cause, produced a storm of popular indignation. The petition of congress had been spurned with disdain; no measures but those of force had met with favour in England; and it was now plain that nothing was left to the colonies but an open declaration to the world of their determination to sunder for ever all ties with a government whose protection had only been extended for selfish ends.

"At this epoch," says an early writer, "America was found in a

strange situation, and actually unheard of till then. The war she had carried on with so much vigour, now, for more than a year, was directed against a king to whom she incessantly renewed her protestations of obedience; and the same men who committed all the acts of rebellion, would by no means be called rebels. In all the tribunals justice was still administered in the name of the king; and in the churches prayers were continually repeated for the preservation and happiness of that prince, whose authority was not only entirely rejected, but also fought against with incredible obstinacy."

The first step taken by congress in furtherance of the popular cause, was a recommendation to such of the colonies as had not already adopted a provisional, independent, civil government, to proceed to the establishment of "such governments as, according to the opinion of the representatives of the people, should be most conducive to the happiness of their constituents, and of America in general." This proposal was generally acted upon, and, in many instances, the congressional delegates were formally invested by the colonial assemblies with power to act upon the anticipated question.

A motion in favour of American independence was made in congress on the 7th of June, and, on the following day, was debated with great ability and eloquence. Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, who advocated the motion, and John Dickinson, of Pennsylvania, who argued in opposition, were the principal speakers. The decision of the question was postponed until July, that full opportunity might be given to the members to receive instructions from their constituents.

On the 4th of July, 1776, that memorable instrument, known as the "Declaration of Independence," was signed by delegates from the thirteen original colonies, thenceforth the United States of America. It was understood to have been principally drawn up by Thomas Jefferson, who, with John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Philip Livingston, had been appointed to prepare it, previous to the late adjournment.

The preamble commences: "When in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent regard to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation." Then follow a

declaration  
of wrongs  
the neglect  
been receiv  
united colo  
states; tha  
crown, and  
of Great B  
of personal  
the docum  
support of  
Divine Pro  
fortunes, an

In all the  
was receive  
exultation  
with excite  
Royal statu  
destroyed.  
felicitous pr  
condition of  
and to corre  
of inhabitan  
tees to exer  
of favouring  
emigrated;  
themselves v  
and prohibit

The recor  
cession of r  
already effec  
and opened  
inces. Stre  
northward of  
southern exp  
General How  
to open nego  
of the Ameri  
British officia

declaration of rights, natural and political, a forcible recapitulation of wrongs inflicted by the British government, with a reference to the neglect or contempt with which all petitions for redress had been received, and, in conclusion, it is boldly asserted, "that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connexion between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved." The sense of personal responsibility felt by the fifty-five members who signed the document, is expressed in the closing words: "And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honour."

In all the principal cities, the intelligence of this act of congress was received with the most extravagant expressions of joy. The exultation of the army was boundless, and the populace, mad with excitement, celebrated the event with noisy demonstrations. Royal statues and insignia were every where thrown down and destroyed. At New York, an image of George III., formed by a felicitous propriety, of lead, was converted into musket-balls. The condition of all acknowledged or suspected tories was lamentable, and to correct and moderate the excesses committed upon this class of inhabitants, congress took the matter in hand, instituting committees to exert a constraining power over those who were suspected of favouring the enemy. "The most obnoxious tories had already emigrated; and, for the present, the new governments contented themselves with admonitions, fines, recognizances to keep the peace, and prohibitions to go beyond certain limits."\*

The recommencement of hostilities was followed by a long succession of most disheartening reverses. The British forces had already effected a landing upon Staten Island, where they encamped and opened communications with the loyalists in the adjoining provinces. Strengthened by arrivals from England, and by the return northward of the troops embarked under Sir Peter Parker, for the southern expedition, to a force of more than twenty thousand men, General Howe prepared for a descent upon New York. An attempt to open negotiations with congress, and with the commander-in-chief of the American army, had previously failed, from the refusal of the British officials to treat otherwise than as with private individuals.

\* Hildreth.

The result of an interview, afterwards brought about, between General and Admiral Howe, and deputies commissioned by congress, was only to convince the former that no terms would be listened to which they were empowered to grant.

The two brothers Howe were commissioned by the king to grant discretionary pardon to all in the colonies who would consent to renew their allegiance. Proclamations were issued in accordance with this commission, calling upon all loyal subjects to separate themselves from the rebels, and representing to the malcontents the desperate condition to which further resistance must reduce them, while, on the other hand, submission would ensure present safety, and the royal promise for a future redress of all grievances.

### CHAPTER XIII.

LANDING OF THE BRITISH ON LONG ISLAND.—BATTLE OF BROOKLYN.—THE AMERICAN FORCES DRIVEN FROM LONG ISLAND.—OCCUPATION OF NEW YORK BY THE BRITISH.—WASHINGTON'S ENCAMPMENT AT HARLEM HEIGHTS: AT WHITE PLAINS.—STORMING OF FORT WASHINGTON.—THE RETREAT THROUGH NEW JERSEY.—CAPTURE OF GENERAL LEE.—CONDITION OF PRISONERS.—LAKE CHAMPLAIN: DESTRUCTION OF THE AMERICAN VESSELS.—GENEROSITY OF CARLETON.—RHODE ISLAND SEIZED BY THE BRITISH.

ANTICIPATING an attack by way of Long Island, General Washington posted a force of about nine thousand men, under General Putnam, at Brooklyn. The approach to the American camp from the point where the British were expected to land, was by four roads, two leading over the intervening hills, and the others, less direct, deviating in opposite directions, one along the western shore, the other eastward. These avenues, owing to some misapprehension or bad management, were insufficiently guarded.

The British having landed on the 22d of August (1776), commenced their march towards Brooklyn, on the night of the 26th. Upon the first intelligence of their approach, two divisions of the

American army  
repel the ad  
opposing for  
thrown into  
most efficien  
purpose, by  
by hard figh  
was destroye  
made prison  
men. A hea

On the nig  
across the Ea  
of Long Islan  
camped at the  
The British  
erected upon  
passage up th  
shipping, a la  
on the 15th of  
in the most c  
rendered abs  
loss in artiller  
abandoned to

Washington  
awaited the m  
of the North r  
the Sound. In  
to avoid being  
accordingly, at  
tage in a part  
detachment of  
from its positio

Forts Washi  
passage of the  
river, a few mi  
They had been  
American arm  
by storm, not  
and two thous  
after hastily e

American army, under Sullivan and Stirling, were dispatched to repel the advance over the hills and by the western road. The opposing forces were already engaged, when the Americans were thrown into confusion by an attack in the rear—Clinton, with the most efficient portion of his troops, having made a detour for that purpose, by the unguarded eastern approach. Stirling's division, by hard fighting, mostly regained the camp, but that of Sullivan was destroyed or compelled to surrender. Both these generals were made prisoners, together with not far from one thousand of their men. A heavy loss was also sustained in killed and wounded.

On the night of the 29th, the American troops effected a retreat across the East river, to New York, leaving the enemy in possession of Long Island. The main force of the continentals was now encamped at the heights of Harlem, or within the city of New York. The British had control of the surrounding waters, the defences erected upon the Hudson having proved insufficient to prevent a passage up the river. Under protection of a heavy fire from the shipping, a landing upon the island was effected by General Howe on the 15th of September. The troops drawn up in opposition, fled in the most cowardly manner, and an evacuation of the city was rendered absolutely necessary. The Americans sustained severe loss in artillery and stores, which, upon their hasty retreat, were abandoned to the enemy.

Washington's forces, securely posted upon the heights of Harlem, awaited the movements of the British. The latter kept possession of the North river, and made advances down the northern shore of the Sound. It became necessary to occupy a position further north, to avoid being cut off from supplies, and a new camp was formed, accordingly, at White Plains. The enemy gained a further advantage in a partial engagement on the 28th of October, in which a detachment of between one and two thousand Americans was driven from its position near the main camp, with great loss.

Forts Washington and Lee, which were intended to command the passage of the Hudson, being situated upon opposite banks of the river, a few miles above New York, were the next objects of attack. They had been strongly garrisoned, when the main body of the American army moved northward. The first of these was taken by storm, not without severe loss on the part of the assailants, and two thousand prisoners were secured. Fort Lee was soon after hastily evacuated; the artillery of both strongholds, to-

gether with a great amount of valuable stores, was lost to the Americans.

This was in the middle of November: the continental army, reduced by these losses, by desertion, and by the expiration of the terms of enlistment, to between three and four thousand men, was driven from post to post in New Jersey. Slowly retiring before a greatly superior force, Washington occupied in succession the towns of Newark, Brunswick, Princeton, Sterling, and Trenton. His troops, disheartened by defeat, and worn out by marching and exposure, were in a condition of miserable destitution, while the pursuers were well supplied with the necessaries and conveniences of a campaign.

Lord Cornwallis, with an overwhelming force, continued to press upon the retreating army, and, on the 2d of December, Washington transported his troops across the Delaware, taking the usual precautions to arrest the progress of the pursuers by the destruction of bridges and the removal of boats. The British took possession of Trenton and the adjoining country, but neglected to push their advantage by an immediate passage of the river.

Washington, anxious to recruit his forces, had issued orders to other divisions of the army to join him with all expedition. General Lee, from a spirit of insubordination or self-sufficiency, was dilatory in obeying the order. Avoiding the British army, by a detour, he occupied the highlands at the westward, apparently in hopes of effecting some bold manœuvre on his own account. Exposing himself carelessly, with an insufficient guard, he was betrayed by Tories, and fell into the hands of the enemy. The refusal of the British authorities to consider him a prisoner of war, on the ground that, having been an officer in the English service, he was only to be looked upon as a traitor, led to retaliation upon prisoners in the hands of the Americans. Exchanges were impeded, and a sense of mutual injury led to lamentable results.

Of the American prisoners in New York, it is said that, "they were shut up in churches, and in other places, exposed to all the inclemencies of the air. They were not allowed sufficient nourishment; their fare was scanty, even of coarse bread, and certain aliments which excited disgust. The sick were confined with the healthy, both equally a prey to the most shocking defect of cleanliness. \* \* A confined and impure air engendered mortal diseases; more than fifteen hundred of these unfortunate men perished in a

few weeks. who was su by a small

During th winter, fort quarter. A object of ea construction far greater f latter, comm October. C stroyed, to p Americans,

The Britis upon the An garrison bei of kindness every bad p Carleton, of singular cou homes the A tering gener towards the he caused th after having armies of the

Early in D in New Eng of English a Narragansett anicut and l cellent harbo operations by the American a number of sea, and rend

So dark we among the m and of those availed them

few weeks." Lee was afterwards exchanged for General Prescott, who was surprised and captured at his quarters, on Rhode Island, by a small party of Americans.

During the autumn of 1776, and the early portion of the ensuing winter, fortune seemed to frown upon the American cause in every quarter. At the north, the possession of Lake Champlain was an object of eager contention. Both parties busied themselves in the construction of vessels, for which the British, under Carleton, had far greater facilities than the Americans. The little squadron of the latter, commanded by Arnold, was defeated on the 6th and 7th of October. One of the vessels was taken, and the others were destroyed, to prevent their falling into the hands of the enemy. The Americans, however, still held Fort Ticonderoga.

The British, having possession of the lake, made no further attempt upon the American fortifications, but mostly retired to Montreal, a garrison being left at Isle au Noix. It is pleasing to revert to acts of kindness and generosity in the midst of scenes calculated to arouse every bad passion in the minds of men. Such are recorded of Carleton, of whom it is said, that "prior to his retreat, from the singular courtesy and humanity of his character, he sent to their homes the American officers who had fallen into his power, administering generously to all their wants. He exercised the same humanity towards the common soldiers. The greater part were almost naked: he caused them to be completely clothed, and set them at liberty, after having taken their oath that they would not serve against the armies of the king."—(*Botta.*)

Early in December, the British secured another important position in New England. A fleet, under Sir Peter Parker, with large forces of English and Hessians, commanded by General Clinton, entered Narragansett Bay. The island of Rhode Island, with those of Conanicut and Prudence, were occupied without resistance; the excellent harbour of Newport afforded admirable facilities for future operations by sea; and, as the entrance to the bay was commanded, the American squadron, under Commodore Hopkins, together with a number of private armed vessels, was prevented from putting to sea, and rendered, for the time, useless.

So dark were the prospects of the patriots, at this crisis, that many among the most sanguine were discouraged; and, of the wavering, and of those who, at heart, favoured the royal cause, great numbers availed themselves of the offers proclaimed by the Howes, by ac-

knowledging allegiance to the king, and the acceptance of a British protection. Allen and Galloway, former members of the continental congress, from Pennsylvania, were among the number of those who thus avowed their disapproval of the revolution, or their distrust in the ability of its advocates to carry out the great design.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

CONGRESS AT BALTIMORE.—ARMY ORGANIZATION.—POWERS  
CONFERRED UPON WASHINGTON.—PASSAGE OF THE DELA-  
WARE, AND RECOVERY OF TRENTON.—BATTLE OF PRINCE-  
TON.—END OF THE CAMPAIGN.—MARAUDING PARTIES  
—NEGOTIATION WITH EUROPEAN POWERS.—FOR-  
EIGN OFFICERS IN THE AMERICAN SERVICE.

CONGRESS, being in session at Philadelphia when the continental army was driven across the Delaware, found itself in too dangerous proximity to the British army, and an adjournment to Baltimore speedily followed the establishment of the latter at Trenton. The details of military organization necessarily occupied almost the undivided attention of this body. The straits to which the continental army was reduced, by the diminution of its numbers, consequent upon the expiration of terms of enlistment, rendered the establishment of a more permanent force a matter of pressing necessity. This measure had, all along, been vehemently urged by Washington, who had fully experienced the difficulty of preserving discipline in an army whose materials were subject to constant change. Provision, therefore, was made for the enlistment, by apportionment among the provinces, of troops to serve during the war, or for a period of three years. The first, in addition to a present bounty in money, were to receive each one hundred acres of public land on retiring from service.

Absolute discretionary powers were, at the same time, bestowed upon the commander-in-chief, for the six months succeeding, "to call into service the militia of the several states; to form such magazines of provisions, and in such places as he should think proper; to displace and appoint all officers under the rank of brigadier-general,

and to fill u  
ican armies  
want for th  
allowing a r  
sons who re  
disaffected t  
they were c  
the proofs t  
paper mone  
stringent reg

Never wen  
in this instan  
state of affair  
correspondin  
been reinforc  
by the militia  
determined to

The enemy  
the Delaware  
under Ralle,  
On the night  
twenty-five h  
severe, and th  
whole night w

At four o'el  
motion, in two  
ing by the Pe  
impracticable,  
night march—  
storm—to arri  
The Hessians  
retreat was cut  
was slain; and  
tion. The rem  
cans recrossed  
a trifling loss—

A few days  
ton, a powerfu  
the direction of  
undisciplined m



and to fill up all vacancies in every other department in the American armies; to take, wherever he might be, whatever he might want for the use of the army, if the inhabitants would not sell it, allowing a reasonable price for the same; to arrest and confine persons who refused to take the continental currency, or were otherwise disaffected to the American cause; returning to the states of which they were citizens their names and the nature of their offences, with the proofs to substantiate them." Very large additional issues of paper money had been made during the session, and the most stringent regulations soon followed to enforce its receipt.

Never were the powers of a dictator more worthily bestowed than in this instance. General Washington exhibited, in the melancholy state of affairs consequent upon the capture of New York, an energy corresponding to the requirements of his position. The army had been reinforced by the arrival of Lee's division, under Sullivan, and by the militia from the adjoining counties. Thus strengthened, he determined to enter at once upon offensive operations.

The enemy's force being widely extended along the left bank of the Delaware, a division of fifteen hundred men, mostly Hessians, under Ralle, constituted the entire army of occupation at Trenton. On the night of December 25th, Washington crossed the river, with twenty-five hundred men, nine miles above the city. The cold was severe, and the stream being blocked with floating ice, nearly the whole night was consumed in the business of transportation.

At four o'clock, on the following morning, the army was put in motion, in two divisions—one following the river, the other proceeding by the Pennington road, further to the left. Although it proved impracticable, from the state of the roads, and the difficulty of a night march—rendered doubly arduous by an inclement wintry storm—to arrive before day, the surprise was no less complete. The Hessians were overpowered, and driven in on all sides; their retreat was cut off in the direction of Princeton; their commander was slain; and two-thirds of the whole force surrendered at discretion. The remainder escaped by the Bordentown road. The Americans recrossed the river, with their prisoners, having sustained but a trifling loss—only about ten, in killed and wounded.

A few days subsequent, Washington having again occupied Trenton, a powerful army, under Cornwallis, approached the town from the direction of Princeton. One-half of the American forces were undisciplined militia, and all were ill prepared for the hardships of a

winter campaign. A general engagement would have been hazardous in the extreme, and, at a council of the American officers, it was concluded to make an attempt at turning the enemies' flank. Precautions were taken to leave the impression that active preparations were in process for intrenchment, while the main army (on the night of January 2d, 1777,) silently defiled upon the Allentown road, towards Princeton.

At the latter place, three British regiments, left in the rear by Cornwallis, were encountered. One of these, after some hard fighting, pushed on towards Trenton: the other two, having sustained considerable loss, retreated to Brunswick. Some three hundred prisoners were taken by the Americans.

The British, at Trenton, deceived by the continuance through the night of the patrol within the American lines, and by the camp-fires, which had been replenished before the march commenced, had no intimation of the state of affairs until they heard the sound of artillery in their rear. Cornwallis immediately marched for Brunswick to protect his military stores at that place, and Washington, still anxious to avoid a general engagement, moved towards Morristown, where he established the army in winter-quarters.

Nearly the whole of New Jersey was thus recovered from the enemy, and detachments were quartered at different points to retain possession. Through the remainder of the winter and spring, neither army was engaged in any general military operation. The British army was stationed at Amboy and Brunswick, suffering no small inconvenience from failure of provisions. Frightful outrages were committed by small marauding parties of soldiery. The Hessians, in particular, were stigmatized as monsters of cruelty. A bloody retaliation was not slow to follow, and many of the loyalists of New Jersey, even such as had held aloof from all share in political controversy, and could be accused of no overt act of opposition to the patriots, too often were compelled to suffer for wrongs in which they had no share.

While the national forces were thus in comparative repose, the calamities of a state of war were still widely felt. Privateers scoured the sea, and their crews and commanders, growing bolder by experience, pushed their adventures in waters where, at first, it was deemed rashness to intrude. Prizes taken by American vessels were disposed of without trouble in France. Old national feelings of jealousy and antipathy caused the government of that

country to  
of her riv

Congress  
various Eu  
of the ind  
office at th  
and Arthu  
regarded i  
shown, eve  
and secret  
These had  
private adv  
France, ho  
versy with  
existence o

Many m  
were anxie  
Many were  
pectation o  
worthy of  
ployed in t  
of capacity  
to deal wit  
Among the  
the Germa  
Pulaski, an  
over from  
without pa  
friend and

country to wink at irregularities which operated only to the injury of her rival.

Congress had not failed, ere this, to commission ambassadors to various European courts, to solicit political aid and acknowledgment of the independence of the states. Those who filled this important office at the court of France, were Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee. The favour with which the American claims were regarded in that quarter was manifest, and had been substantially shown, even before the declaration of independence, by an ingenious and secret operation for furnishing military supplies to the colonies. These had been forwarded to islands in the West Indies, as by private adventure, thence to be dispatched for the use of the colonies. France, however, was not as yet prepared to enter into open controversy with England, by an acknowledgment of the independent existence of the American republic.

Many military officers, from France and other European nations, were anxious to procure commissions in the American service: Many were sent over through the agency of Mr. Deane, in the expectation of receiving high commissions. Some of these proved worthy of the confidence placed in them, particularly those employed in the engineer department; others, although doubtless men of capacity and competent military education, were entirely unfitted to deal with a soldiery of the character of the continental army. Among those whose services were accepted, the most celebrated, were the German Baron de Kalb, the Polish officers Kosciusko and Pulaski, and the young Marquis de la Fayette. The latter came over from France at his own expense, and volunteered to serve without pay. He was made major-general, and became the intimate friend and companion of the commander-in-chief.

## CHAPTER XV.

EXPEDITIONS AGAINST PEEKSKILL AND DANBURY.—BRITISH PLAN OF CAMPAIGN.—HOWE'S DEPARTURE FROM NEW YORK.—BURGOYNE'S ARMY: HIS PROCLAMATION.—SIEGE OF TICONDEROGA.—RETREAT OF ST. CLAIR.—BURGOYNE ON THE HUDSON.—SIEGE OF FORT SCHUYLER.—BATTLE OF BENNINGTON.—INDIAN WARFARE.

THE spring of 1777 passed by without any important operation on the part of either of the main contending armies. The English succeeded in destroying large quantities of American stores at Peekskill, on the Hudson, and at Danbury, in the western part of Connecticut. The latter expedition was intrusted to governor, then General Tryon, with a detachment of no less than two thousand men. His retreat was not accomplished without loss, the militia of the vicinity, under Arnold and Wooster, harassing him by repeated attacks. Wooster received a fatal wound in one of these encounters. The bravery of Arnold, on this occasion, was highly commended, and rewarded by promotion.

On the other hand, a small force from Connecticut, crossing over to Long Island, proceeded to Sag-harbour, destroyed British stores and vessels, and took nearly a hundred prisoners.

The important events of the summer and autumn, transpiring in different portions of the country, and connected with distinct military operations, must be examined without reference to the date of their occurrence. The British plan of campaign was, that Howe's army should engage the attention of the main body of the continentals, threatening Philadelphia and other important towns in the middle states, while a powerful force, under Burgoyne, was to invade New England, seizing and occupying the military posts on Champlain and the Hudson, effecting a junction with the forces at New York, and cutting off communication between the north and south.

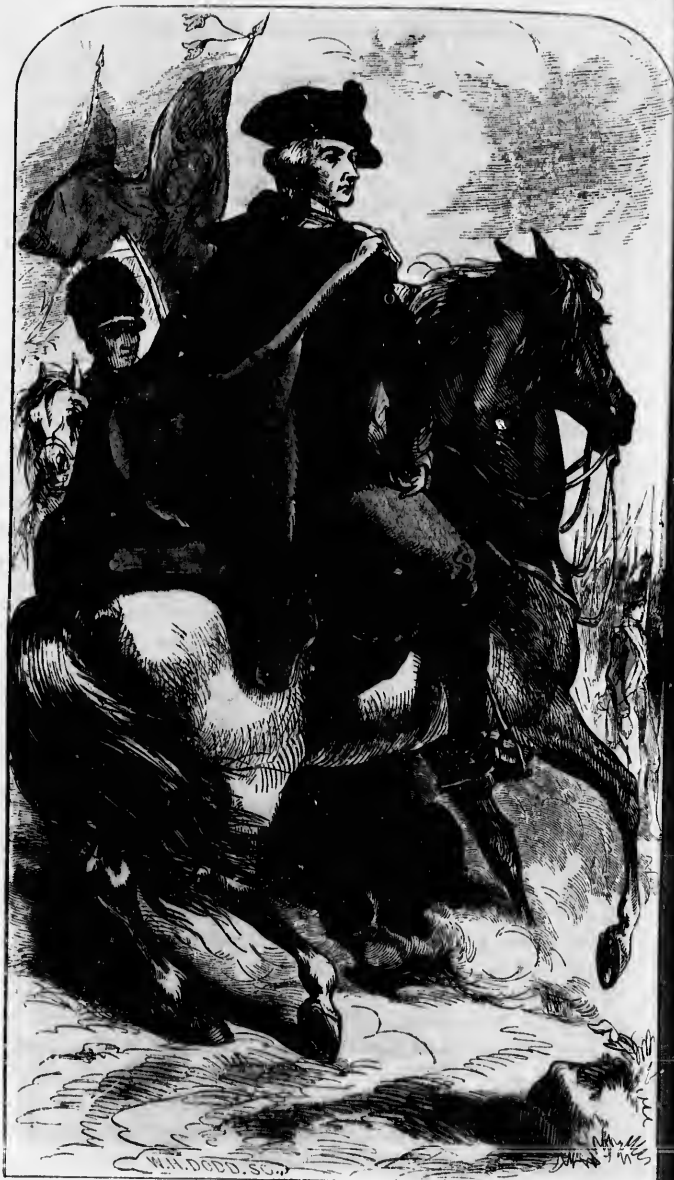
Howe, after various manœuvres, intended to bring about a general engagement—the result of which could hardly be doubtful, considering the difference in numbers and equipments between the opposing forces—crossed over to Staten Island, embarked with six-

—BRITISH  
NEW YORK.  
BATTLE OF  
MIDWINTER.  
—  
ARE.

at operation  
The English  
at Pecks-  
part of Con-  
ernor, then  
o thousand  
e militia of  
by repeated  
encounters.  
omended,

crossing over  
ritish stores

anspiring in  
stinct mili-  
the date of  
that Howe's  
e continent-  
owns in the  
s to invade  
on Cham-  
ces at New  
and south.  
out a gen-  
e doubtful,  
etween the  
d with six-



EQUESTRIAN PORTRAIT OF LORD CORNWALLIS.

teen thousand  
any intimat

In Canada  
the army of  
enabled to r  
and German  
Canadians, o  
In addition  
called, and  
reward and  
for the encou  
idation of th  
"quietly pur  
be furnished  
the "thousan  
fury was to  
the king.

Passing th  
mencement  
was entirely  
including m  
very extensi  
retreat was e  
unable to ga  
stores were  
now Whiteh  
A bridge and  
and free pass  
the stores we

The army,  
pursued by a  
rear division  
routed. The  
ler's head-qu  
toilsome mar

Notwithsta  
advance of th  
the channel o  
extremity of  
before the clo

teen thousand men, and made sail, in the month of July, without any intimation of his destination having transpired.

In Canada, Burgoyne, who had received the chief command of the army of the north, commenced preparations in May. He was enabled to marshal a fine army of seven thousand regulars, British and Germans, an artillery corps of five hundred, and seven hundred Canadians, destined for the various duties of rangers, woodmen, &c. In addition to this, a grand meeting of the Iroquois Indians was called, and their services were secured by additional promises of reward and protection. A flaming proclamation was next issued, for the encouragement of the New England loyalists, and the intimidation of the rebels. He promised protection to those who should "quietly pursue their occupations," and full pay for all that should be furnished for the army; the contumacious were threatened with the "thousands of Indians that were under his direction," and whose fury was to be let loose upon those who should take part against the king.

Passing the lake, Burgoyne laid siege to Ticonderoga, at the commencement of the month of July. The garrison, under St. Clair, was entirely insufficient for the protection of the fort. It numbered, including militia, about three thousand men, but the works were very extensive, and the troops were ill provided with arms. A retreat was effected on the night of the 5th, but the Americans were unable to gain sufficient time upon the enemy. The baggage and stores were dispatched up Wood Creek, towards Skeenesborough, now Whitehall, which place was appointed for general rendezvous. A bridge and other obstructions were soon removed by the British, and free passage was opened to the creek. The boats containing the stores were pursued and captured.

The army, retreating in the same direction by land, was hotly pursued by a detachment of the enemy, under General Fraser. The rear division was overtaken, on the 7th of July, and completely routed. The main body, led by St. Clair, reached General Schuyler's head-quarters, at Fort Edward, on the Hudson river, after a toilsome march over rough roads through the wilderness.

Notwithstanding every effort made to delay and obstruct the advance of the enemy, by blocking up the forest-roads, and choking the channel of the narrow creek which connects with the southern extremity of Lake Champlain, Burgoyne penetrated to the Hudson, before the close of the month. Evacuating Fort Edward, on the



approach of the British, General Schuyler retreated to Saratoga, thence to Stillwater, and, the enemy continuing to press onward, he finally encamped near the mouth of the Mohawk.

These disasters, at the north, were popularly attributed to incompetency on the part of the commanding officers, who were accordingly superseded by Generals Gates, Arnold, and Lincoln. Reinforcements, including the body of riflemen, under the redoubted Morgan, were also ordered, in all haste, to the seat of war at the north.

Before proceeding down the river, Burgoyne was desirous of collecting stores and provisions at his camp on the Hudson, by the route laid open from the head of Lake Champlain. Meanwhile, two excursions were planned and attempted at the west and east. General Barry St. Leger, with several companies of regulars, and a large body of Indians, under command of Joseph Brant, early in August, besieged Fort Schuyler, an important military post, situated near the head-waters of the Mohawk. General Herkimer, with nearly a thousand of the provincial militia, endeavoured to relieve the fort, but fell into an ambuscade prepared by Brant with his followers and an English detachment. A bloody but indecisive engagement ensued, known as the "battle of Oriskany." Herkimer was killed, together with several hundred of his followers. The enemy's loss was probably about the same; and, although no communication was opened with the fort, the commandant, Willett, was enabled to make a sally, and to plunder the British encampment of stores and provisions.

A detachment, principally Hessians, under Colonel Baum, was also dispatched by Burgoyne, to procure cattle and other plunder in the eastern settlements. The seizure of stores accumulated at Bennington, was the special object of the expedition. Colonel Stark, having command of the militia in that quarter, learning the approach of the enemy, made every effort to prepare for resistance.

Baum, finding himself opposed by a superior force, halted near the town, and commenced throwing up intrenchments. On the 16th of August, he was attacked, and utterly defeated\* by the provincials. Reinforcements arrived simultaneously on either side—Colonel Warner making his appearance with a regiment of continental troops, from Manchester, at the same time that a strong force, under Colonel Breyman, sent to support Baum's division, was engaged with the American militia. The Americans maintained their advantage; the British effected a retreat at nightfall, having sustained

a loss of  
sonable s  
vincials.

A few  
the tents  
retreat.  
heartened  
were pro  
to secure  
mitted by  
their fero  
against B  
mitics co  
he possess  
civilized  
avail, in t  
The chec  
gave great  
that the p  
was a mo

BATTLES  
SARATO  
—EXP  
HOWE  
BRA  
PH  
R

BURGOYNE  
crossed th  
American  
manded by  
the west b



a loss of about eight hundred killed and prisoners. A most seasonable supply of arms and artillery fell into the hands of the provincials. Of the latter, only about sixty were killed or wounded.

A few days later, Arnold relieved Fort Schuyler, and seized upon the tents and stores of the besieging army, abandoned in hasty retreat. Many of the Iroquois allies of the English became disheartened at these reverses, and drew off. Generally, however, they were proof against the efforts of agents in behalf of the Americans to secure their services, or promises of neutrality. Outrages committed by the savages on the march, their cruelty to prisoners, and their ferocious manner of warfare, excited universal indignation against Burgoyne, who was considered responsible for all the enormities committed. We are informed that he used what influence he possessed over the chiefs, to induce conformity with the rules of civilized warfare; but what would previous exhortation or threats avail, in the midst of the dangers and excitement of actual conflict? The check given to the British at Bennington and Fort Schuyler, gave great encouragement to the Americans; and it was now seen that the provincial militia, under brave and energetic commanders, was a more effective force than it had generally been considered.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

BATTLES AT BEHMUS' HEIGHTS.—BURGOYNE'S RETREAT TO SARATOGA: HIS SURRENDER.—DETENTION OF PRISONERS.

—EXPEDITION FROM NEW YORK UP THE HUDSON.—

HOWE'S MARCH UPON PHILADELPHIA.—BATTLE AT

BRANDYWINE CREEK.—BRITISH OCCUPATION OF

PHILADELPHIA.—BATTLE OF GERMANTOWN.—

REDUCTION OF FORTS MIFFLIN AND MERCER.—

WINTER-QUARTERS AT VALLEY FORGE.

BURGOYNE, having procured provisions for a month's campaign, crossed the Hudson, and continued his progress southward. The American army, numbering about six thousand men, and commanded by General Gates, lay encamped upon Behmus' heights, on the west bank of the river. The place presented natural facilities

for defence, of which due advantage had been taken in the disposition of the camp, and the formation of batteries and intrenchments.

On the 19th of September, an indecisive battle was fought, in which, although the British remained masters of the field, at night-fall, they sustained much the heaviest loss, the number of killed and wounded on either side being, respectively, less than three hundred and over five hundred. Two days previous to this event, communication with Canada had been cut off, by the surprise and capture of the British forts on Lake George, so that nothing but brilliant success could now enable Burgoyne to maintain himself in the enemy's country. He anxiously awaited promised reinforcements from New York.

On the 7th of October, the British troops again offered battle. The American forces had been increased by new recruits, and, exhilarated by the remembrance of recent successes, and the reputed destitution of the enemy, they fought with courage and impetuosity. Arnold exhibited his usual energy and bravery. The enemy were driven back to their camp, and a portion of their intrenchments was forced and held by a Massachusetts regiment, under Colonel Brooks.

Burgoyne drew off his forces during the night, and took up a new position, which he held during the day ensuing. On the 9th, he retreated to Saratoga. He was here, in a manner, surrounded by the Americans, who had occupied the only passes by which a retreat northward could be effected, and who pressed upon him in his position, the British camp being within reach of their artillery. Provisions could no longer be procured, and the supply on hand was nearly expended. Communications were therefore opened, and a capitulation was agreed upon, by the terms of which the whole British army, to the number of more than five thousand men, became prisoners-of-war.

It was agreed that they should be allowed to leave the country, but that none of them should serve further in the war, unless made subjects of exchange for American prisoners. All their artillery, arms, and munitions of war, fell into the hands of the Americans. Upon various pretexts, a compliance with the agreement for the embarkation of these prisoners, was delayed and evaded by congress. Burgoyne was permitted to sail for England, but his army was detained, a resolution being passed that no further action should be taken upon the premises, until the Saratoga convention should be expressly ratified by the British government, and a notification to

that effect be  
that none of  
exchange.

The forec  
passage up t  
unable to eff  
chief to the  
huge chains,  
and the forts  
the artillery  
enemy. A  
the settlement  
vaders burne

We will r  
army, guide  
August (1777)  
barked the e  
available land  
ously the obj  
approach, W  
had taken up  
the direct rou  
a force of fift  
numbers, and

On the 11  
new position  
enemy. Cor  
siderable dist  
flank. Sulliv  
the same tim  
river, and fell  
latter was def  
That of the e  
effected to Cl  
army marche  
In the action  
gushed them  
ment. The se  
promotion.

On the 16th

that effect be forwarded to the American congress. The result was, that none of these prisoners obtained their liberty except by regular exchange.

The forces dispatched by Clinton, from New York, to force a passage up the Hudson, and cooperate with Burgoyne, although unable to effect the main purpose of the expedition, did much mischief to the Americans. Obstacles to navigation, in the shape of huge chains, sunken impediments, &c., were successfully overcome, and the forts on the Highlands were stormed or abandoned. All the artillery at these important strongholds became prize to the enemy. A great amount of damage was wantonly inflicted upon the settlements near the river. Not content with plunder, the invaders burned and destroyed every thing within their reach.

We will now revert to the operations of the main continental army, guided by Washington in person. Towards the close of August (1777), Admiral Howe entered the Chesapeake, and disembarked the entire force on board his fleet at Elk Ferry, the nearest available landing to the city of Philadelphia, which was now obviously the object of attack. Upon the first intimation of the enemy's approach, Washington had marched to intercept his advance, and had taken up his quarters at Wilmington, on Brandywine creek, in the direct route from Elk Ferry to Philadelphia. He had collected a force of fifteen thousand men; that of the British was superior in numbers, and in far better condition for service.

On the 11th of September, the American army, having taken a new position on the left bank of the creek, was attacked by the enemy. Cornwallis, by a circuit, and by passage of the creek a considerable distance up the stream, succeeded in turning the American flank. Sullivan's division, in that quarter, was driven in, and, at the same time, a division, under Knipphausen, crossed the shallow river, and fell upon the central division of Washington's army. The latter was defeated, with a loss of not far from twelve hundred men. That of the enemy was reported to be six hundred. A retreat was effected to Chester, and thence, passing through Philadelphia, the army marched to Germantown, where an encampment was formed. In the action on the Brandywine, several foreign officers distinguished themselves. La Fayette was wounded in the engagement. The services of Count Pulaski were rewarded by immediate promotion.

On the 16th, Washington crossed the Schuylkill, and endeavoured

to check the advance of the enemy. A violent rain storm came on just as the armies were engaging, by which the arms and ammunition of the Americans were rendered unserviceable: they, therefore, retreated, and encamped on the left bank of the river, some distance above Philadelphia. A portion of the army, under Wayne, endeavoured to gain the enemy's rear; but, on the night of the 20th, the position of its encampment became known to the British commander, and it was attacked and driven off with heavy loss.

A few days later, Howe crossed the Schuylkill farther down, and entered Philadelphia without opposition. Congress, having extended and enlarged the dictatorial powers confided to the commander-in-chief, and, having passed laws rendering it a capital offence for residents in the vicinity of towns occupied by the enemy to furnish them with provisions, &c., had adjourned to Lancaster. The principal British camp was formed at Germantown.

Communication was not yet opened between the city and the tide-waters of the bay, strong fortifications and obstructions having been planted by the Americans at the entrance of the Schuylkill from the Delaware. While a portion of the enemy's force was detached to make an attempt upon these works, and to protect the transportation of stores, by land, from Chester, Washington undertook to surprise the main body at Germantown. The very circumstances that enabled him to come upon the enemy unperceived, proved disastrous for the success of the enterprise. The morning of the 4th of October, when the attack was made, was unusually dark and foggy. The American troops, after a long and toilsome march, fell upon the British camp about sunrise. All, for a time, was confusion, in which the assailants gained a temporary advantage. The British soon rallied, and availed themselves of the protection afforded by the buildings to form, and to pour a heavy fire upon their opponents. The Americans were driven off, with a loss of more than a thousand men; that of the British was less than two-thirds of that number.

It now became all important for the army of occupation at Philadelphia, to reduce the forts by which it was cut off from the fleet in the Delaware. The first attempt was made upon Fort Mercer, on Red bank, which was defended by troops from Rhode Island, under Greene. The storming party consisted of twelve hundred Hessians, led by Count Donop. A complete repulse, with the loss of four hundred of the assailants, including the commanding officer, demon-

strated the  
Batteries w  
low mud-fl  
days. The  
bear with e  
Thus, on t  
mand of th  
Washing  
at Valley F  
above Phi  
troops, cons  
destitution  
ill supplied  
often to be  
irregular, a  
of actual fan

DIFFICULT  
—RECOMM  
WASHIN  
MISSION  
DELPH  
A FR  
WI

It were d  
that of the  
reduced in r  
physical wan  
amounting al  
so rapid a d  
purchases, at  
nominal valu  
other than e

strated the necessity for more deliberate and systematic approaches. Batteries were erected to play upon Fort Mifflin, situated upon a low mud-flat, which was reduced, after a brave defence of several days. The ships-of-war were now enabled to bring their guns to bear with effect upon Fort Mercer, and its evacuation soon followed. Thus, on the 16th of November, the British secured complete command of the approaches to Philadelphia by water.

Washington soon after retired with his army to a strong position at Valley Forge, on the right bank of the Schuylkill, twenty miles above Philadelphia. Here he established winter-quarters for the troops, consisting of regularly arranged rows of cabins. The greatest destitution and misery existed in the army, most of the men being ill supplied with clothing—especially shoes—and provisions were often to be procured only by forcible seizure. The supply was very irregular, and, at times, the condition of the camp fell little short of actual famine.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

DIFFICULTIES OF CONGRESS.—ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION.—RECOMMENDATIONS TO THE STATES.—INTRIGUES AGAINST WASHINGTON.—TREATIES WITH FRANCE.—BRITISH COMMISSIONERS IN AMERICA.—EVACUATION OF PHILADELPHIA.—BATTLE OF MONMOUTH.—ARRIVAL OF A FRENCH FLEET.—ATTEMPT ON NEWPORT.—WINTER-QUARTERS.—MARAUDING EXPEDITIONS.—DESTRUCTION OF WYOMING.

It were difficult to conceive a more embarrassing position than that of the continental congress at this juncture. The army was reduced in numbers, dispirited, discouraged, and in a condition of physical want and suffering. The immense issue of paper money, amounting already to thirty or forty millions, had necessarily induced so rapid a depreciation in its value, that it was not available for purchases, at a higher rate than twenty-five per cent. upon its nominal value; and yet there appeared no resource for government, other than continued issues. Loans could be effected but slowly,

and to amounts miserably insufficient for the exigencies of the occasion. The numerous laws and regulations for fixing and establishing the prices of goods, for rendering distinction between gold and continental bills a penal offence, and for the preventing of "forestalling and engrossing," (viz: the buying up and retention of necessaries on speculation,) were exceedingly difficult to enforce, and were generally evaded, or made a handle for the gratification of private enmity.

Congress had already submitted a series of "Articles of Confederation" to the separate states, which were subjects of long and vexatious dispute; a great hesitation being felt at the relinquishment of individual sovereignty, in exchange for the benefits and permanency of a centralized government. It was now earnestly recommended that available funds should be raised by the states, resort being had for this purpose to direct taxation, to meet the expenses of the coming year; that stringent provisions—the arbitrary nature of which was acknowledged and lamented—should be enforced against forestallers and engrossers, by seizure of the accumulated property; to be paid for at specified rates in continental money, and for general regulation of trade; and that the property of absent loyalists be confiscated for public purposes.

The series of disasters which had befallen the main army, had given rise to doubts in the minds of many, as to the vigour and capacity of the commander-in-chief. Occasion was taken by those among the officers of the army and leading politicians, who were jealous of his ascendancy, to conspire for effecting his removal from office. This movement failed to affect the general popularity of Washington, or to shake the confidence of congress in his abilities or patriotism.

The close of January, 1778, was marked by the conclusion of two separate treaties with France. No event since the commencement of the war had given such strength to the patriotic cause as this. The independence of the states was acknowledged, and a treaty for trade and commerce negotiated. Still more important were the provisions of the second treaty, which contained stipulations for mutual defence, in anticipation of the course which England, if consistent in her plans, must necessarily adopt.

News of the negotiation of these treaties, was brought over to America in the spring, about the same time that intelligence was transmitted of a willingness on the part of the British government

RY.

encies of the occa-  
and establishing  
en gold and con-  
g of "forestalling  
on of necessaries  
force, and were  
ication of private

cles of Confeder-  
of long and vex-  
e relinquishment  
efits and perma-  
earnestly recom-  
the states, resort  
ect the expenses  
bitrary nature of  
enforced against  
culated property;  
y, and for general  
sent loyalists be

main army, had  
to the vigour and  
s taken by those  
icians, who were  
ng his removal  
general popularity  
ess in his abilities

conclusion of two  
e commencement  
ic cause as this.  
and a treaty for  
ortant were the  
stipulations for  
England, if con-

brought over to  
intelligence was  
tish government



THE ENCAMPMENT AT VALLEY FORGE.

to effect a r  
all claims to  
to conduct  
congress, in  
the crown, r  
ends. Mani  
appeals to th  
of the leadin  
attempting th  
resulted in s  
and no propo  
longer enter

In parliam  
the necessities  
pendence, wo  
National prid  
however, agai  
the British m  
government w  
William Howe  
chief command  
abandonment  
centration of f

The evacuat  
the principal  
warded to New  
ately put in mo  
for a favourab  
occasion presen  
28th, the enem  
the council in v  
second in comm  
with the comm

Early in the  
who were about  
Lee received or  
up with the m  
retreat, and pres  
he addressed L  
remembrance of



to effect a reconciliation with the colonies, by the renunciation of all claims to impose taxes, &c. The three commissioners, deputed to conduct negotiations for this purpose, after a vain address to congress, in which the most liberal offers were made in behalf of the crown, resorted to every species of intrigue to bring about their ends. Manifestoes, calculated to excite prejudice against the French, appeals to the separate states, slurs upon the motives and principles of the leading patriots, and even the more reprehensible course of attempting the integrity of individuals by the offer of bribes; all resulted in signal failure. The treaties were ratified by congress, and no proposal for any thing short of absolute independence was longer entertained.

In parliament it was now openly advocated that submission to the necessities of the case, by an acknowledgment of American independence, would only be a timely anticipation of an inevitable result. National pride, and a jealousy of French interference prevailed, however, against every argument founded upon policy or right: the British minister was recalled from Paris, and the attention of government was devoted to the detail of warlike operations. Sir William Howe, recalled at his own request, was superseded in the chief command by Sir Henry Clinton. Orders were given for an abandonment of the positions at and near Philadelphia, and a concentration of forces at New York.

The evacuation of Philadelphia was effected on the 18th of June, the principal stores and baggage of the army having been forwarded to New York by sea. The American forces were immediately put in motion, to harass the enemy in the rear, and to watch for a favourable opportunity for a general engagement. Such an occasion presented itself, in the estimation of Washington, on the 28th, the enemy being encamped near Monmouth court-house. At the council in which an attack was decided upon, General Lee, then second in command, had opposed the plan. He was now intrusted with the command of the advance.

Early in the morning, upon the first movement of the British, who were about to take up their line of march towards New York, Lee received orders from his superior to open the attack. Coming up with the main army, Washington met the advance in full retreat, and pressed upon by the enemy. In the heat of the moment, he addressed Lee with terms of reproach, which rankled in the remembrance of that proud and eccentric officer, but which did not

prevent him from lending his utmost exertions, at the time, in carrying out the orders of the commander-in-chief.

During the remainder of the action, which lasted until nightfall, neither party obtained any decisive advantage. The British sustained the heavier loss, their killed and wounded amounting to about three hundred men; that of the Americans, probably, fell short of two hundred. The former continued their retreat during the night, and pushed on unmolested to the Navesink highlands, where they occupied an unassailable position. It does not appear that General Lee was guilty of any dereliction from duty in this engagement: his retreat, at the commencement, was before a superior force, the British having assumed an offensive attitude with remarkable promptitude and good order, and his own position being unfavourable from the nature of the ground. In consequence of two disrespectful letters, subsequently written to Washington, respecting the affair, as well as for alleged disobedience of orders, and an unnecessary retreat, he was tried by a court-martial, and suspended from command for the term of one year. He took no further part in the war.

Early in July, a powerful French fleet, commanded by Count D'Estaing, arrived on the coast, bringing over the French ambassador, Gerard, and about four thousand troops. Washington's army had, by this time, moved towards the Hudson, and, to cooperate with the French fleet in a proposed attack upon New York, now crossed over to White Plains. The British forces had removed from Navesink to the city.

The larger French men-of-war, from their great draught of water, could not be safely taken into New York harbour, and it was determined to commence operations by an attempt at the recovery of Newport, still in the possession of the British, and protected by a force of six thousand men. A violent storm disconcerted the arrangements for a joint attack by land and sea. D'Estaing, in endeavouring to engage the English fleet, suffered so much injury in his shipping, that he was compelled to sail for Boston to repair damages. The American forces, under Sullivan, which had landed on Rhode Island, and advanced towards Newport, were compelled to abandon the attempt. In this retreat, they were pursued and attacked by the enemy, whom they repulsed, not without considerable loss on both sides.

The remaining events of the year, although replete with local

interest, w  
the war.

the West  
ter-quarter  
of Connect

The head-o

At no po

relentless

summer an

British tro

cruelty. M

malice by

move. In

and regular

of Colonel

New York,

been usuall

excursion.

no small po

north-wester

which he h

every tale of

learn, Brant

white associ

the army.

At Wyom

principally e

Indians, the

red in comba

between whig

by bitter en

their estates,

and Pennsylv

sion for the r

Upon a rec

enactments ag

against some

treason under

interest, were of little importance, as connected with the result of the war. The French fleet, on the approach of winter, sailed for the West Indies, and the main continental army went into winter-quarters for the season, in New Jersey and the western portion of Connecticut, their line extending across the Hudson at West Point. The head-quarters of the commander-in-chief was at Middlebrook.

At no period of the war were evidences given of more bitter and relentless enmity between the patriots and loyalists, than during the summer and autumn of 1778. The predatory excursions of the British troops were also marked by unusual ferocity and needless cruelty. Not content with plunder, they generally glutted their malice by wanton destruction of all that they were unable to remove. In the month of July, a party of about three hundred Tories and regulars, with a still larger number of Indians, under command of Colonel John Butler, marched into Pennsylvania from western New York, and ravaged the beautiful valley of Wyoming. It has been usually reported that Joseph Brant headed the Indians in this excursion. This seems to be an error: it is true, that throughout no small portion of the war, he and his warriors were a terror to the north-western frontier. He was faithful to the last to the cause which he had espoused, and his name came to be coupled with every tale of Indian violence and outrage. From all that we can learn, Brant was of a more humane disposition than many of his white associates, even among those who held high positions in the army.

At Wyoming, although the destruction of the settlement was principally effected by the ferocious and uncontrollable horde of Indians, the most revolting instances of blood-thirsty cruelty occurred in combat between the whites. In addition to the party strife between Whig and Tory, this community had been long distracted by bitter enmity between two distinct classes of settlers, holding their estates, respectively, under the conflicting grants of Connecticut and Pennsylvania. Opportunity was taken at the time of this invasion for the revenge of old family and clannish quarrels.

Upon a re-occupation of Philadelphia, the severe and sanguinary enactments against those who should assist the enemy, were enforced against some of the prominent Tories. Two Quakers, convicted of treason under the laws lately enacted, were executed.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

INVASION OF GEORGIA.—OCCUPATION OF SAVANNAH.—BRITISH DIVISION UNDER PREVOST.—LINCOLN IN COMMAND AT THE SOUTH.—DEFEAT OF ASHE AT BRIAR CREEK.—ATTACK ON CHARLESTON.—SULLIVAN'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE IROQUOIS.—NAVAL OPERATIONS OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND.—ATTEMPT AT A RECOVERY OF SAVANNAH.—FURTHER NAVAL PROCEEDINGS: PAUL JONES.—CONDITION OF THE AMERICAN ARMY.

UPON the departure of D'Estaing for the West Indies, the English fleet, under Admiral Byron, immediately made sail in pursuit. It was resolved, at the same time, to open a winter campaign in a new quarter, and a large force of English and German troops, under command of Colonel Campbell, was embarked at New York for an expedition against Georgia.

The continental forces stationed at Savannah, amounting to less than a thousand men, were under command of the American General Howe. Upon the approach of Campbell, who arrived on the coast at the close of December, 1778, a defensible position was taken for the purpose of intercepting his advance. The British, in greatly superior force, were successful in turning the American flank. A negro piloted one detachment through a swamp, between which and the river the continental army was stationed. In an engagement which ensued, the Americans were completely routed; five or six hundred were taken prisoners or killed. The British loss was trifling, and their success was rewarded by an immediate occupation of Savannah.

Campbell was soon joined by General Prevost, who, in accordance with the plan of the southern campaign, had been ordered to march from his quarters in Florida, to assume command in Georgia, and cooperate with the troops from New York. Georgia thus fell into the hands of the British.

At this period, General Lincoln, by whom Howe had been superseded in command, arrived in South Carolina, and took command of the continental army at the south. The regular forces under his command, together with militia from North Carolina, were sufficient

to hold the en  
There existed  
the British  
interest pred  
favourable to

Lincoln com  
dred men, un  
and intercept  
Augusta, from  
passing down  
the present co

In this posit  
cessfully turne  
circuit, and fa  
great number o  
the remainder

Lincoln's he  
above Savanna  
of April, 1779,  
marched up the  
making a desce  
he received inte  
cross the river,  
immediately hu  
city. The Brit  
of plunder, gat  
mense number  
concluding even  
by which time

During the pr  
all districts easi  
a detachment of  
Clinton from Ne  
these marauders,  
out the general o  
lions colonists.  
a fleet of mercha  
bay. A great am  
value bore no pre  
The most notice

to hold the enemy in check, and prevent a passage of the Savannah. There existed, however, an uninterrupted communication between the British head-quarters and the interior, where a strong tory interest predominated, and where the Indian tribes were generally favourable to the royal cause.

Lincoln commenced active operations by detaching fifteen hundred men, under General Ashe, to occupy an intermediate position, and intercept this communication. Ashe crossed the river near Augusta, from which the British retired towards the capital, and passing down the right bank, posted his forces on Briar creek, in the present county of Scriven.

In this position, the flank of the American army was again successfully turned by the enemy. Prevost made a distant, but rapid circuit, and falling upon the rear, gained a complete victory. A great number of the Americans were killed or taken prisoners, and the remainder were dispersed.

Lincoln's head-quarters were at Purisburg, about fifteen miles above Savannah, on the Carolina side of the river. In the month of April, 1779, leaving a portion of the militia at this post, he marched up the river, with the intention of effecting a passage, and making a descent on the British encampments. While on the route, he received intelligence that Prevost had taken the opportunity to cross the river, and was in full march upon Charleston. Lincoln immediately hurried to its defence, and arrived in time to save the city. The British army retreated, carrying away a large amount of plunder, gathered on the march, and taking with them an immense number of slaves, seized upon the coast plantations. The concluding events of the campaign took place in the month of June, by which time the season was unfit for further military operations.

During the preceding month of May, the coast of Virginia, and all districts easily accessible by the larger rivers, were ravaged by a detachment of between two and three thousand men, sent out by Clinton from New York. There was no military force to oppose these marauders, and, with scarce a show of resistance, they carried out the general orders to burn and destroy the property of the rebellious colonists. Not only vessels belonging to the confederacy, but a fleet of merchant vessels were burned or sunk in the rivers and bay. A great amount of plunder was seized and carried off, but its value bore no proportion to that of the property destroyed.

The most noticeable military operations of the summer, were the

expedition against the Iroquois, and the contests for the possession of the American fortifications at Verplank's Point and Stony Point, on the Hudson. Much damage was done by a marauding expedition down Long Island Sound, led by General Tryon. On the north-eastern coast, the Americans also met with heavy loss in an unsuccessful expedition against a military post of the enemy on the Penobscot.

The Indian campaign of the season was conducted by General Sullivan. With a force of five thousand men, concentrated at Tioga, he entered the territory of the Six Nations. The Indians, under Brant, assisted by a body of Tories, commanded by the Butlers and by Sir John and Guy Johnson, made a strong stand at Newtown, on the bank of the Chemung river, but their position was not tenable against a force so superior as that now brought to bear upon them. No further resistance was offered to the advance of the invaders, and the month of September was occupied in the destruction of Indian villages and harvests.

"These Indian tribes had made no little advance in the arts of civilization. The Mohawks had mostly fled to Canada in the early times of the revolution, but others of the Iroquois, particularly the Cayugas and Senecas, had continued to cultivate their fields and maintain possession of the homes of their forefathers. Immense orchards of apple and other fruit trees were growing luxuriantly around the habitations, but all fell beneath the axe of the destroyers. The movement of so large a body of troops was necessarily slow, and, as no precautions were taken to conceal their operations, the Indians were every where enabled to escape to the woods. It must have been with feelings of the bitterest rage and despair that they saw the labour of so many years rendered useless, and thought of the coming winter, which must overtake them, a wandering and destitute people, who must perish, or rely for aid upon their Canadian allies."\*

The French and English fleets, under D'Estaing and Byron, were occupied during the winter, spring, and summer of this year, at the West Indies, and in the convoy of fleets of merchant vessels, bound homeward from the islands belonging to these nations respectively. The most important naval engagement of this period, was upon the occasion of the capture of the island of Grenada, by D'Estaing, in the month of July. In this action, the British

\* The Iroquois.—"Indian Races of America."

the possession  
Stony Point,  
g expedition  
n the north-  
in an unsuc-  
emy on the

by General  
ated at Tioga,  
adians, under  
e Butlers and  
at Newtown,  
was not tena-  
to bear upon  
ce of the in-  
ne destruction

in the arts of  
in the early  
rticularly the  
eir fields and  
rs. Immense  
g luxuriantly  
ne destroyers.  
essarily slow,  
perations, the  
ods. It must  
pair that they  
d thought of  
andering and  
on their Can-

l Byron, were  
is year, at the  
vessels, bound  
tions respect-  
this period,  
of Grenada,  
n, the British

ENGAGEMENT BETWEEN THE FRENCH FLEET, UNDER DESTAING, AND THE BRITISH FLEET, UNDER BYRON,  
NEAR THE ISLAND OF GRENADA, JULY 1796.



sustained a v  
their ships.

D'Estaing  
ing, with the  
effort to rec  
Siege was laic  
September, an  
was made to  
assault. A m  
driven off with  
trous failure i  
French admir  
of a regular  
West Indies.

Notwithstan  
and the expect  
mer, having vi  
United States  
finances of the  
tinent paper  
already amount  
from the dist  
from the great  
army, suffering  
pied in any in  
dispirited by  
difficulty, and,  
rily had to a  
neither Washin  
it advisable to  
general engage

At sea, opera  
fleets of France  
little opportuni  
a measure succ  
upon British co  
Long Island S  
tioned. The da  
holding a comm  
matters of wide



sustained a very heavy loss, both in men and in damage done to their ships.

D'Estaing appeared on the coast of Georgia in the month following, with the design of cooperating with the continental forces in an effort to recover the territory then in occupation of the enemy. Siege was laid to Savannah by the French and American forces, in September, and was continued until October 9th, when an attempt was made to storm the British outworks, and take the town by assault. A most gallant defence was made, and the assailants were driven off with the loss of more than a thousand men. This disastrous failure is attributed to the impatience and impetuosity of the French admiral, who had become weary of the protracted operations of a regular siege. He immediately afterwards returned to the West Indies.

Notwithstanding the powerful aid already furnished by France, and the expected assistance of Spain—that nation, during the summer, having virtually declared war against England—the affairs of the United States were, at this period, far from prosperous. The finances of the confederacy were in a most ruinous condition; continental paper money was nearly worthless, from the enormous issue, already amounting to more than one hundred and fifty millions, from the distant period when payment was provided for, and from the great uncertainty of any future redemption. The main army, suffering from insufficient and irregular supplies, and unoccupied in any important movement, was reduced in numbers, and dispirited by a series of reverses. Recruits were obtained with difficulty, and, to maintain a respectable force, resort was necessarily had to a draught upon the militia. Throughout the year, neither Washington nor the British commander-in-chief considered it advisable to measure the strength of their respective forces in any general engagement.

At sea, operations against England were mostly conducted by the fleets of France and Spain. The small naval force of the states had little opportunity for any effective service. Privateers were still in a measure successful, and it was in revenge for injuries committed upon British commerce by this class of vessels, that the seaports on Long Island Sound were plundered and burned, as before mentioned. The daring achievements of John Paul Jones, a Scotchman, holding a commission from congress as a naval commander, were matters of wide celebrity. In September, 1779, being in command

of a French and American squadron, fitted out from France, he fell in with a British fleet of merchant vessels, under convoy of two vessels of war. The larger of these, a frigate of forty-four guns, named the *Serapis*, engaged the *Bonne Homme Richard*, commanded by Jones, and carrying forty-two guns.

The combat was conducted, for the most part, while the ships were lashed together, each pouring in a heavy fire and making desperate attempts to carry the enemy by boarding. Both vessels repeatedly took fire during the engagement, and, when the *Serapis* finally struck, the *Bonne Homme Richard* was in a sinking condition, and was presently abandoned.

The American army—quartered for the winter near West Point, on the Hudson, and in the neighbourhood of Morristown, New Jersey—was with great difficulty furnished with provisions, and was poorly prepared to encounter the inclemencies of the season, much less to operate against troops superior in numbers and discipline, and better provided with needful supplies and munitions of war.

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

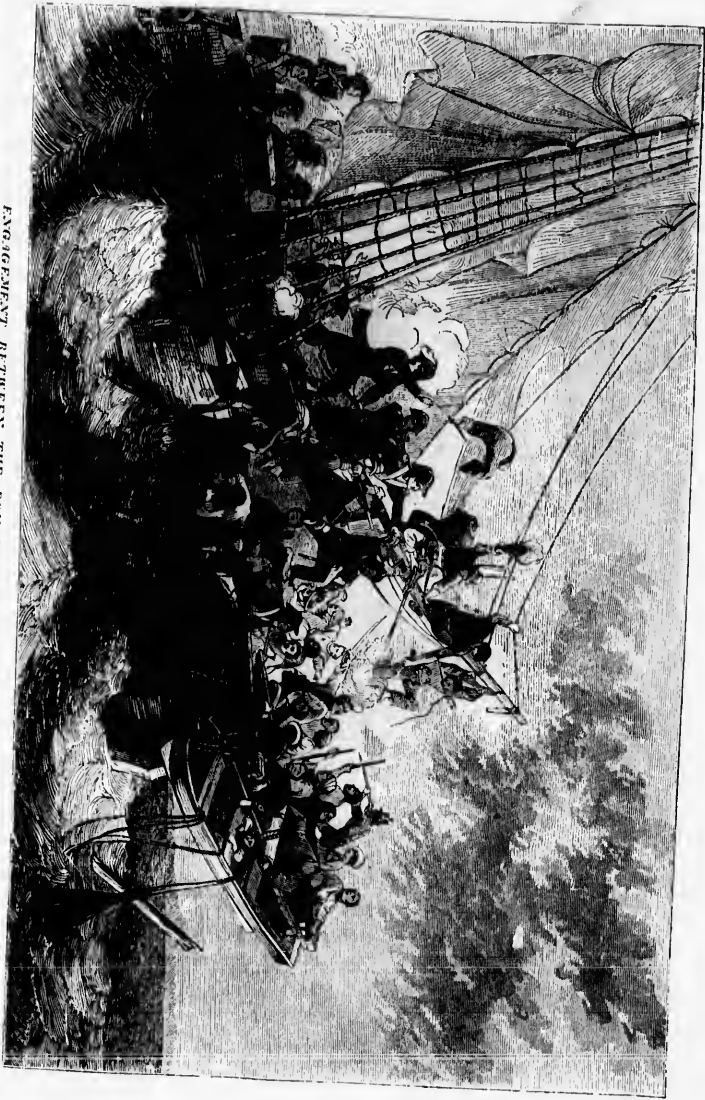
SIEGE OF CHARLESTON: SURRENDER OF THE CITY.—SOUTH CAROLINA OCCUPIED BY THE BRITISH.—TARLETON'S LEGION: HIS VICTORY AT WAXHAW.—CORNWALLIS IN COMMAND.—DEFEAT OF THE AMERICANS AT CAMDEN.—GUERRILLA OPERATIONS OF SUMPTER AND MARION.—INVASION OF NORTH CAROLINA.—FERGUSON'S DEFEAT AT KING'S MOUNTAIN.

THE year 1780 was, almost throughout, a season of distress, defeat and disaster, for the continental armies. The principal theatre of action was at the south. In the month of February, General Clinton, with a large force brought from New York in December, sailed from Savannah, upon an expedition against Charleston. Blockading the harbour with his fleet, he landed his troops on the island of St. John's, and prepared to lay siege to the city.

General Lincoln, in concert with Governor Rutledge, made every

ENGAGEMENT BETWEEN THE *BONNE HOMME RICHARD* AND *SERAPIS*.  
THE FORMER COMMANDED BY COMMANDER PETER JONES, AND THE LATTER BY CAPTAIN RICHARD HENNING.





ENGAGEMENT BETWEEN THE **BOY HARBRE RICHARD** AND **SERPENS**;  
THE FORMER COMMANDER BY COMMODORE PAUL JONES, AND THE LATTER BY  
CAPTAIN RICHARD PRADSON.

fell  
two  
ans,  
om-  
hips  
les-  
sels  
apis  
ndi-

int,  
few  
was  
such  
ine,

TH  
E-  
N

ess,  
pal  
ary,  
in  
inst  
his  
to  
ery

exertion to  
Rutledge, in  
upon him by  
ber of negro  
at Charleston  
half of these  
of the remain

In the mo  
Sullivan's isl  
bour. Work  
regular milita  
off by a deta  
the enemy; a  
was no longer  
the militia w  
mental soldier  
to have posse

Clinton did  
positions for  
state. His m  
irregular war  
was a legion  
officer of grea

During the  
can forces, at  
about the clos  
attack upon I  
gained at Wa  
Tarleton had  
completely rou  
given, and mo  
while the assa

Clinton reso  
rule in South  
malcontents, r  
ishments, and  
aspect of quiet  
the question,  
anxiously for p  
Regiments fi

exertion to increase the garrison, and to erect defensive works. Rutledge, in pursuance of extensive discretionary powers conferred upon him by the legislature, compelled the service of a great number of negro slaves for this purpose. The forces finally concentrated at Charleston amounted to about seven thousand, but more than half of these were inhabitants of the city, and a considerable portion of the remainder were militia from North Carolina.

In the month of April, Clinton's fleet passed Fort Moultrie, on Sullivan's island, without material damage, and entered the harbour. Works were constructed for the prosecution of the siege by regular military approaches; communication from the north was cut off by a detachment of British troops; Fort Moultrie was taken by the enemy; and before the middle of May, it was plain that the city was no longer tenable. A capitulation was proposed and accepted: the militia were to return home upon parole; the regular continental soldiers to become prisoners of war; and the British were to have possession of the city, the public stores, &c.

Clinton did not fail to follow up his advantage, by taking secure positions for his troops at the more important posts throughout the state. His most efficient force for carrying on the skirmishing and irregular warfare which attended the occupation of South Carolina, was a legion of cavalry, under command of Colonel Tarleton, an officer of great energy and ability.

During the siege, this corps defeated two regiments of the American forces, at Monk's Corner, thirty miles from Charleston, and, about the close of the month following, the like success attended an attack upon Buford's regiment, from Virginia. The victory was gained at Waxhaws, in the northern part of the state, whither Tarleton had hastened by a forced march. The Americans were completely routed, and a bloody massacre ensued. No quarter was given, and more than three hundred were killed or taken prisoners, while the assailants lost but eighteen men.

Clinton resorted to violent measures for the maintenance of British rule in South Carolina. Administration of the oath of allegiance to malcontents, rendered compulsory by confiscations and other punishments, and a careful organization of the tories, gave a general aspect of quiet submission to the country. Resistance was out of the question, but the patriotic portion of the inhabitants looked anxiously for promised aid from the north.

Regiments from Delaware and Maryland, led by Baron De Kalb,

were on march for the scene of action, but their progress was slow on account of difficulty in procuring provisions. In the month of July, they were reinforced by General Gates, to whom the chief command at the south had recently been intrusted. A Virginia regiment, the only remaining continental force in that quarter, effected a junction with the army, which now amounted to five or six thousand men. In the month of August, a most unfortunate season for a southern campaign, Gates reached Clermont, near Camden, S. C., where he encamped on the 14th.

Cornwallis was, at this period, in command of the British forces at the south, Clinton having returned to New York. Such troops as he could raise to oppose the advance of Gates, were encamped at Camden.

A simultaneous attempt at a surprise, on the part of both armies, led to an unexpected night encounter. After some unimportant skirmishing, the respective leaders occupied themselves in preparations for a decisive battle. The fighting recommenced at day-break: the British, although outnumbered in the ratio of about two to one, were completely victorious. The American militia fled at the first charge, but the regular forces, under De Kalb, fought bravely, until the fall of their leader. Nearly two thousand of the Americans were killed or taken prisoners, during the engagement, or in their disastrous and confused retreat. The enemy lost but a little over three hundred men.

A few days subsequent to this battle, a body of patriots, raised and commanded by Colonel Sumpter, which had done much damage to the British outposts, by an irregular warfare, was attacked by Tarleton and his legion, some distance farther up the Catawba. Sumpter's forces were surprised and utterly routed; a number of British prisoners were set at liberty, and four or five hundred of the Americans were killed, or fell into the hands of the enemy.

No course was now left to the patriots but submission, or the life of outlaws. A number of prisoners, convicted of treason in having borne arms against the king, after professing allegiance, or accepting British protection, were executed, by order of the British commander. Those who, not being implicated in the open hostilities, had favoured the patriotic cause, were punished by seizure of their property for the use of the army. The few who still maintained a hostile attitude, were obliged to resort, for safety, to forests and marshes inaccessible to any but those familiar with the country.

Sumpter, and  
followers, and  
try, whence

General  
nel, did dis  
were the sv  
of his plac  
plans could  
night, with  
midst of a  
given, wou  
the purpos  
ers or the c

The tide  
ber. Corn  
of North C  
troops, effec  
that state.  
many from  
oppose the  
guson took  
Carolina.

An attac  
opposite qu  
again and a  
with a grea  
eight hundr  
gratified a s  
ting to death  
the prisoners  
retreated so  
feat. Large  
early in the

Sumpter, notwithstanding his defeat, had again collected a band of followers, and established himself in the mountainous inland country, whence he made incursions upon the enemy.

General Marion, who had held a continental commission, as colonel, did distinguished service in this species of warfare. His haunts were the swamps of the Lower Pedee; and such was the security of his place of retreat, and the celerity of his movements, that his plans could never be anticipated. He would suddenly appear, at night, with his band of rough and rudely-armed horsemen, in the midst of a British encampment, and before the alarm was fairly given, would be beyond the reach of pursuit, having accomplished the purpose of his incursion—whether it were the release of prisoners or the collection of booty.

The tide of British successes began to turn in the month of October. Cornwallis had made extensive preparations for an invasion of North Carolina; Major Ferguson, with a considerable body of troops, effected a junction with the Tories in the western portion of that state. A superior force of militia and volunteers, including many from Virginia, was collected by the patriots of that vicinity to oppose the invasion. Retreating hastily before their advance, Ferguson took a position on King's mountain, at the border of South Carolina.

An attack was made by the Americans, in three columns, from opposite quarters. Notwithstanding repeated repulses, they returned again and again to the charge; and, finally, Ferguson having fallen, with a great number of his men, the remainder, numbering about eight hundred, surrendered at discretion. The victors immediately gratified a spirit of retaliation for the severity of the English, by putting to death a number of particularly obnoxious Tories, found among the prisoners. Cornwallis, who had already entered North Carolina, retreated southward upon receiving intelligence of Ferguson's defeat. Large reinforcements from New York arrived in Charleston early in the winter.

## CHAPTER XX.

NORTHERN OPERATIONS.—SPRINGFIELD BURNED.—ARRIVAL OF THE FRENCH FLEET AND FORCES: BLOCKADE AT NEWPORT.—TREASON OF ARNOLD.—TRIAL AND EXECUTION OF MAJOR ANDRÉ.—CAUSES OF ARNOLD'S DEFECTION.—INDIAN RAVAGES: INVASION OF THE MOHAWK VALLEY BY JOHNSON AND BRANT.

AT the north, little was effected by either army during the spring and summer of 1780. The British, from New York, made two incursions into New Jersey, in the month of June. Upon the first of these occasions nothing was accomplished, but upon the second, the village of Springfield, garrisoned by a continental force, under Greene, was destroyed. The main American army remained in the vicinity of its previous winter-quarters, occupied only in opposing a check to the marauding expeditions of the enemy. Such was the destitution at the camp, that some of the troops were driven to open expressions of mutiny.

Great expectations were formed upon the reported approach of a French fleet and army; which arrived in the month of July, at Newport, then abandoned by the British. Six thousand troops, under Count Rochambeau, were brought over, and preparations were made by Washington for active operations against New York. Unfortunately, the British, having received accessions to the naval force on the coast, were enabled to blockade the French fleet in the harbour of Newport. The whole army of auxiliaries, together with a body of American militia, was, therefore, kept idle, being necessarily employed in defence of the shipping in harbour.

Between the lines of the British and Continental armies, above New York, an intervening space, occupied by neither, formed a convenient resort for lawless depredators, who took advantage of the distracted state of affairs, for purposes of private plunder. To cut off the supply of provisions from the British army, cattle were made liable to seizure, upon the road to New York, within certain limits, in this debatable ground, and arrests of suspicious characters were permitted and encouraged.

On the 23d of September, three New York militia-men, named



ARRIVAL  
T NEW-  
UTION  
TION.  
WK

he spring  
made two  
the first  
e second,  
ce, under  
ed in the  
opposing  
h was the  
n to open

roach of a  
y, at New-  
ps, under  
vere made  
Unfortu-  
l force on  
e harbour  
th a body  
ecessarily

ies, above  
formed a  
antage of  
nder. To  
atile were  
in certain  
as charac-

n, named



Paulding, Wil-  
Tarrytown, from  
horseman, who  
himself as a B  
made large offi  
were refused;  
concealed in h  
American Colo  
tain plans of t  
the garrison, a

Notice was  
at that post, an  
ford to head-qu  
gence, instantly  
on board the  
little below the

A scheme o  
was soon expos  
who proved to  
army, a young  
and beloved fo  
peared that Ar  
with Sir Henry  
been solicited  
render to the en

To treat with  
Hudson in the  
unforeseen diffi  
compelled to pa  
Attempting to  
and bearing a  
before related.

Upon a trial  
suffered death,  
tial law, notwit  
release, and the  
high character a

Arnold's disa  
pecuniary emba  
extravagance.

Paulding, Williams, and Van Wert, were watching the road near Tarrytown, from a place of concealment. They stopped a solitary horseman, who, supposing them to be of his own party, announced himself as a British officer. Discovering them to be Americans, he made large offers of reward if he might be allowed to pass. These were refused; and, upon searching his person, papers were found concealed in his boots. He was carried by his captors before the American Colonel Jamison. The papers secured were found to contain plans of the fortifications at West Point, with the numbers of the garrison, and descriptions of the defences.

Notice was immediately dispatched to Arnold, who commanded at that post, and also to Washington, then on his return from Hartford to head-quarters. The former, upon the receipt of the intelligence, instantly hastened to the river, and, taking his barge, went on board the British sloop-of-war Vulture, which lay at anchor a little below the forts.

A scheme of treachery was now apparent, and the whole plan was soon exposed by the confessions of the captive at Tarrytown, who proved to be Major André, adjutant-general of the British army, a young man universally admired for talents and courage, and beloved for his amiable and gentlemanly disposition. It appeared that Arnold had, for some time past, been in communication with Sir Henry Clinton, and that the command at West Point had been solicited and obtained by him, with the sole object of its surrender to the enemy.

To treat with him for this purpose, André had proceeded up the Hudson in the Vulture, and a meeting was effected. From some unforeseen difficulty, he was unable to return on board, and was compelled to pass the night at a house within the American lines. Attempting to make his way to New York by land, in disguise, and bearing a pass from Arnold, he was arrested in the manner before related.

Upon a trial by court-martial, he was condemned as a spy, and suffered death, in accordance with the severe requirements of martial law, notwithstanding the vehement exertions of Clinton for his release, and the general sympathy in his behalf, awakened by his high character and noble demeanour.

Arnold's disaffection appears to have resulted, principally, from pecuniary embarrassments, the consequence of his own reckless extravagance. He thought himself neglected in some early military

appointments, and, subsequently, the partial disallowance of an unreasonable claim upon congress, made by him in relation to the expenses of the Canadian expedition, mortified and enraged him. He had also been tried by court-martial for alleged peculation in his management of public funds, while in command at Philadelphia, and had received a reprimand from the commander-in-chief.

No officer in the American army exhibited more remarkable abilities as a commander than Arnold, and in personal prowess and courage, he was, perhaps, unequalled by any of his associates. His important services had induced his countrymen to look with leniency upon failings which would have endangered the popularity of another. In proportion to the former complacency of the community, was their indignation at this exhibition of unprincipled depravity—an indignation destined to be immeasurably heightened by the subsequent conduct of its object, who devoted his brilliant talents to the service of the enemy, in active warfare against his countrymen.

The autumn passed away with no farther warlike incidents of much public importance. A savage *guerilla* contest desolated portions of the Carolinas; and at the north-west, the exasperated Iroquois still continued to send out war-parties for the plunder and destruction of the frontier settlements. In October, the valley of the Mohawk was desolated by a mixed party of whites, under Johnson, and Indians led by Brant and the Seneca half-breed, Corn-Planter. A letter, written by Brant on this occasion, speaks with indignation at cruelties practised by his associates, particularly the Butlers, whose names are connected with every atrocity in the conduct of this predatory warfare.

REVOLT OF  
DITTON I  
SOUTHERN  
COWPEN  
OF TH  
GUID  
SOU

THE year  
dangerous  
period in  
ages, and  
ments from  
three years'  
officers, the  
ment to ser

Thirteen  
ers, one of  
dience, mar  
with the ex  
demands.  
sense of du  
such supplie  
necessity fo  
sioners from  
ence with t  
points in dis  
sent by Sir  
offers, to en  
A similar o  
force—two  
the effect to  
of the army  
specie, for p

## CHAPTER XXI.

REVOLT OF THE PENNSYLVANIA TROOPS.—ARNOLD'S EXPEDITION INTO VIRGINIA.—GREENE IN COMMAND OF THE SOUTHERN ARMY.—MORGAN'S DETACHMENT: BATTLE OF COWPENS: PURSUIT OF MORGAN BY CORNWALLIS: PASSAGE OF THE CATAWBA: RETREAT INTO VIRGINIA: BATTLE OF GUILFORD COURT-HOUSE.—GREENE'S MARCH INTO SOUTH CAROLINA.—CORNWALLIS IN VIRGINIA.  
—BATTLE AT HOBKIRK'S HILL.—SEIZURE OF BRITISH FORTS BY MARION AND LEE.

THE year 1781 opened unpromisingly for the Americans. A dangerous disaffection in the camp at Morristown broke out at this period in open revolt. The causes of complaint, were unpaid arrearages, and a dispute respecting the terms of enlistment. The regiments from Pennsylvania claimed their discharge at the end of a three years' term, although, according to the representation of their officers, the whole period of the war was included in their engagement to serve.

Thirteen hundred men, defying the authority of their commanders, one of whom was killed in the attempt to reduce them to obedience, marched off, under arms, in the direction of Philadelphia, with the expressed purpose of compelling compliance with their demands. General Wayne in vain attempted to recall them to a sense of duty, and was forced to content himself with procuring such supplies for their use on the march as should preclude the necessity for plundering the inhabitants. At Princeton, commissioners from congress, and from the state authorities, held a conference with the malcontents, and, after some discussion, the main points in dispute were yielded by the former. Several messengers, sent by Sir Henry Clinton to persuade the mutineers, by handsome offers, to enlist in the king's army, were seized and hanged as spies. A similar outbreak among the New Jersey troops, was quelled by force—two of the ringleaders being shot. These movements had the effect to rouse congress and the states to a sense of the necessities of the army, and a large sum of money was promptly raised, in specie, for part payment of arrearages.

Early in January, Arnold, who had received, as the reward of his intended treachery, the sum of ten thousand pounds, and a commission as a brigadier-general in the British army, commenced active operations in Virginia. He passed up James river, with a considerable force, and after plundering Richmond, and doing much damage by the destruction of buildings, together with valuable public stores, he entered upon the occupation of Portsmouth.

A great effort was made to outnumber and overpower this detachment. La Fayette, with a body of troops from New England and New Jersey, was dispatched against it; and the French fleet, then free to put to sea, made sail for the Chesapeake, for the purpose of cutting off retreat. This movement was anticipated by the British squadron, which took possession of the bay, after an engagement with, and discomfiture of the enemy.

The command of the continental army at the south, previous to this period, had been conferred upon General Greene, in place of Gates, recalled. The small force under his command, consisted of but two thousand men, notwithstanding endeavours made, during the early part of the winter, to procure recruits from Virginia and elsewhere. Against a detachment of about one thousand of these troops, under General Morgan, while on their march into western South Carolina, Cornwallis dispatched Tarleton, with a force about equal in numbers. His own plan was to intercept communication between the divisions of the American army, by marching northward from his camp at Winnsborough.

Hotly pursued by Tarleton, whose movements were always rapid and prompt, Morgan made a stand at the Cowpens, in the present county of Spartanburgh, near the North Carolina border. Deceived by a pretended or apparent retreat of the advanced lines, the British rushed to the attack without due precaution for the preservation of order, and when they found themselves coolly withstood by the continentals, who poured in a heavy and destructive fire at close-quarters, their line was broken, and a complete rout ensued. More than half of the entire force were taken prisoners or killed. The battle was fought on the 17th of January, 1781.

Marching with great celerity, Morgan gained the fords of Catawba on the 29th, his object being to take his prisoners to a place of security in Virginia. Immediately after the battle at Cowpens, Tarleton, with the remainder of his detachment, effected a junction with Cornwallis. Strengthened by reinforcements from Charleston, under



reward of his  
and a commis-  
sioned active  
with a consider-  
much damage  
e public stores,

er this detach-  
England and  
nch fleet, then  
he purpose of  
by the British  
an engagement

h, previous to  
ne, in place of  
d, consisted of  
made, during  
n Virginia and  
usand of these  
h into western  
a force about  
communication  
arching north-

re always rapid  
in the present  
der. Deceived  
mes, the British  
preservation of  
hstood by the  
ve fire at close  
ensued. More  
or killed. The

ords of Catawba  
a place of secu-  
pens, Tarleton,  
tion with Corn-  
arleston, under



Leslie, the whole  
take the victory  
the Catawba bu  
upon the bank.

Night coming  
army, and secur  
with a few atten  
command. As  
of February,) th  
the Yadkin, with  
of good fortune,  
pursuit for a tim  
divisions of the a

The endeavou  
Virginia, at the  
ceeded in mainta  
in safety, leaving  
and rapid march  
severely from ov  
suitable to the se

Cornwallis took  
measures similar  
and encouraging  
of the patriots.  
opportunity offere  
army from the V  
first contented hi  
A party of these,  
detachment of ca  
it to be Tarleton'  
own character an

Largely reinforc  
lina, Greene final  
15th of March. H  
ratio of more tha  
inexperienced vol  
no service in the  
arms, and dispersi  
exhibited both co  
their position at



Leslie, the whole army was put in rapid motion to intercept or overtake the victorious continentals. Morgan had effected a passage of the Catawba but two hours before the arrival of Cornwallis' advance upon the bank.

Night coming on, a sudden rise of water delayed the pursuing army, and secured the escape of the Americans. General Greene, with a few attendants, joined this division on the 31st, and assumed command. As soon as the British could pass the river, (on the 1st of February,) the pursuit recommenced. The Americans reached the Yadkin, with the enemy close upon their rear, and there a piece of good fortune, similar to that experienced at the Catawba, checked pursuit for a time, and gave opportunity for a junction of the two divisions of the army at Guilford court-house.

The endeavour of Cornwallis was now to cut off their retreat into Virginia, at the ford of Dan river. The retreating army still succeeded in maintaining its advanced position, and reached Virginia in safety, leaving the British masters of the Carolinas. In the long and rapid march from South Carolina, the American troops suffered severely from over-fatigue, and from the insufficiency of clothing suitable to the severity of the season.

Cornwallis took up his quarters at Hillsborough, and resorted to measures similar to those enforced in South Carolina, for organizing and encouraging the tories, and for the punishment and humiliation of the patriots. The latter were not slow in retaliation whenever opportunity offered. Greene, having received some addition to his army from the Virginia militia, reentered North Carolina. He at first contented himself with checking the movements of the tories. A party of these, numbering two or three hundred, falling in with a detachment of cavalry, under the American Colonel Lee, supposed it to be Tarleton's legion, and, in perfect confidence, exposed their own character and position. They were all massacred on the spot.

Largely reinforced by volunteers from Virginia and North Carolina, Greene finally offered battle near Guilford court-house, on the 15th of March. His forces out-numbered those of the enemy in the ratio of more than two to one, but a large portion of them were inexperienced volunteers and militia. The latter were of little or no service in the engagement, many of them throwing down their arms, and dispersing at the first discharge. The continental troops exhibited both courage and firmness, but were finally driven from their position at the point of the bayonet, and made an orderly

retreat. The loss on both sides was heavy, but that of the victors was the greatest, amounting to more than five hundred. The British troops were in a state of extreme suffering from want of food and from the fatigues of the engagement; advantage could not, therefore, be taken of the victory.

No pursuit was ordered, and Cornwallis, finding great difficulty in procuring supplies for his army, took up his march down Cape Fear river, towards Wilmington. In the month of April, General Greene, with nearly two thousand men, marched into South Carolina, where the British army of occupation was so far reduced by the detachment for invasion of North Carolina, that a fair opportunity offered for a recovery of the state, or, at least, for compelling Cornwallis to move southward for its protection. The latter general, instead of adopting that policy, marched into Virginia, and united his forces with those before sent into the country, under Arnold, and now commanded by Phillips.

The state of affairs in the Carolinas, throughout these campaigns, was that of civil war in its worst and most ferocious aspect. Such disregard for human life was, perhaps, exhibited at no other period, and in no other quarter, during the war. Whigs and Tories rivalled each other in sanguinary retribution for mutual wrongs. It is impossible to ascertain, with any approach to certainty, the number of those who perished in skirmishes, at the hands of the lawless mobs, or victims of private malice, in this fratricidal contest, but it must have been very large, and by some is computed by thousands.

Greene, entering South Carolina, posted himself upon Hobkirk's hill, in the vicinity of Camden, then occupied by an inferior force of the enemy, under Lord Rawdon. His cavalry was on march, by a detour, to join the partisan forces of Marion, and intercept communication with Charleston. He was attacked at his position on the 25th of April. The Americans fought bravely, but were unable to resist the charge of the British bayonet. Obligated to retreat, Greene fell back to Rugely's mills, several miles distant.

The mounted forces, under Marion and Lee, succeeded in occupying the passes on the north of the Santee, and in seizing upon several defensive posts. Sumpter and his followers were no less successful in attacks upon detached garrisons, stationed to maintain lines of communication. Forts Watson and Motte, with Orangeburgh, Georgetown, and Augusta, were soon in the hands of the Americans. The British fort, "Ninety-Six," held out against every effort

to take it by further active been so far concentrate their occupation.

WAR BETWEEN  
DER OF ST.  
ERY OF WI  
RENCY.—  
VIRGINIA  
—ENC.  
POINT  
—A  
—C

BEYOND the spring, import nected with th can barely glar ment obtained States and Ho demand upon the attention r The opportunit was too tempti cipitancy of act seized by a fleet the island of St mulation of me taken as lawfu places of deposi England was Her claim of t nations, had als

to take it by siege or storm. The heat of the season suspended further active operations. The great effort of the campaign had been so far accomplished, that the British had been obliged to concentrate their forces, and abandon further attempts at extended occupation.

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

WAR BETWEEN ENGLAND AND HOLLAND.—SEIZURE AND PLUNDER OF ST. EUSTATIUS.—THE ARMED NEUTRALITY.—RECOVERY OF WEST FLORIDA BY SPAIN.—CONTINENTAL CURRENCY.—PLAN FOR THE RECOVERY OF NEW YORK.—VIRGINIA RAVAGED BY PHILLIPS AND CORNWALLIS.—ENCAMPMENTS AT YORKTOWN AND GLOUCESTER POINT.—WASHINGTON'S MARCH SOUTHWARD.—ATTACK ON NEW LONDON AND GROTON.—CAMPAIGN IN SOUTH CAROLINA.—BATTLE NEAR BUTAW SPRINGS.

BEYOND the limits of the United States, during the winter and spring, important events had transpired, at which, although connected with the difficulties between England and her colonies, we can barely glance. During the autumn of 1780, the British government obtained information of a correspondence between the United States and Holland relative to a commercial treaty. An arrogant demand upon the latter for explanation or atonement, not receiving the attention required, was soon followed by a declaration of war. The opportunity presented for the acquisition of an enormous booty, was too tempting to be resisted, and, doubtless, occasioned this precipitancy of action. The Dutch possessions in the West Indies were seized by a fleet, under Rodney, in the month of February, 1781. At the island of St. Eustatius, an immense number of ships and an accumulation of merchandise, valued at fifteen millions of dollars, were taken as lawful prize. This island had been one of the principal places of deposit for goods intended to be shipped to the United States.

England was thus involved in war with France and Holland. Her claim of the right to interfere with the commerce of neutral nations, had also caused the formation of a coalition by the principal

northern powers of Europe, known as the "Armed Neutrality," for the purpose of mutual protection in their commercial rights against the injurious assumptions of Great Britain.

Spain, besides uniting her powerful fleet to that of France, for operation against the common enemy, took the occasion to recover the settlements of West Florida from the British. This was effected in the spring of 1781, by a force from Louisiana, under Galvez, the Spanish governor, with the cooperation of a fleet from Havana.

An important change, introduced by congress during the summer of this year, in the conduct of financial operations, by which the government refused to deal further with the depreciated paper currency, rendered this entirely worthless. Much of the paper was taken up by individual states—by which it was to be redeemed according to the provisions accompanying its issue—at an enormous depreciation, as an equivalent for taxes, but an immense amount remained upon the hands of private holders. Various schemes for replacing it, at its market value, by a "new tenor" of bills, bearing interest, proved failures, as nothing, at this period, could sustain the value of any public issue, either by the union, or by states in their separate capacity. Nearly all of the latter had pursued a course similar to that of the confederation, in this respect, and their paper had experienced a steady and hopeless decline in value.

At the opening of the campaign of 1781, extensive preparations were made by the United States for a systematic effort at the recovery of New York. For this purpose, forces were gradually concentrated in that vicinity; but the events of the spring and summer gave a new aspect to the campaign, and changed the scene of action.

The British forces, under Phillips, in Virginia, greatly outnumbered any which, at that time, could be brought to oppose them. The only effective American troops in this quarter, were La Fayette's continentals. Phillips, with little opposition, sent detachments up the James and Appamattox rivers, and plundered and destroyed property to the amount of millions. Joined by the forces of Cornwallis, in the month of May, and by troops sent round from New York, the army of invasion amounted to about eight thousand men: that of the Americans, in Virginia, including raw recruits and militia, little exceeded three thousand. A little later, the Pennsylvania regiments, under Wayne, effected a junction with La Fayette's army, increasing it to about four thousand.

Cornwallis, stores at the a the state legis of session, mo received instru tained intimat to dispose the case of necessit

Early in Aug Gloucester Poi into Chesapeak fortify these po the river and b

The northern forces, so long preparations we York, informat the West Indie expected in the opportunity for ington abandon hastened to put ful to conceal th cessfully was th had no intimatio from interceptio

Advantage w and French arm Arnold, to whom New London. four sail was see were landed, in New London sid

Fort Griswold by one hundre Ledyard. With forcement of mi expectation prov of the garrison, cut to pieces fo

Cornwallis, after destroying a valuable collection of arms and stores at the armory on the James river, in Fluvanna, and driving the state legislature precipitately from Charlottesville, then the place of session, moved with his whole army towards the coast. He had received instructions to this effect from Clinton, who, having obtained intimation of the intended attack upon New York, desired to dispose the Virginia division where it could be made available in case of necessity.

Early in August, a position was accordingly taken at Yorktown and Gloucester Point, on either side of York river, at its debouchement into Chesapeake bay. Every effort was made to strengthen and fortify these posts: a considerable naval force was also at hand in the river and bay, to cooperate in any future movement.

The northern army, under Washington, was joined by the French forces, so long stationed at Newport, in the month of July. While preparations were actively going on to prosecute the siege of New York, information was received that a powerful French fleet from the West Indies, commanded by Count de Grasse, was momentarily expected in the Chesapeake. Determined to seize so favourable an opportunity for the annihilation of the army of Cornwallis, Washington abandoned, for the time, his designs against New York, and hastened to put the main army *en route* for the south. He was careful to conceal this change of operations from the enemy, and so successfully was the movement planned and conducted, that Clinton had no intimation of the new turn of affairs until the army was safe from interception or pursuit.

Advantage was now taken of the withdrawal of the continental and French armies, for an expedition into Connecticut. The traitor Arnold, to whom the command was intrusted, shaped his course for New London. On the morning of September 6th, a fleet of twenty-four sail was seen off the harbour. About sixteen hundred troops were landed, in two divisions, one led by Arnold in person, on the New London side, the other by Colonel Eyre, at Groton.

Fort Griswold, on the heights at the latter place, was garrisoned by one hundred and sixty volunteers, commanded by Colonel Ledyard. With the expectation of receiving an immediate reinforcement of militia, it was determined to defend the post. This expectation proved vain; the fort was carried by storm, and most of the garrison, in accordance with the cruel usage of war, were cut to pieces for defending an untenable position. An eye-wit-

ness\* thus describes the catastrophe: "Colonel Ledyard, seeing the enemy within the fort, gave orders to cease firing, and to throw down our arms, as the fort had surrendered. We did so, but they continued firing in platoons upon those who were retreating to the magazine and barrack-rooms for safety. At this moment, the renegade colonel commanding, cried out, 'Who commands this garrison?' Colonel Ledyard, who was standing near me, answered, 'I did, sir, but you do now,' at the same time stepping forward, handing him his sword, with point towards himself." The narrator was, at this moment, wounded by a bayonet thrust; he continues: "The first person I saw afterwards, was my brave commander, a corpse by my side, having been run through the body with his own sword by the savage renegade. Never was a scene of more brutal, wanton carnage than now took place. The enemy were still firing on us by platoons, and in the barrack-rooms. \* \* All this time the bayonet was freely used, even on those who were helplessly wounded, and in the agonies of death." Those of the wounded who escaped the general massacre, were treated with great brutality and neglect.

Arnold's division met with similar success in the attack upon New London. The town was plundered, and, at the same time, set on fire, and reduced to ashes. Nothing further was attempted: the country adjacent presented little temptation to the marauders, and they immediately reëmbarked, and set sail for New York with their booty and a number of prisoners.

While these events were taking place at the north, General Greene had been actively engaged in preparing for the renewal of hostilities in Carolina. Towards the close of August, having procured reinforcements of militia, and a supply of horses for his cavalry corps, he left his quarters among the hills of the Santee, and marched in pursuit of the enemy, then under command of Lieutenant-Colonel Stewart. An indecisive and bloody battle was fought, on the 8th of September, in the neighbourhood of Eutaw Springs. The American forces rather exceeded those of the enemy in point of numbers, amounting to more than two thousand men.

After this engagement, Greene drew off his forces to his former place of encampment, at the Santee hills; the British moved towards Charleston. The latter, although so frequently victorious throughout these southern campaigns, and although favoured by a large party among the inhabitants, had failed to gain any important

\* Stephen Hempstead.

advantage by  
run the country  
of the scattered  
rear, and the o  
ited by the Am  
to the New Wo  
of the people.  
to the vicinity

FRENCH FLEE  
—SURREND  
PROCEEDIN  
TIATIONS  
TION OF  
CONTINE

ABOUT the 1  
vres, in which  
British fleet, th  
line safely into  
of the bay, and  
retreat by sea.  
squadron from

The America  
to Yorktown, in  
stationed at N  
amounted to si  
exceed eight th  
the British at  
upon the system  
thrown up on  
wards, they wer  
and brought to  
British line. A  
11th, at an inte

advantage by their conquests. It was comparatively easy to overrun the country, and to inflict incalculable injury upon the property of the scattered population; but they always left enemies in their rear, and the obstinacy of the Anglo Saxon disposition, duly inherited by the Americans, and losing nothing of its force by translation to the New World, continually strengthened the antagonistic spirit of the people. The operations of Stewart were thenceforth confined to the vicinity of Charleston.

---

## CHAPTER XXIII.

FRENCH FLEET IN THE CHESAPEAKE.—SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.

—SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS.—WINTER-QUARTERS.—

PROCEEDINGS IN THE ENGLISH PARLIAMENT.—NEGO-

TIATIONS FOR PEACE.—TERMS OF TREATY.—CESSA-

TION OF HOSTILITIES.—DISAFFECTION IN THE

CONTINENTAL ARMY.—EVACUATION OF NEW YORK.

—POSITION OF THE UNITED STATES.

ABOUT the 1st of September, 1781, after a long series of manœuvres, in which he wisely avoided any general engagement with the British fleet, the Count de Grasse brought twenty-four ships of the line safely into the Chesapeake, thus securing complete possession of the bay, and precluding all possibility of Cornwallis' effecting a retreat by sea. The fleet was soon after joined by the French squadron from Newport, commanded by Du Barras.

The American army, concentrated for the purpose of laying siege to Yorktown, including continentals, militia, the French previously stationed at Newport, and those newly landed by De Grasse, amounted to sixteen thousand men. That of Cornwallis did not exceed eight thousand. After detaching a force to hold in check the British at Gloucester Point, Washington entered vigorously upon the systematic prosecution of the siege. The first works were thrown up on the night of the 6th of October: three days afterwards, they were so far completed that heavy artillery was planted, and brought to bear, at a distance of but six hundred yards from the British line. A second parallel was commenced on the night of the 11th, at an intermediate distance between the first and the enemy's

position. The work could not be safely carried on, in consequence of a heavy fire from two advanced redoubts, which were, therefore, stormed, and connected with the second line of fortifications. This service was accomplished by two distinct detachments, one American, the other French—the efforts of either were thus stimulated by an ardent spirit of emulation.

The Americans, being well supplied with battering artillery, now opened so heavy a fire upon the British fortifications as to disable many of the guns, and effect breaches in the works. Yorktown was no longer tenable, and Cornwallis, on the evening of October 16th, endeavoured to escape by crossing to Gloucester Point. Failing in the attempt to transport his troops over the river, in consequence of a severe storm, he had no resource but a capitulation. Proposals to this effect were made on the day following, and the terms were speedily arranged. The whole British army, more than seven thousand men, became prisoners of war; the naval force surrendered to the French admiral.

This victory was the crowning event of the war. Although hostilities still lingered throughout the succeeding year, prior to the conclusion of negotiations for peace, they involved no extensive military operations. A partisan warfare still desolated some of the southern and western districts, and the frontier was, from time to time, harassed by incursions of the savages. The main French and continental armies went into winter-quarters in November. Greene, with the remains of the southern army, took a station in the neighbourhood of Charleston, to restrain foraging expeditions of the enemy.

The tone adopted by the British ministry at the winter session of parliament, 1781-2, gave no token of any probable concessions to the American demands. In the house of commons, after repeated failures, a motion passed, at the close of February, calling for the adoption of measures which should put an end to hostilities. A change in the cabinet, at this juncture, favoured the projects of the friends of peace. Negotiations were speedily opened with Adams, the American minister at Holland, and with Franklin, then in France, for a pacific arrangement. With these ministers were associated John Jay of New York, and Henry Laurens of South Carolina. Mr. Richard Oswald conducted the preliminary arrangements in behalf of Great Britain: Franklin and Jay, in the absence of the other commissioners, opened the negotiation at Paris in the month of April, 1782.

Jealousy of se  
United States,  
American comm  
that he should  
treaty was signe  
lowing autumn.  
settling question  
northern coast, a  
latter, the Ameri  
than a proposed  
confiscations sho  
seizures, and cer  
should be concede  
land fisheries we  
ary, the states re  
to the Mississippi  
Spain in possessio  
of the great river.  
west the extent of

The treaty was  
ing year, its concl  
peace between Fr  
of alliance betwe  
opening of pacific  
gerent nations of  
arrangements for  
of 1783, and, upon  
a formal proclama  
hostilities.

During the spr  
itself among some  
anticipated failure  
tended to many of  
of the commander  
The army was dis  
November; and, w  
and its adjacent sta

On Christmas da  
appeared before co  
resignation of his c



Jealousy of secret influence unfavourable to the interests of the United States, on the part of the French minister, induced the American commissioners to depart from their instructions requiring that he should take part in their negotiations, and a provisional treaty was signed, without his intervention, at the close of the following autumn. This great delay resulted from the difficulty of settling questions of boundary, of the privileges of fishery on the northern coast, and of the rights of tory refugees. In favour of the latter, the American commissioners would agree to nothing farther than a proposed recommendation from congress to the states, that confiscations should cease, that restitution should be made for former seizures, and certain personal privileges, as to right of residence, should be conceded. The former customs relative to the Newfoundland fisheries were substantially confirmed; and, respecting boundary, the states retained their former territory, extending westward to the Mississippi, and southward to latitude thirty-one—leaving Spain in possession of the wilderness at the west, and of the mouth of the great river. England retained the Canadas: toward the northwest the extent of the American claims remained still unascertained.

The treaty was not made definitive until September of the following year, its conclusion being contingent upon an establishment of peace between France and England, by virtue of the former treaty of alliance between France and the United States. At the first opening of pacific negotiation in April, ministers from all the belligerent nations of Europe had met for the purpose of concluding arrangements for a general peace. These were settled in the spring of 1783, and, upon the transmission of the intelligence to America, a formal proclamation was made by congress, of a termination of hostilities.

During the spring of 1782, an alarming disaffection exhibited itself among some portions of the continental army, arising from an anticipated failure in payment of their arrearages. This feeling extended to many of the officers, and, but for the firmness and wisdom of the commander-in-chief, might have led to lamentable results. The army was disbanded, by order of congress, in the month of November; and, within a few weeks, an evacuation of New York and its adjacent strongholds was completed by the British.

On Christmas day, in the following month, General Washington appeared before congress, in session at Annapolis, and tendered a resignation of his commission as commander-in-chief.

The war was now at an end; the United States, acknowledged independent by the nations of Europe, were free to adopt a form of government of their own choosing, untrammelled by the restrictions of ancient customs or the claims of hereditary right. But the position of the country, if no longer critical, was embarrassing in the extreme. The burden of an enormous debt, the poverty consequent upon the expenditure of little short of two hundred millions of dollars in carrying on the war, the failure of public credit, the existence of sectional jealousies, the great territorial extent of the country, the mixture of races—all combined to oppose obstacles to the establishment of a new and complicated scheme of government.

# THE

POSITION OF THE  
EXISTING DIFFERENCES  
OF CONGRESS.  
—CONVENTION  
OPPOSING THE  
CONSTITUTION  
CONGRESS  
ERS: THE  
TUA

For several years  
American independence  
fusion, from the ir-  
federation, to bind  
Restrictions upon  
mitigate by treat-  
sources. The We-  
under the old "s-  
Mississippi was cl-  
ican vessels, leavi-  
the means for disp-  
Great Britain co-  
the confederation,  
she maintained po-  
The reason given  
part of the Union,  
right to recover de-  
of dispute also re-  
tained by the loy-

# THE UNITED STATES.

## CHAPTER I.

POSITION OF THE UNION AT THE CONCLUSION OF PEACE.—  
EXISTING DIFFICULTIES WITH GREAT BRITAIN.—WEAKNESS  
OF CONGRESS.—LOCAL DISTURBANCES: SHAY'S REBELLION.  
—CONVENTION FOR ENLARGING CONGRESSIONAL POWERS:  
OPPOSING INTERESTS OF THE STATES.—THE PRESENT  
CONSTITUTION: FEDERAL LEGISLATURE: POWERS OF  
CONGRESS: RESTRICTIONS: LIMIT OF STATE POW-  
ERS: THE EXECUTIVE: THE JUDICIARY: MU-  
TUAL GUARANTEES: AMENDMENTS.

For several years immediately following the establishment of American independence, the affairs of the country remained in confusion, from the incapacity of congress, under the old articles of confederation, to bind the states by its dealings with foreign powers. Restrictions upon commerce, which the congress had no power to mitigate by treaty, retarded the development of the national resources. The West India trade, so lucrative before the war, even under the old "sugar act," was now cut off. The mouth of the Mississippi was closed, by Spain, to all entrance or egress of American vessels, leaving the growing settlements of the west without the means for disposing of their produce.

Great Britain could hardly be expected to look with favour upon the confederation, and in defiance of the provisions of the treaty, she maintained possession of the strongholds on the western lakes. The reason given for this retention, was a non-compliance, on the part of the Union, with provisions securing to British subjects the right to recover debts contracted before the war. Many minor points of dispute also remained unsettled. With respect to the losses sustained by the loyalists, in consequence of confiscations, the recom-

mendation of congress had as little effect upon the action of the states in this as in most other particulars. A great number of these claims to indemnity were subsequently examined and partially satisfied by act of parliament.

The weakness of congress was made repeatedly the subject of earnest exhortation to the states and the people. Unless its powers could be enlarged, and a willingness be induced, on the part of the states, to abandon some portion of their sovereignty for the sake of greater centralization of power, there seemed but faint prospects of future prosperity. At the commencement of the year 1786, an effort was made to bring about a convention from the states, for the purpose of establishing a general commercial system, but the attempt fell through for want of full representation. Those members who attended, earnestly recommended a meeting of delegates from all the states, to alter and amend the articles of confederation, so as to define, confirm and enlarge the jurisdiction of the central government. This proposal received the sanction of congress in the month of February of the following year.

If the power of congress was fast becoming a nullity, since a change of circumstances had diminished the respect paid to its decrees and recommendations during the dangers of actual war, the state authorities experienced nearly equal difficulties in carrying on the necessary operations of government. The people were in a condition of great destitution and distress. Scarce able to procure the necessaries of life, they were continually called upon to provide funds for public purposes, and, as these were collected by direct taxation, the burden, if in reality no greater than that attached to imposts, was more severely felt by the individual. Nothing was more natural than that they should attribute their suffering and poverty to mal-administration of state affairs, nor that a popular cry should be raised for impolitic or impracticable schemes of amendment.

In the autumn of 1786, this feeling broke out into open rebellion in New Hampshire and Massachusetts. The most extensive and dangerous outbreak occurred in the latter state. One Daniel Shays, who had held office in the continental army, headed the movement, and, before any effective steps were taken to suppress it, collected an armed body of malcontents, about a thousand in number. The immediate object appeared to be the obstruction of the sessions of the courts. A greatly superior force of militia was called out, and put under command of General Lincoln. The rebellion was quelled

with very little  
with good polic

The conventio  
gress, met at P  
were present, or  
eleven states, R  
lected to make o  
each state, was  
congress. Wash  
Morris—a distin  
monetary affairs  
several years, du  
subsequent to th

Among the  
taken part in m  
mencement of th  
man, Livingston  
present; the ex  
general characte  
ness, and ability.

The proceedin  
thirty years. It  
be promoted by  
panied by discuss  
states were set fo  
pare an entirely  
articles of confed  
Various plans we  
middle of Septen  
vention was willi

The claims of  
larger, the comm  
agriculture in th  
modes of electio  
bodies, the author  
tion of congressio  
and many minor  
debate. Promine  
those growing out  
to the institution

with very little bloodshed, and those concerned in it, in accordance with good policy, were treated with lenity.

The convention, for the purpose of remodelling the powers of congress, met at Philadelphia on the 14th of May, 1787. Delegates were present, or arrived soon after the opening of the assembly, from eleven states, Rhode Island and New Hampshire having alone neglected to make choice of members. The number commissioned by each state, was about the same as that of its representatives in congress. Washington was chosen president, on motion of Robert Morris—a distinguished financier, to whom the management of the monetary affairs of government had been principally entrusted for several years, during the period of greatest difficulties, before and subsequent to the close of the war.

Among the members of the convention, were many who had taken part in most of the great political movements from the commencement of the contest with England. Franklin, Rutledge, Sherman, Livingston, Gerry, and others of the early patriots, were present; the existing congress was largely represented; and the general character of those assembled, was marked by zeal, earnestness, and ability.

The proceedings were not made public for a period of more than thirty years. It was wisely concluded that harmony of feeling would be promoted by the promulgation of the results arrived at, unaccompanied by discussions in which the opposing interests of the different states were set forth and enlarged upon. It was found easier to prepare an entirely new constitution, than to alter and amend the old articles of confederation so as to meet the exigencies of the times. Various plans were framed and rejected, and it was not until the middle of September, that a scheme was completed which the convention was willing to send forth to the people for ratification.

The claims of the smaller states to equal representation with the larger, the commercial interests of the north as opposed to those of agriculture in the south, the apportionment of representatives, the modes of election, the character of the two proposed legislative bodies, the authority and duties of the executive, the general limitation of congressional powers, the formation of a judiciary department, and many minor details, gave rise to long and, frequently, to excited debate. Prominent among the vexed questions of the day, were those growing out of a difference of opinion and interest with respect to the institution of slavery. Upon this topic, while some northern

members—especially Gouverneur Morris—inveighed against the system with extreme warmth, those from the southern states supported its interests with less heat, but greater determination.

The Constitution of the United States, as it at present exists, (with the exception of a few amendments, chiefly relative to the rights of persons, to the manner of choosing president and vice-president, and to the release of the separate states from liability to be sued in the federal courts by citizens of any other state or foreign nation,) was signed on the 17th of September, 1787, by thirty-eight members of the convention, representing twelve of the original states. New Hampshire had chosen delegates during the session; Rhode Island alone took no share in the proceedings.

By the provisions of this instrument, all legislation is committed to a senate and house of representatives. The first consists of two members from each state—their election to be made by the legislature. They are chosen for six years, but are so classified that one-third of the whole number are elected every second year. The second is composed of members chosen for two years, by the people, in proportion to the population, (originally one for every thirty thousand, with a provision securing to each state at least one representative,) in computing which, three-fifths of all slaves are included. The word slave is avoided by circumlocution. As an offset to this concession to the slave-holding states, direct taxes are decreed to be apportioned in the same manner.

Bills, in order to become laws, must pass both houses, and receive the signature of the president, or, in case of his refusal, must be reconsidered and approved by a two-thirds vote in each house. The house of representatives has the privilege of originating all revenue bills. Provisions are made, for an annual session on the first Monday in December, for the conduct of proceedings, trial of impeachments, rules relative to adjournment, discipline of members, supply of vacancies, census returns, and other details; after which the general powers of the federal legislature are enumerated substantially as follows:

Congress is empowered to levy uniform taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to regulate foreign commerce, and commerce between the states; to coin money, and provide punishments for counterfeiting; to establish a post-office system; to make regulations respecting copy-rights and patents; to create inferior federal courts, and pass laws for the punishment of offences on the high seas; to declare war,

and to raise and support armies, and to regulate the militia; to exercise the jurisdiction upon the high seas, and the jurisdiction over the territory, and to regulate the commerce generally, to provide for the execution of the laws, and to make all laws which shall be necessary and proper.

Finally: "To regulate the commerce with foreign nations, and to regulate the commerce among the several States, and in any part thereof."

Congress was empowered to regulate the commerce with foreign nations, and to regulate the commerce among the several States, and in any part thereof. Congress was also empowered to regulate the commerce with foreign nations, and to regulate the commerce among the several States, and in any part thereof.

By section X., Congress is empowered to regulate the commerce with foreign nations, and to regulate the commerce among the several States, and in any part thereof. Congress is also empowered to regulate the commerce with foreign nations, and to regulate the commerce among the several States, and in any part thereof.

The executive power shall be vested in a president, who shall hold his office for four years, and shall be eligible for re-election. The vice-president shall hold his office for four years, and shall be eligible for re-election. The president shall have the honor and power of pardon, and shall be the commander in chief of the army and navy, and shall have the power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment. The president shall have the power to make treaties, and to appoint and receive ambassadors, and to appoint and receive judges, and to appoint and receive officers of the army and navy, and to appoint and receive officers of the militia. The president shall have the power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

The vice-president shall hold his office for four years, and shall be eligible for re-election. The vice-president shall have the honor and power of pardon, and shall be the commander in chief of the army and navy, and shall have the power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

The vice-president shall have the power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

and to raise and support armies and a navy; to provide for requisitions upon the militia in case of public necessity; to exercise jurisdiction over the district occupied as the seat of government; and, generally, to provide for the common welfare and defence.

Finally: "To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof."

Congress was restrained from prohibiting the importation of slaves prior to the year 1808. There exist, moreover, general restrictions forbidding the suspension of the privilege of *habeas corpus*, except in times of public danger, the passage of *ex post facto* laws, the imposition of export duties, the requisition of duties, clearances, or entries, in commerce between the states, the draught of public funds except to meet regular appropriations, and the grant of any title of nobility.

By section X., "No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility." The power to levy imposts is confined to provisions of absolute necessity for the execution of inspection laws. States are also prohibited from maintaining armed vessels or a standing army, and from engaging in hostilities, except in cases of invasion or imminent danger.

The executive power is vested in a president, who, together with a vice-president, is chosen for four years, by electors from all the states, equal in number to the entire representation in both houses of congress. These electors meet in their several states, and forward returns of their ballotings to the federal seat of government. The votes for president and vice-president are taken separately. If no candidate has a majority of all the electoral votes, in the case of president, the house of representatives, voting by states, elects to that office one of the three candidates who have received the greatest number of votes. On failure to elect a vice-president, the senate makes choice from the two highest numbers on the list.

The vice-president, *virtute officii*, is president of the senate, and upon the death or disability of the president, he succeeds to his duties and responsibilities. In case of further lapse, congress has power to declare upon what officer the presidency shall devolve.

The president is commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, including the militia, when in service of the Union. He may grant reprieves or pardons for offences against the laws of the United States. With the concurrence of two-thirds of the senate, he is empowered to make treaties; and all public ministers, judges of the supreme court, and other officials of the United States, whose appointment is not otherwise provided for, are chosen by the senate upon his nomination. He may fill vacancies in the senate, occurring during recess, for one term only. He is generally charged with the execution of the laws, the commission of officers, and the reception of foreign ambassadors.

The judicial power of the United States is vested in one supreme court, and in courts established by act of congress. The judges of both hold office during good behaviour. Their jurisdiction extends to all cases in law or equity arising under the constitution, or the laws of the United States, &c.; to cases affecting foreign ministers; to matters of admiralty; to cases where the United States is a party; to controversies between different states, between citizens of different states, or those claiming under grants of different states, and between citizens and foreign states, citizens or subjects. The original jurisdiction of the supreme court is confined to cases affecting foreign ministers, and cases where a state is a party.

A republican government is guaranteed to each state, and the United States is pledged to protect each of them against invasion and domestic violence. Each state is bound to give full faith to the public acts of the others, and to accord equal privileges with its own citizens to all citizens of the United States. Fugitives from justice are to be delivered up, on requisition of the executive of the state where the crime has been committed: those "held to service or labour in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another," shall be restored "on claim of the party to whom such service or labour may be due."

Amendments to the constitution are to be proposed by two-thirds of both houses of congress, or by a convention called on application of two-thirds of the states; to be ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, according to the decision of congress. In conclusion—debts of the old confederation are assumed; the United States constitution and laws are declared supreme; and an oath to support the constitution is required of public officers, either in the service of the Union

or of individual  
was contingent  
it was to be bir

RATIFICATION  
INGTON ELEC  
VISIONS FOR  
OF REMOV  
THROUGH  
CONGRE  
DEBT: I  
CATES  
PUBLI  
EN

The new cons  
tions of the separ  
Two political par  
its adoption; the  
federalists. How  
details of the ne  
it was altogether  
ance. This is su  
received uncondi  
of the following s  
acceptance; and  
constitutional cor  
Upon a meeting  
was unanimously  
accordance with t  
ient of the next h  
to the office of vic  
Some delay occ  
the first congress

VOL. IV.-



or of individual states. The original establishment of the constitution was contingent upon its ratification by nine states, upon which event it was to be binding "upon the states so ratifying the same."

---

## CHAPTER II.

RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION BY THE STATES.—WASHINGTON ELECTED PRESIDENT.—THE FIRST CONGRESS: PROVISIONS FOR REVENUE: FORMATION OF A CABINET: POWER OF REMOVAL FROM OFFICE.—WASHINGTON'S TOUR THROUGH NEW ENGLAND.—SECOND SESSION OF CONGRESS: DEBATE RESPECTING THE PUBLIC DEBT: FOREIGN LIABILITIES: PUBLIC CERTIFICATES: ASSUMPTION OF STATE DEBTS: THE PUBLIC DEBT FUNDED: MISCELLANEOUS ENACTMENTS.—CONSTITUTION RATIFIED BY RHODE ISLAND.

The new constitution, upon its reference by congress to conventions of the separate states, gave rise to great discussion and dispute. Two political parties were formed, taking issue upon the subject of its adoption; those in favour of the measure received the title of federalists. However great might be the disapproval of some of the details of the new system, by individual states, sections or parties, it was altogether outweighed by a perception of its general importance. This is sufficiently manifest from the circumstance that it received unconditional ratification in eleven states before the close of the following summer. North Carolina appended conditions to an acceptance; and Rhode Island, as she had taken no share in the constitutional convention, still continued recusant.

Upon a meeting of the presidential electors, George Washington was unanimously elected first president of the United States. In accordance with the original provisions of the constitution, the recipient of the next highest number of votes, John Adams, was elected to the office of vice-president.

Some delay occurring in the arrival of a quorum of members to the first congress (the city of New York being the place of session),

the president was not inaugurated until the 30th of April, 1789: the fourth of the month preceding had been appointed for this purpose. In the full flush of success and popularity, with all eyes turned upon him as the man whose firmness and political integrity fitted him no less for civil office than for military command, he felt great reluctance at entering upon this new sphere of duties.

Immediately upon organization of congress, the business of provision for the expenses of government, and for the payment or funding of the public debt, was opened. It was readily perceived that the most available method of raising revenue was by the imposition of customs upon importations. A tonnage duty upon foreign vessels was at the same time proposed and carried, not without great opposition from the purely agricultural states, who were jealous of a provision which would directly protect and encourage the interests of the commercial portion of the Union, at the same time producing, as they conceived, an injurious effect upon the price of freights. An attempt to draw a distinction between those European nations who had previously entered into commercial arrangements with the United States, and those who had refused so to do, by extending superior privileges to the commerce of the former, was approved in the house, but defeated in the senate.

The operations of government were next systematized by the regular organization of distinct departments for the management of the treasury, of state affairs, foreign and domestic, and of war; an arrangement analagous to the regular European cabinet system. The first incumbents of these offices were Alexander Hamilton, Thomas Jefferson, and General Henry Knox. John Jay, Franklin's former colleague in diplomaey at the French court, was chosen chief-justice. An important prerogative, upon a point in respect to which the constitution was silent, after much debate, was secured to the president. This consisted in the power to remove from office, without action of the senate, either of the heads of department, and other officials whose appointment was by presidential nomination.

Upon the adjournment of congress, towards the close of September, the president undertook an excursion through the New England states. It is said that when he first forsook the retirement of private life to enter upon the duties of his office, his "progress from his seat of Mount Vernon to Philadelphia was a triumphant procession, such as few conquerors have known." Throughout this northern tour the popular expression of admiration and gratitude was carried to an

extent s  
more gr  
ply a tri  
value of  
upon ter  
he had r  
nor was  
men to  
themselv  
be throw

The se  
1790. I  
constitut  
Union he

The se  
congress,  
Long an  
time to t  
months.  
ment of f  
but when  
ated cert  
assumptio  
on the wa

A larg  
ties at a r  
had, for t  
one-sixth  
war had b  
of two hu  
tion of th  
claimed th  
deserved  
currency,

The ide  
funded de  
the interes  
matter of  
The party  
strongly m

extent still greater. This enthusiastic reception must have been the more grateful to Washington from the consciousness that it was simply a tribute to the acknowledged worth of his character and the value of his public services. He had never mingled with the people upon terms of familiarity: of a reserved and dignified demeanour, he had never courted popularity by any of the arts of a demagogue, nor was he gifted with that versatility which has enabled other great men to secure unbounded personal attachment by accommodating themselves to every class of people into whose society they might be thrown.

The second session of congress was held in the month of January, 1790. During the recess, North Carolina had ratified the federal constitution, and, in common with the other states, had ceded to the Union her claims upon a great extent of western territory.

The secretary of the treasury, Mr. Hamilton, on the opening of congress, made a written report upon the state of the public debt. Long and vehement discussions ensued, and the subject was from time to time postponed and resumed throughout a period of six months. Little opposition was made to provisions for the full payment of foreign debts, amounting to about twelve millions of dollars; but when the questions arose respecting the funding of the depreciated certificates of debt held against the federal government, and the assumption of liabilities incurred by the separate states in carrying on the war, a vast variety of opinion was found to exist.

A large party was opposed to the redemption of the public securities at a rate above their marketable value, being what the holders had, for the most part, paid for them, and which was now less than one-sixth of their nominal value. The principal expenses of the war had been defrayed by the issue of paper money to the amount of two hundred millions, or thereabout, and the subsequent redemption of the major portion of it, at the rate of forty for one. It was claimed that the speculators who now claimed by public certificates deserved no better terms than those who held the old continental currency, originally forced upon its holders by penal enactments.

The idea was also enlarged upon that the existence of a great funded debt would render the central government too powerful for the interests and sovereignty of the states, by making its support a matter of pecuniary interest to so large a portion of the population. The party styling itself republican, in opposition to the federalists, strongly maintained this ground of objection. The same argument

was urged against the assumption of state debts. This clause of the proposed financial arrangement was rejected upon the first trial in the house, but was afterwards carried, as we are led to believe, by a somewhat corrupt political bargain. The votes of two members were changed by a promised arrangement respecting the location of the future seat of government, which was fixed for ten years at Philadelphia, and thenceforth at some spot upon the Potomac—arrangements to be made by the president for a commission to decide upon the precise spot.

According to the bill, as formerly enacted, a loan was to be effected for the payment of the foreign debt in full; the domestic debt was to be funded by the receipt of subscriptions in certificates at their nominal value, and in old Continental bills at the rate of one hundred for one! Certificates for arrearages of interest were to be renewed by others bearing three per cent. interest; those for the principal being entitled to six per cent. The debts of the individual states were specifically assumed, to the amount of twenty-one millions five hundred thousand dollars; for which a loan was to be opened, receivable in state certificates for debts incurred to meet the expenses of the war, or directly issued for services during hostilities.

In pursuance of constitutional provisions, congress, at this session, passed laws regulating the naturalization of foreigners, the grant of patents and copy-rights, the duties and privileges of seamen, and the manner of trading and negotiating with the Indian tribes. Provisions were also made for establishing regular diplomatic intercourse with foreign nations. Various crimes against the United States were defined, and punishments affixed to their commission. A small standing army was organized, and specific appropriations were made to meet all necessary civil and military expenses of the current year.

In the month of May, Rhode Island had finally ratified the constitution, and representatives from that state took their seats in congress during the session.

INDIAN NEG  
TRIBES.—H  
SESSION O  
BANK.—S  
TO THE U  
THE P  
ERN  
HIS

EARLY attempt  
ernment, to effe  
of the west and  
and the frontier  
established with  
breed, with sev  
temporary capit  
The president ha  
who departed hi  
guaranties of po  
the Indians by th  
the inhabitants o  
With the north  
Stimulated by B  
their old territori  
feelings of hostili  
tion of their town  
Willis' Towns, &c  
nine years previo  
men, under Gener  
paign in the north  
natives, the latter  
of the country.  
laying ambuscades  
large number of the  
At the third se

## CHAPTER III.

INDIAN NEGOTIATIONS: THE CREEKS: THE NORTH-WESTERN TRIBES.—HARMAR'S UNSUCCESSFUL CAMPAIGN.—THIRD SESSION OF CONGRESS: THE EXCISE LAW: A NATIONAL BANK.—SETTLEMENT OF KENTUCKY: ITS ADMISSION TO THE UNION.—ADMISSION OF VERMONT.—SITE OF THE FEDERAL CAPITOL.—THE NORTH-WESTERN INDIANS: ST. CLAIR'S EXPEDITION: HIS DISASTROUS DEFEAT.—POLITICAL PARTIES.—THE CENSUS.

EARLY attempts were made, under authority of the federal government, to effect amicable arrangements with the great Indian tribes of the west and south, by which the continued disputes between them and the frontier settlers might be set at rest. Friendly relations were established with the Creeks; their principal chief, M'Gillivray, a half-breed, with several of his tribe, was escorted to New York, the temporary capital, for the purpose of concluding terms of treaty. The president held a personal conference with these wild warriors, who departed highly satisfied with presents, promised annuities, and guaranties of possession in their lands. The concessions accorded to the Indians by this arrangement gave great dissatisfaction to some of the inhabitants of Georgia.

With the north-western tribes no arrangements could be made. Stimulated by British agents, they claimed exclusive right to all their old territories north of the Ohio. They still retained former feelings of hostility, and cherished hopes of revenge for the destruction of their towns on the Miami, Old and New Chillicothe, Peccaway, Willis' Towns, &c., laid waste by an expedition under General Clarke nine years previous. In the autumn of 1790, more than a thousand men, under General Harmar, were dispatched upon an Indian campaign in the north-western territory. In every skirmish with the natives, the latter had the advantage from their superior knowledge of the country. They avoided any general engagement, but, by laying ambuscades for detached parties, succeeded in cutting off a large number of the whites. The expedition was signally unsuccessful. At the third session of congress, in December, 1791, one of the

earliest subjects of debate was a proposition to increase the revenue by additional duties upon spirituous liquors, and by the establishment of an excise upon those of domestic manufacture. A bill for this purpose finally passed—not without very violent opposition. Another, and more important source of contention, was the institution of a national bank. This was strenuously opposed, both upon grounds of public policy, and the alleged defect of constitutional power in congress for the organization of such an establishment. The measure was carried, in spite of all opposition: a bank was chartered, with a capital of ten millions of dollars, one-fifth of which was to be subscribed for by the United States. Private stockholders had the privilege of paying three-fourths of their subscriptions in United States' stocks.

The only further proceedings of importance during the session, were the adoption of resolutions for an increase of the army, in anticipation of an Indian war, and the admission of two new states into the Union. The settlement of Kentucky had been commenced, not long before the breaking out of the revolutionary war, by the bold and enterprising pioneer, Daniel Boone, who, with a few associates, allured by the fertility and beauty of the country, had ventured to brave the dangers of an isolated position in the remote wilderness. Indian traders, in early times, reported of this country, that "No Indians dwelt there, but the various tribes made it their hunting-ground, and in their encounters, waged such fierce and desperate battles, that the whole region was known among them by the name of 'The Dark and Bloody Ground.'"

Kentucky had increased so fast in population, that it was judged expedient, both by the inhabitants and by the legislature of Virginia, in the territory of which state it was included, that the former should be set off as a separate state. A convention, called for the consideration of the question, had fixed upon the 1st of June, 1792, as the period for the commencement of the new organization, contingent upon the action of congress. The assent of the latter was given, prospectively.

Between Vermont and New York, a contention of some standing had existed. The latter claimed jurisdiction over the former, as included within her own territory; Vermont resisted, and organized a separate government. An accommodation was effected at the time of which we are now speaking, and Vermont was admitted as a new state on the 18th of February (1791).

nue  
ish-  
for  
ion.  
tion  
pon.  
onal  
ent.  
was  
hich  
ders  
s in

sion,  
, in  
tates  
aced,  
r the  
asso-  
ven-  
mote  
ntry,  
their  
and  
n by

ddged  
Vir-  
t the  
alled  
June,  
ation,  
r was

nding  
er, as  
nized  
t the  
ted as



RED JACKET.

The pres  
through som  
—in accord  
federal capi  
scale, and m  
of lands an  
consequentl  
have fallen  
Great comm  
new country

During th  
check the de  
accomplishe  
fields. Exp  
savages, and

Upon the  
portion of th  
priated to th  
limits of the  
their claims  
orator, Red-J  
ruled by the  
or Corn-Plan  
with the wes  
ican settlers.

In the aut  
two thousand  
present city o  
lished and g  
miles from th  
The moveme  
tribes of the  
mies, Delawa  
ance of Mich  
Brant, had fu  
plans for defe

“Before th  
4th), the sava  
more decisiv  
and his officer



The president, in the course of the spring, made an excursion through some of the southern states, and, on his route, made selection—in accordance with provisions before mentioned—of a site for the federal capital. A city was laid out, for this purpose, upon a grand scale, and much speculative enterprise was displayed in the purchase of lands and erection of buildings. The increase of the city, and, consequently, of the value of property within its extensive limits, have fallen far short of the sanguine expectations of its founders. Great commercial facilities can alone build up large cities in a new country.

During the summer of this year, several attempts were made to check the depredations of the Indians on the Ohio, but nothing was accomplished further than the destruction of a few villages and corn-fields. Expeditions on so small a scale only served to irritate the savages, and to render the condition of the frontier more unsafe.

Upon the conclusion of peace with Great Britain, a considerable portion of the Iroquois retired into Canada, where lands were appropriated to their use on Grand river; those remaining within the limits of the United States, by solemn treaty, at Fort Stanwix, ceded their claims in eastern New York. The noted Seneca chief and orator, Red-Jacket, strenuously opposed this treaty, but was overruled by the influence of his superior in age and authority, O'Bail, or Corn-Planter. The Six Nations continued in communication with the western tribes, and were generally inimical to the American settlers.

In the autumn of 1791, General Arthur St. Clair, with more than two thousand men, marched from Fort Washington, the site of the present city of Cincinnati, into the Indian territory. Having established and garrisoned two forts, on his route, he encamped fifteen miles from the Indian towns, on the Miami, on the 3d of November. The movements of the army had been slow, and the confederate tribes of the west—Hurons, Potawatomes, Ottawas, Chippewas, Miamies, Delawares, Shawanees, Iroquois, and others—under the guidance of Michikinaqua (Little Turtle), and, as is supposed, of Joseph Brant, had full opportunity to collect their warriors and form their plans for defence.

“Before the rising of the sun, on the following day (November 4th), the savages fell upon the camp of the whites. Never was a more decisive victory obtained. In vain did the American general and his officers exert themselves to maintain order, and to rally the

bewildered troops. The Indians, firing from covert, thinned the ranks, and picked off the officers by a continuous and murderous discharge. A disorderly retreat was the result: artillery, baggage, and no small portion of the arms of the militia, fell into the hands of the exultant pursuers. Fort Jefferson was nearly thirty miles distant, and thither the defeated army directed its flight. The Indians followed close upon the fugitives, cutting down and destroying at will, until, as is reported, one of their chiefs called out to them 'to stop, as they had killed enough.'

"The temptation offered by the plunder to be obtained at the camp, induced the Indians to return, and the remnant of the invading army reached Fort Jefferson about sun-set. The loss, in this battle, on the part of the whites, was no less than eight hundred and ninety-four in killed, wounded, and missing. Thirty-eight officers and five hundred and ninety-three non-commissioned officers and privates were slain or missing. The Indians lost but few of their men—judging from a comparison of the different accounts, not much over fifty."\*

Upon the coming together of congress, in October of 1791, the condition of Indian affairs was brought before that body, and representations of the necessity for an increase in the army were urged. Party spirit, at this time, was growing more virulent; the republicans, at the head of whom stood Secretary Jefferson, eyed the movements of the federalists with great suspicion, continually discovering or imagining a tendency towards a monarchical system in all their plans and operations. Of Hamilton, secretary of the treasury, and leader of the federal party, an English writer observes: "Each step, indeed, which this minister took, seemed in the traces of British policy; and, however salutary or requisite they may have been, he certainly showed little caution in the manner of adopting, successively, the several parts of machinery belonging to a monarchical government."

A strong effort was made at this session, to increase the number of members in the house of representatives, by including in the computation of population the fractional remainder which existed in each state after a division by thirty thousand. The bill passed both houses, but, being sent back with objections, by the president, was reconsidered and lost. The census returns of the first enumeration of the population, exhibited a total of 3,921,326, of which nearly seven hundred thousand were slaves.

\* Indian Races of America.

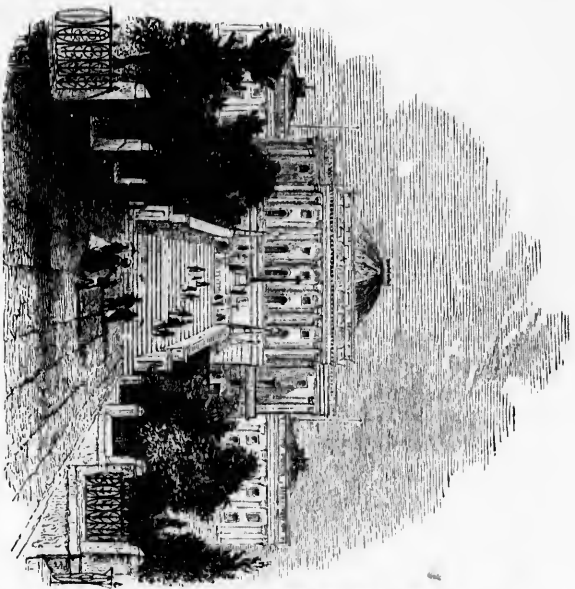
thinned the  
d murderous  
ery, baggage,  
o the hands of  
rty miles dis-  
The Indians  
destroying at  
t to them 'to

tained at the  
the invading  
ir this battle,  
d and ninety-  
icers and five  
privates were  
men—judging  
over fifty."\*

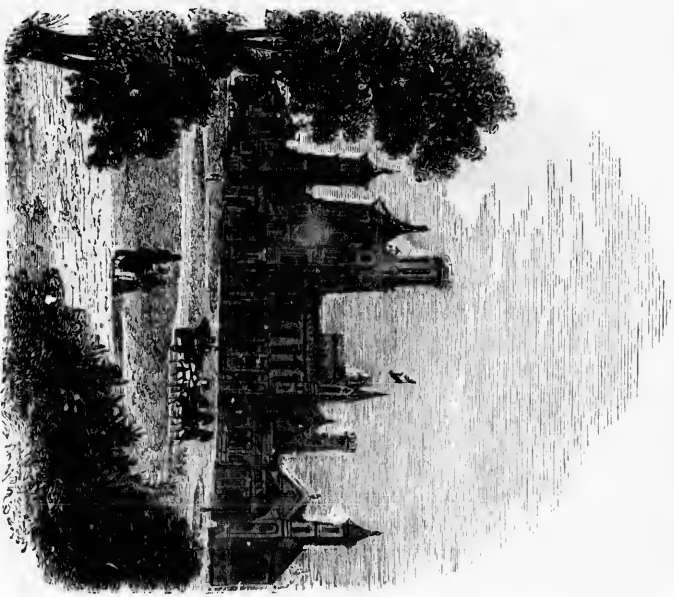
of 1791, the  
y, and repre-  
y were urged  
e republicans,  
e movements  
iscovering or  
in all their  
treasury, and  
"Each step,  
ces of British  
ave been, he  
ting, success-  
monarchical

the number  
nding in the  
ch existed in  
l passed both  
resident, was  
enumeration  
which nearly

THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.



THE SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION, WASHINGTON.



WASHINGTON'S  
—THE FRENCH  
IN THE UNITED  
STATES.—  
AND EN  
SEAME

At the election  
mening in March  
of opposition. I  
office, and only e  
and the people, s  
great political p  
not shield him e  
republican party  
is said that, on o  
break of feeling, e  
he had never repe  
resigning his offic  
he had rather be  
had rather be on  
yet that they were

In opposition  
republicans set u  
larger vote. Thi  
leading liberals, an  
president could ea  
departments.

At this period, a  
trovrsy of Americ  
excited by the sto  
a matter of deep in

## CHAPTER IV.

WASHINGTON'S SECOND TERM: HIS DISINCLINATION TO OFFICE.  
 —THE FRENCH REVOLUTION: ITS POLITICAL INFLUENCE  
 IN THE UNITED STATES.—ARRIVAL OF GENET, AS MIN-  
 ISTER OF THE FRENCH REPUBLIC: HIS PROCEEDINGS AT  
 CHARLESTON.—NEUTRAL POSITION OF THE UNITED  
 STATES.—COMMERCIAL RESTRICTIONS BY FRANCE'  
 AND ENGLAND.—IMPRESSMENT OF AMERICAN  
 SEAMEN.—RETIREMENT OF JEFFERSON.—  
 ALGERINE DEPREDACTIONS.

At the election of president and vice-president, for the term commencing in March, 1793, Washington was reelected without a shadow of opposition. He felt great disinclination to continue longer in office, and only consented to comply with the wishes of the electors and the people, for the purpose of calming the turbulence of the great political parties. His high character and popularity could not shield him entirely from the animadversions of those of the republican party who suspected him of aristocratic predilections. It is said that, on one occasion, subsequent to his reelection, in an outbreak of feeling, excited by some personal attack, he declared, "that he had never repented but once the having slipped the moment of resigning his office, and that was every moment since; that by God he had rather be in his grave than in his present situation; that he had rather be on his farm than be made emperor of the world; and yet that they were charging him with wanting to be a king."

In opposition to Adams, the candidate for vice-president, the republicans set up George Clinton: the federalists obtained the larger vote. This defeat aggravated the rancour of some of the leading liberals, and it was with difficulty that the influence of the president could calm unseemly strife between the opposing heads of departments.

At this period, a new and important element in the political controversy of America, arose from a difference in feeling and sympathy excited by the stormy events of the French revolution. It became a matter of deep interest to inquire how far the United States should

allow themselves to be implicated in the general agitation which threatened Europe. One of the first questions to be decided was, what force did a treaty, concluded with the king of France, possess upon the overthrow of his government, and under the rule of the republic. Popular enthusiasm was strongly aroused in favour of the revolution, a feeling not to be effectually damped by intelligence of the blood-thirsty fanaticism which was exhibited by too many of its supporters.

The arrival at Charleston (in the month of April, 1793) of Genet, the first ambassador commissioned by the republic to negotiate with the United States, rendered some decisive action imperative. After consultation with the cabinet, in which views diametrically opposite were entertained by the leaders of the opposite parties, the president issued a proclamation of neutrality, expressly forbidding citizens of the United States to fit out vessels for the purpose of lending aid to either of the belligerent nations, or in any other manner to take share in hostilities so long as this neutral position should be maintained.

The French minister was enthusiastically received at Charleston, where he spent some time in the preparation of two cruisers, to the commanders of which he filled out commissions, under authority of the republic, to prey upon British commerce. After this high-handed proceeding, Genet travelled by land to Philadelphia, welcomed at every town, on his passage, by the most flattering exhibition of popular feeling. His conduct at Charleston, after a cabinet consultation, was declared illegal by government; the service of American citizens, under French commissions, was pronounced a public offence; and restitution was ordered of prizes taken in American waters.

So far was the French minister encouraged by the sympathy of the powerful republican party, that, in many instances, he set at naught the claims and decisions distinctly made by the American government. His reception by the president was courteous, but the avowed neutrality of the United States was carefully guarded in all diplomatic intercourse. Disinclination to break with an old and powerful ally, the force of national antipathies and predilections, and the influence of the popular feeling, checked that exertion of executive power which the occasion seemed to require. Privateers were fitted out at various ports in the United States; numerous prizes were brought in openly, and condemned by the decisions of the

French consul of his own gov

In one case French frigate fitted out as a p the Little Dem virtual or exp remain until t adjusted.

The governm a neutral posit Toward the clos announced for seizures within forth protected of course, all The French gov all prizes alrea for a recall of t

The violence the popular fav wiser and more ous man; his unnecessary dif engaged in mac the Spanish pos towards the eff great favour fro

To add to oth the commerce o of regulations in rights of neutral nations, sup seizure; but the state of blockad neutral nation. existed, if of le trade, yet of a n mosity. This v serving on board

French consuls, acting under powers granted by Genet, on behalf of his own government.

In one case, a British vessel, the *Little Sarah*, seized by the French frigate in which Genet had first come over from France, was fitted out as a privateer at Philadelphia, and, after being rechristened, the *Little Democrat*, proceeded to sea, notwithstanding a promise, virtual or expressed, on the part of that minister, that she should remain until the claims of those interested in the vessel could be adjusted.

The government moderately, but firmly, persisted in maintaining a neutral position, and in respecting the rights of Great Britain. Toward the close of the summer, guaranty of indemnity was formally announced for all losses by British owners from previous illegal seizures within the waters of the United States, the distance thenceforth protected being fixed at one league from shore, and including, of course, all bays and harbours within the federal jurisdiction. The French government, at the same time, was required to give up all prizes already illegally taken, and a direct requisition was made for a recall of the arrogant Genet.

The violence and insolence of this official had greatly diminished the popular favour which greeted him on his first arrival. The wiser and more far-sighted politicians looked upon him as a dangerous man; his course of conduct tended to involve the states in unnecessary difficulties with England; and he was, undoubtedly, engaged in machinations for the organization of expeditions against the Spanish possessions in Louisiana and Florida. Any movement towards the effecting of a free exit from the Mississippi met with great favour from the settlers on the western waters.

To add to other difficulties in maintaining a position of neutrality, the commerce of the states began to suffer severely from the effect of regulations instituted both by France and England respecting the rights of neutrals to carry on trade with the enemy. By the law of nations, supplies destined for a blockaded port may be liable to seizure; but the declaration that all the ports of an enemy are in a state of blockade, affords but a shallow excuse for the plunder of a neutral nation. Against Great Britain another cause of complaint existed, if of less political importance than this interference with trade, yet of a nature to excite far greater bitterness of private animosity. This was the continual impressment of British seamen, serving on board of American vessels, and—either through error or

pretended mistake—the seizure of Americans, by the same arbitrary and summary powers. It is fully established that many citizens of the states were subjected to this indignity and outrage.

Shortly after the coming together of congress in December, 1793, Jefferson retired from office, and was succeeded as secretary of state by Randolph, former attorney-general. A report upon the commercial relations of the United States, carefully prepared by the retiring secretary, and exhibiting his political views respecting the policy to be pursued towards France and England, was submitted to the consideration of congress. This document urged a discrimination in favour of France, and met with the more favourable reception in consideration of both real and fancied aggressions on the part of England. Among other grounds of dissatisfaction the continuance of Indian disturbances at the north-west was prominent, these being attributed to the influence of British emissaries, encouraged by the Canadian governors.

The first important action of congress related to the means to be adopted for opposing a check upon the depredations of piratical cruisers from Algiers and other portions of the Barbary states, by which the navigation of the Mediterranean was rendered unsafe, and for the release of prisoners taken by the pirates, and still held in captivity. A considerable sum of money was appropriated for the purpose of purchasing terms of treaty, while, at the same time, in anticipation of a failure in this attempt, congress ordered the preparation of a naval armament adequate to enforce the claims of the United States.

AMERICAN PO  
RELATIONS.—  
MISSION OF  
GREAT BR  
DOMINGO  
TO THE  
SYLVA  
I

THE introduc  
the views entert  
vehement discus  
the subject of th  
the sympathy of  
towards the form  
bility and good  
serious collision

Smith, of Sou  
argued at length  
at governing the  
of duties and to  
commerce of nat  
States was to be  
to others, passed  
at the trade with  
restrictions," say  
ain, Madison and  
which they had a  
indeed, could be  
Britain imported  
repeated over an  
chief export was  
ing, tools, and oth  
In all these comm  
the richest party  
the end."



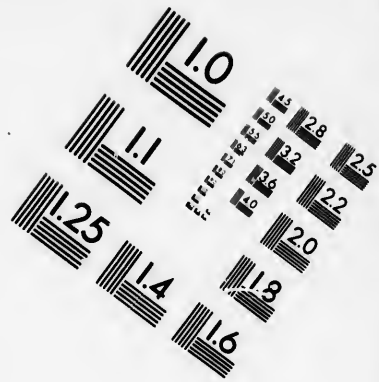
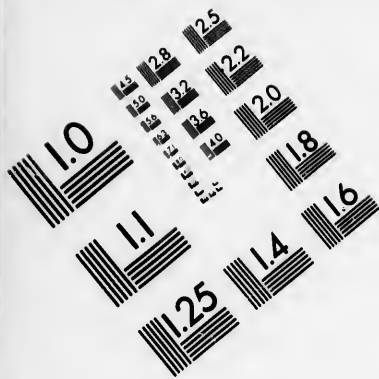
## CHAPTER V.

AMERICAN POLITICS.—DEBATE IN CONGRESS UPON FOREIGN RELATIONS.—FURTHER AGGRESSIONS OF ENGLAND.—COMMISSION OF JAY AS AMBASSADOR EXTRAORDINARY TO GREAT BRITAIN.—RELIEF OF IMMIGRANTS FROM ST. DOMINGO.—THE NEUTRALITY LAWS.—RESISTANCE TO THE EXCISE: REBELLION IN WESTERN PENNSYLVANIA: ITS FORCIBLE SUPPRESSION: OPINIONS OF THE REPUBLICAN PARTY.

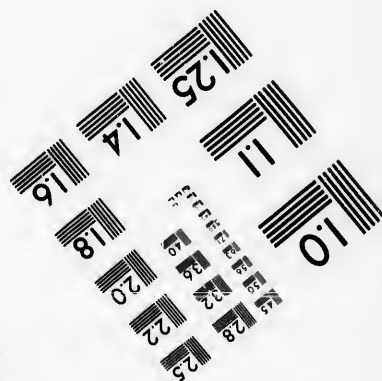
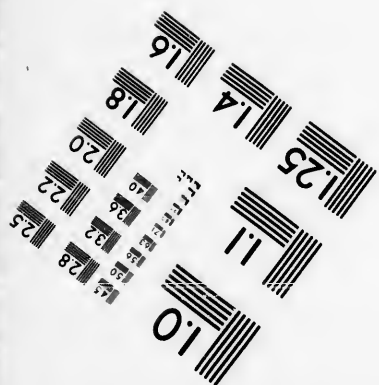
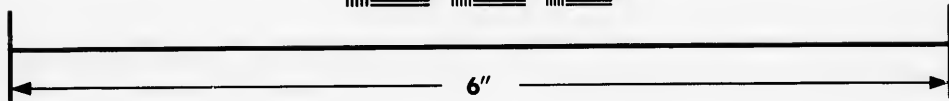
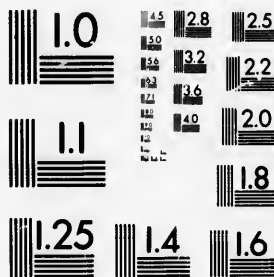
THE introduction, by Mr. Madison, of resolutions in support of the views entertained in Jefferson's report, gave rise to lengthy and vehement discussion. The two great parties had taken issue upon the subject of the policy to be pursued towards France and England: the sympathy of the democratic republicans was exclusively extended towards the former nation, while the federalists, questioning the stability and good faith of the new republic, were anxious to avoid serious collision with the government of Great Britain.

Smith, of South Carolina, took the lead of the opposition, and argued at length upon the futility as well as injustice of any attempt at governing the foreign policy of England by a discriminating scale of duties and tonnage. The resolutions, by virtue of which the commerce of nations under no commercial treaty with the United States was to be subjected to restrictions or burdens not extended to others, passed by a small majority. They were avowedly aimed at the trade with England. "Of the efficacy of these commercial restrictions," says Mr. Hildreth, "as a means of coercing Great Britain, Madison and his party entertained very extravagant ideas, of which they had afterward ample opportunity to be cured. What, indeed, could be more extravagant than the statement that Great Britain imported necessaries from us, and we only luxuries from her, repeated over and over again by the representatives of a state whose chief export was tobacco, and whose imports were principally clothing, tools, and other manufactured articles of daily use and necessity? In all these commercial struggles, nothing is more certain than that the richest party can endure the longest, and is sure to triumph in the end."





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

13 128  
14 132  
15 136  
16 140  
17 144  
18 148  
19 152  
20 156  
21 160  
22 164  
23 168  
24 172  
25 176  
26 180  
27 184  
28 188  
29 192  
30 196  
31 200  
32 204  
33 208  
34 212  
35 216  
36 220  
37 224  
38 228  
39 232  
40 236  
41 240  
42 244  
43 248  
44 252  
45 256  
46 260  
47 264  
48 268  
49 272  
50 276  
51 280  
52 284  
53 288  
54 292  
55 296  
56 300  
57 304  
58 308  
59 312  
60 316  
61 320  
62 324  
63 328  
64 332  
65 336  
66 340  
67 344  
68 348  
69 352  
70 356  
71 360  
72 364  
73 368  
74 372  
75 376  
76 380  
77 384  
78 388  
79 392  
80 396  
81 400  
82 404  
83 408  
84 412  
85 416  
86 420  
87 424  
88 428  
89 432  
90 436  
91 440  
92 444  
93 448  
94 452  
95 456  
96 460  
97 464  
98 468  
99 472  
100 476  
101 480  
102 484  
103 488  
104 492  
105 496  
106 500

107 504  
108 508  
109 512  
110 516  
111 520  
112 524  
113 528  
114 532  
115 536  
116 540  
117 544  
118 548  
119 552  
120 556  
121 560  
122 564  
123 568  
124 572  
125 576  
126 580  
127 584  
128 588  
129 592  
130 596  
131 600  
132 604  
133 608  
134 612  
135 616  
136 620  
137 624  
138 628  
139 632  
140 636  
141 640  
142 644  
143 648  
144 652  
145 656  
146 660  
147 664  
148 668  
149 672  
150 676  
151 680  
152 684  
153 688  
154 692  
155 696  
156 700  
157 704  
158 708  
159 712  
160 716  
161 720  
162 724  
163 728  
164 732  
165 736  
166 740  
167 744  
168 748  
169 752  
170 756  
171 760  
172 764  
173 768  
174 772  
175 776  
176 780  
177 784  
178 788  
179 792  
180 796  
181 800  
182 804  
183 808  
184 812  
185 816  
186 820  
187 824  
188 828  
189 832  
190 836  
191 840  
192 844  
193 848  
194 852  
195 856  
196 860  
197 864  
198 868  
199 872  
200 876  
201 880  
202 884  
203 888  
204 892  
205 896  
206 900  
207 904  
208 908  
209 912  
210 916  
211 920  
212 924  
213 928  
214 932  
215 936  
216 940  
217 944  
218 948  
219 952  
220 956  
221 960  
222 964  
223 968  
224 972  
225 976  
226 980  
227 984  
228 988  
229 992  
230 996  
231 1000

The measures adopted against Great Britain were rendered still more popular upon the arrival of intelligence that orders had been issued by the admiralty in November previous, by which neutral trade with French colonies was as arbitrarily dealt with as that with France direct. It was also reported that the British governor of Lower Canada, Lord Dorchester, at an Indian council, had delivered an address breathing a hostile spirit towards the United States.

The anticipated danger was met by appropriations—on rather a small scale, considering the supposed necessities of the case—for fortifying various sea-ports, and for organization and training of the militia. A temporary embargo was also decided upon. So strong was the hostile feeling, that a motion was made, and warmly urged, for the sequestration of debts due to British creditors, for the purpose of applying them to indemnify those who had sustained losses by seizure of property under the obnoxious laws restraining neutral trade. It was also proposed that all trade with Great Britain should cease until reparation should be made for these illegal seizures, and until an evacuation of the western military posts should be ordered.

The English ministry, on the other hand, seemed to incline to pacific and conciliatory measures, being "too fully and deeply occupied with treasons at home, and the menace of invasion from abroad, to answer this waspishness of America in a similar tone. On the contrary, the last obnoxious order of the admiralty was recalled, and the federal party were able to rally, and entertain hopes of avoiding a rupture."

Washington was anxious to preserve peaceable relations with Great Britain, and, foreseeing the possible results of heated and angry debate in congress, with the recurrence of successive hostile enactments passed upon the spur of the occasion, and insufficiently digested, he fixed upon a plan to set the matter temporarily at rest. In the month of April, 1794, he proposed to the senate the appointment of a minister extraordinary, empowered to negotiate for the settlement of all existing difficulties with England, and nominated, for this mission, Chief-Justice Jay. The nomination was confirmed, by a very close vote.

These were times of great political excitement. Every arrival from Europe brought news replete with interest, and having a bearing upon American politics more direct than we can well appreciate at the present time. The more violent of the republican party imitated the French organization of political clubs, and in the midst

of the "F  
rejoice ov  
home, wo  
more mod  
our own,  
lamented  
judice the

In antic  
St. Domin  
island we  
whites, an  
States. A  
grants call  
the power  
stitution fo  
by a force  
intercourse  
of its popu  
later perio  
thousand  
immigrants

Another  
called forth  
expeditions  
anxiety of  
rendered it  
prise, if wi  
citizens fro  
both houses  
years' impr  
military ser  
States. Th  
unlawfully  
they had sec  
the former,

The equip  
within the U  
against any  
offender to a  
To secure pr

of the "Reign of Terror," were so far blinded by party zeal as to rejoice over intelligence of proceedings which, if brought nearer home, would have excited unmingled horror and disgust. Others, more moderate, yet with equal sympathy for a nation involved like our own, in a strife between the people and their hereditary tyrants, lamented over the violence which by reaction must eventually prejudice the cause of liberty and of equal rights.

In anticipation of conquest by the English, the French officials at St. Domingo had issued a proclamation by which the slaves on that island were set free. The country became generally unsafe for whites, and many, abandoning all their effects, sailed for the United States. A bill introduced for the relief of these unfortunate immigrants called forth much argument upon the constitutional limits of the power of congress. No authority can be discovered in the constitution for any appropriation for mere purposes of charity, except by a forced implication under the general provisions for foreign intercourse. The measure was, notwithstanding, carried, by virtue of its popularity, and has formed a precedent acted upon at a much later period, upon the occasion of the famine in Ireland. Fifteen thousand dollars were appropriated for the relief of the French immigrants.

Another act, passed at this session, of great present interest, was called forth by the continued efforts of French agents to organize expeditions against the Spanish possessions of Louisiana. The anxiety of the western settlers to obtain possession of the Mississippi rendered it an easy matter to collect adventurers upon such an enterprise, if winked at by government. A bill to restrain American citizens from engaging in hostilities with friendly nations passed both houses early in June. A fine of one thousand dollars and three years' imprisonment were made the penalty for entrance into foreign military service by any persons within the jurisdiction of the United States. This provision was specially aimed at those who should unlawfully enlist recruits; the penalty awarded against those whom they had seduced from allegiance being remitted upon conviction of the former, consequent on their information.

The equipment of vessels, and the organization of expeditions within the United States, for the purpose of carrying on hostilities against any country at peace with the confederation, subjected the offender to a still heavier fine, with the same term of imprisonment. To secure promptitude in the suppression of such unlawful enter-

prise, the president was expressly authorized to exert his powers as commander-in-chief of the military forces of the United States, and in case of necessity to call out the militia.

A serious civil disturbance took place in western Pennsylvania during the summer. The law imposing excise duties on spirituous liquors of domestic manufacture had been, from the first, particularly obnoxious in this section of the country, the difficulty of getting grain to market rendering its consumption for purposes of distillation a matter of great convenience and profit. Process being issued against certain distillers who had neglected to conform to the provisions of the act, the civil officials were resisted, and the rioters, adopting an offensive attitude, assailed the house of the inspector.

The spirit of insurrection rapidly spread throughout the western counties, and the people, inflamed by the speeches and influence of demagogues, set the laws at defiance, maltreated its officers, and held public meetings for organizing a regular system of resistance. The mails were intercepted to cut off communication with the seat of government, and the friends of order and obedience to the laws were completely overawed in all the disaffected districts.

The leaders of this insurrection became the more insolent and exacting from the mild measures at first resorted to for allaying the tumult, and the president found it necessary to exert his constitutional powers for the support of the laws. A requisition was made for fifteen thousand militia, from Pennsylvania and the adjoining states: an overpowering force was marched into the western counties, and every symptom of rebellion speedily disappeared. Those who had taken the most active part in the outbreak made their escape: many arrests were made, but great leniency was exhibited towards the few found guilty upon trial.

It was the opinion of the republican party in general, that this demonstration was uncalled for by the exigency of the circumstances. Jefferson, in a letter, says of the doings of the rebels: "We know of none which, according to the definitions of the law, have been any thing more than riotous. \* \* The information of our militia returned from the westward is uniform, that, though the people there let them pass quietly, they were objects of their laughter, not of their fear; that one thousand men could have cut off their whole force in a thousand places of the Alleghany; that their detestation of the excise law is universal, and has now associated to it a detestation of

wers as  
es, and

ylvania  
rituous  
cularly  
getting  
distil-  
being  
to the  
nd the  
of the

western  
nce of  
d held  
The  
eat of  
s were

at and  
ng the  
nstitu-  
ade for  
states:  
s, and  
o had  
many  
e few

t this  
ances.  
ow of  
n any  
nilitia  
there  
their  
ce in  
f the  
on of







**GEORGE WASHINGTON,**  
FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.  
BORN FEB. 22, 1732, IN WESTMORELAND COUNTY, VA. ; TOOK OATH OF  
OFFICE, APRIL 30 1789; SERVED 8 YEARS; DIED DEC. 14, 1799

the govern  
distant and  
mined in th

GENERAL V  
INDIANS.  
MIAMI R  
CRATIC  
BRITI  
D

THE north  
expedition s  
tinually mor  
of western se  
considered a  
rendered com  
ties. It fina  
their ravages  
the campaign  
posts at Gree  
ble by St. Cl

The preced  
and in the c  
stowed upon  
strength of t  
attack on the  
English or C  
though not w

In the mo  
"When the a  
events rapidly  
the Indian set  
emptying into  
beautiful stre

Vo

the government; and that separation, which, perhaps, was a very distant and problematical event, is now near, and certain, and determined in the mind of every man."

## CHAPTER VI.

GENERAL WAYNE'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE NORTH-WESTERN INDIANS.—DEFEAT OF THE CONFEDERATE TRIBES AT THE MIAMI RAPIDS.—NATURALIZATION LAWS.—THE DEMOCRATIC CLUBS.—HAMILTON'S RESIGNATION.—THE BRITISH TREATY: ITS RATIFICATION: POPULAR INDIGNATION.—RANDOLPH'S RESIGNATION

THE north-western Indians, unmolested by any important military expedition since their signal victory over St. Clair, had grown continually more insolent and exacting in their demands. The progress of western settlements was impeded by savage inroads: the natives considered all white emigrants from the east as encroachers, and, rendered confident by late successes, seemed rather to court hostilities. It finally became essential to oppose a forcible check to their ravages. To guard against the possibility of a second defeat, the campaign of 1794 was preceded by the fortification of military posts at Greenville, on the Miami, and at the spot rendered memorable by St. Clair's defeat. The latter was named Fort Recovery.

The preceding winter and spring were occupied in these works, and in the collection of an army, the command of which was bestowed upon General Wayne. On the 30th of June, 1794, the strength of the position at Fort Recovery was tested by a fierce attack on the part of the Indians, assisted by a number of whites—English or Canadians. The place was successfully defended, although not without heavy loss.

In the month of August active operations were commenced. "When the army was once put in motion, important and decisive events rapidly succeeded. The march was directed into the heart of the Indian settlements on the Miami, now called Maumee, a river emptying into the western extremity of Lake Erie. Where the beautiful stream Au Glaize empties into the river, a fort was im-

diately erected, and named Fort Defiance. From this post General Wayne sent emissaries to invite the hostile nations to negotiation, but the pride and rancour of the Indians prevented any favourable results. Little Turtle, indeed, seemed to forebode the impending storm, and advised the acceptance of the terms offered. 'The Americans,' said he, 'are now led by a chief who never sleeps: the night and the day are alike to him. \* \* Think well of it. There is something whispers me it would be prudent to listen to his offers of peace.'"\* Wayne was commonly called by the Indians the "Black Snake:" another *soubriquet*, bestowed upon him by his own followers, was that of "Mad Anthony."

The American camp was posted in the midst of such extensive and highly cultivated fields of corn as excited the admiration and astonishment of the invaders. The country "presented for miles the appearance of a single village, and rich corn-fields spread on either side." The Indians had retreated down the river from their settlement, upon the advance of the army, and had taken up a position in the immediate vicinity of a British fort, near the Miami rapids. This was one of those posts retained by Great Britain in defiance of former treaties, and constituted, as was generally believed, a *dépôt* where the Indians could procure arms and counsel, if not direct assistance.

General Wayne attacked the enemy in their position, on the 20th of August. The Indians fought bravely: skilled in the use of fire-arms, and somewhat familiar with the tactics of modern warfare, they were far different opponents from what they had been in earlier times. Their array, however, was broken by a charge of bayonets, and an entire rout ensued. The powerful confederacy was, for the time, annihilated; and the Americans, retracing their steps, spent some time in laying waste the fields and settlements of the wretched savages. Garrisons were posted at the forts within the Indian districts, and the army retired to Greenville for winter-quarters.

The more important proceedings of congress, at the winter session of 1794-5, related to the naturalization laws—which were established as at present, requiring five years' residence in the United States, a declaration of intention three years previous to the final application, and one year's residence in the state where the petition is granted;—and the establishment of a system for the appropriation of surplus revenue for the reduction of the national debt.

\* Indian Races of America.

A length  
question as  
marks in a  
clubs. In  
tumults, W  
societies," v  
sition to th  
concurréd i  
promised th  
the action o  
misrepresent  
tenanced re  
It was at  
as secretary  
war. Olive  
ment, succee  
Timothy Pic  
principal me  
gushed offic  
public servic

A special  
deliberate up  
can ambassa  
ville. Great  
the most obj  
open; and th  
erally accomp  
to give up po  
of debts due  
agreement pr

With respe  
British West  
tons measure  
any exportati  
nies, from An  
respecting the  
which Englan  
were not clear  
if seized. No  
ferred loss from

A lengthy and excited debate arose early in the session, upon the question as to what action should be taken in reply to certain remarks in a message of the president, relative to the democratic clubs. In adverting to the circumstances attendant upon the excise tumults, Washington alluded to these associations, as "self-created societies," whose influence had been perniciously extended in opposition to the power and authority of government. The senate concurred in this denunciation; the house of representatives compromised the matter in dispute by a general resolution, condemning the action of individuals or societies, which should have resulted in misrepresentations of the proceedings of government, or have countenanced resistance to lawful authority.

It was at this session that Alexander Hamilton resigned his office as secretary of the treasury, and General Knox that of secretary of war. Oliver Wolcott, an officer connected with the treasury department, succeeded the former; the place of the latter was occupied by Timothy Pickering, former post-master general. It is said that the principal motive for retirement, on the part of both these distinguished officials, was pecuniary necessity, the pay awarded for their public services being grossly inadequate.

A special session of the senate was called early in June, 1795, to deliberate upon a treaty recently arranged between Jay, the American ambassador extraordinary, and the British minister, Lord Grenville. Great Britain, it was found, would consent to few concessions; the most objectionable of her claims were still insisted upon, or left open; and the commercial privileges yielded to America were generally accompanied by onerous restrictions or conditions. She agreed to give up possession of the western posts upon security for payment of debts due to British subjects before the revolution. A reciprocal agreement provided for indemnity in all cases of illegal seizures.

With respect to freedom of commerce, the right to trade with the British West Indies was restricted to vessels not exceeding seventy tons measurement, a privilege counterbalanced by a prohibition of any exportation of articles similar to those produced in those colonies, from America to Europe. A wide discretion was still claimed respecting the right to seize supplies destined for any country with which England should be engaged in hostilities. Such articles as were not clearly "contraband of war," were, it is true, to be paid for if seized. No indemnity could be procured for those who had suffered loss from the abduction of slaves by the British during the

war; and the right to impress subjects of the king, if found on board American vessels, was insisted upon, and remained undecided. Goods belonging to an enemy were still claimed by England to be liable to seizure on board the vessels of a neutral.

The treaty was approved by a two-thirds vote of the senate, (objection being taken to the article relating to the West India trade, upon which action was suspended,) and received the ratification of the president on the 14th day of August, notwithstanding a storm of popular indignation, which had broken out upon its publication. The terms agreed upon fell so far short of the expectations or wishes of the people, that meetings were every where held, and violent denunciatory resolutions passed. A memorial accompanied the ratification, protesting against the claim, enforced by recent orders of admiralty, respecting the indiscriminate seizure of provisions which might be destined for the relief of an enemy.

At this time, certain private communications between Mr. Edmund Randolph, the secretary of state, and Fauchet, the successor of Genet as ambassador from France, having come to the knowledge of the British government by an intercepted dispatch, had been made known to the president. The tendency of these disclosures was to reflect upon the secretary an imputation of double-dealing, and of some unwarrantable propositions. He accordingly resigned his office, at the same time entering into an elaborate defence of his conduct, and indignantly denying the validity of conclusions adopted by his political opponents. A discussion of the merits of the case is entirely beyond our limits, and it may, indeed, be doubted whether we have means for arriving at a determinate opinion respecting the affair.

INDIAN  
ALGIERS  
TRADE  
TRE  
—  
T

THE Ind  
power of th  
British, wer  
a willingne  
about at Fo  
General Wa  
nite agreem  
ries, &c. T  
in the prese  
Before th  
also negotiat  
ernment. I  
States subm  
in order to  
Algerine cor  
tivity, victin  
arrangement  
of Florida an  
out the Miss

These sev  
president, to  
brought bef  
for the purpo  
made, as sho  
affairs, Algie  
treaty called f

## CHAPTER VII.

- INDIAN TREATY AT PORT GREENVILLE.—TREATIES WITH ALGIERS AND SPAIN: THE MISSISSIPPI OPENED TO AMERICAN TRADE.—DEBATE IN CONGRESS UPON JAY'S BRITISH TREATY.—TENNESSEE ADMITTED INTO THE UNION.—FRENCH PROCEEDINGS IN RESPECT TO THE TREATY.—AMERICAN MINISTERS TO FRANCE.—WASHINGTON'S RETIREMENT FROM OFFICE: SLANDERS UPON HIS CHARACTER.—JOHN ADAMS ELECTED PRESIDENT.

THE Indians of the north-west, finally convinced of the superior power of the United States, and learning that their old allies, the British, were about to evacuate the western military posts, expressed a willingness to treat pacifically. A great meeting was brought about at Fort Greenville at the beginning of August, 1795, at which General Wayne, on behalf of the United States, entered into a definite agreement with the principal chiefs respecting future boundaries, &c. The Indians gave up all claim to an immense tract included in the present state of Ohio, together with other lands farther west.

Before the next session of congress very important treaties were also negotiated with the Dey of Algiers, and with the Spanish government. In common with several European nations, the United States submitted to the disgraceful imposition of a heavy tribute, in order to secure safety for her commerce from the attacks of the Algerine corsairs, and for the release of prisoners still held in captivity, victims of former piracies. With Spain more honourable arrangements were established. The boundaries of her provinces of Florida and Louisiana were assigned, and free navigation throughout the Mississippi was secured to the citizens of the United States.

These several treaties having been ratified by the senate and president, together with that concluded with Great Britain, were brought before the house of representatives, at its winter session, for the purpose of such action being taken, and such appropriations made, as should give them full effect. Those relating to Indian affairs, Algiers, and Spain, were readily disposed of: the English treaty called forth all the fury of the opposition. A previous refusal

by the president, on grounds of public policy, upon a call from the house, to lay before that body the diplomatic correspondence, &c., relative to this treaty, had a tendency to aggravate party violence.

The question was debated from April 15th, 1796, until the close of the month. The whole effect of treaties; whether they became binding when ratified, or whether concurrence of the house by necessary appropriations was requisite before the national faith could be considered pledged; and an application of general principles to this particular treaty, formed abundant theme for argument and declamation. A compromise was finally effected, by a passage of the appropriations, as being a matter of present expediency, without any decision of the general position in dispute.

On the 1st of June, just at the close of the session, the state of Tennessee was admitted into the Union. The population of that territory already amounted to about eighty thousand, including negroes.

The conclusion of Jay's British treaty excited great dissatisfaction in France. The Directory, indignant that America should have yielded to the British claims respecting the seizure of French property on board neutral vessels, declared that France was no longer bound by the stipulations of her former treaty with the United States, and, on the 2d of July, 1796, an order was promulgated, "authorizing the ships-of-war of the republic to treat neutral vessels in the same manner in which they suffered themselves to be treated by the English."

Great numbers of American vessels were seized and confiscated under this decree. Mr. Monroe, minister to France, at this period was a member of the republican party, and, as such, warmly favoured the interests of that nation. He had met with an enthusiastic reception, and, through him, a formal exchange of flags had been effected between France and the United States, as a token of mutual respect and amity. With the intention of adopting a stronger tone towards the government of the republic, Washington appointed Charles C. Pinckney of South Carolina, in place of Monroe. The new envoy sailed for France in September.

As the period of his second term of office approached, President Washington, in a farewell address, announced his determination to retire from public life. This valedictory was issued in the month of September, 1796. Throughout his administration his conduct had been marked by firmness and integrity; but his leaning towards the principles of the federalists was an unpardonable sin in the

opinion of  
been heape  
personal vi  
and even p  
The grosse  
circulated;  
forged lette  
of the peop

Time has  
ical opponer  
to blind me  
in public li  
and few ha  
statesman.

At the se  
forward, as  
Jefferson.  
ceived seven  
of which he  
ration took  
to his estat  
of his life.

TREATMENT  
HOSTILE P  
FUSAL O  
MINISTE  
EXTRA  
THE D  
ACTI  
ALL

THE admin  
plexing diffic  
Soon after t  
setting forth



opinion of too many of the opposition. Every species of abuse had been heaped upon him by ranters in the republican party; ambitious personal views, disregard for popular rights, a tyrannical disposition, and even peculations upon the public funds, were attributed to him. The grossest misrepresentations reflecting upon his character were circulated; his enemies did not even scruple at the publication of forged letters for the purpose of alienating the affection and respect of the people from their former idol.

Time has exposed these falsehoods, and the vituperation of political opponents is forgotten. The acrimony of party zeal has ceased to blind men's minds to the true character of Washington; no man in public life has left behind him a more unblemished reputation, and few have attained equal eminence as a commander and a statesman.

At the second presidential election, the great political parties put forward, as their respective candidates, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. Seventy votes were necessary to a choice; Adams received seventy-one, and the republican candidate sixty-nine by virtue of which he entered upon the office of vice-president. The inauguration took place in the 9th of March, 1797. Washington retired to his estate at Mount Vernon, where he passed the remainder of his life.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

TREATMENT OF UNITED STATES' AMBASSADORS IN FRANCE.—  
 HOSTILE PREPARATIONS IN AMERICA.—NEW EMBASSY: RE-  
 FUSAL OF THE DIRECTORY TO RECEIVE THE AMERICAN  
 MINISTERS.—NEGOTIATIONS WITH TALLEYRAND.—  
 EXTRAVAGANT DEMANDS AND INJURIOUS DECREES OF  
 THE DIRECTORY.—RETURN OF THE AMBASSADORS.—  
 ACTION OF CONGRESS: MILITARY PREPARATIONS:  
 ALIEN AND SEDITION LAWS: LAND-TAX, ETC.

The administration of Mr. Adams opened with serious and perplexing difficulties connected with our relations towards France. Soon after the inauguration, dispatches arrived from Pinckney, setting forth the injurious reception that he had met with on the

part of the Directory. Monroe, upon presentation of his own letters of récall, and those relative to the new appointment, was notified that France would receive no other ambassador from the United States until redress should be made for the grievances before complained of as connected with the British treaty.

The retiring minister, at his last audience, was dismissed by the president, Barras, in a speech as flattering to him as insulting to his country. Pinckney could not even obtain a necessary protection for continuing in the country until further orders from home. He was compelled to leave France, and proceeded, accordingly, to Holland.

The late astonishing successes which had attended her arms upon the continent, caused the existing government of France to undervalue the importance of preserving friendly relations with the American republic; and the tone adopted by the Directory was of a character calculated to strengthen the federal party in the states. New and offensive decrees relative to American commerce speedily followed.

President Adams, in a forcible address to congress, set forth the conduct of the French government, as opposed to all rules of national courtesy and right: he recommended the formation of a naval force, with other measures for defence of the commerce of the country, and inveighed against the interference of France with the internal politics of the United States, exhibited in various endeavours to influence the elections, and alienate the people from the government. After long debate in the house, appropriations were made, and loans authorized for the purpose of carrying out the views of the president, and arrangements were made for a draught of militia from the several states in case of emergency.

A new embassy was commissioned, consisting of three persons—Pinckney, Marshall, and Gerry—to make a further attempt at the opening of pacific negotiations. The envoys proceeded to France, and arrived in Paris early in October, 1797. The Directory refused to receive them, but an irregular negotiation was commenced through the intervention of some agents of Talleyrand, then minister for foreign affairs, and protracted, without important issue, until April of the following year. During this period, the American ambassadors were officially authorized to remain at the capital, and, from time to time, held interviews with Talleyrand or his creatures.

The point most insisted on by the latter, was the necessity for

own letters  
notified  
the United  
more com-

ed by the  
ing to his  
rotection  
me. He  
ngly, to

ms upon  
o under-  
with the  
y was of  
ne states,  
speedily

orth the  
es of na-  
ion of a  
ce of the  
with the  
endeav-  
rom the  
ons were  
out the  
draught

ersons—  
t at the  
France,  
refused  
through  
ster for  
il April  
mbassa-  
d, from  
es.  
sity for



**JOHN ADAMS,**

**SECOND PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.**

**BORN IN 1735    PRESIDENT IN 1797, SERVED 4 YEARS,  
DIED JULY 4, 1826**

opening the  
of about two  
the minister  
government  
with the mo  
Frenchmen,  
thing in han  
matter could  
that they po  
or undertaki  
and suggesti  
rupt, were  
brought abou

The deman  
leyrand, coul  
would necess  
for not 'only  
of the late tr  
compliance w  
during the w  
ican vessels v  
produce of a  
existing own  
neutral vessel

After exper  
can commissio  
Gerry, throug  
nications had  
the only repu  
negotiations m

This treatm  
weaken the i  
rageous deman  
decrees, could  
on this side th  
patches contain  
consideration.  
prepare for con  
to American s  
chase of muni

opening the way to a complete arrangement, by a *douceur* or bribe of about two hundred and forty thousand dollars, for the benefit of the minister and directory, and the effecting a loan to the French government of a further sum. This rapacious scheme was urged with the most unblushing effrontery. "The main point," said the Frenchmen, "*is il faut de l'argent—il faut beaucoup d'argent.*" Something in hand, at least, they urged, should be paid them, until the matter could be finally arranged. In vain did the envoys protest that they possessed no shadow of authority for such proceedings or undertakings; the matter was again and again reverted to, and suggestions, unworthy of any but the most venal and corrupt, were made respecting the manner in which it might be brought about.

The demands of the Directory, as finally communicated by Talleyrand, could not be listened to for a moment. If granted, they would necessarily involve the United States in an immediate war, for not only was the loan insisted upon, but also an annulment of the late treaty with Great Britain. Desirous to terrify, or force compliance with their unreasonable demands, the government had, during the winter, greatly extended the grounds upon which American vessels were held liable to seizure. It was declared that all produce of any dependency of Great Britain, without regard to existing ownership, should be lawful prize, if found on board a neutral vessel.

After experiencing every slight and indignity, two of the American commissioners, Marshall and Pinckney, returned to the states; Gerry, through whom, individually, many of the previous communications had been made by Talleyrand, and with whom, as being the only republican on the commission, it was intimated that farther negotiations might be continued, remained at Paris.

This treatment of the United States' ambassadors could not fail to weaken the influence of the Gallican party in America. The outrageous demands of France, and the character of the late commercial decrees, could not be sustained by the most ardent of her adherents on this side the water. Congress being in session, April, 1798, dispatches containing a history of the negotiation were brought up for consideration. The most active measures were at once taken to prepare for contingent hostilities, and to furnish present protection to American shipping. Large sums were appropriated for the purchase of munitions of war, for the increase of the naval force, and

for fortifications. A new cabinet department was created for the management of naval affairs.

A succession of important and decisive measures were passed during the spring and summer. Without a direct declaration of war with France, orders were issued for a cessation of all commercial intercourse with that country; former treaties were declared to be of no further effect; the capture of any armed French vessels was authorized, if by private adventure, and directed, on the part of the United States' navy. The latter was greatly increased, and large appropriations were made for building new vessels and enlisting a corps of marines.

Powers were bestowed upon the president, to enlist an army of ten thousand men, in case of urgent necessity, and to immediately appoint military officers, and make arrangements for the enrolment and training of volunteers, in anticipation of such contingency. He also received discretionary authority to order from the country any foreigner who should be suspected of dangerous designs against government; and, in case of hostilities, to banish or arrest all persons belonging to the nation against which war should be declared.

To meet the heavy expense of these defensive measures, a tax was laid upon slaves and real estate. As a check upon the violence of the more turbulent portion of the opposition, and a restraint upon foreign intrigue, an act was passed defining and affixing punishment to seditious or treasonable conspiracies for opposing the authority of government, and to the issuing of any libel upon congress, the executive, or the measures of government, as well as any false and malicious publication, having a tendency to excite domestic disaffection, or to aid or encourage the designs of any hostile nation.

These acts met with a very strong opposition in congress; but the federal party was in a decided majority, and generally succeeded in carrying the measures introduced by its leaders.

The office of commander-in-chief of the provisional army was bestowed upon Washington: his acceptance was conditional that his services should be required only in case of emergency.

PACIFIC MO  
NAVAL ENG  
LEON FIR  
SESSION  
DENTIA  
BURR  
OFFI  
MIT  
L

THE Directo  
war with Eng  
ence, that in n  
in America, w  
more pacific a  
of Gerry, whic  
cated to him  
from the Unit  
prejudice agai  
renounced all t  
before so pertin  
passed for secu  
by French priv

In answer to  
President Adan  
ister at the Ha  
to undertake a  
that intimation  
before they sho  
North Carolina  
account of bodi

These negoti  
many encounte  
of the two nati  
vice, generally  
congress to car

## CHAPTER IX.

PACIFIC MOVEMENTS IN FRANCE.—MISSION OF MURRAY.—NAVAL ENGAGEMENTS.—DEATH OF WASHINGTON.—NAPOLEON FIRST CONSUL.—TREATY WITH FRANCE.—FIRST SESSION OF CONGRESS AT WASHINGTON.—PRESIDENTIAL ELECTION: JEFFERSON PRESIDENT, AND BURR VICE-PRESIDENT.—PARTY REMOVAL FROM OFFICE.—ECONOMICAL REFORMS.—OHIO ADMITTED INTO THE UNION.—TRANSFER OF LOUISIANA TO THE UNITED STATES.

THE Directory, finding all efforts to involve the United States in war with England likely to prove futile, and learning by experience, that in naval operations the retaliatory measures lately adopted in America, would tell severely upon French commerce, adopted a more pacific and conciliatory course. Shortly before the departure of Gerry, which took place in August, 1798, Talleyrand communicated to him the willingness of government to receive a minister from the United States, if choice should be made of one free from prejudice against the interests of France; and, at the same time, renounced all the more objectionable preliminaries to negotiations, before so pertinaciously urged. About the same time, decrees were passed for securing American vessels against unauthorized seizures by French privateers.

In answer to these overtures, the senate, upon nomination of President Adams, in February of 1799, appointed Mr. Murray, minister at the Hague, jointly with Judge Marshall and Patrick Henry, to undertake a new mission to France, a condition being annexed that intimation must be given by that nation of a favourable reception before they should enter the French territory. General Davie, of North Carolina, took the place of Henry, who declined serving on account of bodily infirmities.

These negotiations were slowly perfected, and, in the interim, many encounters took place at sea, between private armed vessels of the two nations. Those employed in the American merchant service, generally availed themselves of the permission accorded by congress to carry arms, and the spirit of privateering, perhaps to

be considered a national predilection, was gratified by the seizure of many prizes. In February, 1799, an action was fought at sea, near the island of St. Kitt's, between the United States frigate *Constellation*, and the French frigate *L'Insurgente*, in which the latter after a severe contest, was captured, and sent a prize to America.

Upon communication through Talleyrand, of the readiness of the government to receive American envoys, Marshall and Davie were directed, by the president, to embark forthwith, notwithstanding vehement objections from a portion of the cabinet, grounded upon the uncertainty of affairs in France, consequential upon a recent change in the Directory.

The death of General Washington, which occurred on the 14th of December, 1799, silenced, for a brief period, the clamour of party contention, and all, except a few among the most violent and prejudiced of his former opponents, united to honour his memory by public testimonials of respect and gratitude.

The new revolution of affairs in France, and the elevation of Napoleon to the office of First Consul, occurring at this epoch, augured favourably for the establishment of permanent peace with France. Meanwhile, the national pride of the United States was farther gratified by intelligence of the prowess of the *Constellation* in another engagement with the French frigate *La Vengeance*, a vessel of greatly superior force. Although the latter escaped, in consequence of the loss of a mast by the *Constellation*, she was so much damaged that she was condemned upon arrival at port. The loss of men on board the French vessel was four times greater than that suffered by the Americans, amounting to about one hundred and sixty in killed and wounded. The engagement took place in February, 1800.

The United States' ambassadors were received by the First Consul, with distinguished consideration, in the ensuing month of March. Talleyrand was still at the head of the department for foreign affairs, but a special commission, in which he had no share, was appointed to treat on the part of the French government. Bound down by stringent instructions, the envoys could enter into no conclusive arrangement, but a temporary convention was agreed upon, that, until the negotiation could be completed and a new treaty entered into, the ships of either nation were to be safe from seizure under the late unreasonable decrees.

Provision was also made for reconveyance of prizes not already

condemned, and  
ments were at  
either govern  
month of Oct  
basis for the

When con  
at Washingto  
designed, and  
The approach  
interest, inas  
the two polit  
the strong me  
course not ap

The respec  
president, we  
while Jeffers  
Colonel Aaro  
The latter wo  
votes, by the  
upon the hou  
and it was no  
could secure  
balloting, on  
majority, and  
upon the offic

With the ac  
from office of  
a greater or l  
lished policy  
changes arbit  
such as were  
unanimity in  
principles of  
cumbents of  
being uncalle  
our present e  
we must look  
with distingui

The introd  
government r



condemned, and of captured national vessels, and preliminary agreements were arranged for the future discharge of private claims against either government. These results were not arrived at before the month of October of the same year. They afterwards formed the basis for the conclusion of a satisfactory treaty.

When congress came together in November, the public buildings at Washington were sufficiently advanced to serve the purposes designed, and the session was held accordingly at the new capitol. The approaching presidential election was the all-absorbing topic of interest, inasmuch as a grand trial of strength was expected between the two political parties. President Adams had lost popularity by the strong measures adopted in anticipation of war with France, his course not appearing justified by the subsequent turn of events.

The respective candidates for the offices of president and vice-president, were Adams and Pinckney, on the side of the federalists; while Jefferson, and the talented but intriguing and unprincipled Colonel Aaron Burr, stood forth as representatives of the republicans. The latter were successful, but as they received an equal number of votes, by the existing constitutional regulation, selection devolved upon the house of representatives. The votes were taken by states, and it was not until after thirty-five divisions, that either candidate could secure a majority. The contest terminated at the thirty-sixth balloting, on the 17th of February, 1801. Jefferson obtained the majority, and was declared president accordingly. Burr entered upon the office of vice-president.

With the accession of Jefferson commenced that system of removal from office of political opponents to the administration, which, with a greater or less degree of personal favoritism, has been the established policy upon every succeeding revolution of parties. The changes arbitrarily introduced by the new president were mostly such as were absolutely essential for the establishment of a necessary unanimity in the departments, and a cordial cooperation in the new principles of government. The displacement of certain federal incumbents of inferior offices, gave occasion for great complaint, as being uncalled for, and the result of mere party prejudice. With our present experience of what may result from a retaliatory spirit, we must look upon these removals by Jefferson as being conducted with distinguished moderation.

The introduction of economical reform in the expenses of government received the first attention of the new administration.

The navy was reduced, and its place, to a certain extent, supplied by gun-boats, built for harbour defence—the inefficiency of which, afterwards demonstrated, gave occasion for much ridicule. In respect to matters more particularly within the cognizance of a landsman and one unacquainted with the practical conduct of military affairs, the economical policy of Jefferson was wisely and judiciously enforced. The obnoxious excise laws, and the land-tax, were repealed, by means of which a great number of petty but expensive offices were annulled; additional federal courts, created under the former administration, were done away with; and provision was made for the reduction and eventual payment of the public debt—the existence of which was supposed to give undue influence to the treasury department.

In 1802, the state of Ohio, whither a great influx of emigrants had poured since the partial extinguishment of the Indian title, was admitted into the Union by act of congress, and commenced its separate existence as a sovereign state early in the following spring.

The transfer of the immense territory of Louisiana from Spain to France, and the negotiation through which its purchase was effected, by the United States in 1803, have been already detailed in that portion of this work devoted to the French settlements in America. No event could have been of greater importance to our western states and territories than this. The possession by any foreign nation of the outlet to the main channel of communication to this vast region, must have caused continual conflict of interest, and endangered the preservation of friendly relations between the parties concerned. Experience had shown that the binding force of treaties was insufficient to secure our citizens in their stipulated rights, while the mouth of the Mississippi was commanded by the agents of European powers.

AMERICAN I  
EATON AND  
—JEFFERSON  
ILTO

THE most i  
the first term  
ties still existi  
of Europe, an  
should have  
peace from th  
unaccountable  
insolence, and  
demands.

An Americ  
of the year 18  
a transport for  
the remonstran  
insolent expre

The state of  
open hostilitie  
having become  
had been boug  
mand of Com  
nation. A pa  
the only advan

During the  
under Common  
ceeded to block  
commanded by  
nately, while in  
Vain efforts w  
operation she  
frigate heeled s  
prize to the Tr

## CHAPTER X.

AMERICAN FLEET IN THE MEDITERRANEAN.—EXPEDITION OF  
EATON AND HANCOCK AGAINST TRIPOLI.—TREATY CONCLUDED.  
—JEFFERSON'S RE-ELECTION.—BURR'S DUEL WITH HAMILTON:  
HIS WESTERN ENTERPRISE: HIS TRIAL.

THE most interesting events, connected with foreign affairs, during the first term of Jefferson's presidency, are those relating to difficulties still existing with the Barbary states. That the maritime nations of Europe, and the United States in pursuance of their example, should have so long submitted to the degradation of purchasing peace from the piratical barbarians of northern Africa, seems utterly unaccountable, particularly as such concessions only aggravated their insolence, and encouraged them, from time to time, to increase their demands.

An American frigate, commanded by Bainbridge, in the autumn of the year 1800, was compelled by the Dey of Algiers to serve as a transport for the transmission of presents, &c., to Constantinople; the remonstrances of the captain were met by the most arrogant and insolent expressions of superiority.

The state of Tripoli, in the year following this event, commenced open hostilities against American commerce—the reigning prince having become dissatisfied with the terms upon which his favour had been bought. In the summer of 1802 a squadron under command of Commodore Morris was dispatched against the belligerent nation. A partial blockade and some unimportant captures were the only advantages gained during this season.

During the summer of the following year a larger naval force under Commodore Preble arrived in the Mediterranean, and proceeded to blockade the harbour of Tripoli. The frigate Philadelphia, commanded by Bainbridge, arrived first at the station. Unfortunately, while in pursuit of a Tripolitan vessel, she struck upon a rock. Vain efforts were made to lighten and heave her off, during which operation she was surrounded by gun-boats of the enemy. The frigate heeled so far that her guns were useless, and she became a prize to the Tripolitans. They got her off safely, and took her into

the harbour, making prisoners of all on board. The officers alone were exempted from a condition of slavery.

This capture gave occasion for a brilliant exploit. Lieutenant Deatur, with a small vessel recently taken from the enemy, and manned by volunteers from the American frigate *Enterprise*, then lying at Syracuse, undertook to destroy the *Philadelphia*. On the night of February 16th, 1804, the Tripolitan crew on board the frigate were hailed in their own language from a small craft, apparently of their nation, whose approach was regarded without suspicion. Under the excuse that she had lost her anchors, the stranger was permitted to come alongside and make fast to the ship. Her true character was immediately ascertained: the Americans, rushing on board, in the confusion attendant upon the first alarm, drove the crew overboard, fired the vessel, and effected a safe retreat.

An achievement of a still more remarkable and romantic character was accomplished in the following year by William Eaton, Consul for the United States at Tunis. Jessuf, the Bashaw of Tripoli, was a younger brother; he had driven Hamet, the rightful incumbent of the throne, into exile; and with the latter, Eaton, by authority from the United States, entered into correspondence for the purpose of planning a land expedition from Egypt into Tripoli, and expelling the usurper.

A little band of Arabs, Tripolitan refugees of Hamet's party, and Christian adventurers, numbering in all only about four hundred men, set out from the vicinity of Alexandria, early in the spring of 1805. The passage of the intervening desert was not completed until the latter part of April, the march being attended with extreme suffering and destitution. The invaders arriving at Derne, with the coöperation of American vessels lying in the harbour, took forcible possession of the town, and held it against the main Tripolitan force, by which they were attacked a fortnight later.

While thus in the full tide of success, the hopes of Hamet and his enterprising ally were crushed by the conclusion of a treaty between the United States and Tripoli, by which Jessuf was left in undisturbed possession of his sovereignty. A large sum was paid for the ransom of captives remaining in the power of the bashaw, after the accomplishment of an equal exchange for those prisoners taken by the Americans.

Prior to the conclusion of these events, a new presidential election in the United States, had resulted in Jefferson's continuance in office



alone  
tenant  
y, and  
e, then  
On the  
rd the  
appar-  
picion.  
er was  
r true  
ng on  
e crew  
racter  
Consul  
i, was  
ent of  
r from  
ose of  
elling  
y, and  
ndred  
ng of  
oleted,  
treme  
ch the  
rcible  
force,  
nd his  
ween  
urbed  
nsom  
ecom-  
y the  
ction  
office



**THOMAS JEFFERSON,**

THIRD PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.

BORN IN 1743 AT SHADWELL, ALBEMARLE COUNTY, VA.; ELECTED  
PRESIDENT IN 1801, BY A MAJORITY OF 1; SERVED 8 YEARS.  
DIED JULY 4 1826

for a second  
president in  
raged again  
against him  
sought a qu  
duel. Ham  
cumstance t  
party, with  
faith, arouse  
the state. I  
tion thencefo  
a little antic

In concern  
property, wh  
river near  
schemes for r  
ment of a se  
Spanish prov  
men who wer  
by mysteriou  
nite hopes, an  
very variant c  
feverish antici  
about to take

Being a man  
address, he ac  
familiar intere  
own views, he  
Perhaps no po  
as the one of v  
becoming mor

When Burr  
of procuring e  
iana, to which  
1806, with abo  
in the dark as  
as the public at  
covered flat-bo  
and his projects  
more or less int

for a second term. George Clinton of New York was chosen vice-president in place of Burr. The latter, in the summer of 1804, enraged against Hamilton on account of influence brought to bear against him as candidate for the office of governor of New York, sought a quarrel with his political opponent, which resulted in a duel. Hamilton fell mortally wounded at the first fire. The circumstance that Burr was the aggressor, as well as the challenging party, with a general suspicion of his previous integrity and good faith, aroused such public indignation that he was obliged to leave the state. Politically dead in the United States, he turned his attention thenceforth to deeper and more desperate intrigues, to which, a little anticipating the order of events, we may here advert.

In concert with one Blennerhasset, an Irishman of considerable property, who had established himself upon an island in the Ohio river near Marietta, Burr, it would appear, formed magnificent schemes for revolutionizing the western country, and the establishment of a separate government, as well as for an invasion of the Spanish province of Mexico. By personal interviews with leading men who were supposed to be disaffected towards the administration, by mysterious letters, calculated to arouse cupidity and excite indefinite hopes, and by negotiations through agents in whom he placed very variant degrees of confidence, he succeeded in exciting a state of feverish anticipation of some great, but indeterminate political change, about to take place.

Being a man of consummate abilities, and of a remarkably pleasing address, he acquired great influence over those with whom he held familiar intercourse, and while he could mould inferior minds to his own views, he was always able, to conceal his own true purposes. Perhaps no political intrigue ever occupied such universal attention, as the one of which we are speaking, without its purport eventually becoming more clearly apparent.

When Burr first began to collect forces, it was under the guise of procuring emigrants to occupy a tract on the Ouachita, in Louisiana, to which he had purchased a doubtful claim. In December, 1806, with about one hundred men—who were probably as much in the dark as to the true destination and purposes of the expedition as the public at large—he passed down the Ohio in a number of covered flat-boats. The agents of government were on the alert, and his projects were by this time universally canvassed, and entered more or less into the political controversies of the day.

At Natchez, Burr submitted to the requisitions of the territorial civil authorities, and the charges against him were investigated by the intervention of a grand jury at Washington, the capital of the Mississippi territory. Nothing could be established by any direct evidence, and he was acquitted. Meanwhile, General Wilkinson, the military commander at New Orleans, to whom Burr had previously made many overtures, had arbitrarily arrested several of the agents commissioned by the latter, and was enforcing a species of martial law, in anticipation of the expected invasion or revolution.

Further conduct of the expedition was unsafe, and Burr, dismissing his followers, attempted to make his escape into Florida. He was arrested near the Tombigbee river, and taken prisoner to Richmond, where he was bailed, upon the charge of violating the neutrality law, by enlisting forces to invade a peaceful nation. He was subsequently indicted by a grand jury for high treason in levying war against the United States. The trial, after much delay in vexatious preliminaries, took place in August, 1807, Chief-Justice Marshall presiding. Sufficient evidence could not be obtained to sustain the charge, and a verdict of acquittal followed. The same result attended the trial upon the charge of a violation of the neutrality act.

All concerned were held amenable to the provisions of the latter law in any district where an overt act, falling within its prohibitions, should have been committed. Held to bail in Ohio, upon the same accusation, Burr and Blennerhasset both forfeited their bonds.

The former soon after sailed for Europe, and passed many years in fruitless endeavours to carry out schemes of personal aggrandizement in France and England. He returned to spend the latter years of his life in the obscure practice of law in his own state.

ENGLISH A  
ON THE F  
COURSE A  
RANDOL  
LEON.-  
TECUM  
—E

THROUGH  
disturbed sta  
in carrying o  
ent powers w  
neutral nation  
States expos  
mitted to the  
resented the  
bringing Engl  
blind to all o  
enemy. Ame  
belligerents sh  
too powerful f  
vessels to capt  
without the a  
and sea, unabl  
inant on its ow  
When, by th  
retaliation for  
pronounced Gr  
ernment of th  
dependencies a  
States was, in  
ing causes for  
caus, between  
aggressing nati  
The conduct



## CHAPTER XI.

ENGLISH AGGRESSIONS.—FAILURE OF NEGOTIATION.—ATTACK ON THE FRIGATE CHESAPEAKE.—EMBARGO.—NON-INTERCOURSE ACT.—ABOLITION OF THE SLAVE-TRADE.—JOHN RANDOLPH.—WEST FLORIDA.—CONCESSIONS OF NAPOLEON.—BRITISH CRUISERS: THE LITTLE BELT.—TECUMSEH: ELSKWATAWA: BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE.—EAST FLORIDA.—DECLARATION OF WAR.

THROUGHOUT the closing term of Jefferson's administration, the disturbed state of affairs in Europe was disastrously felt in America; in carrying out schemes of mutual aggression, the two great belligerent powers were utterly regardless of the rights and interests of neutral nations. "It was in vain that the government of the United States expostulated with them. To England it denied having submitted to the decrees of the French ruler; and to the latter it represented the indefeasible rights of neutrals. 'Join with me in bringing England to reason,' was the reply of Bonaparte, who was blind to all objects and reasons, except that of humbling his arch-enemy. America was, in consequence, left to choose which of the belligerents she should take for foes, since both at once might prove too powerful for her, and neutrality, persevered in, only exposed her vessels to capture, without retaliation—to the disadvantages, in fact, without the advantages of war." "The great powers of the land and sea, unable to measure their strength, since each was predominant on its own element, came to vent their blows on America."\*

When, by the Berlin decree, of November, 1806, the emperor, in retaliation for a similar assumption in respect to France, had pronounced Great Britain to be in a state of blockade, and the government of the latter had extended her former decree to all the dependencies and allies of France, the commerce of the United States was, in effect, annihilated. There were not, however, wanting causes for a strong discrimination, in the minds of the Americans, between the spirit and motives which actuated the several aggressing nations.

The conduct of the naval officers in the British service, generally

\* Lardner's Cabinet Cyclopædia.

insolent and overbearing towards the American marine, had been growing more and more intolerable. The impressment of seamen from United States' merchant vessels continued and increased, notwithstanding the remonstrances of government, and a representation of the fact, that many American citizens were thus enslaved for foreign service.

In hopes to effect some modification in the former treaty, by which these illegal seizures might be checked, and the commerce of America be freed from the more oppressive restrictions, Messrs. Monroe and Pinckney were commissioned as ambassadors to England in 1806. They arranged a treaty accordingly, but, as nothing was yielded by the British government respecting the more important points of controversy, the president, without communicating with the senate, refused to ratify.

While attempts at negotiation failed, the course pursued by the English cruisers, in carrying out their instructions to watch the American coast, assumed an appearance more than ever offensive. A direct attack upon a national vessel, finally called for some decisive action. The Chesapeake, an American frigate, was dispatched in the month of June, 1807, to the Mediterranean. Just without the capes of the Chesapeake, she was hailed by the Leopard, an English man-of-war. Upon heaving to, a boat soon came alongside, and a message was delivered from the captain of the Leopard, demanding permission to search for certain deserters, known or suspected to be on board the American vessel. Specific orders to this effect had been given by the British Admiral Berkeley.

The demand not being complied with, the Leopard, having taken a favourable position, without further parley, first fired two successive single shots, the first, across the bows of the Chesapeake, and then poured in several broadsides, by which three men were killed, a number wounded, and much damage was done to the vessel. The commander, Barron, his ship not being ready for action, was unable to resist, and therefore struck his flag. Several officers from the Leopard then came on board; the crew of the Chesapeake were examined, and four were taken away prisoners, as deserters from the British service. One of them was afterwards hanged for desertion; the three others (coloured men) proved to be American citizens. The Chesapeake immediately returned to Norfolk.

President Jefferson promptly issued a proclamation, ordering all British armed vessels to leave the waters of the United States, and

prohibiting the British American impressment, and several 'occasional' full reparations whatever was issued for the case such a neutral, pro the British

Congress commenced an embargo which American enforcement of commercial The embargo was extended to Europe of

The prospect Throughout the oppressive 1808-9, the a prohibition upon—trade vision was a this restriction requisitions or edicts or orders before the example a third presidential ascendancy, office of president

One very interesting, was the duction of slave

prohibiting further intercourse with them. Demand was made upon the British government for redress, and for future guarantee that American vessels should be no longer searched for purposes of impressment. The attack on the Chesapeake—being totally inexcusable, although similar acts had been previously committed, on several occasions, by British vessels—was at once disavowed, and full reparation was tendered; but upon the other point, no concession whatever was made. New and more stringent orders instead, were issued for the seizure of British mariners in foreign service; and, in case such should be known to be on board national vessels of a neutral, precise instructions were given to make report thereof to the British admiralty.

Congress was called together at an earlier day than the regular commencement of the session, and, after much discussion, a general embargo was laid (December, 1807), to continue indefinitely, by which American vessels were prohibited from leaving port. The enforcement of this system, however necessary, occasioned great commercial distress, and gave much dissatisfaction in New England. The embargo was, to a certain extent, evaded by the more adventurous; but the retaliatory decrees of France and England had been extended to such an extreme of exclusion, that no vessel trading to Europe or the West Indies could be safe from seizure.

The prospect of an amicable arrangement appeared less than ever. Throughout the year 1808, nothing was heard but complaints of the oppressive embargo. At the winter session of congress, in 1808-9, the whole subject was debated, and, in place of the embargo, a prohibition of intercourse with France and England was concluded upon—trade with other countries of Europe being left open. A provision was also appended, giving the president power to suspend this restriction as to either nation which should conform to the requisitions of the United States, by a withdrawal of the obnoxious edicts or orders in council. This change was accomplished just before the close of Jefferson's administration. In accordance with the example of Washington, he had declined being a candidate for a third presidential term. The republican party, retaining their ascendancy, elected James Madison, late secretary of state, to the office of president: Clinton was again chosen vice-president.

One very important event, not noticed in the order of its occurrence, was the passage, by congress, of an act prohibiting the introduction of slaves after the 1st of January, 1808—the constitutional

limit within which no restraining law could be enacted, upon this subject, other than the imposition of a specified duty upon all imported. Severe penalties were affixed to the direct importation of slaves, attaching, although in less degree, to the buyer who should be cognizant of the illegal introduction; and the transportation of slaves by sea from one port to another in the United States, was regulated and restrained. Slaves thenceforth imported, were to be seized, and to "remain subject to any regulation or disposal, not contrary to the provisions of this act, which might be made by the respective states and territories."

In the debate upon this subject, a prominent part was taken, in behalf of the slave-holding interest, by John Randolph, a young member from Virginia, whose remarkable talents and brilliant oratory might have given him a position of great eminence, but for a singular vein of misanthropic eccentricity which pervaded his whole character, and for an unparalleled degree of habitual insolence and assumption. Belonging originally to the republican party, he was of the number of those who seceded from the principles adopted by the administration, and during Jefferson's closing term, headed a powerful opposition to the measures adopted in retaliation for British aggression.

The first communications opened with Great Britain, after Madison's inauguration, gave promise of a speedy settlement of difficulties. Mr. Erskine, the British minister, over-stepping the limits of his instructions from Secretary Canning, stipulated on behalf of his government, that the odious commercial orders in council should be withdrawn, as to United States' vessels, upon revocation of the non-intercourse act. The president, in conformity with the powers expressly conferred upon him, suspended the act accordingly.

Several preliminary conditions, upon which he had received special instructions, were entirely neglected by Erskine in this negotiation. The most important of these related to a matter long in dispute, viz: whether, in time of war, a neutral could carry on a trade with one of the belligerent parties, of a character prohibited by such nation in time of peace.

Erskine's stipulations were, therefore, disavowed, and non-intercourse was reëstablished. Provisions were made by the British government in favour of such vessels as might have availed themselves of the temporary removal of restrictions. Mutual recriminations in respect to this affair, aggravated the hostile dispositions of

the two go  
United Sta  
tions given  
of the min  
upon as "g  
Mr. Erskin  
pondence i  
and all dip

During t  
Florida bo  
other Span  
position of  
thorities.  
States, und  
Upon the ex  
were made  
removal of t  
which shou  
sive comme  
yield a poi  
securing th  
more to his  
notice, thro  
from the op

Commerc  
ernment, aff  
as irregular  
quirements  
being arou  
this country  
more rigor  
the America

The sloop  
while engag  
ident, under  
down upon  
greater fore  
away. Purs  
hailed, as a  
by a second

the two governments. On the one hand, it was suggested that the United States had been cognizant of the true nature of the instructions given to the British ambassador, while, on the other, the refusal of the ministry to ratify the arrangement concluded, was looked upon as "an act of capricious hostility." Mr. Jackson, successor to Mr. Erskine, upon a renewal of negotiation, conducted the correspondence in a manner so offensive, that his recall was demanded, and all diplomatic intercourse, for the time, was suspended.

During the autumn of 1810, the settlers in that portion of West Florida bordering on the Mississippi, following the example of other Spanish American colonies, took advantage of the embarrassed position of the home government to rebel against the Spanish authorities. This district was soon after occupied by the United States, under claim of title, by virtue of former treaties of transfer. Upon the expiration of the non-intercourse act, in 1810, propositions were made by the United States to France and England for a removal of the onerous restrictions upon trade. To either nation which should comply with this requisition, the inducement of exclusive commercial intercourse was held out. Napoleon, willing to yield a point in his rigid continental system, for the purpose of securing the friendship of the United States, and—a matter still more to his taste—of involving them in war with England, gave notice, through his ministers, that American vessels should be free from the operation of the sweeping decrees of Berlin and Milan.

Commerce was at once opened with France; but the British government, affecting to consider the suspension of the French decrees as irregular, temporary, and illusive, declined yielding to the requirements of the United States. On the contrary, national jealousy being aroused by the prospect of an advantageous trade between this country and France, renewed vigilance was exercised, and a more rigorous search instituted by the numerous British cruisers on the American coast.

The sloop-of-war *Little Belt*, commanded by Captain Bingham, while engaged in this service, fell in with the American frigate *President*, under Commodore Rodgers. The English vessel at first bore down upon the American, until discovering that the latter was of greater force, and that her signals were not answered, she stood away. Pursued by the *President*, she hove to, and both vessels hailed, as appears, nearly simultaneously. Neither replied except by a second hail. Upon this some shots were fired—accounts being

contradictory as to which vessel commenced—soon succeeded by a general cannonade on either side, in which the *Little Belt* was nearly disabled, and lost more than thirty of her crew in killed and wounded. Such discrepancy prevails in the accounts given of this transaction, that we are somewhat at a loss in forming conclusions respecting its merits.

At a special session of congress, in the autumn of 1811, the president set forth, in a message to that body, the futility of all attempts at negotiation with Great Britain, the enormous injury to American commerce effected by her exclusive system, the vast number of vessels in the United States' merchant service which had fallen a prey to her cruisers, and the generally aggressive and ungenerous policy pursued by her government. "With this evidence," proceeded the address, "of hostile inflexibility, in trampling upon rights which no independent nation can relinquish, congress will feel the duty of putting the United States into an armour and an attitude demanded by the crisis, and corresponding with the national spirit and expectations."

This call was responded to, by a decided majority, in a similar spirit. Appropriations were made, and loans authorized, for the enlargement of the army, for fortifications, and the accumulation of military stores. The navy was ordered to be increased, and provisions were made for organizing a militia force. The existence of serious disturbances at the north-west, attributed, in some measure, to British influence over the Indian tribes, added to the hostile feeling entertained towards Great Britain.

A new confederacy had been long forming in that quarter, under the direction, and through the intrigues of the celebrated Tecumseh and his brother Elskwatawa, or the Prophet. The former, at this period, was engaged in gaining over the tribes of the southern states to unite in a magnificent enterprise for the recovery of the entire valley of the Mississippi from the whites. The prophet was established on the Tippecanoe, a tributary of the Wabash, where a horde of his followers encamped about him, and kept the country in terror by their depredations.

To check these ravages, Governor Harrison, with a force of about nine hundred men, regulars, militia, and volunteers, marched up the Wabash from Fort Harrison, at the close of October (1811). He encamped on the 5th of November, within nine miles of the prophet's town, and attempted to negotiate with the Indian chief.

d by a  
nearly  
ounded.  
action,  
jecting

e presi  
tempts  
merican  
of ves-  
prey to  
policy to  
ed the  
ich no  
uty of  
de de-  
spirit

similar  
for the  
ion of  
d pro-  
ence of  
easure,  
le feel-

quarter,  
brated  
The  
of the  
covery  
e pro-  
e Wa-  
l kept

about  
ed up  
1811),  
of the  
chief.



**JAMES MADISON,**

**FOURTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.**

BORN IN 1751, NEAR PORT ROYAL, VA; PRESIDENT IN 1809; SERVED  
8 YEARS; DIED JUNE 28, 1836.

The latter  
place on t  
tended to  
before day  
surprise—  
the Americ

Fortunat  
and for the  
the Indians  
were finall  
part of the  
The Americ  
and accomp

Certain d  
president, i  
Henry, who  
governor of  
federalists, c  
appear that  
The presiden  
to secure the  
principal ma  
the anti-war  
possibility o  
mercial state

In the mo  
terest result  
including th  
United State  
dangered, at  
moted by th  
congress—ev  
foreible posse  
lost in the se

A prospect  
opposition in  
and strenuou  
principal req  
the part of th  
been said, mi



The latter proposed a truce, for the purpose of a conference to take place on the day following. This pacific overture was merely intended to disarm suspicion. On the following morning, a little before day-break—the time always selected by the Indians, for a surprise—the whole force under command of the prophet, fell upon the American encampment.

Fortunately, due precautions had been taken for a timely alarm, and for the preservation of order in case of a night attack. Although the Indians fought with astonishing fury and determination, they were finally driven off and dispersed, not without a loss, on the part of the whites, of one hundred and fifty killed and wounded. The American troops immediately proceeded to the Indian settlement, and accomplished its entire destruction.

Certain disclosures, communicated to congress by a message of the president, in March, 1812, relative to the secret agency of one John Henry, who, several years previous, had been commissioned by the governor of Canada to attempt negotiation with the New England federalists, excited great indignation among the war party. It would appear that for a time undue importance was attached to this affair. The president paid a large sum of money from the secret service fund, to secure the correspondence between Henry and his employer. The principal matter of the communications related to the extent to which the anti-war party might be willing to push their opposition, and the possibility or probability of a secession from the Union by the commercial states of the north, in the event of their political defeat.

In the month of April, an important accession to the southern interest resulted from the admission of the new state of Louisiana, including that portion of West Florida already occupied by the United States. The Spanish possessions in East Florida were endangered, at the same period, by an outbreak encouraged and promoted by the American general, Matthews. A strong party in congress—even a majority in the house—was in favour of taking forcible possession of this territory; but a bill for that purpose was lost in the senate.

A prospect of speedy hostilities with America, gave rise to a strong opposition in the British parliament, to the measures of government; and strenuous exertions were made to effect a compliance with the principal requisitions of the United States. These movements on the part of the friends of peace and of the rights of neutrals, it has been said, might have terminated in such concession as would have

satisfied the latter, if patience had been a little farther extended. At the close of May, 1812, recent intelligence having been received from England, and no prospect appearing of a disposition on the part of government to yield the questions in dispute, President Madison sent in a message recommending immediate declaration of war.

The senate promptly concurred with the recommendation; in the house, the question, after about a fortnight's consideration, resulted in the same conclusion. The debate was conducted with closed doors. On the 18th of June, war was formally declared with Great Britain. To this act most strenuous opposition was made by the federal party. In those portions of the United States most dependent upon commerce, a violent outcry was raised against a measure, which, although specially called for by foreign aggressions upon their rights and interest, threatened to increase their present difficulties, while it imposed upon the country at large an enormous burden of additional expense.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

RIOTS AT BALTIMORE.—HULL'S INVASION OF CANADA.—REPEAL OF THE ORDERS IN COUNCIL: IMPRESSMENT.—NAVAL OPERATIONS.—MADISON'S REELECTION.—NORTH-WESTERN CAMPAIGN: DEFEAT OF WINCHESTER.—ATTACK ON YORK.—THE BRITISH ON LAKE CHAMPLAIN.

WHILE expressions of indignation and regret were every where heard throughout those portions of the country where the war was unpopular, and signs of public mourning appeared in the flags of a useless shipping hoisted at half-mast, the war-party in other districts exhibited still more violent feeling. At Baltimore, the most disgraceful scenes of brutal outrage occurred, in connection with the suppression by a mob of a federal news-paper, which persisted in opposing popular opinion. The editor, Hanson, with a number of friends, in defence of his house, attacked by an infuriated populace, fired upon the assailants, one of whom was killed.

The municipal authorities at last appeared, with an armed force, and, to appease the mob, Hanson and his companions consented to

be taken  
tiated aga  
and a num  
were mos  
the numb  
their hand  
from the i  
villanous  
the transac

Upon th  
bestowed u  
of the revol  
was create  
that quar  
an expedit  
the inhabi  
a foothold.  
General Hu  
West on th

The first  
debouchem  
and Eric.

given for st

While th  
American f  
and, shortl  
entirely cut  
fore récross

General Pro  
with his In  
Americans t

Toward th  
Canada, hav  
and advance  
dians, amou  
icans, occup  
able to sustai  
dignation of  
to the assault  
All the regul

be taken to prison, to answer to any charge that might be substantiated against them. The following night the jail was broken into, and a number of these prisoners, falling into the hands of the rioters, were most barbarously beaten, wounded, and tormented. One of the number, General Lingan, an old revolutionary soldier, died under their hands; the others were left for dead, and some never recovered from the injuries received. The perpetrators of this cowardly and villanous outrage received no punishment; some of the foremost in the transaction were tried and acquitted by a jury of the neighbourhood.

Upon the organization of the new army, the chief command was bestowed upon General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, an officer of the revolution. At the south, Thomas Pinckney, of South Carolina, was created major-general, and invested with the chief command in that quarter. The first attention of the government was directed to an expedition into Canada, where, it was believed, the disaffection of the inhabitants towards Great Britain would render it easy to obtain a foothold. A force of nearly two thousand men, under Brigadier-General Hull, governor of the territory of Michigan, entered Canada West on the 12th of July, crossing over from Detroit to Sandwiah.

The first object of attack was the British fort at Malden, near the debouchement of Detroit river—the strait connecting Lakes St. Clair and Erie. Owing to delay on the part of Hull, opportunity was given for strengthening the garrison at this place.

While the army remained inactive, about the middle of July, the American fort at Michilimackinac fell into the hands of the enemy, and, shortly after, communication by the land route with Ohio, was entirely cut off by a party of Indians under Teeumseh. Hull therefore recrossed the river, with his entire force, and occupied Detroit. General Proctor, in command at Malden, was enabled to cooperate with his Indian allies, and renewed attempts on the part of the Americans to force a passage of the road, only resulted in heavy loss.

Toward the middle of August, General Broek, governor of Lower Canada, having hastened to the scene of action, assumed command, and advanced upon Detroit with his whole army of British and Indians, amounting, in all, to over twelve hundred men. The Americans, occupying a defensible position, entertained little fears of being able to sustain themselves; but what was the astonishment and indignation of the army, when General Hull, as the enemy approached to the assault, entered into a parley, and arranged terms of surrender. All the regulars and volunteers in the American army became pris-

oners of war, the militia being paroled, and the whole territory of Michigan fell into the hands of the British.

So heavy a loss, and so disgraceful a reverse, at this first opening of the campaign, could not be patiently endured. Every species of opprobrium was heaped upon the commanding officer, to whose indecision or weakness the failure was wholly attributed. Put upon trial, by court martial, long afterwards, he was convicted of cowardice; but his character, at the present day, stands free from aspersions thrown out in the heat of disappointment, and his failings—principally over-caution, and a want of that promptness and energy which are so necessary in a military leader—are looked upon with greater leniency.

The result of this campaign, unfortunately for the American interests, was to give facilities for an easy and constant communication between the British and the confederate tribes of the north-west. The latter were never more dangerous enemies than at this period, provided, as they were, with arms by their English allies, led by a chief of surpassing abilities as a military leader, and excited by superstitious confidence in their Prophet Elskwatawa.

Upon a change of the British ministry, in the month of June, of this year, a repeal of the orders in council as to American vessels was brought about, and it was trusted that negotiations might now be opened for a peaceful settlement of difficulties. The American government, however, declined all proposals for a suspension of hostilities, not based upon a proposed adjustment of other claims against England. The matter of the right of impressment was as far as ever from settlement; the British absolutely refused to yield the point; and the grievance complained of had now become more than ever intolerable. The number of native born American citizens rendering compulsory service in the British navy cannot be ascertained, but those who claimed exemption on this ground numbered between three and four thousand. The great majority of these were doubtless foreigners, but their right to protection, if not British subjects, was as clear as in the case of native or naturalized citizens.

While all the acts of the American government continued to breathe a warlike spirit, many obstacles were experienced in the practical operations of the campaign. It was difficult to procure recruits by voluntary enlistment, and in the raising of a militia force, continual opposition was met by state claims of sovereignty. By a singular transmutation, the federalists at this crisis were the sticklers

for state  
and the a  
requisiti  
kind cont  
be said to  
Union, su  
ing the er  
to be com  
regular o

At the  
men was  
against th  
to the chi  
the diffic  
movement  
during th  
several I

Upon t  
larger for  
from Niag  
of less th  
crossed N  
They we  
maintain  
brought u  
portion of  
invade th  
In an att  
while lea

Notwit  
disastrous  
Shcafe ca  
division, a  
more than  
treat, was  
was accom  
The flami  
expressed  
portion of  
soldiers ad

for state rights, as opposed to the military authority of the president, and the acts of congress. Several states refused to comply with the requisitions of government, upon the ground that no necessity of the kind contemplated by the act respecting draughts of militia, could be said to exist—that there was no call to “execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, or repel invasion.” Questions respecting the employment of the militia in foreign territory, and their claim to be commanded by their own officers, if of superior rank to any regular officer present, gave rise to great difficulty and dissension.

At the west, early in the autumn, a force of about ten thousand men was collected for the defence of the frontier, and for operations against the British and Indians. Governor Harrison was appointed to the chief command. The impracticable nature of the roads, and the difficulty of maintaining an army in the wilderness, impeded the movement of any large body of troops, and nothing was effected, during the remainder of the year, further than the destruction of several Indian villages, by detached parties.

Upon the waters which separate Canada from New York, a still larger force than that under Harrison was stationed at various points from Niagara to Lake Champlain. On the 13th of October, a party of less than three hundred men, led by Colonel Van Rensselaer, crossed Niagara river and stormed the British fort at Queenstown. They were to have been supported by a large force, sufficient to maintain possession, and resist any reinforcements that could be brought up by the enemy, but during the embarkation, the principal portion of the militia, at first loud in protestations of eagerness to invade the enemy's territory, taken with a panic, refused to cross. In an attempt at recovering the fort, the brave General Brock fell, while leading his men to the assault.

Notwithstanding their success at the first onset, the event proved disastrous to the Americans. A strong reinforcement under General Sheafe came to the assistance of the enemy, and the whole invading division, amounting—with those brought across during the contest—to more than a thousand men, thrown into confusion, and cut off from retreat, was forced to surrender. Nothing further, of any importance, was accomplished upon the frontier, during the remainder of the year. The flaming proclamation of General Smyth, and the patriotic ardour expressed by the militia and volunteers who composed the principal portion of the army of the north, alike ended in smoke. While the soldiers accused their commanders of a lack of energy, and inveighed

against vexatious delays and general mismanagement, the latter had abundant ground of complaint in the turbulence and insubordination of the new recruits.

Experience having proved the necessity of establishing a marine force on the lakes, in order to effect any thing in Canada, a movement for this purpose was commenced in the month of September previous, at Sackett's Harbour, under direction of Captain Chauncey. At this port, situated at the eastern extremity of Lake Ontario, the keel of a ship was laid, and a number of trading schooners were purchased and armed. A small sloop of war, named the *Oncida*, had been previously fitted out, and was also under Chauncey's command. With this little fleet, some bold excursions were made on the lake, a British armed vessel was driven into Kingston harbour, and several small prizes were taken. The new ship, of twenty-four guns, was completed in November, and was called the *Madison*.

Lieutenant Elliot, furnished by Chauncey with a detachment of seamen, in the month of October, succeeded in capturing two small armed vessels belonging to the enemy, and lying in Niagara river. He also commenced preparations for future operations on Lake Erie, by collecting trading vessels at Black Rock, and providing them with suitable armament.

While the foundation was thus laid for further brilliant successes on the lakes, successive reports of the unexpected prowess of the little United States' navy—consisting of but seven frigates, (fit for service), two sloops of war, five brigs, and a fleet of gun-boats—gave rise to great exultation throughout the country.

The first naval engagement of importance, took place on the 19th of August. The American frigate *Constitution*, Captain Hull, cruising off the mouth of the St. Lawrence, fell in with the *Guerriere*, a British frigate of thirty-eight guns, commanded by Captain Daeres. The former, receiving successive broadsides from the *Guerriere*, bore down in silence until close at hand, when she opened such an effective fire as soon to disable and cripple the enemy. The engagement lasted only about half an hour, partly at close quarters, and when the *Constitution* finally east off, all the masts of the *Guerriere* had gone by the board. The latter presently struck, but she had received irreparable injury, and was set on fire after a transfer of her crew to the *Constitution*. This victory was attributed by the English to superiority in force. The *Constitution*, according to their account, "nominally mounting but forty-four guns,

was, in result of subsequent masterly that of th

The U chase of a encounter After a r vessel wa was about ten. The gether with seventy-fo

A few c tur, captu Western I foree, but account fo for the fac while the prize was

During war, the l by superior under com thirty-eight ing at elos being enti was judg

While th ous private great succ bound from without so were arme

The per was reelect in 1797, w

was, in reality, little short of a seventy-four." The disparity was by no means as great as represented, and could not account for the result of the engagement. The truth seems to be, that in this as in subsequent affairs, the American vessels were manœuvred in a masterly manner, and that their fire was given with better aim than that of their antagonists.

The United States' sloop-of-war *Wasp*, under Captain Jones, in chase of a British fleet of merchant vessels, in the month of October, encountered the *Frolic*, a brig of superior force, acting as convoy. After a most destructive and desperate engagement, the British vessel was carried by boarding. The loss on board of the latter, was about eighty in killed and wounded; the Americans lost but ten. The *Wasp* was so much crippled in her rigging, that, together with her prize, she was shortly after captured by a British seventy-four.

A few days later the frigate *United States*, commanded by Decatur, captured the British frigate *Macedonian*, in the vicinity of the Western Islands. The American vessel was somewhat superior in force, but, as in the case of the *Guerriere*, not sufficiently so to account for the rapidity with which she disabled her opponent, nor for the fact, that of her crew, only twelve were killed or wounded, while the loss of the *Macedonian* was more than one hundred. The prize was taken into New York in safety.

During the summer and autumn, the Americans lost two brigs-of-war, the *Nautilus*, and the *Vixen*, both taken, without resistance, by superior force. On the 29th of December, the *Constitution*, under command of Bainbridge, engaged the British frigate *Java*, of thirty-eight guns. The contest, commencing at a distance, and ending at close-quarters, continued for several hours, when the *Java*, being entirely dismasted, struck. She was so far crippled, that it was judged expedient to destroy her.

While the national pride was gratified by these victories, numerous privateers, mostly fitted out from New England ports, met with great success in plundering the British merchant vessels, homeward bound from the Indies. Many valuable prizes were taken—not without some hard fighting, in cases where the trading vessels were armed.

The period of a presidential election recurring in 1812, Madison was reelected. Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, minister to France in 1797, was elevated to the vice-presidency, by the votes of the



war-party. Notwithstanding a violent opposition, perseverance in hostile measures met with the approbation and support of a majority in congress, and appropriations were made, and acts passed, for the increase of the national force, and for large additions to the navy.

Military operations were renewed at the north-west, early in the winter. Several Indian villages were destroyed in December, but nothing of importance was accomplished. During the month following, a detachment of Kentucky troops, under General Winchester, was sent forward by Harrison to take a position at the Miami rapids. A body of nearly seven hundred of these pushed on to Frenchtown, on the Raisin, then occupied by British and Indians. The first attack was successful; the enemy were driven from the town, and the Americans were reinforced by the arrival of Winchester with additional troops.

On the 22d, General Proctor, having crossed over from Malden, with a strong force of regulars and Indians, fell upon and totally defeated the American detachment. The commanding officer was taken prisoner early in the engagement, while a portion of the American troops yet maintained a defensible position. The general ordered a surrender, upon promises of protection against the savages. Instead of fulfilling his undertaking in this respect, Proctor marched back towards Malden, with such prisoners as were able to travel, leaving the wounded unprotected at the scene of combat. On the following day, no small portion of these were scalped, tomahawked, or burned alive in the houses where they lay disabled, by a party of Indians. Harrison, discontinuing offensive operations, fortified himself at Fort Meigs, on the rapids.

In the month of April, 1813, he was besieged at this post, by a British and Indian force, under Proctor. Relieved by the arrival of reinforcements from Kentucky, led by General Clay, he succeeded in holding the position, but a considerable body of these fresh forces was utterly defeated, after driving the British from a position where batteries were erected to bear upon Fort Meigs. This disaster is attributed to the circumstance, that, instead of maintaining orderly possession of the works, they commenced an irregular skirmish with detached parties of Indians in the surrounding forest.

On the New York frontier, nothing important was effected by either party until the spring was far advanced. Near the close of April, a detachment of sixteen hundred men embarked on board Chancey's Ontario squadron, for the purpose of an attack upon the



ance in  
majority  
for the  
navy.

in the  
er, but  
with fol-  
inches.  
Miami  
on to  
ndians.  
om the  
f Win-

Malden,  
totally  
er was  
Amer-  
general  
ne sav-  
Proctor  
able to  
ombat.  
l, tom-  
sabled,  
ations,

t, by a  
arrival  
ceeded  
forces  
where  
ster is  
rderly  
n with

ed by  
ose of  
board  
on the



THE BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE.

Canadian to  
to eight hun  
success, 'the  
assailants.  
the killed.

The squad  
forces, unde  
sailed for th  
the vicinity  
retreating to  
of Lake On  
detachment  
of their gene  
division was  
acquired pos  
enemy result  
men, under C

A vigorous  
in the latter  
New York m  
British were  
force, they o  
jury to the n  
shore of the  
was said, "fo  
time invaded

VOL.

Canadian town of York. The place, defended by a garrison of six to eight hundred men, was carried by storm, but at the moment of success, 'the magazine blew up,' destroying a large number of the assailants. The American commander, General Pike, was among the killed.

The squadron returning to Sackett's harbour, took on board fresh forces, under the immediate command of Dearborn, and immediately sailed for the entrance of Niagara river. All the British forts in the vicinity were seized, the principal portion of the garrisons retreating to the heights on Burlington bay—the western extremity of Lake Ontario. In an attempt at pursuit, a few days later, a detachment of the Americans sustained considerable loss, and two of their generals, Chandler and Winder, were taken prisoners. The division was presently recalled to Fort George, one of the recently acquired posts on the Niagara. A second expedition against the enemy resulted in the loss of an entire detachment of six hundred men, under Colonel Boerstler.

A vigorous attack upon the American post at Sackett's Harbour, in the latter part of May, was repulsed by the garrison, aided by New York militia, under General Brown. On Lake Champlain the British were more successful. By the creation of a superior naval force, they obtained command of those waters, and did much injury to the neighbouring settlements. Plattsburgh, on the western shore of the lake, was plundered and destroyed, "in revenge," it was said, "for the affair of York;" the latter having been a second time invaded by an American force, under Colonel Scott.

VOL. IV.—52

## CHAPTER XIII.

NAVAL AFFAIRS: PERRY'S VICTORY ON LAKE ERIE.—HARRISON'S CANADIAN CAMPAIGN.—THE NIAGARA FRONTIER.—THE CREEK WAR: JACKSON'S CAMPAIGN.—NEGOTIATIONS FOR PEACE.—BROWN'S INVASION OF CANADA: BATTLE OF BRIDGEWATER.—OCCUPATION OF THE CHESAPEAKE: BATTLE OF BLADENSBURGH: SEIZURE OF WASHINGTON: DESTRUCTION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS: ATTACK ON BALTIMORE.

FROM the opening of the campaign of 1813, the British naval force on the coast, considerably augmented, maintained a partial blockade of many American seaports. Several ships-of-war, entering the Chesapeake, cut off all ingress or egress for American vessels, and, landing parties at different points, did much damage, and kept the neighbouring country in a state of anxiety and alarm.

Upon the ocean, the credit of the American navy, notwithstanding some severe reverses, was fully maintained. The sloop-of-war Hornet, under Captain Lawrence, in the month of February, engaged and sunk the British brig Peacock of nearly equal force, off the coast of Demerara. After the latter had struck her flag, it was ascertained that she was settling fast. The sea was rough, and, although every exertion was made to save the crew, she went down with twelve men on board, three of whom were Americans, belonging to the Hornet.

Captain Lawrence was afterwards promoted to the command of the ill-fated Chesapeake, then lying in Boston harbour. On the 1st day of June, the British frigate Shannon, Captain Broke, appearing off the port, Lawrence got his vessel under weigh and made sail, to answer the implied challenge. The ships were of equal force, but the American frigate laboured under the disadvantage of having on board an ill-disciplined crew, and a deficiency of competent officers. An engagement—watched from shore with intense interest—took place late in the afternoon. The Chesapeake, partially crippled during a heavy fire at close-quarters, was carried by boarding, her commander lying, at the time, mortally wounded. While he retained possession of his faculties, he refused to order the

flag to be

"Don't give

In the evening after taking command of the Pacific division of American vessels by the general from Great Many of the protection was

The Essex while at anchor vessels of war ment, was commended were enabled for those of the

Operations on the great lake small craft, commanded of Commodore consisted of sixty-three.

on either side, better selected

An engagement on open lake, being light, and exposed to an enemy. His came up, and on an open boat,agara. The vessel brought up to with such energy to surrender.

This victory instance of superior of its results.

flag to be struck, and among his last words, was the expression, "Don't give up the ship."

In the course of the summer, the American sloop-of-war *Argus*, after taking a great number of prizes in the British channel, was captured by the English sloop-of-war *Pelican*. Captain Porter, in command of the second class frigate *Essex*, did valuable service in the Pacific during the summer and autumn of 1812. The operations of American whalers had been interrupted, and rendered precarious by the general commission and arming as privateers of those vessels from Great Britain, that were engaged in a similar occupation. Many of the latter were made prizes by Porter, and effectual protection was extended to American shipping.

The *Essex* was attacked, in the month of December following, while at anchor in the neutral port of Valparaiso, by two British vessels of war, the *Phœbe* and *Cherub*, and, after a severe engagement, was compelled to strike. The enemy, having heavier guns, were enabled to keep up a destructive fire at a distance too great for those of the *Essex* to be effective.

Operations of far greater importance, meanwhile, had taken place on the great lakes. On Lake Erie a squadron of nine vessels, mostly small craft, carrying in all fifty-four guns, was put under command of Commodore Perry. The British fleet at the lake, under Barclay, consisted of six vessels, the whole number of guns on board being sixty-three. There was no great disparity in the number of men on either side, but those of the American fleet are said to have been better selected and more capable seamen.

An engagement took place, on the 10th of September, in the open lake, between Malden and Sandusky. The wind was very light, and Perry, advancing unsupported, in the *Lawrence*, was exposed to a heavy and disabling fire from the long guns of the enemy. His vessel was completely crippled before the others could come up, and the commodore was compelled to abandon her. In an open boat, exposed to a heavy fire, he went on board the *Niagara*. The wind having freshened, the whole squadron was soon brought up to support the larger vessels, and the action continued, with such energy and effect, that the British fleet was compelled to surrender.

This victory was no less a cause for national rejoicing as another instance of superiority upon the water, than for the great importance of its results. The command of Lake Erie rendered practicable the

transportation of forces to any given point upon an extensive frontier, and made it equally imprevisable by the enemy. At the close of the month, Harrison and his army were conveyed across the lake to Malden, which was abandoned by Proctor at his approach.

The retreating army, pursued up Thames river, made a stand on the 5th of October, near Moravian town, above the forks. Including his Indian allies, led by Tecumseh, Proctor commanded a force of about two thousand eight hundred men; that of Harrison was rather inferior in numbers. The British were posted on the right bank, between the river and extensive swamps—the latter occupied by Indians. The attack was commenced by the charge of a mounted regiment under Colonel Johnson; the British line was broken, and a complete victory obtained by the Americans. The Indians in the swamp held their ground until the fall of their leader—who, it is said, was shot with a pistol by Colonel Johnson.

The greater portion of the British regular force surrendered, as prisoners of war. The great north-western Indian confederacy was broken up by this event, and the separate tribes sent in deputations suing for peace. Treaties were subsequently ratified with most of them.

During the autumn, extensive preparations were made at the north for an attack on Montreal. Dearborn had been succeeded in the chief command by General Wilkinson. Much difference of opinion existed between the latter and the secretary of war, General Armstrong, and to this circumstance the ill-success of the expedition has been partially attributed. A force of seven or eight thousand men, concentrated at Grenadier island, was to descend the St. Lawrence and cooperate with a division of four thousand, under General Hampton, ordered to march from Plattsburgh, on Lake Champlain. The advance of this latter portion of the army was checked by a few militia, whose force was overrated by the American general; and, the approach of winter adding to the difficulties of a campaign, a retreat was ordered, and the army returned to its former quarters.

Wilkinson pushed down the St. Lawrence, greatly annoyed by the enemy, who followed in the wake of his flotilla with gun-boats, and who occupied every convenient stand, on the shore, from which they might command the passage. It became necessary to land a large detachment, to follow the course of the river by land, and open a way for the boats. On the 11th of November, quite a severe

engagement  
enemy, and  
three and

Arriving  
attempt a  
of the se  
Montreal  
abandon t  
at French

The fro  
troops fro  
of service  
ages of th  
George, or  
reduced to  
in the incl  
this course  
stances wa  
allies of th  
frontier vil  
the towns  
invading p

Meanwh  
full effect  
commenced  
blow struc  
Tensaw set  
large body  
garrison, or  
dred inhabi  
had sought  
or perished

A large f  
of General  
Indians. M  
ber, Jackson  
a tributary  
Indians at  
hundred of  
were worse

engagement took place between this division and a body of the enemy, at Chrysler's farm, in which the Americans lost between three and four hundred men.

Arriving at St. Regis, Wilkinson learned the failure of Hampton's attempt at forming a junction with the main force. The lateness of the season was unfavourable for further action, and, although Montreal was defended by a very small force, it was decided to abandon the expedition. The main army went into winter-quarters at French mills.

The frontier, left unprotected by the withdrawal of the regular troops from the garrisoned posts, and by the expiration of the term of service of militia and volunteers, suffered severely from the ravages of the enemy. General M'Clure, compelled to abandon Fort George, on the Niagara, set fire to the village of Newark, which was reduced to ashes, and its inhabitants were left without a shelter, in the inclement month of December. His instructions were to take this course, if necessary for the defence of the fort; but the circumstances warranted no such outrage, and, in retaliation, the Indian allies of the British were encouraged to plunder and lay waste the frontier villages on the American side. On the 30th of December, the towns of Black Rock and Buffalo were entirely destroyed by an invading party of the enemy.

Meanwhile, the machinations of Tecumseh had produced their full effect at the south. The formidable Creek confederacy had commenced open war upon the white settlers. The first important blow struck, was at Fort Mimms, on the Alabama river, in the Tensaw settlement, which was sacked on the 30th of August, by a large body of Indians, under the noted chief Weatherford. The garrison, one hundred and sixty in number, with more than a hundred inhabitants of the neighbourhood, of every age and sex, who had sought protection at the fort, were nearly all killed in the fight, or perished in the burning buildings.

A large force was raised in Tennessee, and put under command of General Jackson, for the purpose of checking the ravages of the Indians. Marching into the Creek territory in the month of October, Jackson beat up the enemy's quarters at Tallusahatchee creek, a tributary of the Coosa, and relieved a post occupied by friendly Indians at Talladega, further down the stream, destroying several hundred of the hostile party. In other engagements, the Creeks were worsted, but their spirit seemed unconquerable, and, as they

had formed an idea that no quarter would be given them, they fought with great courage and desperation.

Little was accomplished during the winter, on account of the extreme difficulty of maintaining an army in the wilderness. The skill and energy displayed by General Jackson, in preserving discipline, and securing supplies for his troops under these trying circumstances, gained him even greater reputation than his brilliant achievements in actual warfare. In the month of March, 1814, about one thousand of the Creek warriors fortified themselves at the Great Horse-Shoe-Bend, in the Tallapoosie.

On the 27th, they were surrounded and attacked by a vastly superior force of whites and friendly Indians. They fought with fury to the last, firing—perhaps through ignorance—upon the bearer of a flag, who was sent forward by Jackson to propose a surrender. More than half their number were killed in the attack; great numbers perished in the river, and but a handful of the whole number effected their escape. Very few of the men were taken prisoners, but, after the battle, several hundred women and children were secured. The various tribes, after this event, were ready to conclude a peace, and to confine themselves within their territory, eastward from the Coosa.

At the winter session of congress, 1813-14, the exigencies of the war were met by the adoption of new schemes for procuring funds. Direct taxes, loans, additional duties, &c., were resorted to. The war-party, still in the ascendency, favoured the views of the president, and, upon his recommendation, an embargo was laid upon all goods, produce, &c., which could be of service to the enemy. Importations of British goods were also expressly prohibited.

Early in January, a proposition to treat for peace, was received from England, and commissioners were appointed to proceed to Gottingen for the purpose. Previous offers of mediation, made by the Emperor of Russia, had been repeatedly proposed to the British government, and as often rejected. Intelligence of Napoleon's reverses, brought over at the same time with the British peace embassy, was not without its influence, in fortifying the policy of pacific measures.

No military movements of importance, took place at the north during the winter and spring. Toward the close of March, General Wilkinson marched from Plattsburgh across the Canadian boundary, with a force of four thousand men, but the invasion resulted in



them, they

ount of the  
rness. The  
serving dis-  
e trying cir-  
his brilliant  
arch, 1814,  
emselves at

by a vastly  
fought with  
n the bearer  
a surrender.  
great num-  
ole number  
n prisoners,  
ildren were  
ady to con-  
rictory, east-

encies of the  
aring funds.  
ed to. The  
of the presi-  
aid upon all  
nemy. Im-  
ed.

was received  
proceed to  
n, made by  
the British  
Napoleon's  
h peace em-  
e policy of

t the north  
ch, General  
a boundary,  
resulted in



TECUMSEH.

nothing but  
and was su

At the i  
new army  
Between th  
river at B  
the seizure  
diate neigh  
force, comm  
engagement  
feated, with  
ton heights  
forces from

The Ame  
encountered  
Although t  
posted upon  
was nearly  
hesitation.

A regime  
rear of the  
of the army  
battle beca  
waged thro  
British batt  
gallantly sto  
lery corps.  
assaults unt

The Ame  
fore claimed  
ing to sever  
wounded, an  
Brown and  
them from p  
Little advan  
inspired gen  
and the brav  
its designati  
It was impos  
they were th

nothing but loss and defeat. He soon after resigned his commission, and was succeeded by General Izard.

At the instance of the American generals, Brown and Scott, a new army of invasion was collected in the vicinity of Niagara. Between three and four thousand men were transported across the river at Buffalo, on the night of July 2d, and after accomplishing the seizure of Fort Erie, pushed on towards Chippewa, in the immediate neighbourhood of the Falls, where a British army, of equal force, commanded by General Riall, lay encamped. A severe engagement took place on the 5th, in which the British were defeated, with a loss of five hundred men. Riall retreated to Burlington heights. A few weeks later he was joined by large additional forces from York, under General Drummond.

The American army, marching towards Queenstown, (July 25th,) encountered the enemy at Bridgewater, hard by the Falls of Niagara. Although the British had taken a position in which their artillery, posted upon a hill, could command the field, and although the day was nearly spent, the Americans commenced an attack without hesitation.

A regiment under Major Jessup, making a detour, came upon the rear of the enemy, while General Scott, with the advanced division of the army, attacked in front. The main force coming up, the battle became general, and a bloody and desperate conflict was waged through half the night, by the light of the moon. The British battery, which had at first proved terribly destructive, was gallantly stormed by Colonel Miller, with a battalion from the artillery corps. Possession of the hill was maintained against repeated assaults until the fighting ceased.

The Americans kept temporary possession of the field, and therefore claimed the victory. The loss on either side was heavy, amounting to seven or eight hundred. The British general Riall was wounded, and taken prisoner by Jessup's detachment. Generals Brown and Scott were both so severely wounded as to incapacitate them from present service, and General Ripley assumed command. Little advantage was gained in the engagement, further than as it inspired general confidence in the capacity of the American officers, and the bravery of the troops. The battle has commonly received its designation from the neighbouring locality of "Lundy's Lane." It was impossible to remove the cannon from the British battery, and they were therefore recovered upon the departure of the Americans.

The latter retreated to Fort Erie, where they strengthened their position in anticipation of siege by a superior force. The post was beset accordingly on the 4th of August, by General Drummond, with over four thousand men. On the 15th, an attempt to carry it by storm was signally repulsed. In September, General Brown reassumed command of the forces at Fort Erie, and, as the siege had continued for more than a month, and supplies were with difficulty to be procured, he attempted a sortie. So skillfully and boldly was the movement conducted, that the British guns were spiked, their magazines blown up, and some four or five hundred prisoners taken. The whole loss of the besiegers fell little short of a thousand men; that of the sallying party was about five hundred. Drummond shortly after drew off his forces.

Relieved from the burden of maintaining war upon the European continent, and with abundance of veteran troops, and a powerful navy, at liberty for transatlantic service, Great Britain commenced more directly offensive operations in America. A fleet commanded by Admiral Cochrane entered the Chesapeake, and, passing up Patuxent river, reached Benedict on the 19th of August (1814). Between four and five thousand troops, mostly trained in the school of continental service, were landed at this point, and, under command of General Ross, took up their line of march towards Washington.

As the army approached Marlborough, the American fleet of gun-boats, &c., lying at that place, was destroyed, to prevent its seizure by the enemy. General Winder, of Baltimore, who held command in that quarter, with a thousand regulars, and authority to call out the militia within a specified district, made what preparations were practicable to resist the British advance. The whole force that he was enabled to collect and arm, fell short of four thousand men, and these were in the most unserviceable and undisciplined condition—what stand could they be expected to make against a superior force of the "veterans of the Peninsula?"

The British march was unopposed, until the army, on the 24th, reached Bladensburg, six miles from the capitol, on the East bank of the Potomac. Here the American forces were posted on the right bank, the bridge over the stream being commanded by several pieces of artillery, in charge of Commodore Barney, who was present with his corps of five hundred marines, before attached to the flotilla destroyed at Marlborough. This body of men fought bravely and obstinately, holding the enemy in check after the militia had

been ro  
they we  
part of

Aban  
to the h  
the batt  
capitol,  
This ma  
stigmatiz  
that cov  
in retali  
Parliame

On the  
—not en  
drawn of  
was effe  
having e  
where al  
provision

The vic  
armamen  
warned o  
North P  
the city,  
men. TH  
detachme  
compelle  
melée Ro  
Brooke.

Owing  
gallant de  
British fle  
city appea  
attempt w  
the 13th,

been routed and dispersed. Their flank was finally turned, and they were compelled to join in a general retreat. The loss on the part of the Americans was but about fifty in killed and wounded.

Abandoning the capitol to the enemy, Winder drew off his forces to the heights of Georgetown, and, on the evening of the day of the battle, the British army entered Washington, and burned the capitol, the president's house, and most of the public buildings. This malicious destruction of valuable libraries, records, &c., is stigmatized by one of their own writers as "a piece of Vandalism that covered the expedition with disgrace;" it was excused as being in retaliation for the burning, by the Americans, of the Canadian Parliament House at York.

On the night of the 25th, after accomplishing some further injury—not entirely confined to public property—the invading army was drawn off, and marched back towards Benedict. A rëembarkation was effected on the 30th. Meantime, some of the larger vessels having entered the Potomac, made their way up to Alexandria; where all the shipping in port was seized, and a large amount of provisions and valuable stores was exacted from the inhabitants.

The vicinity of Baltimore was the next scene of operations by the armament in the Chesapeake. The inhabitants of that city, forewarned of danger, were prepared for defence. Ross landed at North Point, at the entrance of Patapsco river, fifteen miles from the city, on the 12th of September, with a force of five thousand men. The defence was conducted by General Smith. An advanced detachment of three thousand men, under General Striker, was compelled to retire before the invading columns; but in the first *melé* Ross was killed, and the command devolved on Colonel Brooke.

Owing to the shallowness of the entrance of the harbour, and the gallant defence of the protecting forts, M'Henry and Covington, the British fleet was unable to cöoperate with the land forces, and the city appearing too well defended to render an attack advisable, the attempt was abandoned. The troops rëembarked on the night of the 13th, and shortly after, the fleet sailed for the South.

## CHAPTER XIV.

OPERATIONS ON THE COAST OF MAINE.—ATTACK ON PLATTSBURGH: BATTLE OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN.—NAVAL AFFAIRS: LAFITTE.—NEGOTIATION AT GHENT.—THE HARTFORD CONVENTION.—TREATY OF PEACE.—JACKSON'S DEFENCE OF NEW ORLEANS: BATTLE OF JANUARY 8.—NAVAL ENGAGEMENTS.

In pursuance of their plans of offence, the British made a descent, in September, (1814), upon the coast of Maine. They took nominal possession of all the eastern district, and seized upon several towns and villages on Penobscot bay; but the most substantial injury inflicted upon the Americans in this quarter was the destruction of the frigate John Adams. This vessel was pursued up Penobscot river by a strong detachment, and, after an attempt at defence, was set on fire, by order of her commander, to prevent her falling into the enemy's hands.

At the same time, Plattsburgh, on Champlain, was threatened by a powerful array of land and naval forces. The former consisted of twelve thousand disciplined troops, mostly veteran soldiers, commanded by Governor George Prevost; the latter under Commodore Downie, numbered sixteen vessels, the largest carrying thirty-seven guns; the whole flotilla, including gun-boats, mounted nearly one hundred guns, and had on board about a thousand men.

Plattsburgh was defended by about six thousand troops—regulars and militia from adjoining states—and by the squadron under Commodore M'Donough, which was anchored at the entrance of the harbour. The American fleet was slightly inferior to that of the British, both in number of vessels, of guns, and of men on board. The Saranac river divided the opposing land forces; the British had been occupied for some days previous to the general engagement, strengthening their position on the left bank.

On the morning of September 11, an attack was commenced by the enemy both by land and water. M'Donough's squadron, lying in a favourable position, had an advantage at the commencement of

the enga  
cipal enc  
place bet  
ance, com  
the guns  
vessels th  
guns mig  
British sh  
lessly exp  
eleven an  
example,  
their csea  
in securi

Meanw  
with a sev  
naval eng  
ended in a  
wounded,  
thousand

During  
the sea-co  
Kingston,  
were the  
season. T  
two Britis  
some unkr  
Peacock, c  
successful

Another  
ber, by an  
ment of F  
distance w  
laws profes  
they were  
number wa  
ble tales ha  
Ten vessels  
deserted by

About th  
to treat for

the engagement, which was maintained until its close. The principal encounter, by which the fortune of the day was decided, took place between the *Saratoga*, the American flag ship, and the *Confiance*, commanded by Downie. Pouring in a succession of broadsides, the guns of either, on the exposed side, were mostly silenced. Both vessels then attempted to take new positions, by which their other guns might be made available. The *Saratoga* succeeded; but the British ship, failing to accomplish the intended movement, lay helplessly exposed to a raking fire, and was forced to strike. Between eleven and twelve o'clock, the whole fleet having followed this example, the engagement ceased. The gun-boats, however, made their escape, while the attention of the Americans was occupied in securing their prizes.

Meanwhile, the land division, attempting to ford the Saranac, met with a severe and decided repulse; and upon the conclusion of the naval engagement, a retreat was ordered. The expedition thus ended in signal failure and defeat. The loss of the British included, wounded, prisoners, and deserters, is said to have exceeded two thousand men.

During the autumn, the British navy obtained entire command of the sea-coast; and in the Ontario, a large ship, recently fitted out at Kingston, kept possession of the lake. The *Wasp* and the *Peacock* were the last American armed vessels upon service abroad at this season. The first of these, after taking many prizes, among others, two British national vessels, foundered at sea, or went to pieces on some unknown coast, as she was never afterwards heard from. The *Peacock*, eluding the blockade, came safe to port, having made a successful cruise, and captured a number of merchant vessels.

Another piece of service was accomplished in the month of October, by an expedition under Commodore Patterson, against a settlement of French rovers, who harboured at Barataria bay, a short distance westward from the mouth of the Mississippi. These outlaws professed to cruise exclusively against Spanish commerce, but they were considered as little other than pirates. One of their number was the noted Lafitte, concerning whom as many improbable tales have been told as those connected with the piracies of Kidd. Ten vessels, belonging to this fraternity, were seized, after being deserted by their crews.

About this time arrived reports from the commissioners appointed to treat for peace. Negotiations had been opened at Ghent, but the

demands of Great Britain were too extravagant to require a moment's consideration. Among other requisitions, the United States were called upon to forego any future acquisition of Indian lands at the north-west; to abstain from providing for frontier defence by forts, or a flotilla on the lakes; to cede a portion of the north-eastern territory to Great Britain; and to give up their privileges respecting the coast fishery.

The friends of the administration, at this juncture, were alarmed and indignant at a movement in New England, which threatened a more serious rupture between different sections of the Union than any that had preceded it. In response to a call by the legislature of Massachusetts, delegates were appointed from all the New England states—in Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island, chosen directly by the legislatures—to meet at Hartford on the 15th of December, for the purpose of devising and proposing such amendments to the constitution as might secure rights of representation, &c., to the northern states, equal to such as were enjoyed by those of the south, and for general consultation upon the "danger to which the eastern section of the Union" was "exposed by the course of the war."

Notwithstanding a vast amount of obloquy, and wide-spread accusation of treasonable designs, the convention met accordingly, and, after a secret session of between two and three weeks, the delegates submitted an address to the New England legislatures, setting forth the conclusions at which they had arrived. These, in addition to a recitation of grievances, related principally to the disputed question respecting the power of the federal government over the militia; and to the measures requisite for local defence against the enemy. The proposed constitutional amendments were chiefly advisory—that the power of congress in respect to warlike measures should be curtailed by the requirement of a two-thirds vote, and that slaves should be excluded in the representative computation. The general tone of the document was more moderate and less treasonable than had been anticipated.

The cessation of war in Europe having removed all substantial occasion for further collision of interest between Great Britain and the United States, the former abated her demands, and a treaty of peace was signed at Ghent in the month of December. The claims respecting impressment and right of search were left undecided, as only relating to a state of war which it were unnecessary to anticipate; privileges formerly enjoyed by the United States' fishermen

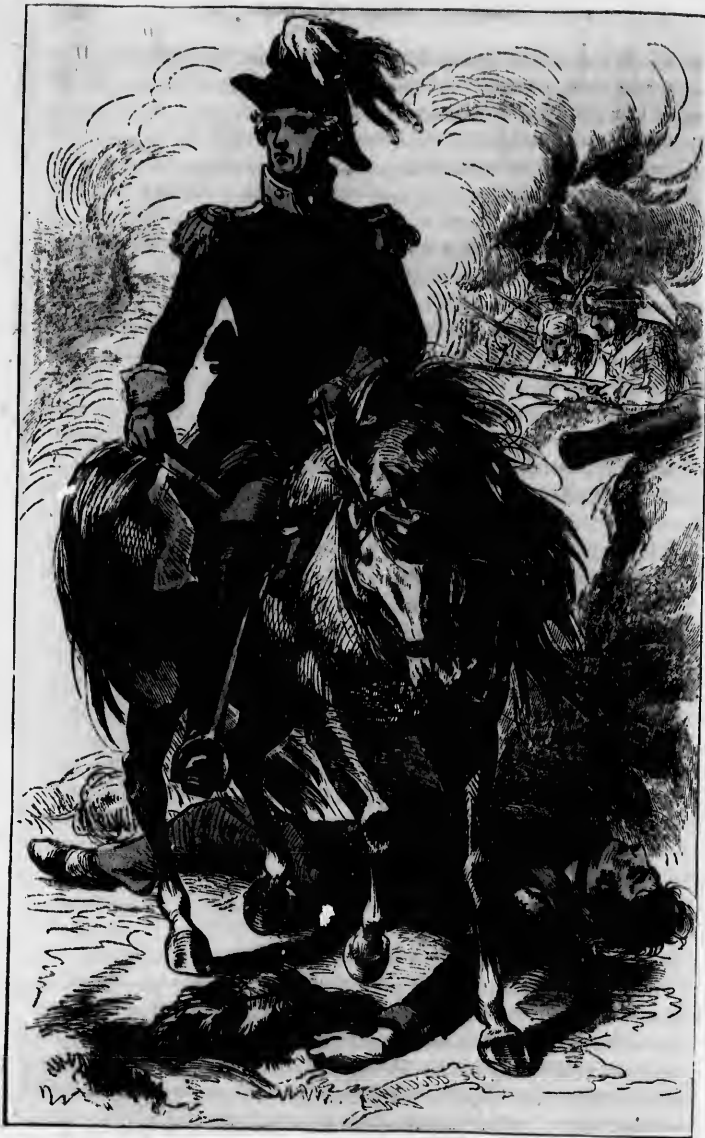


ment's  
were  
at the  
forts,  
in ter-  
secting

armed  
ned a  
than  
ure of  
England  
hosen  
of De-  
ments  
to the  
south,  
astern  
"

ocusa-  
, after  
bmit-  
e con-  
tation  
ecting  
o the  
e pro-  
at the  
tailed  
be ex-  
of the  
been

antial  
n and  
ty of  
laims  
ed, as  
antici-  
ermen



EQUESTRIAN PORTRAIT OF GENERAL JACKSON.

on the B  
issippi,  
other res

This j  
ruary, a  
brilliant  
out the v  
occupatio  
thorities  
obtained

After for  
preparati  
force of 1

With  
the diffic  
congruou  
different  
camp; c  
vateers p  
in such o

The wor  
mitting a

In the  
expected  
placed h  
Lake Bo  
apeake,

large réi  
and mar  
had been

The Am  
fence, bu  
up in bo

The a  
bank of  
march up  
was mad

the river  
menc'd  
mainta. v

on the British American coast, and a right of navigation in the Mississippi, before secured to Great Britain, were abandoned; in all other respects the parties remained *in statu quo*.

This joyful intelligence did not reach the United States until February, a period when the whole nation was rejoicing over the most brilliant piece of success that had attended its arms on land, throughout the war. In the month of November, General Jackson, being in occupation of Pensacola, temporarily seized from the Spanish authorities on account of the landing of British forces in that quarter, obtained information of an intended attack upon New Orleans. After forwarding orders for raising militia, and for other defensive preparations, he repaired thither in person, and arrived, with a small force of regulars, on the 1st of December.

With all the ardour and energy of his character, he engaged in the difficult work of organizing an army, from materials the most incongruous and ill-suited to regular military operations. Men of different nations and colour, utterly unused to the discipline of a camp; convicts from the prisons; a portion of those pirates or privateers previously ousted from Baratavia; were marshalled and put in such condition for service as time and circumstances would admit. The work of throwing up fortifications was carried on with unintermitting ardour.

In the midst of these preparations, and before the arrival of troops expected from Kentucky and Tennessee, upon which the general placed his chief reliance, a British fleet appeared at the entrance of Lake Borgne. This was the squadron recently occupying the Chesapeake, together with other vessels from England, bringing over large reinforcements of troops. The whole force, including sailors and marines, exceeded fifteen thousand men. Most of the troops had been disciplined and inured to service in the continental war. The American flotilla of gun-boats on the lake made a gallant defence, but was finally captured, and the main British force, passing up in boats, effected a landing at the western shore.

The advanced division of two thousand men, after gaining the bank of the Mississippi, fifteen miles below the city, commenced its march up the river. On the night of December 23d, a spirited attack was made by the Americans upon this detachment, a schooner in the river opening fire at the same time that the engagement commenced on shore. The British, attaining a defensible position, finally maintained their ground, and the assailants drew off.

Reinforcements had meanwhile arrived from Tennessee and Mississippi, until the force at New Orleans amounted to about five thousand men. The emergency of the occasion, and the disturbed condition of the city, induced Jackson to proclaim martial law, and to take such measures as should prevent the legislative assembly from counteracting his plans of defence by any offers of capitulation. The governor, Claibourne, had submitted to Jackson's authority, and, entering with zeal into the plans of the general, he anticipated the danger of any such movement, by a forcible dissolution of the assembly.

The day following the first engagement, Jackson had taken a position some four miles below the city, on the left bank, where a trench was carried across the entire strip of dry land from the river bank down the gradual declivity to the swamp. The embankment was enlarged and strengthened by piles of movables, cotton bales, &c. An armed vessel, lying in the river, was so stationed as to flank the ditch and command the approach from below: works were also erected on the opposite bank of the Mississippi.

The enemy attempted to storm these fortifications on the 28th, and failing in that, they erected batteries to play upon the American works. A heavy cannonade on both sides, on the 1st of January (1815), resulted in the silencing of the British guns. On the 4th, reinforcements arrived from Kentucky.

An interval of a few days was then spent in preparations for a decisive assault. A canal was cut by which a number of boats were transported from the lake to the river, for the purpose of carrying over a detachment to the right bank. This was effected on the night of the 7th, and on the morning of the following day, the main army, under command of Sir Edward Pakenham, assaulted the American entrenchments. The desperate character of an attack, at such fearful disadvantage, is evident from the result. The Americans, firing from covert, lost less than twenty men in killed and wounded, while the loss of the enemy was not far from two thousand men. Among the slain was General Pakenham, who fell leading his men to the charge.

The detachment on the right bank, in the full tide of success, having driven from their entrenchments and defeated a greatly superior force, was recalled, when the fortune of the day was decided, and the whole army, retreating unmolested to the lake, reëmbarked. The only success that attended this expedition was the subsequent

capture of  
than four

Several  
could be  
President  
New York  
after a sh  
was comp  
port of t  
made priz  
respectiv  
by adroit  
while her  
The Horr  
The Nau  
immediat  
tory to th

WAR WITH  
PRESIDENT  
OF FLO  
COMP  
TRA  
AN  
C  
S

ALMOST  
Britain, th  
late outrag  
clared aga  
Decatur—  
patched to  
capture of

capture of Fort Bowyer, at Mobile, which, being garrisoned by less than four hundred men, surrendered on the 18th of February.

Several naval engagements took place before news of the peace could be generally circulated. On the 15th of January the frigate President, commanded by Decatur, attempting to get to sea from New York, was intercepted by the British blockading squadron, and after a sharp engagement with the Endymion, a frigate of forty guns, was compelled to strike by the advance of other vessels to the support of the enemy. The Constitution, in the month of February, made prize in a single action of the Cyane and the Levant, carrying respectively twenty-four and eighteen guns. This was accomplished by adroit manœuvring, so as to keep beyond reach of their guns, while her own, of heavier metal, could tell with destructive effect. The Hornet and Peacock each captured a British national vessel. The Nautilus, taken by the latter on the 30th of June, 1815, was immediately restored, upon communication of intelligence, satisfactory to the commander of the Hornet, that peace had been concluded.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

WAR WITH ALGIERS.—TARIFF: NATIONAL BANK.—MONROE, PRESIDENT.—JACKSON'S SEMINOLE CAMPAIGN.—CESSION OF FLORIDA BY SPAIN.—ADMISSION OF MISSOURI: THE COMPROMISE.—MONROE'S SECOND TERM.—ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.—ELECTION OF ANDREW JACKSON.—THE TARIFF.—NULLIFICATION IN SOUTH CAROLINA.—THE UNITED STATES' BANK.—INDIAN REMOVALS.—BLACK HAWK.—THE CHEROKEES.

ALMOST immediately after the conclusion of peace with Great Britain, the attention of congress being directed by the president to late outrages upon our commerce by Barbary cruisers, war was declared against Algiers. A squadron of ten vessels, commanded by Decatur—to be followed by another under Bainbridge—was dispatched to the Mediterranean in the month of May following. The capture of two armed vessels, one of them being the largest in his

navy, so alarmed the dey, that he at once concluded a treaty by which the United States were for ever freed from the disgraceful payment of tribute, and all American prisoners were freed without ransom. His vessels were gratuitously returned to him.

From Algiers, Decatur sailed for Tunis and Tripoli, both of which nations were compelled to furnish indemnity for the sufferance of capture by the British or United States' vessels, while in their ports. His whole mission accomplished, the commodore joined Bainbridge at Gibraltar.

At the next session of congress, 1815-16, a long and vehement discussion arose respecting the establishment of the new tariff. All the opposing interests of the producer and manufacturer were brought to bear upon the question. As finally settled, a judicious discrimination was made between those articles which could be produced or manufactured in perfection at home, and those, being at the same time articles of necessity, for which we must still be partially or wholly dependent upon foreign nations.

A new national bank, upon specie-paying principles, and having a capital of thirty-five millions, mostly to be subscribed for in United States' stocks, was also established at this session. The Union was extended, toward the close of the year, by the admission of Indiana, as a separate state. The presidential election again recurring, James Monroe, secretary of state under Madison, was elected to the highest office, and Daniel D. Tompkins to that of vice-president. The inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1817.

During the year, additional treaties were effected with most of the western Indians, by which their title was extinguished to large districts, at this time fast filling up with an enterprising population from the east. At the south, trouble was already brewing between the Seminoles and the white settlers. Spain still retaining her title to both East and West Florida, the chastisement of the Indians by pursuing them into a foreign jurisdiction became a delicate matter, but the necessities of the case seeming to require some action, General Jackson, with a large force of Tennessee volunteers, was dispatched against them. The operations of the campaign in regard to the conquest of Indian territory, will be found briefly recapitulated in a subsequent chapter. A high handed procedure of the general, in the trial by court martial, and execution of two British subjects, Arbuthnot and Ambrister, for inciting the Indians to war, and lending them aid and assistance, has been heavily censured. The seizure of

ty by  
raceful  
without

which  
nce of  
ports.  
Bain-

ement  
E. All  
rought  
imina-  
eed or  
same  
lly or

having  
United  
n was  
diana,  
James  
ighest  
inau-

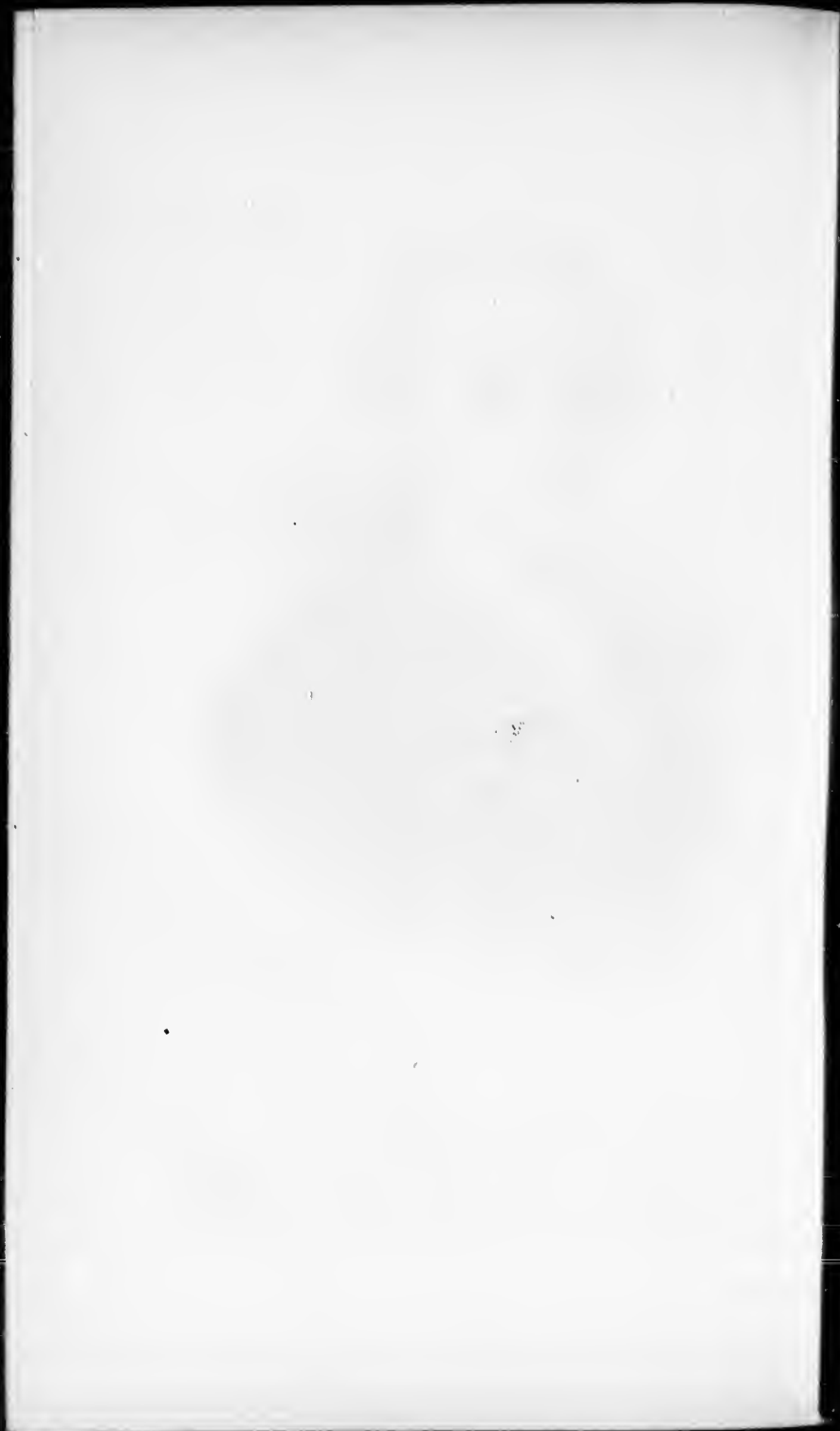
of the  
e dis-  
lation  
etween  
r title  
ms by  
matter,  
Gen-  
s dis-  
ard to  
ulated  
neral,  
jects,  
nding  
ure of



**JAMES MONROE,**

**FIFTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.**

**BORN APRIL 28, 1758, IN WESTMORELAND COUNTY, VA.; PRESIDENT  
MARCH 4, 1817; SERVED 8 YEARS. DIED JULY 4 1831**









**JOHN QUINCY ADAMS,**  
SIXTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.  
BORN IN 1767; PRESIDENT IN 1825; SERVED 4 YEARS; DIED FEB 23, 1848

the Spani  
Florida, a  
sion for r  
The latter

Charges  
acts were  
Seminole  
finally sus  
question.  
with Spain  
apparent f  
the struggl  
onies. Th  
during the  
of East Flo  
ening, the  
slave trade

A treaty,  
with Spain  
obtaining a  
respect to p  
prosperity a  
civilization  
had been c  
the second  
the west ha  
berland roa  
ments made  
of western  
improvement  
enterprise, a  
light-houses,  
isfactorily de

The most  
in 1820 and  
souri into th  
amendment  
as the condit  
entertained,  
that had yet  
Vor

the Spanish capital, Pensacola, and the fort of St. Marks, in West Florida, also accomplished during this winter campaign, gave occasion for much injurious comment abroad upon American policy. The latter event took place early in 1818.

Charges of having exceeded his authority by these unwarrantable acts were brought against Jackson, and the whole subject of the Seminole campaign was debated at length in congress. He was finally sustained by a decided majority in his conduct of the affairs in question. The desire of government to maintain peaceful relations with Spain, and to acquire the Floridas by amicable treaty, had been apparent from the whole policy pursued by the United States during the struggle of the former country with her revolted American colonies. The forces of the United States had also been employed, during the year preceding, to expel from Amelia island, on the coast of East Florida, a band of lawless adventurers, who, while threatening the Spanish possessions on the main, were engaged in the slave trade, in smuggling, and in general depredation.

A treaty, providing for the cession of Florida, was finally concluded with Spain toward the close of the year 1820, the United States thus obtaining an acquisition to its territory of greater importance in respect to position than to intrinsic value. Meanwhile, increasing prosperity attended upon the enterprise of individuals in extending civilization at the west and south. Mississippi, Illinois, and Alabama had been consecutively admitted to the Union—the first in 1817, the second in 1818, and the third in 1819. Communication with the west had been rendered practicable by the opening of the Cumberland road, a national work, carried out in consequence of arrangements made with the state of Ohio, as a consideration for the cession of western lands. The power of congress in respect to internal improvements, other than those necessarily connected with public enterprise, as the construction of military roads, the erection of light-houses, the improvement of harbours, &c., has never been satisfactorily decided.

The most important question brought before congress at its sessions in 1820 and 1821, was upon the admission of the territory of Missouri into the Union as a sovereign state. The introduction of an amendment providing for the exclusion of slavery within its limits, as the condition upon which the application for admission should be entertained, gave occasion for the most excited and angry discussion that had yet resulted from any issue taken between the north and

the south. The matter was finally adjusted, by admission of the new state, with no further restriction than that no act should be passed by its legislature in contravention of the constitutional rights of citizens emigrating thither from other states. This proviso was called for by a clause in a constitution formed by the people of the territory, providing for the future exclusion of free negroes and mulattoes.

On the other hand, those opposed to the extension of southern influence and institutions, succeeded, by a large majority, in appending to the bill a proviso that thenceforth slavery should be prohibited in the territory of the United States lying north of the parallel of thirty-six degrees thirty minutes, the northern boundary of the present state of Arkansas. The separation of Maine from Massachusetts, and its admission to the Union was effected during the discussion of the Missouri question.

Mr. Monroe, shortly after his entry upon a second official term, in 1821, appointed Andrew Jackson to the office of governor of the new territory of Florida. In dealing with the Spanish officials whom he was called upon to supersede, the proceedings of the general were, as usual, rather high handed. The keys of the capitol at Pensacola were formally delivered up by Jose Cavalla, the Spanish governor, on the seventh of July; a refusal or neglect on his part to deliver over certain public documents led to his temporary arrest by order of Jackson.

The principal political events during the closing term of Monroe's administration, were the recognition of the independence of the republics of South America; a treaty with England for the more effectual suppression of the slave trade; a settlement of the boundary on the Pacific, which should limit future settlements by Russia or the United States; and a protective modification of the tariff. The last measure was not carried without vehement opposition.

In 1824, the venerable La Fayette, upon express invitation extended by congress, visited the United States, where he spent nearly an entire year in making a general tour of the country. Throughout his journey he met with the most enthusiastic reception, and, ere his departure, he received substantial tokens of the gratitude of the nation, in the grant of a township of land, and the sum of two hundred thousand dollars, by appropriation of congress.

The ascendancy of republican principles, as opposed to the doctrines of the original federal party, was sufficiently evinced by the

triumph  
the re  
the elec  
versy.

tions of  
Adams,  
the sou  
Adams  
obtaine  
house o  
Jackson

During  
remaine  
gress an  
admira  
ness wh  
in his i  
eration  
matter o  
be besto  
personal

Toward  
respectin  
between  
subject,  
of the m  
this peri  
mosity s  
choice of  
of South  
March 4

A writ  
had been  
legality;  
defiance.  
only of h  
at home,  
Jackson t  
strong a  
a newer

triumphant election of three successive republican presidents, and the retention of office by each of them, for a term of eight years. At the election in 1824, new elements entered into the political controversy. Candidates were brought forward from the four great sections of the Union: New England was represented by John Quincy Adams, son of the second president; Virginia by Mr. Crawford; the south by Andrew Jackson; and the west by Henry Clay. Adams and Jackson were the prominent candidates, but, as neither obtained a majority, the election devolved, a second time, upon the house of representatives. The former was chosen president, although Jackson had received a larger number of popular votes.

During the four years of Adams' administration, the country remained at peace with all foreign nations. The messages to congress and other public addresses of the president, excited general admiration by their ability, and the dignity, integrity, and firmness which they exhibited. In accordance with principles set forth in his inaugural address, President Adams displayed great moderation in the exercise of his powers of removal, considering it a matter of gross impropriety that the offices of government should be bestowed as rewards for party services, or as mere tokens of personal favour.

Toward the close of this administration, the revival of the dispute respecting a protective tariff renewed all the former antagonism between the north and the south. The law passed relative to this subject, was finally so altered and amended as to favour the interests of the manufacturing states. The presidential election, recurring at this period, gave occasion for a display of party violence and animosity seldom before witnessed in America. The result was the choice of Andrew Jackson for president, and of John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, for vice-president. The inauguration took place March 4th, 1829.

A writer in Lardner's Cyclopædia, says of this result, "Jackson had been the rude soldier; ever ready to outstep the bounds of legality; fierce in his manners and declarations; breathing war and defiance. The fears that his election would prove the signal, not only of hostilities with foreign powers, but usurpation or violence at home, were general; yet the same popular breath that wafted Jackson to the presidency, impressed upon him at the same time so strong a sense of his duty, that metal in the furnace could not take a newer or softer temper than the new president." That he had,

however, lost nothing of his former firmness, is evident from the whole course of his administration.

The late amendment in the tariff produced great excitement and opposition throughout the southern states. South Carolina took the lead in denouncing the alleged partiality of the system, and in maintaining the principles of a forcible assertion of rights on the part of those states aggrieved by its operation. The speech of Hayne, in the United States senate, upon this topic, called forth from the great orator and statesman, Daniel Webster, a reply which has ever been considered one of his ablest and most forcible efforts.

When this feeling finally broke out into an open determination, on the part of the state of South Carolina, as expressed by a convention called by a majority of its electors, to resist the authority of the United States in the collection of revenues, the president took a firm and decided position. By his proclamation of December 10th, 1832, he expressed a fixed determination to fulfil the duties of the executive, by carrying out the laws of the United States at all hazards. At the same time, no unnecessary violence of language was made use of, but the state of South Carolina was called upon in persuasive and moderate tones to preclude the necessity for coercive measures, by a voluntary renunciation of the treasonable doctrines recently made manifest.

Immediate preparations were commenced for warlike operations—should such prove inevitable—by garrisoning and strengthening the forts at the entrance of the harbour of Charleston. The party in South Carolina opposed to the attempted nullification of the laws of the United States, being a large minority, made renewed exertions, at this crisis, to avert the threatened calamity. A modification of the tariff, introduced and carried in congress by Mr. Clay, by way of compromise, allayed the angry feeling at the south, and put an end to threats of secession.

Jackson was reëlected at the close of his first term, Martin Van Buren being, at the same time, chosen vice-president. During the whole period of his retention of office, the credit of the country was maintained with foreign nations. In July, 1831, an arrangement, long postponed, was concluded with France, by which a specified indemnity was secured for former depredations upon American commerce. The most important domestic transactions of this administration related to Indian affairs. Those which aroused the greatest

degree of  
president

Deemi

least a c

made use

a renewa

ordered a

place of

banks—

In carryi

removed

had decli

vote of ce

ing on th

(January

To the

buted its v

crisis whic

the specul

institution

must look

losses sust

states to m

The sub

of the Miss

districts wh

standing g

the author

the tribes.

by their chi

on Rock ri

bloodshed,

their old qu

Blood wa

cient occasi

his warriors

worn out by

mercilessly

Black Haw

to the Unit

degree of party strife were connected with the proceedings of the president concerning the United States Bank.

Deeming this institution, if not of unconstitutional inception, at least a dangerous agent for the management of fiscal concerns, he made use of the veto power to annul the action of congress granting a renewal of its charter. In the year following, (1833), the president ordered a withdrawal of the public funds from this bank, then their place of deposit; they were subsequently intrusted to certain state banks—"pet banks," as they were denominated by the opposition. In carrying out this measure, during a recess of congress, Jackson removed from the office of secretary of the treasury, Mr. Duane, who had declined to second his views, and appointed Mr. Taney. A vote of censure was passed by the senate relative to this proceeding on the part of the executive, but was afterwards expunged, (January 16th, 1837.)

To the president's hostility towards the bank, many have attributed its ultimate downfall, and, in no small measure, the commercial crisis which gave so ruinous—but perhaps beneficial—a check to the speculative mania of the period. The effect of the failure of that institution, has, doubtless, been exaggerated, and, for the cause, we must look rather to the misconduct of its managers, and to immense losses sustained by the refusal, upon various pretexts, of several states to make good their liabilities.

The subject of the removal of the Indian tribes to lands westward of the Mississippi, was long a matter of great difficulty, and, in the districts where these races were located, of engrossing interest. The standing ground of contention was a disavowal by the Indians of the authority of those chiefs who undertook to treat in behalf of the tribes. In 1831, a portion of the tribe of Sacs, of Illinois, headed by their chief, Black Hawk, refused to remove from their settlements on Rock river. They were expelled by force, although without bloodshed, but, in the year following, numbers of them returned to their old quarters.

Blood was first shed by the whites—it appears, upon very insufficient occasion; and, the war once commenced, Black Hawk and his warriors were signally successful in several skirmishes. Finally, worn out by fatigue, hard fare, and exposure, they were cut off and mercilessly massacred by a large force, under General Atkinson. Black Hawk made his escape, but subsequently surrendered himself to the United States' authorities. He was detained as a hostage

until June, 1833, when he was set at liberty. In company with other Indian chiefs, he visited many of the eastern cities, every where exciting much attention and curiosity.

Many of the southern tribes were induced to emigrate peaceably; the greatest difficulty was in dealing with the Cherokees and Seminoles. The former, to the number of about eighteen thousand, were mostly located in the northern part of Georgia. They had made great advances in civilization, and were governed by a legislation of their own. The United States had stipulated, in 1802, with the state of Georgia, to extinguish the title of the Cherokees to lands within that jurisdiction, "as early as the same could be peaceably obtained upon reasonable terms."

Efforts to effect a removal of the tribe had been partially successful, but the Georgia legislature, impatient at delay, in 1824, passed sundry acts—pronounced unconstitutional by many able jurists—encroaching upon the rights and personal privileges of the Indians. Finding their position insecure, a large party of the Cherokees, headed by Major Ridge, favoured an emigration of the whole nation. Those of this opinion attended a council, called in 1835, and concluded a treaty with J. T. Schermerhorn, commissioner on the part of the United States, by which it was agreed that, upon the receipt of reasonable compensation for the losses necessarily sustained upon removal, the whole tribe should emigrate westward of the Mississippi.

A military force was called into requisition to compel submission to the terms of this treaty; but the Indians, although denying the authority of those who had undertaken to act for the tribe, made no overt resistance. The Georgian Cherokees, removed to the western territory, have continued to prosper, pursuing the arts of agriculture, and improving in civilization and education. The Choctaws, Chickasaws, and Creeks, occupying separate tracts assigned them west of the Mississippi, have also, to a greater or less extent, adopted the customs of the whites.

THE SEM  
DIANS.  
—RE  
OF D  
GEN  
RE  
O

FROM  
the territo  
ued a the  
bloody co  
tunate ab  
suits were  
warfare, a

Accord  
tinued to  
were not  
From St.  
among th  
Florida, a  
thy missio  
in their re

At the  
tribes of  
Appalache  
overrun b  
lina, these  
southward  
derers").  
the white  
plantation  
and outrap  
of the cess  
ishing set



## CHAPTER XVI.

THE SEMINOLE WAR.—EARLY HISTORY OF THE FLORIDA INDIANS.—WAR OF 1818.—INDIAN TREATY OF 1823: OF 1832.—REFUSAL OF THE SEMINOLES TO REMOVE.—DESTRUCTION OF DADE'S DETACHMENT.—MILITARY OPERATIONS OF GENERALS SCOTT AND JESSUP.—UNSATISFACTORY RESULTS OF NEGOTIATION.—EXPEDITIONS OF COLONELS TAYLOR AND HARNEY.—GRADUAL CESSATION OF HOSTILITIES.—RECENT DIFFICULTIES.

FROM the time of the conquest by De Soto, to the acquisition of the territory of Florida by the United States, the peninsula continued a theatre for scenes of desultory but ferocious warfare. In the bloody contests between the French and Spanish settlers, the unfortunate aborigines were ruinously involved; their agricultural pursuits were interrupted, and their numbers were greatly reduced by warfare, and the want attendant upon their unsettled condition.

According to their usual custom, the Spaniards, while they continued to oppress and destroy the original proprietors of the soil, were not wanting in endeavours to promote their spiritual welfare. From St. Augustine, numbers of zealous ecclesiastics were sent forth among the Indians. Both within the limits of the present state of Florida, and far in the wilderness of the north and west, these worthy missionaries devoted their lives to the instruction of the natives in their religious faith, and in the arts of civilization.

At the commencement of the eighteenth century, the principal tribes of Florida were the hostile nations of the Yemassee and the Appalachees; but after the northern portion of the peninsula was overrun by the invading forces of Governor Moore, of South Carolina, these reduced and scattered natives united and moved farther southward. From this period they were known as Seminoles ("wanderers"). Causes of quarrel continued to exist between them and the white settlers of the border: fugitive slaves from the northern plantations found an asylum among the Indians, and mutual wrongs and outrages kept alive the old feelings of hostility. At the period of the cession of Florida to the United States, the Indians had flourishing settlements in West Florida, particularly upon the St. Marks

and Oscilla rivers, and in the vicinity of the lake of Miccosukie. Their inroads had become so frequent and dangerous, that it was determined to break up their quarters in this region, and in March of 1818, these settlements were laid waste by an army of several thousand men, under General Jackson, and the inhabitants were driven to East Florida and into the interior. Five years later, on the 18th of September, 1823, a treaty, known as the treaty of Moultrie creek, was effected by United States' commissioners with upwards of thirty of the Seminole chiefs, the principal provisions of which were for confining the Indians to a specified district in the interior. Mutual complaints were still made by the Indians and frontier whites of reciprocal injuries, and the removal of the Seminoles from Florida was strenuously advocated.

In 1832, on the 8th of May, another conference was held by United States' agents with about fifteen of the Indian chiefs, at Payne's landing, on the Ocklawaha river. A grant of lands west of the Mississippi was promised by the United States, together with a pecuniary compensation for the loss attendant upon the abandonment of their old settlements, if the Indians would consent to remove; an offer which the Seminole chiefs accepted in behalf of their people, conditionally upon the new lands proving acceptable upon examination, by some of their own emissaries. The removal was to take place in three years' time. The nation at large was averse to this treaty, and as the time for its completion drew near, no disposition was evinced to abide by it. The warriors, denying the authority of the chiefs who had undertaken to bind them, or dissatisfied with the report of the deputation, commenced a systematic purchase and accumulation of arms and military stores, with the determination to maintain possession of the homes of their forefathers.

Open hostilities commenced in the month of October, 1835, when two Indians were killed in a fray near Miccosukie. Their death was revenged by the murder of the mail carrier between Tampa Bay and Fort King, whose mangled body was found, shortly after, upon the road between the stations. The disposition of the Indians was further manifested by their putting to death two chiefs, named John Hicks and Charley Amathla, who had favoured the treaty of Payne's landing. Prominent among the belligerent party, was the young quadroon, Osceola, commonly called by the name of his supposed father, an Englishman, named Powel.

The numbers and warlike character of the Seminoles, seem to

osukie.  
it was  
areh of  
l thou-  
driven  
ne 18th  
e creek,  
f thirty  
ere for  
Mutual  
ites of  
Florida

eld by  
iefs, at  
west of  
r with  
andon-  
move;  
people,  
xamin-  
o take  
to this  
osition  
hority  
d with  
se and  
tion to

when  
death  
Tampa  
after,  
ndians  
named  
treaty  
y, was  
of his

em to



**ANDREW JACKSON**

SEVENTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.

BORN IN 1767; PRESIDENT IN 1829; SERVED 8 YEARS; DIED JUNE 4, 1846  
FROM THE LAST PAINTING TAKEN PREVIOUS TO HIS DECEASE.



BORN IN



*MARTIN VAN BUREN,*

EIGHTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.

BORN IN 1782; INSTALLED INTO OFFICE IN 1837, SERVED 4 YEARS

have been  
important  
with more  
States' in  
to join the  
Not far from  
beset by  
Seminole  
themselves  
repelling  
but their  
and pick  
from their  
supposed,  
shortly after  
back, and  
men on the  
a place of

The war  
lated and  
took place  
about six  
troops, and  
General Cl  
own head-  
the loss of  
the remain  
the plantat  
abandoned  
were in a c  
with a pow  
operations  
quito inlet,

The follow  
campaign in  
ern Semino  
was plain,  
cope with s  
avoided con  
unimportant

have been greatly underrated, and the lamentable result of the first important engagement excited universal astonishment. Major Dade, with more than one hundred men, including a company of United States' infantry, set out from Tampa Bay, in the month of December, to join the forces of General Clinch, at Fort King, in the interior. Not far from the forks of the Ouithlaeocoehee, the command was beset by a large body of Indians, led by Micanopy, the principal Seminole chief, and his brother-in-law, Jumper. The troops defended themselves with great resolution and bravery, and succeeded in repelling the enemy, and in erecting a slight barriade of pine-logs; but their opponents were in sufficient force to be able to surround and pick them off at their leisure, firing from behind the trees and from their lurking places among the wire-grass. Having, as they supposed, destroyed the entire company, the Indians retired; but shortly afterward a party of negroes arrived at the spot on horseback, and finished the murderous work by knocking the wounded men on the head. Only three of the whole detachment ever reached a place of safety: these had been left for dead upon the field.

The war had now fairly commenced, and the destruction of isolated and exposed plantations speedily followed. Various skirmishes took place, and on the 31st of the month, Osceola, at the head of about six hundred Indians, attacked a body of two hundred regular troops, and a company of Florida volunteers, under command of General Clinch, while on their march from Fort Drane towards his own head-quarters. The Indians were defeated, but not without the loss of over fifty men on the part of the whites. Throughout the remainder of the winter, the Seminoles continued their ravages; the plantations of the interior were mostly destroyed, after being abandoned by their occupants. The settlements of all East Florida were in a condition of great danger and distress. The noted Philip, with a powerful body of warriors, conducted the most important operations in that quarter, and destroyed New Smyrna, upon Mosquito inlet, together with the plantations on Halifax river.

The following spring (1836) was memorable for General Scott's campaign in Florida. With a strong force, he penetrated the northern Seminole districts, sweeping the country in three columns. It was plain, however, that the Indians had no idea of attempting to cope with such formidable enemies in open warfare. They easily avoided coming to any general engagement, and a troublesome, but unimportant skirmishing comprised all the belligerent operations of

the campaign. As the season advanced, the unhealthiness of the climate prevented active operations: volunteers were discharged, forts were evacuated, and the savages were at liberty during the whole summer to continue a desultory system of murder and plunder. In September, a large army, under Governor Call, was again marched against the subtle and fugitive enemy, and they were again driven southward towards the impenetrable asylum offered to them by the unexplored and marshy wilderness of the Everglades. There were, at this time, several hundred Creek auxiliaries in the United States' service in Florida, headed by their chiefs, Paddy Carr and Jem Boy. With a mixed array of these friendly Indians and white soldiery, Colonel Lane undertook a campaign to the southward, in the month of October. He drove the Seminoles from the villages where they had hitherto dwelt secure and unmolested, and defeated and dispersed those who attempted to oppose his progress.

In the following month two engagements took place on the borders of the extensive Wahoo swamp. The American army concentrated in that vicinity numbered more than two thousand men, a force sufficient to overwhelm the undisciplined enemy in open field, but unable, nevertheless, to effect any thing of importance in a district where the Indians could so readily betake themselves to places of retreat and concealment.

Within a few weeks after these events, the main body of the Seminoles were ascertained to have deserted their old haunts, and to have moved southward towards the Everglades. On the 22d of January, (1837,) General Jessup, then commander-in-chief of the forces in Florida, started in pursuit, with a strong force. A number of prisoners were taken at the encampment of the Seminole chief Osuchee, on Ahapopka lake, at the source of the Oeklawaha, and the trail of the fugitives was followed southward. A considerable force of Indian warriors was dispersed, and driven to take refuge in the morass upon the Hatee Lustee creek, and on the following day, being the 28th of the month, a prisoner was sent to propose to the Seminole chiefs a meeting for conference. This was finally brought about by the influence of Abraham, a quick-witted negro, who officiated as Micanopy's chief counsellor. The 18th of February was appointed for a meeting to be held at Fort Dade, on the Big Outh-lacoochee. Thus ended the campaign, and the invading army proceeded northward.

A truce had been agreed upon until the time for concluding the

treaty, b  
with suf  
Philip, w  
the enca  
and garr  
the meet  
about, th  
days we  
order to  
however,  
like and  
Micanop  
or persua  
Tampa I  
nothing v  
the troop  
througho  
undispute

In the  
Philip, li  
their com  
warriors,  
districts.  
States' fo  
but notw  
over thos  
seemed op  
faith on th  
a sufficien  
tion affor  
and six ot  
with man  
come for t

The ne  
Taylor, w  
the enemy  
Everglade  
shore of F  
in a man  
tained the



treaty, but information as to this arrangement was not disseminated with sufficient promptness to put an immediate stop to hostilities. Philip, with some hundreds of his warriors, made a vain attack upon the encampment at Lake Monroe, in command of Colonel Fanning, and garrisoned by regulars, volunteers, and a party of Creeks. When the meeting appointed at Fort Dade was, after some delays, brought about, the treaty of Payne's Landing was, in effect, renewed, and days were fixed for the assembling of the Indians at Tampa Bay, in order to embark on board government vessels. It was soon apparent, however, that they had no idea of leaving the country. The warlike and subtle Osceola exerted his influence over the old King Micanopy, to prevent compliance with the treaty, and either by force or persuasion induced him to withdraw, with his followers, from Tampa Bay to the interior. The spring had passed away, and nothing was accomplished; the heat of summer began to tell upon the troops, and Forts Mellon and Volusia were abandoned; so that throughout the south-eastern portion of the peninsula the Indians had undisputed possession of the whole country.

In the month of September, active operations were renewed. Philip, his son, the Chief Uchee Bihiy, and about one hundred of their company, were captured near St. Augustine, and other notable warriors, weary of hopeless warfare, surrendered themselves in other districts. Troops had been poured into Florida until the United States' force amounted to between eight and nine thousand men, but notwithstanding this overwhelming preponderance of numbers over those of the Indians, no prospect of a termination of the war seemed open. Under these circumstances, the repeated breaches of faith on the part of the Indians, appeared to the commander-in-chief a sufficient excuse for treating them as savages unworthy the protection afforded by the rules of civilized warfare. Osceola, Alligator, and six others in authority among the natives were seized, together with many of their followers, near Fort Peyton, whither they had come for the purpose of a parley.

The next expedition of importance was that of Colonel Zachary Taylor, who led a force of about six hundred men into the heart of the enemy's country. He pushed his way to the borders of the Everglades, and encountered the objects of his search on the eastern shore of Kissimee lake. Thus attacked in their own quarters, and in a manner at bay, the savages fought desperately. They maintained their ground with determined courage, and although finally

defeated and driven into the swamps, their loss was smaller than that of their assailants. Twenty-eight of Colonel Taylor's party were killed, and no less than one hundred and eleven were wounded.

In the course of the ensuing winter great numbers of the Indians, worn out by exposure and famine, and hopeless of maintaining their ground, surrendered at discretion. These were, for the most part, shipped westward. Although no longer acting in combined and systematic warfare, those who remained continued to scour the country, and to murder and plunder wherever opportunity offered. This state of things continued through the years of 1838, '9, and '40. In December of the latter year, Colonel Harney penetrated the Everglades by means of boats, and surprised the encampment of the chief Chaikika. The details of the various marauding expeditions of the Indians, and their skirmishes with detached bodies of troops would occupy too much space for further recital. The war did not end by any *coup de main*. The savages were gradually so far reduced in numbers by capture or surrender that they ceased to be formidable. Four hundred were shipped westward in the year 1842.

Those who still remain in possession of the interior of Southern Florida, number, as is supposed, from three to five hundred. With this feeble remnant of the powerful nation which it cost such immense expenditure of life and treasure to subdue, difficulties have recently been renewed, and there is too much reason to fear that our nation will again be disgraced by a war in which the power of the United States may be exerted in vain endeavours to ferret out and extirpate a few miserable savages from an unknown and unexplored wilderness.

smaller than  
Taylor's party  
were wounded.  
the Indians,  
maintaining their  
for the most part,  
combined and  
for the coun-  
terfired. This  
'9, and '40.  
and the Ever-  
ment of the  
expeditions  
of troops  
war did not  
usually so far  
ceased to be  
the year 1842.  
of Southern  
red. With  
at cost such  
difficulties  
reason to fear  
the power  
ers to ferret  
known and



OSCEOLA.

ADMINI  
SUB-T  
BOUN  
AND

MARTI

Johnson  
This year  
pecuniary  
subjected  
order iss  
dues were  
drawn fro  
payment  
unceasing  
encourage

At a sp  
with the  
representi  
congress,  
paying ba  
known as  
of separat  
tributed a  
specie—the  
adherence

A bill f  
house. T  
ordered to  
already or  
was long k  
tled state c  
payments  
for that p  
the princip

## CHAPTER XVII.

ADMINISTRATION OF VAN BUREN: FINANCIAL PRESSURE: THE SUB-TREASURY: CANADIAN REVOLT: THE NORTH-EASTERN BOUNDARY: THE AFFAIR OF THE AMISTAD.—HARRISON AND TYLER: BANKRUPT LAW: PRÆMPTION: THE VETO POWER: TARIFF.—ADMISSION OF TEXAS.

MARTIN VAN BUREN was elected president, and Richard M. Johnson vice-president, for the term commencing March 4th, 1837. This year was memorable for the most remarkable and extensive pecuniary pressure ever felt by the country, except when directly subjected to the burden of war. In compliance with a circular order issued from the treasury department in 1835, government dues were demanded to be paid in gold or silver. Specie was thus drawn from circulation to a vast extent, and a general stoppage of payment was resorted to by the banks, as the only remedy for the unceasing drain upon their resources. This procedure was directly encouraged by the legislatures of several states.

At a special session of congress, held in September, the president, with the concurrence of Mr. Woodbury, secretary of the treasury, representing the existing impossibility of compliance with the act of congress, which required a deposit of the public moneys in specie-paying banks, proposed a new plan for the security of these funds, known as the "sub-treasury" scheme. This was the establishment of separate places of deposit in different parts of the Union, so distributed as to diminish the expense and risk of transportation of specie—the intention of government still remaining to insist upon adherence to the principles upon which the specie circular was based.

A bill for this purpose was carried in the senate, but failed in the house. To meet the expenses of government, treasury notes were ordered to be issued, and an instalment of the surplus revenue, already ordered for distribution among the states, was retained. It was long before the mercantile community recovered from the unsettled state of affairs at this period. The banks did not resume specie payments until August of the year following, when an agreement for that purpose went into operation simultaneously throughout the principal states. Meanwhile, the ruin of thousands had been

accomplished, and general distrust and uncertainty attended all commercial transactions.

In December, 1837, certain of the inhabitants of the northern frontier became involved in the Canadian revolt which broke out in that year. A large number of those favouring the insurgents occupied and fortified Navy island, in the Niagara river. The steamer *Caroline*, employed to convey stores, &c., to the island, was seized at Schlosser, on the American shore, on the night of December 29th, by a party from the Canadian shore, was set on fire, and sent over the falls. One man attached to the steamer, named Durfee, was killed in the fray, others were wounded, and several were said to be missing. The interference of Americans with Canadian affairs received no countenance from government, but the irregular manner in which retaliation was conducted, and the invasion of our territory by the attack on the *Caroline*, were matters of difficult adjustment.

In the year 1838, serious difficulties arose upon the north-eastern border of New England. The boundary line between the British provinces and the state of Maine was unsettled, and negotiation was then in progress for its final establishment. The state authorities, unwilling to await the protracted action of the general government, resorted to forcible measures for the arrest of encroachment, by individuals, upon that portion of the disputed territory then under their actual jurisdiction.

The state land-agent, despatched, with a small company, to put a stop to the cutting of timber by these trespassers, was taken prisoner by the latter, and carried into New Brunswick. Other officials were promptly commissioned to maintain the rights claimed by the state, and, with a body of armed men, proceeded to the scene of disturbance. The consequence of such belligerent movements naturally was to create great excitement on the border, which soon extended throughout the United States. In the discussion of the question, by correspondence between the governors of Maine and New Brunswick, much exacerbation of feeling was evident.

The matter was laid before congress, in the month of February, in a message from the president, and such action was taken as resulted in averting the threatened hostilities, and in preserving the existing occupation of either party until the whole question in dispute could be definitely settled. General Scott was specially commissioned to proceed to the debatable ground, and take measures for preventing any further collision. Necessary precautions were

allowed  
against  
directe  
vention

One  
(1839),  
the Sp  
into N  
vessel,  
two wh  
four A  
whose  
quent i  
for ano  
chandis  
Spaniar  
the neg  
possessi  
were at

Proce  
the Uni  
the suit  
found ag  
was refe  
in their  
free, the  
country.  
individu  
ization, a  
The nat  
which he  
expectati

The de  
of the ne  
claim, or  
repeated

At the  
William  
undimini

allowed to be taken by the authorities of the state of Maine to guard against a continuance of deprecation, in the interim; but this was directed to be accomplished by the civil authority, without the intervention of an armed force.

One of the most noticeable occurrences during the following year, (1839,) as connected with our foreign relations, was the seizure of the Spanish schooner *Amistad*. She was captured and brought into New London in the month of August, by a United States' vessel, under the following circumstances: "On board of her were two white men, Spaniards, Jose Ruiz and Pedro Montez, and fifty-four African negroes, under command of one of their own number, whose name was Cinquez. The *Amistad*, it appeared from subsequent investigations, had sailed from Havana, in the island of Cuba, for another port in the West India islands, with a cargo of merchandise, and the Africans on board, claimed as slaves by the two Spaniards, Ruiz and Montez. After having been four nights at sea, the negroes rose upon the whites, killed the captain and crew, took possession of the schooner, and, in endeavouring to return to Africa, were at length found conveyed to the shores of Long Island."\*

Proceedings were instituted against these negroes in the courts of the United States, upon charges of piracy and murder; and also at the suit of the Spanish claimants, Ruiz and Montez. No bill was found against them by the grand-jury, to which the criminal charge was referred; and the question of civil right was finally established in their favour by the supreme court. As native Africans, born free, they were restored to liberty, and finally sent back to their own country. Previous to their departure, great efforts were made by individuals to give them some insight into the advantages of civilization, and such instruction as time and opportunity might admit. The natural inclination of the savage for the free, unfettered life to which he has been accustomed, to a certain extent disappointed the expectations of those who had interested themselves in this matter.

The decision of the federal courts, and the consequent enlargement of the negroes, gave great offence to the Spanish government, and a claim, on behalf of the owners of the vessel and cargo, has been repeatedly pressed in the conduct of later negotiations.

At the close of a four years' term, Van Buren was succeeded by William Henry Harrison, whose popularity at the west had remained undiminished from the period of his military services in the frontier

\* Book of the United States.

war with the British and Indians. The inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1841. One month later, April 4th, the death of President Harrison gave occasion, for the first time, for the application of the constitutional provision for such contingency. The vice-president, John Tyler, of Virginia, entered upon the vacant office.

A special session of congress, called by Harrison during his brief administration, was held at the close of May. During the summer several important acts were passed, mostly having reference to the disturbed state of financial affairs still existing. A general bankrupt law was the first of these; a measure in which congress took upon itself the responsibility of an act retrospective in its character, and in gross violation of contracts. The general dissatisfaction of the people at its unjust operation, was evinced by its repeal at the regular session of 1842-3. Next came the repeal of the sub-treasury law, which had been finally carried through during the previous term. Provision was made for an increase of revenue by additional duties on importations.

To encourage the occupation and improvement of public lands, a right of preëmption, at the lowest government prices, was secured to actual settlers upon unappropriated lands, limited, in extent, to one hundred and sixty acres for each individual or family, according to particular provisions. A bill, incorporating a national bank, expressly for the purpose of providing a fit agency for the transaction of the monetary affairs of government, passed both houses of congress; but, to the astonishment and indignation of the party then in the ascendant, it received the presidential veto on the 16th of August. The grounds of objection, submitted by Mr. Tyler, were the absence of constitutional power in congress to create such an institution. Brought up a second time, under a new name, and with greater restrictions in its operation, the bill was again defeated by the president, and, as a two-thirds vote could not be obtained in its favour, the measure fell through.

In the summer of 1842, the return of an exploring expedition, fitted out from the United States, under command of Wilkes, four years previous, excited universal interest. The discovery and coasting, for more than a thousand miles, of the Antarctic continent; the assiduous prosecution of philosophical researches, by the naturalists connected with the expedition; and the great addition to the general fund of information respecting countries remote and seldom visited, were matters of national pride and gratification.

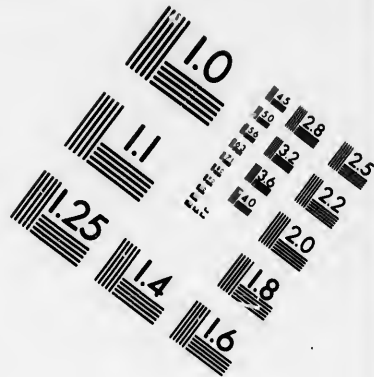
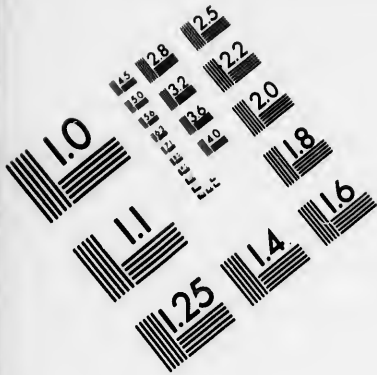


place on  
death of  
applica-  
the vice-  
office.  
his brief  
summer  
e to the  
al bank-  
ess took  
aracter,  
ction of  
l at the  
treasury  
orevious  
ditional

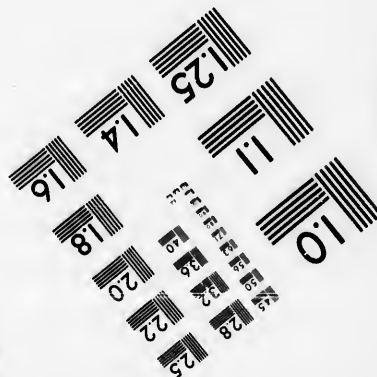
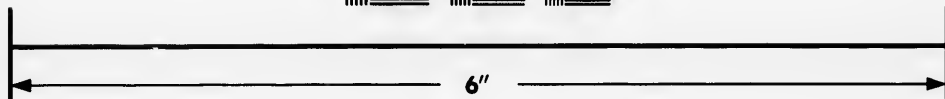
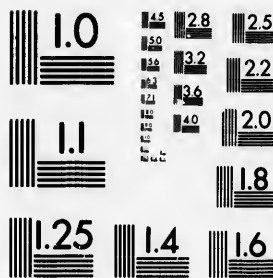
e lands,  
secured  
tent, to  
eording  
bank,  
nsaction  
of con-  
then in  
16th of  
er, were  
such an  
nd with  
ated by  
d in its

edition,  
es, four  
l coast-  
nt; the  
uralists  
general  
visited,





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503


15 28  
16 32 25  
17 36 22  
18 20  
19

20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99  
100



EMINENT AMERICAN STATESMEN

In the respect  
negotia  
Ashbur  
of the  
treaty a  
nience  
dition o  
in supp  
About  
which a  
not spec  
specific  
views of  
of his ve  
in congr  
represent  
severely  
veto was  
indignam  
or to fett  
Near  
Tyler su  
quence.  
providing  
into the c  
cession of  
A cursory  
province,  
independ



In the month of August of this year, the long-disputed question respecting the north-eastern boundary, was finally adjusted. The negotiations were conducted, on the part of Great Britain, by Lord Ashburton, specially commissioned for this purpose, and, on the part of the United States, by Mr. Webster, then secretary of state. This treaty also related to other matters in dispute, or of mutual convenience and necessity. Among these, were regulations for the extradition of fugitives from justice, and stipulations for joint operations in suppressing the slave-trade.

About this time, a further revision of the tariff took place, by which an *ad valorem* duty of thirty per cent. was laid upon articles not specially excepted, and protective imposts were affixed to others specifically designated. As at first carried, the bill did not meet the views of the president, and he did not scruple to make further use of his veto power. After some alterations, with difficulty sustained in congress, it received his assent. The feeling of the house of representatives, respecting the course adopted by the president, was severely expressed in the report of a committee to which the last veto was referred. Mr. Tyler, on the other hand, responded by an indignant protest against the apparent attempt to impugn his motives or to fetter his constitutional prerogative.

Near the close of his official career, in January, 1845, President Tyler succeeded in carrying out a measure of vast future consequence. This was the passage of a joint resolution by congress, providing for the admission of the revolutionized state of Texas into the confederacy of the United States. The terms of admission, cession of public territory, &c., were left open for future negotiation. A cursory view of the early history of this territory, as a Mexican province, and the course of events leading to the establishment of its independence, will form a subject for our separate consideration.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

TEXAS AS A SPANISH PROVINCE: GRANT TO MOSES AUSTIN:  
 COLONIZATION: DIFFICULTIES OF THE SETTLERS.—REVOLU-  
 TION IN MEXICO: BUSTAMENTE: FIRST REVOLUTIONARY  
 MOVEMENTS IN TEXAS: SANTA ANNA'S PRESIDENCY:  
 HIS USURPATION.—SECOND TEXAN CAMPAIGN:  
 SUCCESS OF THE PATRIOTS: INVASION BY SANTA  
 ANNA: BATTLE OF SAN JACINTO: INDEPEND-  
 ENCE ESTABLISHED.

THE extensive and fertile province of Texas received but little attention in the early days of Mexican conquest by the Spaniards. It presented no inducement to the gold-hunter, and the invaders were of a different mould from those in after-times destined to develop its unsurpassed agricultural resources. The colonists who succeeded the original adventurers from Spain, were in equal degree neglectful of the field for industry and successful enterprise opened for them in the rolling prairies and rich bottom-lands of Texas. The few white inhabitants of the province resided, for the most part, in or about the small Spanish towns of Nacogdoches and San Antonio. Prior to the revolution in Mexico, the face of this whole country was scarcely changed from its original aspect, notwithstanding the remarkable facility with which it can be brought under cultivation.

A little before the downfall of Spanish power upon the western continent, in the month of January, 1821, Moses Austin, a citizen of Connecticut, concluded a negotiation opened with the colonial government for the purpose of commencing a colonization of the coast district. A tract of land was assigned, extending one hundred miles upon the coast, and still further inland, into which Austin contracted to introduce three hundred families of immigrants, each family to be secured in possession of a square league of land, and to be allowed extensive specified privileges of exemption from taxation, and the right to free importation of commodities otherwise taxable.

"The privilege and distinction of carrying out this important undertaking devolved upon Stephen F. Austin, a son of the original grantee. After many unsuccessful attempts to induce the embark-

tion of  
 accom  
 persua  
 engage  
 reached  
 various  
 scs, fr  
 New C  
 was pl  
 "In  
 depred  
 tenure  
 now be  
 of the  
 ceeded,  
 of his c  
 the uns  
 than a  
 relieve  
 the old

Whil  
 from th  
 uncertai  
 complet  
 tending  
 nucleus  
 quarter.

The r  
 colony.  
 kept the  
 absence,  
 gave litt

Texas  
 the repu  
 time, in  
 populatio  
 little fra  
 latter, ne  
 to compl

tion of eastern capital in the new settlements, he proceeded to Texas, accompanied by such adventurers, with their families, as he could persuade to try their fortunes in the new country. Others had engaged to follow at a convenient opportunity. The emigrants reached the Brazos river in the month of December (1821). From various causes, their condition was trying and precarious: two vessels, freighted with provisions and supplies, had been sent out from New Orleans, but one of these was lost, and the cargo of the other was plundered by the Caraneahuas, or Coast Indians.

"In addition to their sufferings from destitution and from savage depredations, a new source of anxiety arose in the uncertainty of the tenure by which they held their lands; as the Spanish yoke had now been thrown off by Mexico. In order to obtain a confirmation of the former grant, from the existing government, Austin proceeded, in person, to the city of Mexico, and presented the claims of his colony to the authorities. Such delays were experienced from the unsettled state of affairs in the new republic, that it was more than a year from the time of his departure before he returned to relieve the apprehension of his associates, by the intelligence that the old contract was ratified by the Mexican congress."\*

While the title to the coast grant remained in abeyance, colonists from the United States hesitated to stake their fortunes upon the uncertain action of the republic, and many of them returned home, completely disheartened. Others occupied the unsettled tract extending from the bank of the Sabine to the Brazos, forming the nucleus of the present thrifty and prosperous settlements in that quarter.

The return of Austin gave a new impetus to the operations of the colony. The formidable Caraneahua Indians, whose inroads had kept the settlers in continual alarm, throughout the period of his absence, were, by his energetic action, extirpated or overawed, and gave little further trouble to the white inhabitants.

Texas was incorporated with Coahuila as a separate state, under the republican system; but all political influence remained, for the time, in the hands of the latter province, on account of its larger population. The inhabitants of Coahuila, of Spanish descent, felt little fraternity towards the settlers from the United States. The latter, nevertheless, in their isolated position, had nothing of which to complain in their treatment by the central government, prior to

\* Discoverers, Pioneers, &c., of America.



the administration of Bustamente. They enjoyed perfect immunity from any religious restrictions, and were, at least, allowed the privilege of self-protection, both as to person and property. In 1830, their numbers had increased to nearly thirty thousand.

Bustamente, who owed his authority to military usurpation, exhibited a total disregard of the rights of the Texan colonists, either as occupants under the grant of the republic, or as peaceable immigrants engaged in the improvement of unappropriated public lands, in accordance with liberal provisions of former colonization laws. These laws were repealed; the title to lands already appropriated and improved, was called in question; and detachments of armed troops were stationed at various points, to check any resistance to the establishment of a new order of government.

To maintain more efficient control over the inhabitants, the dictator ordered the erection of forts at Nacogdoches, Anahuac, and Velasco, which were garrisoned, and placed under command of military officials. These precautions first taken, a series of tyrannical and arbitrary proceedings against the inhabitants commenced. "Citizens were arrested and confined, in several instances, upon vague charges of disaffection to the existing government; the civil authority in several of the municipalities was declared to be superseded, and in all totally disregarded; in short, the inhabitants of Texas found themselves, in the midst of peace, suddenly subjected to martial law, administered by officers who appeared to have been sent there for no other purpose than to make war upon the rights secured to them by the constitution of the country.

"The inhabitants, scattered over a wide extent of country in isolated settlements and single plantations, and, as yet, without roads or bridges to shorten or facilitate an intercourse between them, were not immediately made acquainted with the nature and extent of these outrages upon their rights. They were not of a mettle, however, to surrender them without an effort for redress."\*

A meeting was called, and it was resolved that the wisest and, indeed, safest policy was an immediate resort to arms. On the 24th of June, (1832,) John Austin, at the head of sixty volunteers, attacked the fort at Velasco, garrisoned by one hundred and fifty men. His first movement was to seize upon a schooner, lying in the river, on board of which he embarked his little company, and, anchoring opposite the fort, opened fire upon it with a small cannon. The fire

\* Niles' Historical View of Texas.

from t  
a sally  
They  
mornin  
to the

The  
oppon  
At Na  
inhabit  
escape  
off by  
their op  
livered

Fortu  
mente p  
central p  
was elev  
early po  
affairs.  
obtained  
from Eu  
those in  
unable t  
public, h  
represent  
the resul

The y  
Indians  
the whit  
lation co  
proposals  
from Coa  
confedera

A petit  
congress,  
tient at d  
stration o  
prejudice  
of a conv  
his way h

from the fort was almost entirely ineffective, and the garrison, making a sally, attempted to gain possession of the vessel by boarding. They were driven off, with considerable loss. On the following morning the fort was evacuated; the troops, delivering up their arms to the assailants, were allowed to retire unmolested.

The garrison at Anahuac, espousing the cause of Bustamente's opponents in Mexico, abandoned the fort to the Texan insurgents. At Nacogdoches, the Mexican stronghold was forcibly seized by the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, and the garrison, attempting to escape by a night march, were pursued, and their retreat was cut off by a handful of mounted Texans. Over-estimating the force of their opponents, the Mexicans agreed upon a capitulation, and delivered up their arms.

Fortunately for the inhabitants of Texas, the downfall of Bustamente put an end, for the time, to this unequal contest with the central government. His successful competitor, General Santa Anna, was elevated to the presidency, and the course adopted during the early portion of his administration gave promise of a better state of affairs. Previous to this period, a vast number of grants had been obtained from the Mexican government, by enterprising individuals from Europe and the United States, upon conditions analogous to those imposed upon Austin; but, in most cases, the grantees were unable to fulfil their part of the contracts. The attention of the public, however, was turned to the richness of the country by the representations of these speculators, and a constant immigration was the result.

The year 1832 was memorable for renewed hostilities with the Indians of the interior, and for the ravages of the cholera among the white settlers. Notwithstanding these reverses, the population continued rapidly to increase, and, in the following year, proposals were set on foot for effecting a separation of this province from Coahuila, and its erection into a new state in the Mexican confederacy.

A petition to this effect was presented by Austin to the Mexican congress, but its consideration was neglected and postponed. Impatient at delay, and, as is said, considering that some active demonstration on the part of the Texans might "advance, rather than prejudice their claim," he wrote to his constituents, advising the call of a convention for the organization of a state government. Upon his way homeward, he was arrested and imprisoned by the Mexican

authorities, who had obtained information respecting this letter, upon an accusation of carrying on a treasonable correspondence.

The ambitious projects of Santa Anna, aiming at the establishment of military supremacy over the republic, were crowned with success in 1834. The provinces of Zacatecas and Texas alone exhibited a contumacious disposition. The former was reduced to submission by the most sanguinary violence, and its unfortunate inhabitants were subjected to martial law, and placed under the domination of military officials. A similar course was resolved upon in relation to Texas, but the result proved how far the Mexican authorities had miscalculated the temper and capacity of the hardy immigrants who composed its population.

Troops were sent into the province, and an order was issued by the commanding officer, General Cos, for the surrender of all collections of arms. The inhabitants, while they scorned to comply with the requisition, awaited some overt act of military usurpation prior to any armed combination for resistance. A meeting of delegates was called, to hold their session on the 15th of October, and consult as to the most advisable course to be pursued. The first attempt by the Mexican authorities to disarm the Texans, was made at Gonzales, on the Guadalupe, near the north-western limit of the American settlements. One hundred and fifty mounted men, dispatched to take possession of a piece of artillery at this remote village, were opposed and driven off by the inhabitants and those who had assembled for their assistance, on the 30th of September (1835). Strengthened by reinforcements to a company of five hundred men, the Texans at Gonzales, under command of Austin, prepared to march upon San Antonio de Bexar.

About this time, the Mexican fortress at La Bahia, or Goliad, on the San Antonio river, was seized by an independent party of Texans. The garrison, completely surprised by a night attack, were easily overpowered, and a most seasonable supply of arms, ammunition, and stores, was secured for the use of the insurgents.

Considerable time was occupied by the main body of the Texan army in preparations for the reduction of San Antonio, where General Cos was posted with a strong force. Before the commencement of active operations in that quarter, the Texan delegation assembled, and organized a temporary government. Henry Smith received the appointment of governor; Stephen F. Austin was deputed to pro-

cure a  
comm

"Ge

Texas,

all the

lator, i

Equall

he had

their r

By this

that un

with th

conduc

living g

"Ha

early m

and res

the hist

to the s

Upon

commis

devolve

was com

days, at

able by

late: th

disband

Texas f

Nueces,

Great

reports

mostly y

during

lutionar

in whiel

his appe

of eight

advance

in perso

cure aid from the United States, and Samuel Houston was chosen commander-in-chief of the forces.

"General Houston, previous to his connexion with the fortunes of Texas, had led a life of such strange vicissitudes, as must develop all the powers and energies of man. As soldier, lawyer, and legislator, he had exhibited unusual acumen and steady self-reliance. Equally at home in an Indian wigwam or in the halls of congress, he had spent years among the aborigines of the country, sharing their rude accommodations, and pursuing their primitive avocations. By this intimate communion, he acquired not only a sympathy with that unfortunate race, which has ever appeared in all his dealings with them, but an influence and control over their affections and conduct, incomparably greater than that attained by any other living man.

"Having removed to Texas, he entered heart and soul into the early movements of the patriots, and so fully secured the confidence and respect of his associates, that, at the most dangerous period in the history of the country, he was appointed, as before mentioned, to the supreme military command."\*

Upon the departure of General Austin to fulfil the duties of his commission, the command of the army encamped before San Antonio devolved upon Colonel Bureson. On the 5th of December, an attack was commenced upon the town. The contest continued for four days, at the end of which time, the fort of the Alamo was alone tenable by the besieged. General Cos, therefore, consented to capitulate: the Mexican officers were paroled, and their troops were disbanded or drawn off. Thus the last Mexican stronghold in Texas fell into the hands of the patriots; that at Lepantican, on the Nueces, having previously surrendered to a volunteer party of Texans.

Great interest was excited, throughout the United States, by reports of the position of affairs in Texas, and many adventurers, mostly young and active men, made their way to the scene of action during the winter ensuing, and proffered their services in the revolutionary cause. Months passed by in uncertainty as to the manner in which Santa Anna would open the campaign. He finally made his appearance, towards the close of February, 1836, with an army of eight thousand men. The right division, under General Urea, advanced along the coast, while the left, commanded by Santa Anna in person, marched through the interior, in the direction of San

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

Antonio. The whole force of the Texans in actual service at this crisis, is said not to have exceeded five hundred men.

The first intelligence of the invasion was coupled with the report that a company of the revolutionists, under Colonels Grant and Johnson, who had undertaken an expedition against Matamoros, on the Rio Grande, had been cut off by the advancing army. Santa Anna, arriving at San Antonio, took possession of the place, but the Texan garrison, occupying the strong fort of the Alamo, refused to capitulate. In expectation of relief from without, they had determined to defend the post to the last. "No very accurate details have been given of the manner in which this band of brave men was destroyed, but it appears that, after a long and desperate defence, the fort was stormed by an overwhelming force, and the garrison perished to a man, either slain in the conflict, or put to death for defending an untenable post."

A detachment was immediately marched from San Antonio against Goliad. The Texans there in occupation, under Colonel Fannin, on their retreat towards Victoria, were pursued and surrounded by a vastly superior force. The whole party surrendered to the enemy upon favourable terms of capitulation. A few days later, on the 27th of March, these prisoners, with others who had fallen into the hands of the invaders, to the number of more than four hundred, were brutally massacred.

While these events were in progress, the Texan delegates had again assembled, and unanimously agreed upon a declaration of independence. A state constitution was formed, and, together with a general declaration of rights, received the signatures of the members on the 17th of March, 1836.

In the month of April, Santa Anna pushed forward to Harrisburg, the temporary capital, with the design of seizing upon the officers of government. "Failing in this, he burned the town, and proceeded down Galveston bay, towards New Washington, where was a *dépôt* of military stores. On his return towards Lynch's ferry, on the San Jacinto, with the intention of pressing on to Anahuac, he encountered the Texan army, ready to give battle.

"The patriot army consisted of less than eight hundred men, of all ranks and occupations, most of them undisciplined, and ignorant of military affairs. The Mexicans, as reinforced by five hundred troops, under Cos, on the morning of April 21st, (the day of battle,) numbered nearly or quite sixteen hundred, most of whom were

at this

e report  
ant and  
oras, on  
Santa  
but the  
used to  
l deter-  
details  
ve men  
lefence,  
garrison  
eath for

against  
nin, on  
ed by a  
enemy  
on the  
into the  
undred,

es had  
tion of  
er with  
e mem-

isburg,  
officers  
d pro-  
ere was  
rry, on  
uac, he

men, of  
morant  
undred  
battle,)  
were



**WILLIAM H. HARRISON,**  
NINTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.  
BORN IN 1773; INSTALLED INTO OFFICE IN 1841; DIED APRIL 4  
OF THE SAME YEAR

BORN  
O



*JOHN TYLER,*

TENTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.

BORN IN 1790; SUCCEEDED TO THE PRESIDENCY BY VIRTUE OF HIS  
OFFICE AS VICE-PRESIDENT, ON THE DEATH OF W H HARRISON  
IN 1841; SERVED THE REMAINDER OF THE TERM.



veteran  
ence.  
night o  
the mo  
three, I  
who ru  
rout of  
continu

Acco  
Texans,  
entire M  
General  
on the d

Nothi  
army un  
session o  
into effe  
republie  
establish  
recovery  
Mexican  
quences  
States ha

veteran troops, under the command of officers of skill and experience. Both armies, after a preliminary skirmish, encamped, on the night of the 20th, upon the right bank of the San Jacinto, just below the mouth of Buffalo bayou. The action commenced at half-past three, P. M., by a most impetuous attack on the part of the Texans, who rushed on, to the war-cry of 'Remember the Alamo!' The rout of the Mexicans was complete, and the pursuit of the fugitives continued until night-fall.\*

According to General Houston's official report, the loss of the Texans, in killed and wounded, was but twenty-five. Nearly the entire Mexican force was destroyed, or surrendered to the victors. Generals Santa Anna and Cos were both taken prisoners, the first on the day succeeding that of the battle, the other on the 25th.

Nothing further was attempted by the division of the Mexican army under Urea. The whole country was abandoned to the possession of the revolutionists, and the new constitution went quietly into effect. General Houston was elected first president of the republic. The constant increase of immigration, subsequent to the establishment of independence, rendered any attempt at a forcible recovery of the valuable province every year more hopeless; but the Mexican government yielded nothing of its claims, and the consequences of a recognition of Texan independence by the United States have been already narrated.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

## CHAPTER XIX.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES K. POLK.—ANNEXATION OF TEXAS.  
 —THE NORTH-WESTERN BOUNDARY.—DISCOVERY AND HIS-  
 TORY OF THE TERRITORY OF OREGON.—VOYAGE OF JUAN  
 DE FUCA: DISCOVERY OF THE COLUMBIA: TRADING  
 ESTABLISHMENTS: JOURNEY OF LEWIS AND CLARKE:  
 ASTORIA: DESTRUCTION OF THE TONQUIN: WAR  
 WITH GREAT BRITAIN: BOUNDARY TREATIES:  
 SETTLEMENT OF THE COUNTRY.

In the month of March, 1845, James K. Polk, of Tennessee, succeeded to the presidency, George M. Dallas being vice-president. At the congressional session, commencing December 1st, 1845, various acts were passed, the influence of which upon the future destinies of the country is incalculable. Among the first of these, was the final joint resolution, by virtue of which Texas became one of the United States, and the burden of maintaining her independence was assumed by the confederacy. Hostilities with Mexico followed, connected with which, are most matters of interest occurring throughout this administration. An account of all the material events of the war has been already given, under the title of Mexico.

In the summer of 1846, the vexed question respecting conflicting claims of the United States and Great Britain to jurisdiction in the territory of Oregon was finally set at rest. The forty-ninth parallel was fixed as our northern boundary, extending westward to the channel between Vancouver's island and the main, thence through the straits of Fuca to the Pacific. Free navigation of the channel and straits, and of the north branch of the Columbia to the ocean, was secured to subjects or citizens of either nation.

A brief account of the discovery, settlement, and previous history of this extensive and valuable territory, in the present connection, may not appear unprofitable or out of place.

In early times it was commonly supposed that a free communication existed between the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, in latitude no farther north than the northern limits of the territory of Oregon. Vague reports, corroborative of this theory, were given by adventurous mariners, whom chance or the desire of exploration threw

upon  
narrat  
under  
voyag

Fiv  
from  
the co  
he sai  
set on  
sessio  
contin

The  
and av  
cecution  
cessful  
which  
The se  
author

"He  
the So  
and the  
nified t  
before  
and tha  
with a  
of latit  
days, a  
north-ea  
much b  
by dive  
said str  
or island  
pillar, t

"Also  
saw som  
very fru  
Nova Sp  
"And  
strait, a  
sea wide

upon the north-western coast. The most remarkable of these early narratives is that of Juan de Fuca, a Cephalonian pilot, who sailed under a commission from the governor of Mexico, upon a northern voyage of discovery, in 1592.

Five years previous, this celebrated navigator, while on a voyage from Manilla to the Spanish provinces in America, was captured near the coast, by the bucaniers under Cavendish. The vessel in which he sailed was fired, but not entirely destroyed, and the crew were set on shore upon the peninsula of Old California. Regaining possession of their abandoned craft, they managed to refit her and to continue their voyage, with the loss of all their effects.

The Mexican governor took Juan de Fuca under his patronage, and availed himself of his experience in nautical affairs, in the prosecution of exploration at the north. The first voyage was unsuccessful, nothing being seen of the reported "straits of Anian," through which it was believed a passage might be effected to the Atlantic. The second expedition is chronicled as follows by Purchas, upon the authority of Michael Lock the elder:

"He followed his course, in that voyage, west and north-west in the *South Sea*, all along the coast of *Nova Spania*, and *California*, and the *Indies*, now called *North America*, (all which voyage he signified to me in a great map, and a sea-card of my own, which I laid before him,) until he came to the latitude of forty-seven degrees; and that there, finding that the land trended north and north-east, with a broad inlet of sea between forty-seven and forty-eight degrees of latitude, he entered thereinto, sailing therein more than twenty days, and found that land trending still sometimes north-west, and north-east, and north, and also east and south-eastward, and very much broader sea than was at the said entrance, and that he passed by divers islands in that sailing; and that, at the entrance of this said strait, there is, on the north-west coast thereof, a great head-land or island, with an exceeding high pinnacle, or spired rock, like a pillar, thereupon.

"Also he said that he went on land in divers places, and that he saw some people on land, clad in beast's skins; and that the land is very fruitful, and rich of gold, silver, pearls, and other things, like *Nova Spania*.

"And also he said that he, being entered thus far into the said strait, and being come into the North Sea already, and finding the sea wide enough every where, and to be about thirty or forty leagues

wide in the mouth of the straits where he entered, he thought he had now well discharged his office; and that, not being armed to resist the force of the savage people that might happen, he therefore set sail, and returned homewards again towards *Nova Spania*, where he arrived at *Acapulco*, Anno 1592, hoping to be rewarded by the viceroy for his service done in the said voyage."\*

The true name of this navigator is said to have been *Apostolos Valerianos*, but the inlet, of which, if not the discoverer, he was the first authentic explorer, has ever since borne his more popular appellation. The straits of *Juan de Fuca* were not again entered or noticed for nearly two centuries from the time of the Greek pilot. In 1787, the account above given, which had been long discredited, was in part corroborated, and its errors were pointed out, by the report of Captain *Berkeley*, an Englishman, commanding a vessel in the service of the Austrian East India Company.

Twelve years before this period, August 15, 1775, *Bruno Heeceta*, commander of an exploring expedition fitted out from *San Blas*, discovered the mouth of the *Columbia* river; but he failed to notice the entrance of the straits. Captain *Cook*, during his last voyage, in the year 1778, just previous to his second and fatal visit to the *Sandwich Islands*, made an unsuccessful examination of the coast, in search after the reported inlet.

Within a few years from this time a valuable traffic in furs, to be used in the *China* trade, was opened with the natives of the north-west coast. Two vessels, the *Felice* and the *Iphigenia*, sailed upon this enterprise from *Macao* in 1788, under Portuguese colours, but subject to the general management of *John Meares*, a British lieutenant. Before the departure of these vessels from the coast, the *Columbia* and *Washington*, fitted out at *Boston*, in the United States, upon similar service, entered *Nootka* sound. In 1792, the first of these, under command of Captain *Gray*, passed up the river discovered by *Heeceta*. It has ever since borne the name of the vessel, and to *Gray* must be ascribed the honour of being the first to prove its existence, as this was only conjectured by the first discoverer, from the strong current setting out of the bay.

Conflicting claims respecting exclusive rights upon the north-west coast, by virtue of discovery and occupation, were long maintained by different European powers; and after the cession by *Spain* to the United States of the immense territory then called *Louisiana*, the

\* *Greenhow's History of Oregon and California.*

ought he  
ned to re-  
therefore  
ia, where  
d by the

Apostolos  
e was the  
pular ap-  
ntered or  
eek pilot.  
eredited,  
y the re-  
essel in

o Heeceta,  
Blas, dis-  
to notice  
voyage,  
it to the  
e coast, in

ars, to be  
e north-  
ed upon  
ours, but  
tish lieu-  
coast, the  
ed States,  
e first of  
scovered  
l, and to  
ve its ex-  
from the

orth-west  
aintained  
in to the  
iana, the



*JAMES K. POLK.*

ELEVENTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.  
BORN IN 1795 . PRESIDENT IN 1845 : SERVED 4 YEARS : DIED JUNE 15, 1849

latter part  
Britain  
thirty  
was de  
overlan

The  
up the  
the riv  
port fro  
their w  
the Mis  
to buil  
the Jeff  
course  
and on

Passi

some b  
After e  
the mo  
their jo  
early in  
its retur  
publishe  
and mar

Great

long-exp  
formatio  
the Paci  
formed  
1810, an  
settleme  
lumbia,  
taking, a  
the first  
Fuea, wa  
perished  
captivity  
intelliger

The w  
out at th

latter power became involved in a similar controversy with Great Britain. During the year subsequent to this event, 1804, a party of thirty or forty men, under command of Captains Lewis and Clarke, was despatched by the United States' government upon a journey of overland exploration from the Mississippi to the Pacific.

The adventurers passed the winter near the Mandan villages, far up the Missouri, and in the spring of 1805 pursued their voyage up the river in canoes and "periogues." Deriving their principal support from the game brought in by their hunters, they slowly worked their way against the current, and passed the great falls or rapids of the Missouri in the month of July. At this point they were obliged to build light canoes in which to continue their voyage. Entering the Jefferson fork, about the close of the month, they kept on their course until the river, no longer navigable, had dwindled to a brook, and on the 12th of August its utmost source was discovered.

Passing the dividing ridge, the advanced party reached "a handsome bold creek of clear cold water, running to the westward." After enduring the utmost hardships in the dangerous passage of the mountains, the travellers struck the Kookscooskee, and resumed their journey by water. They reached the mouth of the Columbia early in November. Nothing was heard from the expedition until its return to St. Louis on the 23d of September, 1806. The account published by the leaders of the expedition is replete with interest, and marked by an agreeable simplicity of style.

Great interest was excited throughout the United States by the long-expected report, and plans were soon after set on foot for the formation of a permanent establishment, for trading purposes, upon the Pacific coast. A company, styled the Pacific Fur Company, was formed under the auspices of John Jacob Astor, of New York, in 1810, and vessels were at once fitted out upon the enterprise. The settlement of Astoria at Point George, on the south bank of the Columbia, was commenced during the summer of 1811. This undertaking, at first prosperous, resulted in misfortune. The Tonquin, the first vessel sent out, while engaged in trade near the straits of Fuca, was plundered by the Indians, and blown up. All on board perished, with the exception of an Indian interpreter, who, after a captivity of two years, made his way to Astoria, and gave the first intelligence of the disaster.

The war between Great Britain and the United States breaking out at this period, the resident partners of the American Company



effected a sale of the whole establishment and stores to the British North-west Company. The occupants under this transfer continued to carry on the trade in furs after the reestablishment of the authority of the United States over that portion of the north-west territory.

"By the treaty of 1818, the territories west of the Rocky mountains, claimed by the United States or Great Britain, were to be jointly occupied by citizens of either country, for a period of ten years. Upon the expiration of this term (in 1828), the arrangement was renewed, and indefinitely extended; one year's notice to be given by either government prior to any future assertion of sole sovereignty.

"As the attention of the United States became aroused by the progress of emigration to Oregon, the necessity for some definitive settlement of the boundary question began to be universally felt. Subsequent to the explorations and surveys under Colonel Fremont, elsewhere narrated, great numbers of settlers, during the summers of 1843 and 1844, pursued the overland route, and settled in the Willamet valley. The number of American emigrants in Oregon at the close of the latter year, is computed at more than three thousand, and great sympathy was felt for them throughout the Union, in consideration of the hardships they had endured, and the uncertainty of their position while the right of jurisdiction over the country remained unsettled."\*

After the final settlement of the boundary question, in 1846, as before mentioned, emigration received a new impetus. Although lying in a high latitude, the climate of the territory of Oregon is by no means severe. Owing to its situation upon the western shore of a large continent, like the countries of western Europe, it is subject to no such extremes of temperature as those felt in the New England states. The soil is extremely fertile, and the surface of the country is beautifully diversified with mountains, plains, hills, and streams. The population, as exhibited in the census returns of 1850, numbered thirteen thousand three hundred and twenty-three.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

ALTER  
FARI  
IN.  
FO

A LI  
of 184  
respect  
alterati  
the pro  
Upon  
Californ  
the Un  
The ex  
the Sac  
this pe  
took a  
acquisit  
serted;  
lying in  
exorbita  
hurried  
and sick  
An u  
of two y  
ages an  
an impo  
more lik  
Throu  
the Cali  
portance  
The pen  
sailing u

## CHAPTER XX.

ALTERATION IN THE TARIFF.—ACQUISITION OF CALIFORNIA:  
EARLY HISTORY OF THAT PROVINCE: THE JESUIT MISSIONS  
IN THE PENINSULA: THE DOMINICANS.—UPPER CALI-  
FORNIA: THE FRANCISCAN MISSIONARY ESTABLISH-  
MENT: THE MEXICAN REVOLUTION: ATTEMPTS  
AT COLONIZATION.

A LITTLE before the close of the session of congress, in the summer of 1846, the views of the political party then in the ascendancy, respecting duties on importations, were carried out by revision and alteration of the tariff of 1842. Material reduction was made in the protective duties established by the former bill.

Upon the conclusion of peace with Mexico, the acquisition of California gave a new direction to speculative enterprise throughout the Union—especially at the extreme west and upon the sea-board. The existence of a gold deposit in the bed of the American fork of the Sacramento, was first discovered in the spring of 1848. "From this period every thing connected with the California settlements took a new aspect. The villages which had sprung up since the acquisition of the country by the United States, were mostly deserted; the crops were left ungathered; the crews of the vessels lying in port deserted; labour could be procured only at the most exorbitant prices; in short, nearly the whole male population had hurried to the mines, and, regardless of hardship, fatigue, exposure, and sickness, were engaged in the all-absorbing pursuit of gold."

An unexampled increase of population, within the short period of two years, converted a wilderness, uninhabited save by roving savages and the occupants of a few small towns or trading-posts, into an important and prosperous state. The history of its settlement is more like a tale of romance than a record of realities.

Throughout the continuance of Spanish or Mexican dominion over the Californias, those provinces were looked upon as of little importance, and chiefly interesting as a field for missionary enterprise. The peninsula of Old California was discovered, in 1534, by Grijalva, sailing upon a voyage of discovery under commission from Cortez.

The gulf which separates it from the main was soon after explored, and at different times unsuccessful attempts were made to plant colonies at several locations. The peninsula was barren and mountainous, and nothing was imagined of the undeveloped wealth and resources of the country farther north.

In California, as in many other portions of America, the pioneers of settlement and civilization were the fraternity of Jesuits. These indefatigable propagandists of the faith commenced operations upon either shore of the Gulf of California, towards the close of the seventeenth century. Upon the main, a settlement was founded by the learned and zealous Father Kühn—before his departure for America a professor of mathematics at Ingoldstadt. Father Salvatierra, also a member of the order, at the same time established the missionary station of Loreto at the bay of San Dionisio, upon the peninsula. He took with him six soldiers as a slight protection against attack on the part of the natives.

The Indians had little reason to look with favour upon any further encroachment upon their territory. For a long period the coast had seldom been visited, except by those engaged in the pearl fishery, in the pursuit of which occupation it had been the common custom to compel the service of the natives, great numbers of whom had perished in this dangerous avocation. Salvatierra and his associates in the missionary work made great and finally successful exertions to procure from the home government the enactment of laws for the protection of their adopted people from this species of slavery.

At San Dionisio a chapel was erected to "Our Lady of Loreto," and the good father made use of all means in his power to excite the interest, arouse the curiosity, and conciliate the good-will of his anticipated proselytes. He met at first with very unfavourable returns: the Indians, after plundering him of his horse and goats, finally collected in force, and attempted the destruction of the establishment. They were driven off by the fire-arms of the soldiers.

The efforts of Salvatierra and Kühn were worthily seconded by Fathers Ugarte and Francisco Piecolo. The latter, in the autumn of 1699, two years from the formation of the first Jesuit settlement, founded the mission of San Xavier, on the Pacific coast. From this station, as well as that at San Dionisio, the missionaries extended their operations among the natives by making long journeys on horseback throughout a great extent of the peninsula, acquainting themselves with the resources and geography of the country, preach-

explored,  
ant col-  
ountain-  
th and

oioneers  
These  
ns upon  
he sev-  
by the  
America  
ra, also  
sionary  
ninsula.  
attack

further  
ast had  
ery, in  
tom to  
ad per-  
ates in  
ions to  
for the  
y.

oreto,"  
cite the  
his an-  
eturns:  
lly col-  
hment.

led by  
umn of  
ement,  
on this  
tended  
eys on  
ainting  
oreach-



VIEW OF SAN FRANCISCO.

ing to t  
means t

Ugar  
with th  
south-w  
stimulat  
aid him  
was of a  
most to  
ation of  
unconqu  
at his re  
upon th  
quelled

"This  
to a care  
of the so  
brought  
the wool  
continue  
and restr  
general t  
sions, ga  
the inter

The di  
increased  
them fro  
employ  
how, "th  
most ind  
were all  
be procur  
being dra  
indolent a  
shore, in s  
for the su

The gra  
picion wi  
to persecu

V

ing to the Indians in their own language, and endeavouring by every means to gain their confidence and good-will.

Ugarte came over from Mexico in 1701. "He took up his abode with the Indians, without a single companion, among the mountains south-west of Loreto, and, by the force of example and rewards, stimulated his wild associates to shake off their natural sloth, and aid him in erecting dwellings and a chapel for public worship. He was of a robust frame and hardy constitution, and was always foremost to undertake the labour and drudgery attendant upon the formation of the settlement. His greatest trouble, at first, was from an unconquerable tendency on the part of his auditors to jeer and laugh at his religious exercises, but the infliction of summary chastisement upon the strongest and most contumacious among them, speedily quelled their levity.

"This excellent and energetic ecclesiastic did not confine himself to a care for the souls of his flock; he taught them the cultivation of the soil; he introduced the domestic animals of Europe; and even brought over a weaver to teach the arts of spinning and manufacturing the wool obtained from his sheep. Slowly but steadily the missions continued to prosper; the fickle-minded aborigines were subdued and restrained by force or kindness as occasion required; and the general tenor of the lives of those engaged in the work of the missions, gave evidence that their motives were pure, and that they had the interests of their proselytes at heart."\*

The difficulties encountered by these pioneers of civilization were increased by the conduct of too many of those who accompanied them from Mexico, or who afterwards came over to engage in secular employment at the stations. "The land was so barren," says Greenhow, "that it scarcely yielded the means of sustaining life to the most industrious agriculturalist, for which reason the settlements were all located near the sea, in order that the necessary food might be procured by fishing; and the persons employed in their service, being drawn from the most miserable classes in Mexico, were always indolent and insubordinate, and generally preferred loitering on the shore, in search of pearls, to engaging in the regular labours required for the support of settlers in a new region."

The grand order of the Jesuits having gradually fallen into suspicion with the great powers of Europe, its members were subjected to persecution and banishment in the territories, successively, of

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

Portugal, France, and Spain. In the year 1767, they were expelled from California, and the country becoming a Mexican province, the missionaries were superseded by Franciscans, and the civil authority of Mexico was extended over the settlements. The missionary stations on the peninsula were, at this time, sixteen in number. Dominican friars took the place of the Jesuits, and, pursuing a far different policy towards the natives from that carried out by their predecessors, soon destroyed the confidence of the inhabitants, and frustrated the plans for their improvement, before so promising. The Indians of Old California are, at the present day, few in number, and still in the condition of the savage.

Turning their attention from the barren mountains of the peninsula to the extensive and fertile region of Upper or New California, the Franciscans, with the aid and countenance of the Marquis de Croix, viceroy of Mexico, founded a settlement at San Diego, in 1769. From this station, a party was shortly after sent to explore and take formal possession of the country further north. They proceeded by land as far as the harbour of San Francisco, upon which they bestowed its present appellation, and returned to make report at San Diego, in January of the following year.

This exploring party had been specially commissioned to establish a settlement upon the bay of Monterey, but upon the journey they failed to recognise that locality from its description by early voyagers. A few months subsequent to their return, the service was accomplished by another expedition, under direction of Father Junipero Serra. A portion of the adventurers proceeded by sea, the voyage—from San Diego to Monterey—occupying no less than forty-six days; another party made the journey in a less space of time, by land, and were found by the voyagers, engaged in building and other preparations for a settlement. "On the 31st of May," says Serra, "by the favour of God, after rather a painful voyage of a month and a half, the packet San Antonio, commanded by Don Juan Perez, arrived and anchored in this horrible port of Monterey, which is unaltered in any degree from what it was when visited by the expedition of Don Sebastian Viscaïno, in the year 1603."

The missions in Upper California received special patronage from the Spanish crown, and a large fund was raised for their support, in Mexico, by voluntary contributions of the pious. Many valuable legacies were also funded for this purpose, and the temporal affairs of the enterprise were, for a series of years, in a prosperous condi-

tion  
means  
The  
throug  
Diego  
ence a  
or civ  
to the  
tion o  
ians.

with t  
suprem  
introd

The  
during  
contin  
the mi  
time t  
defend  
large  
after a  
in oce  
Spanis  
been w  
afforde

Upo  
period  
Califor  
ent off  
the pri  
of the  
the mar  
savage  
time, to  
church  
monop  
depend

A m  
therane  
mission

tion. The spiritual progress of the Indians was, however, by no means in conformity with the great apparent success of the missions. The influence and authority of the ecclesiastics was established throughout the line of coast—their head-quarters being at San Diego, Monterey, San Francisco, and San Gabriel—but their influence appears to have availed little towards the actual improvement or civilization of the natives. The church acquired extensive titles to the more valuable lands, and, instead of favouring the immigration of whites, threw obstacles in the way of colonization by civilians. The clergy, content with a nominal or outward compliance with the forms of their church, preferred to retain their undivided supremacy over the natives, and feared the consequence of the introduction of free settlers.

They did not attain this commanding position without first enduring great hardships and suffering, and exposing themselves to continual personal danger. Their property, in the early days of the missions, was pilfered by the natives on every occasion, and, from time to time, they were forced to resort to the "secular arm" in defending their lives against hostile attacks. Upon one occasion, a large body of Indians fell upon the settlement at San Diego, and, after a hard struggle, were driven off by the handful of whites there in occupation. They shortly after sued for peace, and begged the Spanish surgeon to visit and assist those of their number who had been wounded in the conflict. This aid was cheerfully and readily afforded.

Upon the general overthrow of the old order of things, at the period of the Mexican revolution, the privileges and powers of the Californian hierarchy were curtailed, and its resources in Mexico cut off by sequestration of the sums appropriated for the salaries of the priesthood. Measures were also taken to effect an emancipation of the natives, but so completely incompetent did they appear to the management of property, and so much disposed to return to the savage life of their forefathers, that it was judged expedient, for the time, to allow matters to continue much in their old position. The church in California was, at this period, so amply endowed by monopolies, and the acquisition of real estate, that it was no longer dependent upon supplies from abroad.

A movement was afterwards set on foot in Mexico, for the furtherance of colonization in California by the entire removal of the missionaries, and a sequestration of their lands and effects. A law



was actually passed for this purpose, in the Mexican congress, and great numbers of emigrants, allured by the favourable offers of government, were soon *en route* for the land of promise. All their expectations failed upon the attainment of Santa Anna to political supremacy. His regard for the interests of the church, or his policy of securing the favour of so powerful a portion of the community, induced him to take immediate steps for the protection of the property and privileges of the Californian priesthood, and, in consequence, to check the progress of immigration.

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

EXPLORATION OF NEW CALIFORNIA: COLONEL FREMONT'S SURVEY OF THE SOUTH PASS: OVERLAND EXPEDITION OF 1843-4: THE GREAT SALT LAKE: RETURN ROUTE: TERRIBLE PASSAGE OF THE SIERRA NEVADA: CAPTAIN SUTTER'S SETTLEMENT: SUBSEQUENT EXPEDITIONS OF FREMONT.  
—THE GOLD DISCOVERIES IN CALIFORNIA.

THE adventurous expedition of Lewis and Clarke first gave to the world any satisfactory account of the character of the wilderness intervening between the western settlements of the United States and the Pacific sea-board. Before the accomplishment of their remarkable journey, all that was known of that territory was gathered from the Indians, and from the white traders, or trappers, who had penetrated the country in different directions, and at different times.

A long interval elapsed between this first achievement and the undertaking of any systematic survey of a practicable route for emigrants. In 1842, the services of the Hon. John Charles Fremont, who was at that time commissioned as a lieutenant in the United States' corps of topographical engineers, were called into requisition for this purpose. He had been previously engaged in the prosecution of surveys in the north-western territory, and his instructions, at the time of which we are now speaking, were to make an examination of the country, and to report upon an advisable route from the frontier settlements of Missouri to the Great South Pass—then

gress, and  
of govern-  
r expecta-  
upremacy.  
f securing  
duced him  
and priv-  
to check

FREMONT'S  
ION OF  
RRIBLE  
TER'S  
ONT.

ave to the  
wilderness  
States and  
remarka-  
ered from  
and pene-  
mes.  
e and the  
e for emi-  
Fremont,  
e United  
quisition  
prosecu-  
ructions,  
an exam-  
ute from  
ss—then



SPERLAND EMIGRATION.

cons  
thro  
W  
Creo  
fami  
wide  
a po  
10th  
mule  
ment  
all m  
Th  
Platte  
ersed  
the p  
moun  
ure.  
and e  
By ac  
impor  
geolog  
vey of  
broug  
the pr  
embar  
of the  
The  
as befo  
an acc  
had be  
in Oreg  
the resu  
ploration  
sioned b  
The C  
from Mi  
might b  
able obs  
this serv  
shared w

considered the most practicable, if not the only available passage through the Rocky mountains.

With a company of twenty-five men, principally Canadian or Creole *voyageurs*, under the guidance of Christopher Carson—then familiarly and extensively known at the west, and now of world-wide celebrity, as “Kit Carson”—Fremont took his departure from a post a few miles above the mouth of the Kansas river, on the 10th of June. The party was provided with eight carts, drawn by mules, for the transportation of camp-equipage, surveying instruments, &c., and four oxen were taken for provision. The men were all mounted, and well provided with arms.

The line of march lay north-westerly from the Kansas to the Platte, a distance exceeding three hundred miles, which was traversed in sixteen days. Following the course of the South Fork, the party reached Fort St. Vrain, at the eastern foot of the Rocky mountains, on the 10th of July, one month from the day of departure. They arrived at the South Pass near the middle of August, and entered at once upon the principal business of the expedition. By accurate astronomical observations, the true position of this important passage was laid down; scientific investigations of the geological formation of the country were made; and a correct survey of the whole locality was carefully prepared. The information brought back by the expedition, and widely disseminated through the press, by act of congress, was of inestimable value to those embarking upon the adventure of overland emigration to the shores of the Pacific.

The exploring expedition, under Commander Wilkes, returned, as before mentioned, in the month of June (1842). In addition to an accurate survey of the north-western coast, expeditions inland had been undertaken by those connected with the enterprise, both in Oregon and California; and it was considered desirable to connect the results of these observations with those established by the exploration of the South Pass. Colonel Fremont was again commissioned by government as commander of the expedition proposed.

The Great South Pass lies immediately in the direct line of travel from Missouri to the Columbia river; but it was hoped that a route might be opened further south, which would present less formidable obstacles as a general thoroughfare. The party collected for this service consisted, in all, of forty men, numbers of whom had shared with Fremont the fatigues and hardships of the preceding

year. They set out upon their perilous journey on the 29th of May, 1843.

"A detour through the mountains brought them upon the waters of the Bear river, which they followed to its debouchement into the Great Salt Lake. In a frail boat of inflated India-rubber cloth, a partial survey was effected of this remarkable phenomenon of nature, concerning which the only knowledge before obtained had been from the wild reports of the Indians, and hunters who had occasionally visited it. Little did the adventurous explorers dream of the change that a few years would bring about upon those remote and desolate shores. The party left their camp by the lake on the 12th of September, and, proceeding northward, reached the plains of the Columbia on the 18th, 'in sight of the famous Three Buttes, a well-known land-mark in the country, distant about forty-five miles.'

"In the month of November, having reached Fort Vancouver, and fully accomplished the duties assigned him, Colonel Fremont set out on his return by a new and dangerous route. Nothing but a perusal of the journal of the expedition can convey an adequate idea of the dangers and difficulties attendant upon the remainder of this enterprise, in which the complete circuit was made of that immense and unexplored basin lying between the Sierra Nevada and the Wahsatch, or Bear river range of the Rocky mountains; a region thus laid down in Fremont's chart: 'The Great Basin: diameter 11° of latitude: elevation above the sea, between four and five thousand feet: surrounded by lofty mountains: contents almost unknown, but believed to be filled with rivers and lakes which have no communication with the sea, deserts and oases which have never been explored, and savage tribes which no traveller has seen or described.'"

'This journey of more than three thousand miles, through a wilderness inhabited only by roving Indians, and in the face of the most appalling natural obstacles, called forth the exercise of heroism, fortitude, and bodily endurance, of which few men would be found capable. The passage of the Sierra Nevada, which occupied several weeks at the close of the winter and in the early spring, was the most dangerous and trying achievement of this unparalleled march. In the midst of snow and ice, pushing their way by an unknown route through stupendous mountains, in uncertainty as to the fortunes of each succeeding day, and suffering the extremes of destitution and exposure, the hardy adventurers pressed forward with

e 29th of

the waters  
at into the  
er cloth, a  
of nature,  
had been  
had occa-  
dream of  
ese remote  
ake on the  
the plains  
ree Buttes,  
five miles.  
ancouver,  
l Fremont  
othing but  
adequate  
remainder  
ade of that  
ra Nevada  
ountains; a  
sin: diam-  
r and five  
nts almost  
kes which  
hich have  
er has seen

h a wilder-  
f the most  
f heroism,  
d be found  
ied several  
g, was the  
led march.  
n unknown  
to the for-  
es of desti-  
ward with

PASS OF THE SIERRA NEVADA



invi  
hors  
redu  
any  
ther

W  
follo  
sour  
regio  
aber  
of th  
ing v  
in th  
bega  
gone  
had

from  
and  
there

On  
settle  
with  
positi  
Sutte  
Amer  
party

"C  
of Mis  
on a l  
ernme  
the oc  
conver  
ditch  
dried  
rowing  
these 1

—prim  
At t

invincible courage and resolution. The flesh of their mules and horses was their only resort for subsistence, and these animals were reduced to a miserable condition from the impossibility of procuring any other food than a little dried and frost-bitten herbage, here and there exposed.

When they had at last successfully passed the mountain range, and, following the course of the Rio de los Americanos, from its southern sources toward the Sacramento, had reached a more hospitable region, it was found that two of the party were labouring under an aberration of mind, from the effects of anxiety and hardship. "One of them, Derosier, who had stayed behind for the purpose of bringing up a favourite horse of Colonel Fremont, on rejoining the party, in the words of the narrative, 'came in, and sitting down by the fire, began to tell us where he had been. He imagined he had been gone several days, and thought we were still at the camp where he had left us; and we were pained to see that his mind was deranged.

\* \* Times were severe when stout men lost their minds from extremity of suffering—when horses died—and when mules and horses, ready to die of starvation, were killed for food. Yet there was no murmuring or hesitation.'"

On the 6th of March, the advance party arrived at the Indian settlements, a few miles from the confluence of the American fork with the Sacramento, and had the satisfaction of learning their position from an Indian cow-herd in the employment of Captain Sutter. At the establishment of this enterprising pioneer of the American Californian settlements—known as Sutter's fort—the party was hospitably received and entertained.

"Captain Sutter emigrated to this country from the western part of Missouri, in 1838-9, and formed the first settlement in the valley, on a large grant of land which he obtained from the Mexican government. He had, at first, some trouble with the Indians; but, by the occasional exercise of well-timed authority, he has succeeded in converting them into a peaceable and industrious people. The ditches around his extensive wheat-fields; the making of the sun-dried bricks, of which his fort is constructed; the ploughing, harrowing, and other agricultural operations, are entirely the work of these Indians, for which they receive a very moderate compensation—principally in shirts, blankets, and other articles of clothing."\*

At the fort, was a garrison of forty Indians; and about thirty white

\* Fremont's Narrative.



men, of various trades and occupations, were in Sutter's employment. Immense fields of grain, numerous work-shops, and vessels lying in the river, attested the wealth and enterprise of the proprietor.

Fremont and his company took their departure from this vicinity on the 24th of March, and reached the village of Kansas, on the Missouri, on the 31st of July, 1844.

Upon his second overland expedition to the Pacific, undertaken in 1845, while engaged, in accordance with his instructions, in scientific exploration, Colonel Fremont received intelligence of the existence of war between Mexico and the United States. He immediately enlisted a mounted force, and, commencing active military operations, met with distinguished success. The difficulties in which he became involved, in consequence of conflicting claims of his superiors, have been before alluded to.

At a still later period, his restless spirit of *entéprise* induced him to undertake a private adventure for the discovery of a southern and more direct land-route to California. For this purpose, he collected a company of about thirty men, and, provided with more than one hundred mules, commenced his journey westward. The inclemency of the season proved disastrous. Upon the Sierra San Juan, being overtaken by snow-storms and severe weather, the party lost their entire stock of mules, and many of their number perished from cold and starvation before their indomitable leader could procure them aid and sustenance. He proceeded on foot to Santa Fe, where he met with ready assistance. With renewed outfit, he perseveringly accomplished the purpose of the expedition, and made his way, by the southern route, to the Californian settlements.

Almost simultaneously with the cession of California to the United States, by virtue of the treaty concluded at Guadalupe Hidalgo, occurred the astonishing developments of unexpected mineral wealth in the new territory. "That these treasures should have remained so long concealed from the occupants of the territory seems unaccountable, when we consider the proverbial keenness of the Spaniard in the search for native gold, and the experience acquired by centuries of practical operations in the mines of Mexico and Peru. The fact only proves how completely the country was neglected by the more enterprising and efficient portion of the community.

"The first discovery of gold in California, in sufficient quantity to excite public attention, was made in the spring of 1848, by Mr. James Marshall, who had been employed by Captain John A. Sut-

oyment.  
lying in  
or.  
vicinity  
, on the

ertaken  
s, in sci-  
e of the  
e imme-  
military  
n which  
s of his

ced him  
outhern  
he col-  
ore than  
e incre-  
n Juan,  
irty lost  
ed from  
procure  
, where  
ersever-  
is way,

United  
idalgo,  
wealth  
ained  
s unac-  
paniard  
by cen-  
. The  
by the

quantity  
by Mr.  
A. Sut-



GOLD-DIGGINGS IN CALIFORNIA.

ter  
Am  
ing  
mile  
“  
prog  
gove  
Aug  
‘As  
beca  
five  
abov  
occu  
“  
in Se  
place  
a dan  
whee  
with  
direct  
and d  
grave  
was w  
glitter  
them,  
told C  
secret  
got ou  
“R  
and, in  
time o  
discov  
were e  
In th  
and the  
vance i  
first int  
the stat  
thither  
could re

ter to erect a saw-mill upon the south branch of the Rio de los Americanos, or American fork, a tributary of the Sacramento, flowing from the eastward. The location of the mill was about fifty miles from New Helvetia, or Sutter's fort.

"One of the earliest authentic reports of the commencement and progress of the mining enterprise, is a letter of Colonel R. B. Mason, governor of California, to the adjutant-general, at Washington, dated August, 1848. In describing his first visit to the diggings, he says: 'As we ascended the south branch of the American fork, the country became more broken and mountainous, and at the saw-mills, twenty-five miles below Sutter's, the hills rise to about a thousand feet above the level of the Sacramento plain. Here a species of pine occurs, which led to the discovery of the gold.

"Captain Sutter, feeling the great want of lumber, contracted, in September last, with a Mr. Marshall, to build a saw-mill at that place. It was erected in the course of the last winter and spring—a dam and race constructed; but when the water was let on the wheel, the tail-race was found too narrow to allow the water to escape with sufficient rapidity. Mr. Marshall, to save labour, let the water directly into the race with a strong current, so as to wash it wider and deeper. He effected his purpose, and a large bed of mud and gravel was carried to the foot of the race. One day, as Mr. Marshall was walking down the race to the deposit of mud, he observed some glittering particles at its upper edge; he gathered a few, examined them, and became satisfied of their value. He then went to the fort, told Captain Sutter of his discovery, and they agreed to keep it secret until a certain grist-mill of Sutter's was finished. It, however, got out, and spread like magic.

"Remarkable success attended the labours of the first explorers, and, in a few weeks, hundreds of men were drawn thither. At the time of my first visit, but little more than three months after its first discovery, it was estimated that upwards of four thousand people were employed."

In this exciting pursuit the utmost improvidence was exhibited, and the necessary consequence was a sudden and unprecedented advance in the prices of all articles of common necessity. Upon the first intelligence of the position of affairs in California, received in the states, speculators entered eagerly into the business of shipping thither supplies of clothing, provisions, &c. Before these stores could reach their place of destination, by the circuitous route of Cape

Horn, much real destitution was felt, and, although the yield of the washings was exceedingly rich, the chief profits of the mining operations were appropriated by those who were enabled to eate, at the most exorbitant and fabulous rates, for the physical wants of the labourers at the mines.

The cargoes which first arrived at San Francisco yielded enormous returns; but in some articles the market was speedily overstocked, and heavy losses were sustained by those whose adventures failed to correspond with the demand. One cause of great embarrassment to ship-owners was the impossibility of obtaining a crew for the return voyage. Previous contracts, forfeiture of wages already earned, and extravagant offers, generally failed to outweigh the strong temptation held out to the able-bodied labourers at the mines.

It is a most satisfactory reflection that other and far more important ends than the collection of gold will be accomplished by the settlement of California. The soil is, in many locations, exceedingly productive; and when, with the increasing population, labour shall have been applied to the development of the agricultural resources of the country, the new state will be entirely self-dependent. Not only as a producing country, but as a great commercial *dépot*, California bids fair to rival the most wealthy and prosperous of the United States. There can be but little doubt concerning the establishment, in the course of a few years, of a railroad line which shall directly unite the Atlantic and Pacific, traversing the whole breadth of the continent. With the accomplishment of this undertaking will commence a new era in commerce, and the wealth of eastern Asia will reach the civilized world by a new mode of transit. Already has a road been more than half completed, by which freight will be transported across the Isthmus, and the necessity for the long and hazardous voyage round the Cape, or the Horn, be obviated: at Tehuantepec facilities offer for a route still more direct; but when the great overland line, carried through in spite of all natural obstacles, shall once be fairly established, it must take the principal share of travel and transportation. When we consider the rapidity with which our western settlements have extended, with no facilities for the conveyance of produce to a market other than the natural advantages of navigable streams, we can scarcely be guilty of extravagance, in whatever terms we may speak of the future growth and development of the region to be traversed by the Atlantic and Pacific railroad.

The population of California, as given by the census of 1850, amounted, in round numbers, to two hundred and fourteen thousand; but so shifting was its character, and so constant the influx of emigration, that this estimate was scarcely more than conjectural, and a new census has been accordingly ordered.

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

THE MORMONS.—ADMINISTRATIONS OF ZACHARY TAYLOR AND MILLARD FILLMORE: ADMISSION OF CALIFORNIA INTO THE UNION: DEBATE UPON THE SLAVERY QUESTION: THE COMPROMISE: EXPEDITIONS OF NARCISSO LOPEZ.—STATISTICS.—FRANKLIN PIERCE PRESIDENT: JAPAN: THE NEBRASKA QUESTION.

THE year preceding the discovery of gold in California, a movement was set on foot for the establishment of a settlement upon the border of that region described by Fremont as the "Great Basin" of the west. The character of the expedition, the motives and expectations of those engaged in it, its visible effects, and probable future consequences, stand in strange and striking contrast to the peculiarly mercenary characteristics of Californian emigration and progress.

Driven by persecution from their settlement at Nauvoo, the Mormons, in 1846, established themselves temporarily in Iowa, and afterwards farther westward, upon the bank of the Missouri. Their object appeared to be the attainment of a situation so isolated as to allow of the free development of their peculiar system, and yet sufficiently productive to supply all the necessities of an independent community.

The present age has witnessed no religious or sectarian delusion of so gross a character, and yet so ably and enthusiastically supported. "Its late origin presents to the view all that is low and disgusting in bare-faced trickery and imposture; but its present position, attained and upheld by fanaticism and sensuality, two of the most effective agents which can render evil powerful and error contagious, has assumed a character in some sort respectable and undeniably for-

midable. Persecution has had its customary effect, in investing its victims with dignity, in arousing all their powers of resistance, and in awakening the sympathies of all averse to injustice.

"In other ages, this dangerous form of a religious mania would have had its legitimate manifestation in crusades against property, and in the foundation of a new state and church on the ruins of some weaker and less vigorous structure of superstition; at present, its more honourable and profitable mission is to afford a field of harmless action for uneasy spirits, and to build up a new nation in the remotest wilderness.

\* \* \* "It can hardly be doubted that the polygamy allowed by the new religion is, with a certain class of minds, a very powerful incentive for conversion to its tenets, and a strong prompter to fierceness and resolution in defending them. But this of itself is entirely unsatisfactory in explanation of that stern and eager enthusiasm which, beyond any of our times, has distinguished the present manifestation. Men who wish for several wives will do much to obtain them, and to keep them, but hardly what the Mormons have done and are doing. It is an article of faith not exactly suited to the production of heroes or of martyrs; and that the elements of such, in great numbers, may be found in the Mormon ranks, no man conversant with their history will deny. A spirit of deeper and more respectable error—the spirit of faith and fanaticism, almost invariably fierce, vehement, and enduring, in proportion to the folly and puerility of its creed—has been the main-spring of this extraordinary movement, and remains a problem, as insoluble as any of the same class which have preceded it."\*

The progress of the Mormons westward was delayed and embarrassed by a requisition—promptly and honourably complied with—for five hundred of their number, to serve in the Mexican war. After a winter of great destitution and suffering, occasioned by this withdrawal of the most efficient portion of their community, the exiles fitted out an advance party to explore the country and fix upon a location for the future settlement. By the route of the South Pass, these pioneers made their way across the mountains, and directed their course towards the valley of the Great Salt Lake. They reached their place of destination in the month of July, 1847. A settlement was immediately commenced, and the site of a capital was chosen.

\* Discoverers, &c., of America.

Before the setting in of winter, several thousands of the sect had emigrated to the valley. The lateness of their arrival, and the impracticability of transporting any considerable store of provisions across the wilderness, rendered the winter of 1847-8 a season of destitution little short of starvation; but nothing could abate the energy or damp the enthusiasm of this singular people. The work of building and agricultural preparation was unintermitted, and an abundant harvest, during the summer following, rewarded their exertions.

From their capital, on the lake, the Mormons have steadily pursued a system of colonization by fitting out expeditions for exploration and settlement. These are particularly extended towards the Pacific coast. According to the Report of Captain Stansbury: "It is the ultimate object of the Mormons, by means of stations, wherever the nature of the country will admit of their settling in numbers sufficient for self-defence, to establish a line of communication with the Pacific, so as to afford aid to their brethren coming from abroad, while on their pilgrimage to the land of promise. These stations will gradually become connected by farms and smaller settlements, wherever practicable, until the greater part of the way will exhibit one long line of cultivated fields, from the Mormon capital to San Diego."

The colony, self-incorporated in 1849 as the state of Deseret, now contains more than twenty thousand inhabitants; missionaries are successfully engaged in various parts of the world in procuring proselytes to the faith; and the community is constantly increasing in power and importance. Their president, Brigham Young, confirmed in authority as governor of the territory by the United States' government, is recognised by his people as invested with power nearly absolute, both spiritual and temporal; and, in the entire administration of civil affairs, the government is a perfect hierarchy. How far these extraordinary regulations may eventually clash with the authority of the federal government is, as yet, uncertain; but the disregard and indignity sustained by the territorial judges and secretary first commissioned by the executive of the United States, are ominous of future contumacy.

One noticeable effect of the war with Mexico, has been to bring forward a host of aspirants to political eminence, the prestige of whose military achievements has too often served to distract attention from their gross incompetency for the management of public affairs. This remark, happily, does not apply to many successful



candidates for popular favour, whose worth and abilities might have remained unappreciated, but for the *déclat* of their services in the war.

The influence of the national fondness for military renown, was brought to bear upon the presidential election of 1848. The candidates of the respective parties were Lewis Cass, of Michigan, and Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana. General Taylor, receiving the electoral majority, was inaugurated on the 5th of March ensuing. Millard Fillmore, of New York, was chosen vice-president.

At the congressional session of 1849-50, the application of California for admission to the Union, in connection with the necessity for organizing a territorial government in Utah and New Mexico, gave rise to the most violent and protracted debate. A proviso, previously introduced by Mr. Wilmot, of Pennsylvania, relative to the exclusion of slavery in the formation of new states, being insisted upon by members from the free states, the whole question was made a theme for angry and extravagant declamation. Several months passed without the accomplishment of any important legislation, the time of congress being taken up by stormy and unprofitable debate—too often by disgraceful personal controversies.

Early in May, a committee of northern and southern members, of which Mr. Clay was chairman, appointed to digest some scheme of mutual concession respecting the vexed question of slavery, and its application to the measures in contemplation, made report. In the compromise thus proposed, very little was conceded to the claims of the members from free states. During its discussion, and before final action upon either of its separate items, a change of administration took place. President Taylor died on the 9th of July, 1850, and was succeeded by the vice-president, Mr. Fillmore.

The compromise measures were separately discussed and adopted, substantially as reported by the committee. Before the close of September, the territories of New Mexico and Utah were organized without anti-slavery restrictions; California was admitted into the Union; the Texan boundary at the north-west was established; a bill was carried containing specific provisions for the recapture of fugitive slaves; and, in the District of Columbia, over which congress exercises exclusive jurisdiction, the slave-trade was formally abolished.

During the summer and autumn of 1851, great excitement was caused throughout the Union, particularly in the southern states, by the events connected with an attempt at the overthrow of Span-

ish power in Cuba. General Nareisso Lopez, one of the principal persons implicated in an unsuccessful revolutionary movement in the island, in 1848, upon the failure of that enterprise, escaped to this country, and engaged in the preparation of plans for an expedition, to proceed from the United States, and cooperate with the efforts of the disaffected party in Cuba.

That such an undertaking was on foot soon became generally known, and a proclamation was issued by the president, strongly condemning the illegal movement, and denouncing those engaged in it as liable to severe penalties under the existing laws of the country. The expedition, however, was favoured by a large party in the community, and Lopez, having enlisted and embarked a force of more than six hundred men, sailed for the coast of Yucatan. With the principal portion of his followers, he then proceeded, in the steamer *Creole*, to the port of Cardenas, on the north shore of Cuba, where a landing was effected on the 19th of July, 1850.

After some sharp skirmishing with the Spanish troops posted in that quarter, the invading party obtained complete possession of the town, and the general was fully expectant that the revolutionary party of Creoles would hasten to join his standard. It was, however, soon evident that they were unwilling to share in what appeared a desperate undertaking; and, as large forces from Havana and Matanzas might be momentarily expected upon the scene of action, a reembarkation was effected, and the invaders returned to the United States.

In no wise discouraged by the result of the first expedition, Lopez continued his correspondence with the revolutionists, and, gaining renewed confidence from their representations, again enlisted a small body of adventurers, mostly citizens of the United States, for the purpose of a second invasion.

On the night of August 11th, 1851, with about four hundred followers, he landed at Playitas, some sixty miles westward from Havana. Leaving one hundred and twenty men, under Colonel Crittenden, in charge of the baggage, Lopez marched his forces to Las Pozas, a distance of ten miles. At this place, they were attacked on the day following by a body of eight hundred Spanish troops. The assailants were repulsed with heavy loss, and, on the succeeding day, about forty of Crittenden's party effected a junction with the main body. Most of the others were taken prisoners, and shot.

Victorious against enormous odds in a second battle, but failing

to receive accessions to their force from among the Creoles, Lopez and his followers were soon broken down by fatigue, exposure, and famine. The general voluntarily surrendered himself to the enemy. He could scarce hope for mercy from a government, for the overthrow of which he had so long devoted his whole energies. He was executed on the 1st of September, by the infamous *garotte*—meeting his fate with calmness and dignity, and exclaiming, with his latest breath, "I die for my beloved Cuba!"

No further imminent danger being apprehended, and a sufficient example having been already made by the summary vengeance taken upon the leader and the men of Crittenden's detachment, the other prisoners were leniently dealt with. They received a pardon from the Spanish government, after a short imprisonment.

The Captain-General of Cuba, at this period, was Don José de la Concha; a man who, although of a stern and unyielding disposition, enjoys a far higher reputation for integrity than most of those who have held a similar position in the island. His recent restoration to office, in place of Pezuela, has caused much apparent enthusiasm among the inhabitants.

The few years that have elapsed since the close of the Mexican war, have witnessed a vast change in the aspect and resources of the United States and their territory. A frequent and regular communication with the Old World has been established by lines of ocean steamers, and the tide of immigration pours in unceasingly. The population of the eastern states, notwithstanding the constant and enormous drain occasioned by the opening of a new field for enterprise and exertion at the far west, is steadily on the increase. The influx of gold from California and Australia has added greatly to the nominal value of every species of property, and has given facilities, unfortunately too extensive, for speculations and extravagant undertakings.

The number of states, by the admission of California, was increased to thirty-one. Arkansas became a state in 1835; Michigan, the twenty-sixth, in 1837; Florida, Iowa, and Wisconsin, in 1845, '6, and '7, consecutively. The total population of the United States and territories, judging from the mean ratio of increase for the past sixty years, must, at the present time, (1854,) considerably exceed twenty-five millions. The entire slave population, at the census of 1850, amounted to 3,178,055. The value of domestic products exported during the year ending June 30th, 1853, was \$213,417,697;

es, Lopez  
sure, and  
e enemy.  
the over-  
He was  
-meeting  
his latest

sufficient  
vengeance  
ment, the  
a pardon

osé de la  
position,  
nose who  
ration to  
thusiasm

Mexican  
ures of  
lar com-  
lines of  
easingly.  
constant  
field for  
increase.  
d greatly  
as given  
d extra-

nercased  
gan, the  
1845, '6,  
d States  
the past  
y exceed  
ensus of  
luets ex-  
417,697;



**ZACHARY TAYLOR,**  
TWELFTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.  
BORN IN 1784 • INSTALLED INTO OFFICE 1849; SERVED UNTIL HIS DEATH,  
WHICH TOOK PLACE JULY 9, 1850.

HIGHLANDS OF THE HUDSON.

HIGHLANDS OF THE HUDSON.



the  
\$1  
thi  
ha  
ton  
wa  
on  
ren  
pro  
rela  
Jap  
wer  
T  
terr  
con  
pro  
hol  
It  
Ad  
fact  
mus  
atta  
A  
So  
in d  
cour  
upon  
scar  
dang  
W  
a fe  
vidu  
publ  
of di  
if le  
More  
part  
cause

that of foreign commodities exported during the same period, was \$17,558,460, making a total of \$230,976,157. The importations of this year, were valued at \$276,978,647.

For the last ten years, more than 1,400 vessels, upon an average, have been yearly constructed in the states and territories. The total tonnage exhibited by the returns in 1853, in tons, and ninety-fifths, was 4,407,010 43.

Franklin Pierce, president of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1853. Since his accession, the country has remained at peace with other nations, and in a condition of general prosperity. The most noticeable event connected with our foreign relations, at this time, is the successful negotiation of a treaty with Japan, by which the ancient restrictive policy of that populous and wealthy empire has been materially relaxed.

The action of congress, at the session of 1853-4, in organizing the territories of Nebraska and Kansas, upon principles directly in contravention of the provisions of the Missouri Compromise, has produced a degree of excitement, and an alienation between the slave-holding and free states, the result of which yet remains to be seen. It has been said that, at the period of the election of the younger Adams to the presidency, "party differences in America had, in fact, ceased to be founded on principle; and, as such differences must always exist, they came to base themselves upon personal attachments and antipathies, as well as upon territorial divisions."

A change somewhat similar may be observed at the present time. So great has been the assimilation of sentiment upon points formerly in direct controversy between the two great parties into which the country was divided, and so many causes of division have occurred upon other questions, that former lines of political separation are scarcely recognisable. The old party issues are dead; and a more dangerous source of contention has arisen.

We can perceive scarce a semblance of that personal animosity, a few years since so disgracefully prominent, which animated individuals of the opposing parties, and entered into every transaction, public or private, however disconnected with the fancied grounds of dispute. In its place has arisen a spirit of sectional opposition, if less obtrusive and disgusting, yet far more stern and formidable. More formidable, because no longer based upon a mere antagonistic party feeling, but aroused by the direct appeal of interest; and because it is difficult to foresee by what stroke of policy, or what course



of events the mooted point can be finally set at rest, and the demon of discord exorcised.

Our chief, if not our only hope, must lie in the reflection, that a still stronger and more universal tie of interest will preclude such hasty or unreasonable action, by either party for the time in the ascendant, as could lead to open rupture between different sections of the Union. Such a reflection may be less flattering to the national pride, but is far more reasonable, as a ground for favourable anticipation, than any recurrence to feelings of patriotism, or even of political honour.

While none could more earnestly deprecate the madness of secession, or of a voluntary partition of the confederacy, we can but say of the American Union, as Lord Crewe says of the name of De Vere, in his celebrated opinion concerning the earldom of Oxford: "Time hath its revolutions; there must be a period and an end to all temporal things—*finis rerum*; an end of names and dignities, and whatsoever is terrene, and why not of De Vere? \* \* And yet let the name and dignity of De Vere stand so long as it pleaseth God."

## THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.

---

NEARLY midway between the eastern and western continents, and a little southward of the tropic of Cancer, is situated the Sandwich or Hawaiian group of islands. They are twelve in number, of which eight are inhabited, the others being barren rocks. Hawaii, the largest and most southerly, has a triangular form, each side measuring eighty or ninety miles. The others, of which the most considerable are Maui, Lanai, Molokai, Oahu, and Kauai, form a chain extending north-westerly from Hawaii, a distance of between three and four hundred miles.

These islands are of volcanic origin, and like others of that class, when subjected to the heat of a tropical sun, present to the eye the most beautiful and romantic contrast of lofty mountains, fertile valleys, precipices of rugged rock or lava, and plains rich with the most luxuriant vegetation. For equability of climate, variety of production, and beauty of natural scenery, perhaps no spot on earth can offer superior advantages.

Vague reports, gathered from native tradition, or from ancient charts, seem to establish the fact that these islands were visited by Spanish vessels, during the early periods of American discovery and colonization; but the first distinct account of them appears in the journal of Captain Cook's last voyage of discovery. On the morning of January 18th, 1778, land was made at the western extremity of the group, and, on the day following, as the ships drew near shore, the natives came off in canoes. They called the island Atooi, since, by a change in orthography and a more correct analysis of the language, written Kauai. Upon the occasion of this first visit, one of the natives was shot for thieving, but a friendly intercourse was, notwithstanding, maintained, and after a stay of a fortnight, the ships sailed for the north-west coast of America.

Upon his return, near the close of the year, Captain Cook discovered and landed at Hawaii. He remained among the islands until

February, 1779. On the 14th of that month, in the attempt to compel restitution of a stolen boat, by seizure of the king of Hawaii, Kalaniopuu, he lost his life. A great crowd of the natives, suspicious of his design, gathered round the king's house. Finding it impracticable to carry out his original plan, Cook attempted to reëmbark on board his boat with the guard which had accompanied him on shore. Stones were thrown and shots fired; and, just at the edge of the water, the commander was stabbed in the back with an iron dagger, which one of the islanders had before obtained by barter. The scene of this fatal event was the landing at Kcalekeakua bay, on the western coast of Hawaii.

The islands were not again visited until La Perouse touched there in 1786. After that time, vessels occasionally put in for water and fresh provisions, and in 1792 and 1794 Vancouver made some stay at the group, and by every method strove to conciliate the chiefs, and establish a friendly feeling towards foreigners. The violence of the latter, and the treachery of the natives had, upon several occasions, resulted in hostility and bloodshed.

Meanwhile, an important change was in progress in the government of the islands. Kalaniopuu died in 1780, and his nephew, Kamehameha, a young chief of great enterprise and intelligence, commenced a career of conquest and diplomacy, which he pursued with such perseverance and vigour, that, in 1796, he had obtained unquestioned sovereignty over the entire group. Throughout his reign, which lasted until his death in May 1819, he pursued an honourable and sagacious policy towards strangers, encouraging trade, and protecting the persons and property of those who visited his dominions. His son Liholiho succeeded to the kingdom, assuming the title of Kamehameha II.

Popular faith in the old system of idolatry had been weakened by long intercourse with civilized nations; and the new king, shortly after his accession, set the example to his people of an open breach of the rigid restrictions of the *tabu*, by which, for ages, the conduct of the natives had been regulated in every occupation of life, under the most severe and cruel penalties. In the year following, 1820, the first missionaries from America arrived at the islands. Great interest had been awakened in the United States, by the aptness and capacity exhibited by several Hawaiian youths, whose instruction had been undertaken by the American board of missions.

In 1824, Liholiho, with his wife, Kamamali, visited England.

t to com-  
Hawaii,  
es, suspi-  
inding it  
to réem-  
nied him  
the edge  
an iron  
y barter.  
kua bay,

ed there  
ater and  
me stay  
e chiefs,  
lence of  
al occa-

govern-  
ephew,  
lligence,  
pursued  
obtained  
out his  
sued an  
uraging  
o visited  
assum-

eakened  
shortly  
breach  
conduct  
e, under  
320, the  
at inter-  
ess and  
ruction  
ngland.

VILLAGE OF KAAWAALOHA, ON KEELAKEKUA BAY,  
WHERE CAPTAIN COOK WAS KILLED.





They were *filed*, and treated with great attention by the king and nobility, but within a month of their landing, both died of the measles. Upon receipt of this intelligence at the islands, Kaulaouli, a younger brother of the deceased monarch, was proclaimed king, and still retains the title, as Kamehameha III. He was, at that period, a minor, and government was carried on by a joint regency, consisting of the favourite queen of Kamehameha I., Kaahumanu, and an old chief, Kalaimoku, a man of great sagacity and experience, who, from his position as premier to the former king, was commonly known as Billy Pitt.

From the time of their first arrival, the influence of the protestant missionaries has been maintained in spite of the most vehement opposition. While, on the one hand, the success of their efforts in producing a true and beneficial reform among the licentious, besotted, and careless islanders, has been grossly exaggerated; on the other, the most false and injurious calumnies have been circulated and believed respecting their conduct and motives. That they have, in various instances, encouraged the native rulers in the enforcement of restrictive laws ill-suited to the character of the people; and that they have, in effect, exercised a species of hierarchal authority little consonant with civil and religious liberty, is but too apparent; but it must be considered that the difficulties of their position appeared to require strong measures.

The introduction of Catholic priests, in 1827, gave occasion for a persecution, with which the Protestant missionaries have been unjustly charged. Many proselytes were made to the new faith before the native authorities took the matter in hand. The use of external symbols appeared to the king and his counsellors to savour too much of the abrogated worship of idols, and the most stringent edicts were sent forth and enforced against the Catholic form of worship. The priests were compelled to leave the islands, and the natives who persisted in following their instructions were very harshly dealt with. In 1839, a compulsory treaty, enforced by a powerful naval armament, was entered into between France and the Hawaiian government, by which general right of residence and religious toleration were secured to French subjects.

The future destiny of the Sandwich islands is becoming a matter of daily increasing interest to the great maritime nations of the world. The aboriginal inhabitants are fast dwindling away, with the advance of civilization, and the influx of foreigners. They were

computed, by Captain Cook, at a rough estimate, to number about 400,000. Since the first regular enumeration, the decrease has been constant. In 1832, the census returns exhibited a total of 130,313; that of 1848, gave but 80,641. During the past year, (1853,) the small-pox carried off great numbers. As a separate nation, they must soon cease to exist, and the question of future sovereignty over the islands will become of grave importance. No other *dépôt* exists, throughout an immense expanse of ocean, for vessels engaged in the whaling enterprise in the North Pacific; and the opening of a new channel of trade with the East Indies, by the settlement of California, has rendered the possible acquisition of the Hawaiian islands by the United States a subject for serious discussion.

Their position is important, from its remarkable isolation. Lying in mid-ocean, some two thousand miles from any other habitable shore, directly in the track of a vast number of trading vessels, and central to the most extensive and valuable whaling ground in the world, their value as mere stopping-places, for purposes of refitting, of secure harbourage, and the procurement of water and fresh provisions, is at once manifest. In addition to these advantages, the islands offer peculiar facilities for the formation of an extensive naval and military stronghold. The harbours, with the exception of those suited to vessels of light draught of water, are few in number, and capable of being fortified in such a manner as to defy attack, while the nature of the coast, bold and precipitous, or defended from approach by surf-beaten reefs of coral, would preclude the practicability of landing forces in the rear of the fortifications.

Such an establishment, once in the occupation of a powerful nation, would operate to exclude the marine of any hostile state from safe or convenient navigation of the North Pacific. The principal harbour is at Honolulu, on the south side of the island of Oahu: at most of the other ports, large vessels lie in open roadsteads, where they can at most seasons ride in safety, under the lee of the land, or in positions where they can calculate with certainty upon the direction of the wind, and the consequent facility for getting under weigh.

Even under the limited and imperfect system of cultivation thus far adopted, the agricultural products of the islands are by no means inconsiderable. During the year 1852, the total amount of supplies furnished to merchant vessels, whalers, and national vessels, was valued, by computation, at nearly one hundred and thirty thousand dollars. According to custom-house returns, the value of the entire

exportation of that year was set down at upwards of six hundred thousand dollars, and the importations of that period were of a considerably larger amount.

With an industrious population of whites, the operations of agriculture might be very greatly extended. The character of the soil is generally that of a rich compost of volcanic debris and vegetable mould. It is well suited for the cultivation not only of most tropical productions, but of fruits and grain generally considered peculiarly adapted to a temperate climate. The most astonishing yield is in the article of kalo, or taro, the root of an esculent species of *arum*, which has always formed the principal article of food among the natives. It is said that a patch of land forty feet square, planted with this root, will produce sufficient support for one person.

The cultivation of sugar has been attended with profit and success; cotton is raised without difficulty in certain locations; bauanas and plantains, more valuable to the poorer classes in a tropical country than the potato in our own climate, grow in the greatest luxuriance, and, requiring little labour of cultivation, yield an enormous return. Maize, wheat, rice, coffee, indigo, tobacco, vegetable oils, ginger, &c., can be produced in abundance. The list might be extended by the enumeration of most of our own garden vegetables and fruits. Among the spontaneous productions of the forest, sandal-wood has been the chief article of export, but many beautiful varieties of ornamental woods, suitable for cabinet purposes, exist, and might be made a source of profit.

A system of irrigation, for which many facilities are presented, might greatly increase the extent of fertile territory, as the continued droughts experienced at certain seasons constitute a serious drawback to the operations of the agriculturalist. Of the few articles of domestic manufacture, the most considerable is that of salt, procured by evaporation. It is of the best quality, and can be produced in the greatest abundance.

An advocate of the acquisition of the islands by the United States, remarks of the question, (substantially,) that it is one "of necessity, of time, and of justice. By necessity, is to be understood not an absolute and indispensable need, but that clear, strong, legible convenience and fitness which the common understanding sees and feels; and when this convenience and fitness shall be apparent, and the parties declare themselves ready and willing for the connection, the time will be propitious, and the justice unquestionable,



for no question can well arise as to the right of other nations to interfere."

The European maritime powers look with great jealousy upon certain movements, already in progress upon the islands, and aiming at peaceable annexation to the United States, by the operation of treaty with the native government. In a memorial to the king, dated September 1st, 1853, the French and British consuls made vehement protest against the scheme, as being in contravention of former treaties with their respective governments. The intrinsic value of the islands, especially considered in relation to their importance for a naval and commercial station, as the native dynasty totters to its fall, may yet give rise to a disastrous contest for their possession.

THE END.

nations  
sy upon  
aiming  
ation of  
e king,  
ls made  
ntion of  
ntrinsic  
heir im-  
dynasty  
for their



**MILLARD FILLMORE,**

THIRTEENTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.

BORN IN 1800; SUCCEEDED TO THE PRESIDENCY BY VIRTUE OF HIS  
OFFICE AS VICE PRESIDENT, ON THE DEATH OF ZACHARY TAYLOR  
IN 1850; SERVED DURING THE REMAINDER OF THE TERM.



*FRANKLIN PIERCE,*  
FOURTEENTH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.  
BORN IN N HAMPSHIRE, NOV, 25, 1804; INSTALLED INTO OFFICE IN 1853.

...E OF HIS  
TAYLOR  
...RM.

en  
R  
No  
the  
roy  
wi  
ac  
the  
ing  
ren  
an  
des  
182

On  
SE  
an In  
and  
left  
the r  
wren  
tend  
bron  
Aron  
woyl  
swor  
buck  
212  
Pop  
1820,  
No

THE SEALS OF THE SEVERAL STATES AND OF THE UNITED STATES.  
THE ORIGINAL STATES FIRST—THE OTHERS IN CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER.

The publisher is mainly indebted to the excellent work of MANCOUR WILLIAMS, Esq., on "American History," for the material which composes the following descriptions:



One of the Original States.

SEAL.—A circular field, surrounded by a laurel wreath, encircled by the words, in Roman capitals, "Southem Republica Non Indivisa":—"The Seal of the State of New Hampshire," with the date, 1776, indicating the time of the adoption of the State Constitution. Land and water are represented in the foreground, with the trunk of a tree on which the hardy workman is yet engaged, embracing a scene of busy life significant of the industrious habits of the people; and a ship on the stocks, just ready for launch, with the American banner displayed, is figurative of the state, just emerging above the horizon, symbolizes the rising destiny of the state.

Population.—In 1790, 111,809; 1800, 189,762; 1810, 214,300; 1820, 244,161; 1830, 280,528; 1840, 284,574; 1850, 317,976.  
No. of Representatives in Congress, 3; Electoral votes, 6.

One of the Original States.

SEAL.—A white or silver shield, on which is an anchor with two flukes, and a cable attached. Above the shield, in corner of the shield is suspended an unlettered ball. The device symbolizes those principles of evil and religious hypocrisy which led to the founding of the colony, and in which the faith of the citizens of the state is still deeply anchored. The motto, 1804, above the shield, directs the mind to the uncertain future, anticipating the growing prosperity of the state, and the perpetuity of its free institutions; while the unlettered ball, denotes that events are still progressing in before the destiny of the state shall be recorded thereon.

Population.—In 1790, 69,110; 1800, 69,122; 1810, 77,631; 1820, 83,050; 1830, 97,106; 1840, 108,830; 1850, 147,545.  
No. of Representatives in Congress, 2; Electoral votes, 4.



One of the Original States.

SEAL.—On the blue ground of an irregularly-formed shield an Indian is represented, dressed with belted hunting-shirt and moccasins. In his right hand is a golden bow, and in his left an arrow with the point downwards. A silver star on the right denotes one of the United States of America. A breadth forms the crest of the escutcheon, from which extend the tusk and arm, clad and ruffed, the hand grasping the word, *Ese petit placidam sub libertate quietem*.—"By the sword we seek peace, but only where there is liberty." Around the border are the words, "Solum Republica Massachusettensium";—"The Seal of the State of Massachusetts."

Population.—In 1790, 378,717; 1800, 424,245; 1810, 472,040; 1820, 525,202; 1830, 597,575; 1840, 694,511.  
No. of Representatives in Congress, 11; Electoral votes, 13.

One of the Original States.

SEAL.—The original seal is of an oval form, without any ornamental device, and on the field are delineated three grape-vines, each winding around and sustained by an upright support.—The whole representing the three settlements (Hartford, Windsor, and Waterfield) which formed the early colony. (In a label waving around the lower vine is the motto, *Qui Trinitatem Sacerdotum*.—"The Seal of the State of Connecticut.") The colonial seal had fifteen grape-vines, with a hand protruding from the clouds on the right above them, grasping the label and motto, which was waving in the air.

Population.—In 1790, 238,141; 1800, 261,002; 1810, 292,042; 1820, 275,202; 1830, 297,575; 1840, 330,979; 1850, 374,722.  
No. of Representatives in Congress, 4; Electoral votes, 6.



One of the Original States.

**SEAL.**—A shield or escutcheon, on which is represented the rising sun, with a range of hills and water in the foreground. Above the shield, for the crest, is a wreath surmounted by a half globe, on which rests a sunburst eagle, with wings outstretched. For the supporters of the shield, on the right is represented the figure of Justice, with the sword in one hand and the scales in the other; and on the left the Goddess of Liberty, with the wand and cap in her left hand, and the olive branch of peace in her right. Below the shield is the motto, *EUREKA!*—“More elevated”—“denoting that the course of the state is onward and higher. Around the border of the seal, between two plain lines, is the inscription, in Roman capitals, “The Great Seal of the State of New York.”

**Population.**—In 1790, 310,130; 1800, 580,750; 1810, 950,649; 1820, 1,372,812; 1830, 1,948,428; 1840, 2,428,021; 1850, 3,977,354.  
No. of Representatives in Congress, 33; Elect’s votes, 35.



One of the Original States.

**SEAL.**—In a white field is an escutcheon, parted by a yellow or golden band or circle, on which is represented a plow in its natural colour. In the upper part of the shield, a ship under full sail is gliding smoothly over the waves of the sea, which are surrounded by an azure sky. At the lower part, on a green ground, are three golden sheaves of wheat, denoting that agriculture, as well as commerce, is one of the primary resources of the state. On the right of the shield is a stalk of maize, and on the left an olive branch. For the crest, on a wreath of olive flowers, is perched a bald eagle, with wings extended, holding in its beak a tablet, with the motto, “Virtue, Liberty, and Independence.” Around the margin of the seal are the words, “Seal of the State of Pennsylvania.”

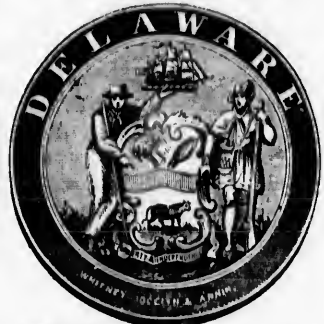
**Population.**—In 1790, 431,372; 1800, 682,205; 1810, 810,091; 1820, 1,049,458; 1830, 1,548,251; 1840, 1,721,431; 1850, 2,311,706.  
No. of Representatives in Congress, 25; Elect’s votes, 27.



One of the Original States.

**SEAL.**—A white shield or escutcheon, bearing three ploughs, indicating that the chief reliance of the people is upon agriculture. The crest is a horse’s head, supported by a full-faced, ear-bared helmet, resting on a vase—the latter resting on the top of the escutcheon. The supporters are the Goddess of Liberty on the right, with her wand and cap, her left arm resting on the escutcheon; and Liberty on the left, her right hand resting on the escutcheon, and her left supporting a cornucopia, filled with fruits and flowers. Around the border of the seal are the words, in Roman capitals, “The Great Seal of the State of New Jersey,” and at the base the date of its adoption, in numerical letters, MDCCLXXXI (1781).

**Population.**—In 1790, 184,139; 1800, 211,940; 1810, 245,255; 1820, 277,575; 1830, 320,821; 1840, 373,106; 1850, 480,556.  
No. of Representatives in Congress, 5; Elect’s votes, 7.



One of the Original States.

**SEAL.**—An azure shield or escutcheon, divided into two equal parts by a white band or circle. A cow is represented in the lower part of the shield, and in the upper part are two symbols, designed probably to represent the agricultural productions of the state—grain and tobacco. The crest (a wreath) supports a ship under full sail, displaying the American banner. In a white field around the escutcheon were formerly wreaths of flowers, branches of the olive and other symbols, but these have been displaced for two figures, representing a mariner and a hunter. At the top of the seal, in numerals, is the date of its adoption, MDCCLXIII (1763), and around the border, in Roman capitals, are the words, “Great Seal of the State of Delaware.”

**Population.**—In 1790, 50,000; 1800, 61,273; 1810, 72,374; 1820, 72,749; 1830, 75,748; 1840, 78,085; 1850, 91,432.  
No. of Representatives in Congress, 1; Elect’s votes, 3.



One of the Original States.  
**SEAL.**—On a white or silver field the Goddess of Justice is seen prominent in the centre of the foreground, pressing an olive branch and a sword in her right hand, while her left is elevated in laurel wreath, the scales above her head. At her feet are scattered white labels waving loosely from their midst. In the distance, on the right, is a view of the ocean, with a ship under full sail in the perspective, bounded by a clear horizon. On the left are some headlands of tobacco, symbolical of the principal product of the state, and a ship with its sails partly unfurled, indicative of commercial enterprise. The old seal was little more than a copy of that of the United States, the eagle being represented as it is on the present coin.  
*Population.*—In 1790, 248,728; 1800, 311,548; 1810, 360,546; 1820, 407,241; 1830, 447,840; 1840, 520,010; 1850, 583,032.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 6; Elect' votes, 8.

One of the Original States.  
**SEAL.**—In the original seal, which differs somewhat from the above, on a white or silver field are represented the Goddesses of Liberty on the right, and *Ceres*, the goddess of farmer in a wreath, representing the Declaration of Independence, and the *liber* superior her word, surmounted by the ears of wheat, and in her left the cornucopia, or horn of plenty, filled with the products of the earth. In the background is a marine view, indicative of the commercial resources of the state. Around the outer circle, starting from a star on the top, are the words in Roman capitals, "Great Seal of the State of North Carolina."  
*Population.*—In 1790, 203,751; 1800, 478,103; 1810, 655,500; 1820, 638,820; 1830, 737,307; 1840, 725,419; 1850, 809,439.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 8; Elect' votes, 10.



One of the Original States.  
**SEAL.**—On a white or silver field, is represented dressed like an Amazon, resting on a spear with one hand, and holding a sword in the other. She is in the act of trampling on Tyranny, represented by a man prostrate, a crown fallen from his head, a broken chain in his left hand, and a scepter in his right. On a label above the figure is the word "Virtus" and beneath it is the motto, *Sic semper tyrannus*. There are no other devices legitimately belonging to the seal, although artists frequently embellish the field with such local or national emblems as their fancy suggests—a practice "more honoured in the breach than in the observance."  
*Population.*—In 1790, 718,338; 1800, 890,200; 1810, 974,622; 1820, 1,062,373; 1830, 1,201,105; 1840, 1,283,797; 1850, 1,421,421.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 13; Elect' votes, 15.

One of the Original States.  
**SEAL.**—In the centre of a white or silver field is the device of a palmetto-tree (a species of the date), with its topmost branches denoting a vigorous growth, emblematical of the prosperous progress of the state. Near the base of the tree are two crescent-moons, composed of bundles of spears, at the crossing of which is attached a scroll or label, with the motto, *Animus opibique parati*.—"Ready [to defend it] with our lives and property," which motto, by the way, is more generally put around the lower half of the outer circle with the words "South Carolina" occupying the upper half, signifying victory, and triumph, and is, perhaps, the source of that defiance which the state sometimes expects.  
*Population.*—In 1790, 249,073; 1800, 345,591; 1810, 418,115; 1820, 522,751; 1830, 551,155; 1840, 594,333; 1850, 668,907.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 6; Elect' votes, 8.





One of the Original States.  
**SEAL.**—In the centre of a circular white or silver field are three pillars, supporting an arch, around which is embossed the word "Constitution." The pillars are symbolical of the three departments of the state government—the Legislative, the Judiciary, and the Executive; and on the one at the right, representing the Legislative, is the word "Wisdom"; on the second, representing the Judiciary, is the word "Justice"; and on the third, representing the Executive, is the word "Moderation." Near the right pillar is the figure of an officer with a drawn sword, denoting that the aid of the military is always ready to enforce respect and obedience to law. Around the margin of the circle are the words, "State of Georgia, 1790."  
*Population.*—In 1790, 82,548; 1800, 162,101; 1810, 252,433; 1820, 310,937; 1830, 516,823; 1840, 691,392; 1850, 906,185.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 6; Electoral votes, 10.



Admitted into the Union, 1792.  
**SEAL.**—Although the seal of this state is apparently not really among the most simple in its design, yet it conveys a significance which should commend itself to the serious consideration of all who are disposed to place a slight value upon the union of the states. In the centre of a circular white or silver field, two friends are seen grasping one hand of each other in a firm and cordial embrace, while the other is extended to each other's back, significant of concurrence and support. Below them is the expressive motto, "United, we stand; divided, we fall." An embossed double circle encompasses the whole, with the repeated words, "Seal of Kentucky" between the lines of the upper half-circle.  
*Population.*—In 1790, 73,077; 1800, 220,985; 1810, 406,511; 1820, 664,317; 1830, 887,917; 1840, 779,828; 1850, 1,182,368.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 10; Electoral votes, 12.



Admitted into the Union, 1791.  
**SEAL.**—A circular field, in the middle of which is a tall evergreen with fourteen branches—thirteen representing the original states, and the fourteenth (or topmost) the state of Vermont supported by the others. Beneath its cloudless firmament, the Green Mountains are seen towering in the distance, and in the foreground are sheaves of wheat and a cow, indicative of an agricultural and grazing country, affording the true sources of thrift and independence for an industrious population. The Green Mountains have ever been considered characteristic of the hardy race which inhabit that region. Around the margin of the field, in Roman capitals, the word "Vermont" occupies the upper half-circle, and the words "Freedom and Unity" occupy the lower half.  
*Population.*—In 1790, 85,416; 1800, 154,466; 1810, 217,713; 1820, 235,764; 1830, 288,652; 1840, 291,948; 1850, 314,120.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 3; Electoral votes, 6.



Admitted into the Union, 1796.  
**SEAL.**—A white or silver circular field, the upper half of which is occupied on the right by a plough, in the centre by a sheaf of wheat, and on the left by a stalk of cotton. Unsternly these emblems, extending across the entire middle of the field, is the word "Agriculture," denoting that the first reliance of the state should be upon the productions of the soil. The lower half is occupied by a loaded barge, with the word "Commerce" below the water, indicating that the prosperity of all may be promoted through this means. Over the sheaf of wheat are the numeral letters XVI, denoting that this was the sixteenth state admitted into the Union. Around the border are the words, "The Great Seal of the State of Tennessee," with the date 1796.  
*Population.*—In 1790, 35,791; 1800, 106,892; 1810, 261,727; 1820, 422,817; 1830, 681,194; 1840, 828,210; 1850, 1,192,311.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 10; Electoral votes, 12.



Admitted into the Union, 1802  
 SEAL.—In a circular field are several devices, significant of the general surface, business, and prospects of the state. The central portion represents a cultivated country, with the outline of agriculture (a wheat-sheaf) on the right, and on the left a bundle of seventeen arrows, indicating the number of states then constituting the Union. In the distance is a rising sun, which is just becoming visible above the range of mountains, the base skirted by a tract of woodland. In the foreground, between the rising glory of the state, is a general is an expanse of water, with a keel-hoat on its surface, indicative of inland trade. Around the border are the words, "The Great Seal of the State of Ohio," with the date, 1802.  
 Population.—In 1800, 45,365; 1810, 230,790; 1820, 581,434; 1830, 872,933; 1840, 1,519,067; 1850, 1,984,008.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 21; Elector votes, 23.

Admitted into the Union, 1816.  
 SEAL.—In the lower portion of a circular field is represented a scene of prairie and woodland, with the surface gently undulating—descriptive of the predominant features of the state. In the foreground is a ballad, an animal once abundant in great numbers in this region, apparently startled by the axe of the woodman, or pioneer, who is seen on the right, felling the trees of the forest, denoting the march of civilization westward. In the distance, on the right, is seen a plow, just appearing above the verge of the horizon. In a half-circle, spanning the expressive scene beneath, are the words "Indiana State Seal." Around the outer margin of the whole is a plain green border, surrounded by a simple black line.  
 Population.—In 1800, 4,875; 1810, 24,520; 1820, 147,178; 1830, 343,031; 1840, 685,866; 1850, 1,083,416.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 11; Elector votes, 13.



Admitted into the Union, 1812  
 SEAL.—On a white or silver circular field is represented a pelican standing by her nest filled with young ones, in the attitude of "protection and defence," and in the act of feeding them—all shining alike her maternal assiduity. The Union, while the birds in the nest represent the several connexions with the outposts beneath, signify that "equal and exact justice" must be extended to all the members of the confederacy. The semi-circle of eighteen stars indicates the number of states at the time of admission. In the upper portion of the external circle are the words, "State of Louisiana," and in the lower, the words, "Union and Constitution."  
 Population.—In 1810, 78,550; 1820, 153,407; 1830, 215,759; 1840, 322,411; 1850, 517,762.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 4; Electoral votes, 6.

Admitted into the Union, 1817.  
 SEAL.—In the centre of a white or silver circular field is the American eagle, with wide-spread wings, occupying the entire surface, which may be considered as denoting that all the people of the state, from whatever class or country they may have come, are purely American in feelings, and are content to repose their trust under the broad wings of the "bird of liberty." In the right talon of the eagle is a bundle of four arrows, significant of power to sustain the principles of government, and to repel the assaults of an enemy; while an olive branch in the left, betokens a disposition to maintain peace. Around the outer circle, between parallel lines, are the words, in Roman capitals, "The Great Seal of the State of Mississippi."  
 Population.—In 1800, 8,850; 1810, 40,332; 1820, 75,448; 1830, 136,621; 1840, 375,631; 1850, 646,528.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 5; Elector votes, 7.



Admitted into the Union, 1818.  
**SEAL.**—In the centre of a white or silver escutcheon is a representation of the American eagle, its wings spread so as to touch the inner margin of the shield. In its right talon is the emblem of peace, an olive branch; while three arrows are grasped in the left, denoting its readiness to sustain the three great branches of government. On its breast is an escutcheon, the lower half of which is represented of a red colour, and the upper half blue, the latter bearing three white or silver stars. From its beak extends a label, waving in the air above it, with the inscription "State Sovereignty: National Union." In the upper part of a circle, enclosing the shield are the words, "Seal of the State of Illinois," and in the lower part the date, "Aug. 26, 1818."  
*Population.*—In 1810, 12,982; 1820, 65,211; 1830, 157,445; 1840, 476,183; 1850, 654,470  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 9; Elect' votes, 11.



Admitted into the Union, 1820.  
**SEAL.**—A white or silver shield, on which is represented a pine-tree, with a moose-deer recumbent at its base—emblematical of the valuable timber of the state, and of the security and repose enjoyed by the animals which graze its immense forests. The "supporters" are a mariner resting on his anchor, and a fisherman with his sythe—denoting that commerce and agriculture are each primary resources of the state. Above the shield is the North Star, beneath which is the motto, *Dirigo*—"I direct;" and under the shield is the name of the state, in Roman capitals; while sea and land compose the foreground. On the left, the full masts of a ship are perceptible in the distance, the sails spread, denoting its readiness for commercial enterprise.  
*Population.*—In 1790, 95,540; 1840, 151,719; 1810, 228,705; 1820, 238,335; 1830, 389,455; 1840, 501,733; 1850, 563,149.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 6; Elect' votes, 8.



Admitted into the Union, 1820.  
**SEAL.**—Nearly the entire of a circular field is occupied with the representation of a map, embracing the names and localities of the principal rivers and towns, as they existed in the time when the territorial government was established, 1817. A portion of East Florida, embracing the line of surface as far as Pensacola, is included in the map, as also a small portion of Tennessee, sufficient to show the boundaries of the state. Around the circle, between two parallel lines, are the words, in Roman capitals, "Alabama Executive Office." [This was the original seal designed for the territory, and it was afterwards adopted by the state on its admission into the Union, and has remained unchanged ever since that time].  
*Population.*—In 1820, 127,901; 1830, 309,527; 1840, 590,756; 1850, 771,671.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 7; Elect' votes, 9.



Admitted into the Union, 1821.  
**SEAL.**—On a circular shield, equally divided by a perpendicular line, is a red field on the right side, in which is the white or grizzly bear of Missouri. Above, separated by a wavy or wavy line, is a white or silver crescent, in an azure field. On the left, on a white field, are the arms of the United States. A laurel wreath surrounds the escutcheon, on which are the words, "United, we stand; divided, we fall." For the crest, over a yellow or golden helmet, full faced, and graced with six bars, is a silver star; and above it, a constellation of twenty-three smaller stars. The supporters are two grizzly bears standing on a scroll inscribed, *Salus populi suprema lex esto*—"The public safety is the supreme law." Underneath are the numerals MDCCCXXI, and around the circle the words, "The Great Seal of the State of Missouri."  
*Population.*—In 1810, 20,815; 1820, 116,587; 1830, 140,657; 1840, 383,702; 1850, 682,044.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 7; Elect' votes, 9.



Admitted into the Union, 1836.  
**SEAL.**—Occupying the lower part of a circle is a shield, near the base of which is a white star on a blue field, representing the state. In the middle portion is a bee-hive, signifying industry, and a plough, denoting agriculture; while a sheaf of wheat, emblematic of commerce, fills the upper part. For the crest, the goddess of liberty is represented with her right hand and a sword in her left, and a wreath of laurel in the other, surrounded by a constellation of stars, indicating the states. The supporters are two eagles, one grasping a bundle of arrows, and the other an olive branch; a label extending from the claw of each, with the motto, *Republika Populi*.—"The People rule." On either side of the base is a cornucopia, and around the circle which encloses the shield are the words, "Seal of the State of Arkansas."  
 Population.—In 1820, 14,273; 1830, 30,388; 1840, 87,574; 1850, 216,887.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 2; Elect' votes, 4.

Admitted into the Union, 1845.  
**SEAL.**—The seal which was originally used for the territory of Florida, although not formally adopted as that of the state, has been continued ever since, and of course retains all its legal force. In the centre of a circular white or silver field is represented the American eagle, "the bird of liberty," grasping the emblem of peace, an olive branch, and in its right a bundle of arrows, emblematic of the three principal relations of most governments—the executive, the legislative, and the judicial. Above are arranged in a semi-circle thirteen stars, emblematic of the thirteen original states; and below, the ground is represented as covered with the prickly-pear, a fruit common to the country, and for which an appropriate motto would be, "Let me alone."  
 Population.—In 1830, 31,730; 1840, 54,447; 1850, 87,444.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 1; Elect' votes, 3.



Admitted into the Union, 1837.  
**SEAL.**—In an escutcheon in the centre of a white field is the representation of a peninsula extending into a lake, a man with his gun, and the rising sun. On the upper part is the word *Tuebor*.—"I will defend it," and on a label extending across the lower part is the motto, *Si quisquis peninsulam americanam circumspiciat*.—"If you seek a delightful country (peninsula), behold it." The supporters are a common deer on the right, and a moose on the left, both abounding in the forests of Michigan. For the crest, is the American eagle, above which, on a label waving above all, is the motto, *E pluribus unum*. Around the outer circle, between two parallel lines, are the words, "The Great Seal of the State of Michigan," and "A. D. MDCCCXXXV."  
 Population.—In 1810, 4,762; 1820, 8,836; 1830, 31,639; 1840, 212,257; 1850, 357,574.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 4; Elect' votes, 6.

Admitted into the Union, 1845.  
**SEAL.**—Texas is the only state which enjoyed a literally independent or isolated existence previous to its admission into the Union. During its struggle with Mexico, it adopted as an official seal a white or silver star of five points on an azure field, encircled by branches of the live oak and olive. Around the outer circle were the words, "Republic of Texas," which abounds in the forests of Texas, is a strong and durable timber, much used in ship-building, and forming an important article of export.  
 Population.—In 1850, 212,252.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 2; Electoral votes, 4.



Admitted into the Union, 1846.  
**SEAL.**—Like some of the other states which enjoyed a territorial existence for a length of time before they were invested with the dignity of states, Iowa still retains her original seal, the device of which is perhaps more simple and expressive than that of any other state. In the centre of a white or silver circular field is an eagle in the attitude of flight, grasping in his right talon a bow, his left talon just visible within the inner circle around the field, and holding in its beak a single arrow. The words, "Seal of the Territory of Iowa," form nearly a complete circle around the field, leaving a blank space at the lower part, and these again are surrounded by white circular dots, on a black ground.

**Population.**—In 1840, 43,112; 1850, 182,214.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 2; Electoral votes, 4.

Admitted into the Union, 1850.  
**SEAL.**—In the foreground, on the left, Minerva is seated on a rock near the bank of an extensive bay or river, which winds its course among the majestic mountains on either side. Her spear is grasped in the right hand, while the left rests on the top of her shield by her side; near which is a grizzly bear, significant of the snowy region round about. On the right is a hardy miner with his pick, seeking the golden treasures secreted among the rocks. Along the centre is seen a majestic bay, with two clippers in full view, indicating that commerce is one of the chief reliances of the people. Above the snow-covered mountains, which bound the view, is the Greek word *Eureka*—"I have found!" and over all is a circle of silver stars.

**Population.**—According to a census ordered by the state, the population in 1852 was returned as 284,435.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 2; Electoral votes, 4.



Admitted into the Union, 1847.  
**SEAL.**—A large portion of the field is occupied by land and water scenery, denoting the agricultural, commercial, and mining interests of the state. In the foreground is a man ploughing with a span of horses; in the middle is a pile of land in bars, a barrel, a rake, a sheaf of wheat, an anchor, and a cornucopia. Lakes Michigan and Superior, are represented with a ship on the former, and a steamboat on the latter, towards which an Indian on the shore is pointing. In the distance is a level prairie, skirted by a range of wood-land—a light-house and school-house on the left, and the state-house in the centre. In a semi-circle above are the words *Civitas a recent Barbarum*.—*C*ivilization has succeeded *B*arbarism. At the bottom is the date when a territorial government was formed, "Fourth of July, 1836," and around the whole are the words "The Great Seal of the Territory of Wisconsin," which has not yet been changed.  
**Population.**—In 1840, 30,945; 1850, 305,191.  
 No. of Representatives in Congress, 3; Electoral votes, 5.

Constitution adopted, September 17, 1787.  
**SEAL.**—The following is the recorded description of the device of the seal of the United States, as adopted by Congress on the 20th of June, 1782: "Arms: Paleways of thirteen pieces, argent and gules; a chief azure; the escutcheon on the breast of the American eagle displayed, proper, holding in his dexter talon an olive branch, and in his sinister a bundle of thirteen arrows, all proper, and in his beak a scroll inscribed with this motto, *E pluribus unum*. For the crest: Over the head of the eagle, which appears above the escutcheon, a glory or breaking through a cloud, proper, and surrounding thirteen stars forming a constellation, argent, on a azure field."  
**Population.**—In 1790, 3,929,827; 1800, 5,305,941; 1810, 7,239,814; 1820, 9,638,191; 1830, 12,866,020; 1840, 17,069,453; 1850, 23,253,488.  
 No. of Representatives, 234; Delegates, 6; Senators, 62; Electoral votes, 256.

2697 20



n is seated  
 iver, which  
 on either  
 side the left  
 ar which is  
 und about,  
 eeking the  
 ng the cen-  
 n full view,  
 nces of the  
 ich bound  
 und," and  
 y the state,  
 al votes, 4



ion of the  
 d by Con-  
 ys of thir-  
 s establish-  
 ed, proper,  
 his sinis-  
 his desk a  
 For the  
 above the  
 roper, and  
 n, urgent,  
 41: 1810,  
 7,089,433,  
 ators, 62;

